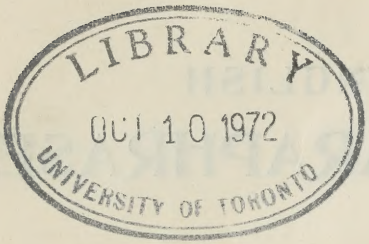
3 1761 04709347 7

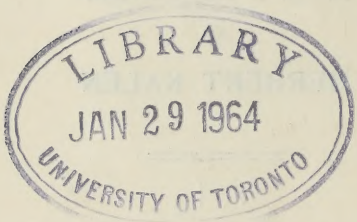
A MIDDLE ENGLISH
METRICAL PARAPHRASE
OF
THE OLD TESTAMENT

EDITED IN PART AND EXAMINED
IN AN INTRODUCTION
BY
HERBERT KALÉN

GÖTEBORG 1923
ELANDERS BOKTRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG

[Gothenburg, Sweden. Universitetet.
Acta. Arsskrift 28, 1955: 5]





878630

PREFACE

The task of editing MS. Selden Supra 52, part of which is being published in this thesis, was suggested to me by Dr. A. C. PAUES, who was the first to redirect attention to it. Dr. Paues had originally intended that Miss M. J. POWELL, M. A., Newnham College, should print the paraphrase contained in the MS.; and when this scheme had to be abandoned, the work was entrusted to me in her stead. It is my pleasant duty here to thank Miss PAUES for the confidence she has thus shown in me, and to render acknowledgment to Miss POWELL for her helpfulness in the matter.

It had been my first plan to publish the first 500 stanzas of the paraphrase and to give a linguistic, metrical and literary study of the whole poem in the Introduction. But the vastness of the subject and the pressure of other duties have necessitated some restriction in the treatment of the latter study. I have had to confine myself chiefly to the Phonology and the Dialect of the Selden MS., of which I have attempted to give as comprehensive an account as possible. Other questions have had to be treated rather summarily and in such a way as to suggest the lines along which in my opinion subsequent investigation should proceed. In the near future I hope to be able to publish the remaining two thirds of the paraphrase, which without doubt constitutes a very important North England literary document of the 15th cent.

In conclusion I wish to express my sincere thanks to my teacher in English Philology, Professor K. F. SUNDÉN, by whose valuable criticism, good advice and thoughtful suggestions my work has greatly benefited. For his help, never failing encouragement, and personal kindness I shall always remain grateful.

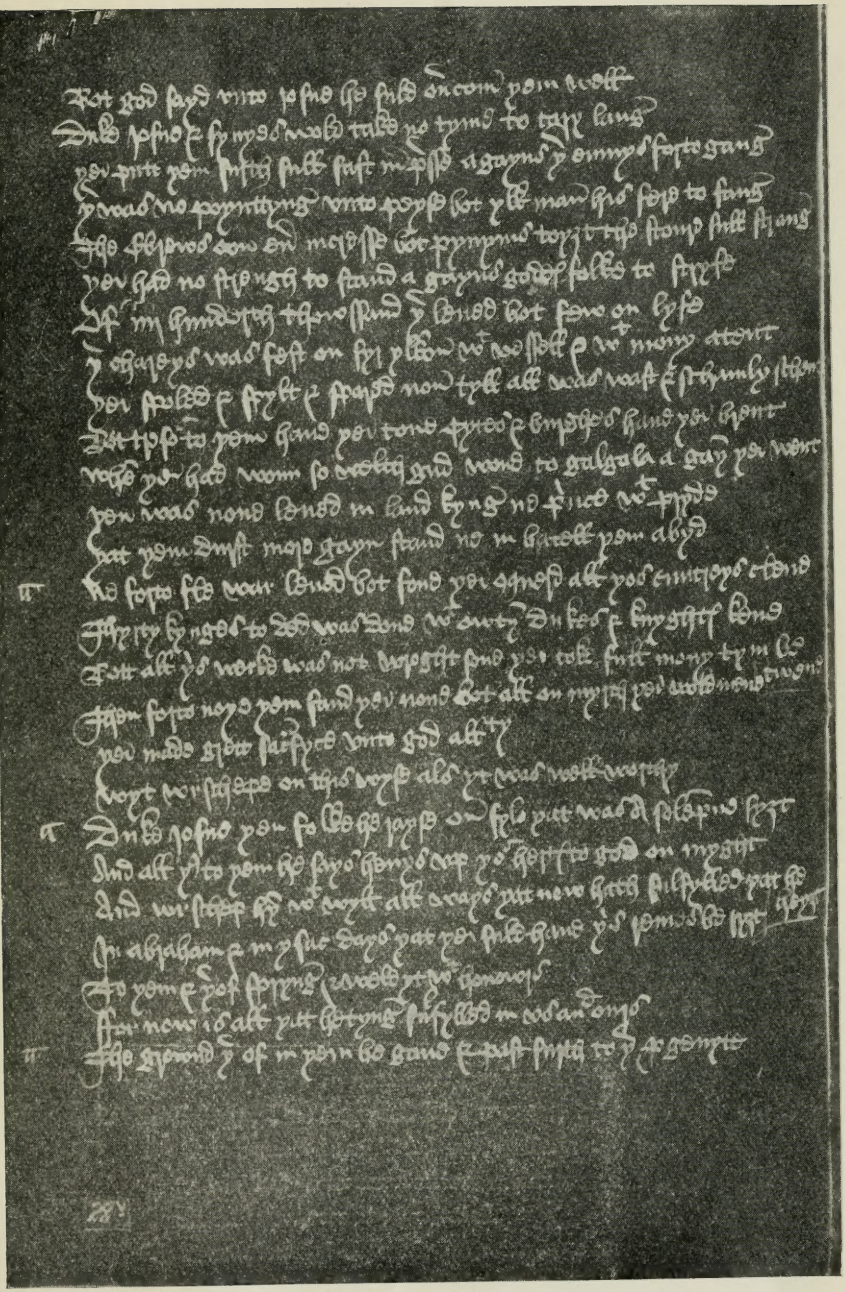
I am also much indebted to Sir ISRAEL GOLLANCZ for the interest he has been good enough to show in this work; to the MARQUIS OF BATH for the loan of MS. Longleat 257 and for permission to have

it rotographed; to Dr. A. E. Cowley of the Bodleian Library for allowing me to print MS. Selden Supra 52; and to the officials of the said library, the British Museum, and the Gothenburg City Library, for their ready assistance and constant courtesy.

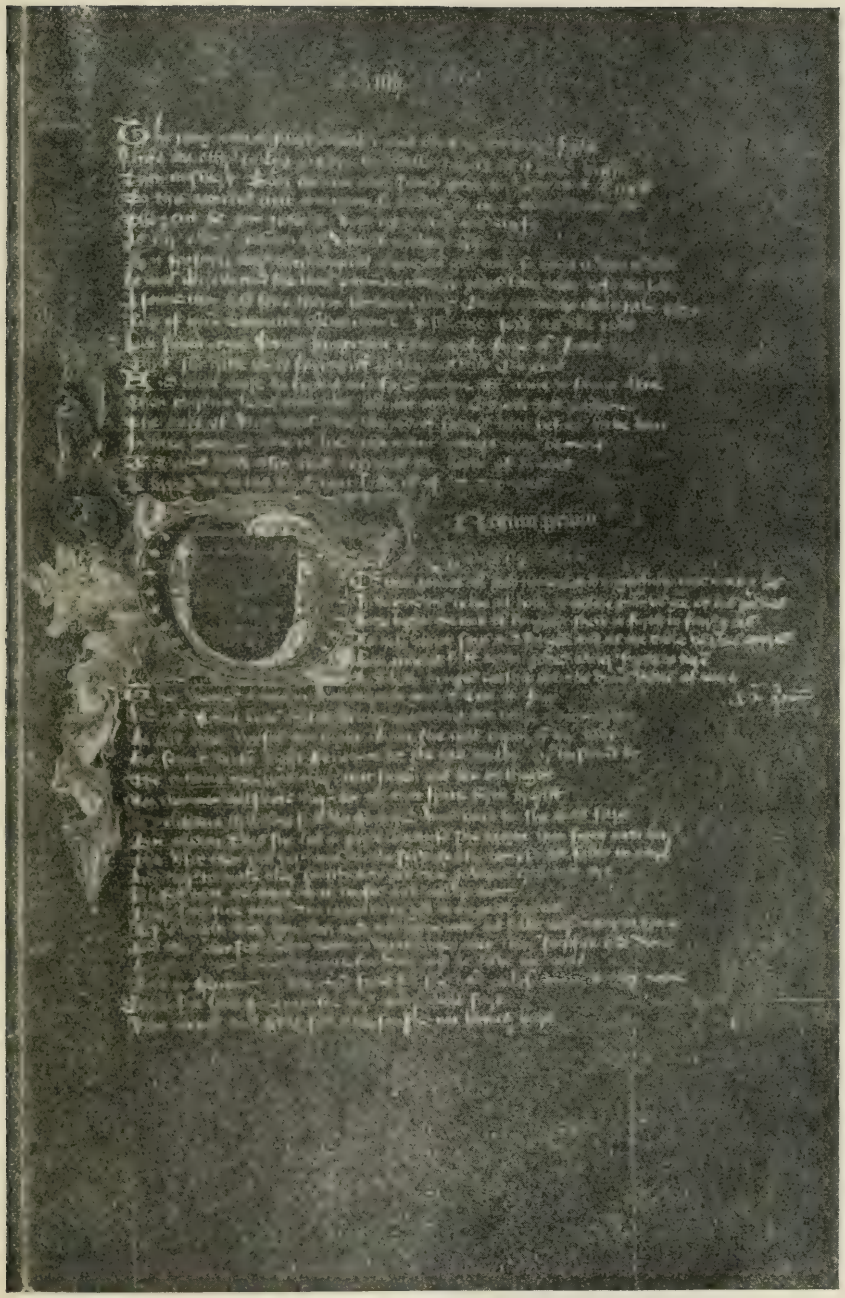
My thanks are finally due to Miss Vera G. Pattison, M. A., who has helped me in various ways, to Miss Margaret Prowse, B. A., Lady Margaret Hall, who kind'y undertook to copy out parts of the Longleat MS., and to Mr. Godfrey Greene, M. A., who has revised the language of my thesis.

Gothenburg, 24 April, 1923.

Herbert Kalén.



Rotograph of fol. 28 b (**S**)



Rotograph of fol. 136 a (**L**)

INTRODUCTION

CHAPTER I

DESCRIPTION OF THE MSS

The poem, part of which is printed here for the first time, is preserved in two MSS.: *MS.* **S***elden Supra 52*, which is in the Bodleian Library at Oxford, and *MS.* **L***ongleat 257*, in the private possession of the Marquis of Bath at Longleat, Wiltshire. Both of them are quite well-known and often referred to in the works of scholars. Already in 1881 HORSTMANN in his Altengl. Legenden N. F. p. 90 draws attention to the Bath version and prints as a sample of the poem the first two stanzas of the Maccabees. Thereupon the same MS. — then numbered MS. 25 — is again mentioned in Engl. Stud. Bd. X (1887), where Prof. E. KÖLBING brings forward the existence of the MS. and gives an account of its contents. In Arch. 79 p. 447 HORSTMANN has printed parts of the Longleat MS., viz. *De Matre cum VII filiis* and *De Anthioco*. Later on Prof. BRANDL in his Mittelenglische Literatur in Paul's Grundriss der Germanischen Philologie § 78 mentions the poem in passing, attributing very little poetical value to it. It was generally believed that MS. Longleat 257 was the only extant one. KÖLBING says in Engl. Stud. X p. 206, »Ich kenne keine zweite hs. dieser interessanten und umfangreichen bearbeitung des alten testaments, und auch HORSTMANN, mit dem sich in bezug auf belesenheit auf diesem gebiete keiner von uns messen kann, macht keine namhaft.» However, twenty years later, in 1908, Dr W. HEUSER utters a cry of triumph, on finding the second version, MS. Selden Supra 52, which contains the whole poem, believing himself to be the first to make this important discovery. But he was unaware that he had already been forestalled by Dr. A. C. PAUES, who as early as the autumn of 1899 had come across the MS. She claims her right of priority in Anglia XXXI p. 256. In the same volume Heuser has printed from the poem *De Matre cum VII filiis*, *De Anthioco* and the first 48 lines of *Genesis*. He also

gives some notes on the dialect, the metre and the literary relations, which will be discussed later on in their proper places. Since the poem has thus been made known, it has been often mentioned and referred to by scholars. It is not necessary to quote all these passages; I will content myself with calling attention to a short account of the poem in WELLS: A Manual of the Writings in Middle English 1050—1400 (1916). His bibliography of the poem is, however, not exhaustive.

As to *MS. Selden Supra 52* the *Summary Catalogue of Western Manuscripts* in the Bodleian Library, which is a new edition by F. MADAN and H. H. E. CRASTER of the 1697 catalogue, gives the following description: »3440 (52) 3455. In English on paper written about the middle of the 15th. cent. 8 3/4×6 1/8 in., i + 240 leaves; binding: plain brown leather on boards, contemporary English work.» WELLS, op. cit. p. 398, puts its date at the beginning of the 15th century.

The leaves are collected into 'gatherings', each generally consisting of twelve leaves. The first gathering contains seven folios, and the second and the third ten folios each. At the end three leaves have been cut off.

The fly-leaves made of parchment are covered with a portion of a Latin 14th cent. hymnal. Some words are scribbled on the top of the recto of the end fly-leaf. The contents of MS. Selden Supra 52 are the following.

fol. 1 a. »Whos consciance be com*e*ryde and be not clene os oyd*e*r / men ded*e*s the wars thay wyll deme. Deme / note my dedys yf yours be noght; for deme / what yie deme wyll, yie knawe note my / tought.» (late hand). — »(3440) 52 Seld. supra» (late hand different from the former).

fol. 1 b. »The Historie of the Bible in old English verse »(the same late hand and ink as in the case of the name *Samuel Purchas*[1]) in the upper margin of fol. 2 a.)

fol.	2 a—	13 b.	Genesis
»	14 a—	16 a.	Exod*us*
»	16 a—	18 b.	Leuitic*us*

[1]) HEUSER, Anglia XXXI p. 3, reading *Samuel Parchar*, is probably right in supposing that this must be the name of a late owner. According to a note in the above-mentioned catalogue this *Samuel Purchas* was the well-known author who lived 1577—1626.

fol. 18 b— 21 a. Numeri
» 21 a— 25 a. Deuteronomij
» 25 a— 29 b. Iosue
» 29 b— 42 a. Iudicum
» 42 a— 44 a. Ruth
» 44 a— 69 a. Liber i:*us* Regum
» 69 a— 90 a. Liber ii:*us* Regum
» 90 a—110 b. Liber iii:*us* Regum
» 110 b—129 b. Liber iiii:*us* Regum
» 129 b—139 b. Iob
» 140 a—151 a. Thobie
» 151 a—155 b. Hester
» 155 b—162 b. Iudyth
» 162 b—167 a. De matre cum VII filiis
» 167 a—168 a. De Anthioco

»Foll. 172—239 contain thirty-four tales in verse of saints and monks, corresponding roughly to a prose festial. The first two begin:

'Of on narracion wyll I tell
That acordes now of to spell.
A monke yt was os I herd say
That was selerer in on Abbay'
— — — — — —

and

'It was a man ose I herd say
That to sant Jamys toke the way.'

A few late 15th cent. love-poems are on fol. i, 168^{v}—169.^{v}»[1]) —A specimen plate of the MS. is given on p. oo.

In MS. Supra Selden 52 (fol. 2 a—168 a) our poem seems to be complete, apart from the loss of one stanza occurring in **L**, and apart from occasional omissions of some line or other, due to inadvertency. The poem is written in stanzas, 1531 in number. As each contains or is meant to contain twelve lines, the whole poem originally embraced 18372 lines of poetry. Out of this vast number only the first 6000 lines (i. e. 500 stanzas) are published in the present work.

[1]) Cf. F. Madan and H. H. E. Craster op. cit.

The stanzas in our poem are written in six long lines (i. e. twelve lines of poetry), the writing usually reaching the right hand edge of the page. In the upper margin is sometimes written the title of the book of the Bible paraphrased. In the upper margin too, or on the right hand side of the pages, in the spaces left by the shorter lines, are sometimes written the names of the books of the Bible or the subjects dealt with. These have been duly noted in the transcription. The beginning of each stanza as well as that of each even line is generally marked. There are no numbers of stanzas or punctuation in this MS., and no Illuminator, Rubricator or Corrector have been at work.

Concerning *MS. Longleat 257*, there is no account extant in the owner's library according to a private statement made by the Marquis of Bath. The MS. is written on vellum, and dates from 1420 or 1422 at the very earliest.[1]) Its size is $8\frac{1}{2}\times 12$ in.: the binding is quite modern and very beautiful. Our attention is specially drawn to the big, very fine and elaborate capitals, painted in many colours and in excellent preservation. They are found at the beginning of each book of our text. There are also beautiful capitals painted in red and blue at the beginning of each stanza.

An account of the MS. is given by E. Kölbing, op. cit. p.. 203 ff., and for the sake of completeness I quote it here. He says, »Es lagen in dem MS. mehrere zettel von Bradshaw's[2]) hand mit notizen über den inhalt desselben, die ich in der hier folgenden beschreibung der hs. mit verwerthet habe. Namentlich habe ich auch seine zählung der blätter der hs. adoptirt. — — — — Der Inhalt ist folgender:

1. *Lydgate's Sege of Thebes*, fol. 1—48. [4 initial lines and 4 end lines quoted.]

Fol. 28 fehlt, ebenso 49—52.

2. *Arcite & Palamon*, fol. 53—77 a; fol. 68 fehlt. [4 initial lines and 4 end lines quoted.]

---

[1]) E. Kölbing and J. E. Wells date it from the end of the 14th or the beginning of the 15th century, but as among other things it also contains Lydgate's Sege of Thebes, written in 1420 or 1422, it cannot possibly have been begun before this date. In the first supplement to his work Wells, however, dates it from c. 1450.

[2]) The famous Cambridge Librarian. See Engl. Stud. V p. 211—214.

3. *Grisild*, fol. 77 b.—89 b., fol. 87 f. fehlen. [7 initial lines and 7 end lines quoted.]

4. *Ipomadon*, fol. 90—105, fol. 102 fehlt und ebenso fol. 106, das den schluss enthielt. Die einzige auf uns gekommene hs. der prosaversion, zum ersten male herausgegeben von mir in: Die drei englischen versionen der Ipomadon-Sage, p. 321—358.

5. fol. 107—110 sind theils leer, theils enthalten sie kleinere stücke von einer nachlässigen und späten hand eingetragen. fol. 108 ist aus versehen an das ende des bandes gesetzt. fol. 111—118 fehlen nach Bradshaw's angabe.[1])

6. *Exodus*, fol. 119—121. Der anfang fehlt. [8 initial long lines quoted].

7. *Liber Numeri*, fol. 122—125 a, z. 22 v. o. [6 initial long lines quoted.]

8. *Liber Deuteronomii*, fol. 125 a., z. 23—125 b., z. 6. (6 initial long lines quoted.]

9. *Liber Josue*, fol. 126 b., z. 7— fol. 128 a, z. 16 [6 initial long lines quoted]

10. *Liber Judicum*, fol. 128 a., z. 17— fol. 135 a., z. 14 [6 initial long lines quoted.]

11. *Liber de Ruth*, fol. 135 a., z. 15— fol. 136 a., z. 18 [6 initial long lines quoted.]

12. *Regum I—IV*, fol. 136 a, z. 19—fol. 187b., z. 34; fol. 145—148 fehlen[2]) [6 initial long lines quoted]; fol. 188 fehlt, war aber wahrscheinlich unbeschrieben.

13. *Liber de Job*, fol. 189 a— fol. 195, z. 12 [6 initial long lines quoted.]

14. *Liber Thobie*, fol. 195 a, z. 13— fol. 201 b. z. 8 v. u. [6 initial long lines quoted.]

15. *Liber Hester*, fol. 201 b, z. 6 v. u.— 204 b z. 16 v. o. [6 initial long lines quoted.]

---

[1]) These eight folios were collected into one gathering, originally bearing at the extreme bottom right-hand corner the signature *aj*, for fol. 119 has the signature *bj* and must therefore have been the first fol. of the second gathering, each gathering consisting of eight leaves.

[2]) Kölbing here overlooks the fact noticed by Bradshaw that also fol. 151, 154 and 155 are lost.

16. *Liber Judith,* fol. 204 b z. 18— 208 b u. [6 initial long lines quoted.]

17. *De matre cum VII: tem pueris,* fol. 209 a.—212 a. — — —

18. fol. 212 b enthält einige lat. zahlenangaben und ein recept *for the axes.* 6—17 gehören natürlich eng zusammen.» — A specimen plate of MS. **L** will be found on p. oo.

In MS. Longleat 257 our poem is far from being complete. This fact is due to the adverse fortunes of the MS,. which has lost several of its pages. In the MS. the poem begins at fol. 119 a, i. e. at l. 1473 (= stanza 123/9) and proceeds to folio 212 a, i. e. to l. 18372 (=stanza 1531), thus having the same end as MS. **S**.

In MS. **L**, too, the stanzas are written in six long lines, and the stanzaic division has generally been marked.

In the margin are given figures indicating the chapters of the Vulgate which correspond to the various parts of the poem.

Beside the Illuminator a Rubricator and a Corrector have also been at work on the MS. The former is responsible for the marginal rubrics which occur now and then, e. g. *hic vis Sampsonis destruxit ora leonis* on fol. 131 a. These have been duly noted in the foot-notes.

On several points the author differs from his ultimate sources, the Bible and P. Comestor's Historia Scholastica. In some cases a corrector has drawn the reader's attention to these divergencies, either by giving the correct Bible reading, or merely by warning the reader. Cf. stanzas 217/7—12, 337/4 and 402/10 with their notes, which have been given in the present work. Stanza 1227 begins in the following way:

To this men may ensaumple tell
and lightly lere, if it be late,
of the ritch man how it befell
and of the lazare that lay at his yate.

The story of the rich man and Lazarus is not mentioned in the Book of Job, and the corrector has taken due note of the MS. deviation, writing: *hic male fit mencio De Diuite et Lazaro.*

At stanza 1242 running:

And Innocent in erth is noone,
ne neuer was, ne neuer shal be

That did neuer greve bot good alloone
and mary, his modre, made fre.
And thou rekens thy self for oone
and makes the there as holy as he.
And we wot wele thou has misgoone
and greved thy god in sere degre.
Sith we have said the lang, —
and thou noo mis wolle amend,
ffare wele for we wolle gang;
vs list noo lenger lend.,

the corrector has written: *Nota contrariatur historie.*

Lazarus is again mentioned in stanza 1249, belonging to the Book of Iob:

Lorde lazare that lay logh as leid,
delved as the deid shuld be dight,
ffully foure days stinkand in that steid
and lokkyn fro all erthly light.

Here the corrector remarks: *Nota Digreditur ab historia.*

Against the contents of stanza 1255, reading:

When Iob had thus appertly prayde,
god, that is euer of mercy fre,
of his prayers was noght wele payde,
and vnto him all thus says he,
»Thy prayers Iob omys ar grayde
so forto make thy playnte on me.
I have herd all how thov has sayde
that I have doon grete wrang to the
To make thy penance more —
as the think in thy thoght —
Than thy werkes worthy were
that thou in worde has wroght.

the corrector warns the reader thus: *Caueat lector quia hic errat translator ut in plerisque alijs.*

CHAPTER II

THE RELATION OF THE MSS

What is the relation between the original poem and the two MSS., and the relation between the MSS. themselves? To begin with it is easy to state, in agreement with W. HEUSER, op. cit. p. 6, that neither MS. **S** nor MS. **L** is the author's own copy of the poem. This is proved by the number of incongruous rimes which occur, and of which the following may be given as evidence.

In MS. **S** are found e. g.: *more: wer* 16, *Canan: then* 35, *wott: debat: state: late* 66, *bryng: yong* 110, *syght: blythe* 128, *wyst: trest* 153, *lesse: gese: fresche: bytturnese* 156, *price: lese: wyse: deuyse* 193, *leued: hed* 216, *thynges: goueryng* 262, *hom: fall* 509, *meyne: phylysteyn: bene: were* 587, *be fore: born: morn: lorn* 692, *myne: sone: foyne: done* 763,, *lered: sword* 818, *qwennes: paynyms* 835, *was: past: has: has* 883, *wake: speke: take: cake* 944, *fun: sun: went: begun* 1021, *lay: payd* 1142, *myschefe: relesch* 1196, *monay: be* 1307, *gryme: qweyne* 1409, *syde: circumscised: hyd: glyd*, 1524, etc.

In MS. **L** we find e. g.: *doone: lent: sent: ment* 283, *fare: declare sore: here* 328, *dysdeyn: pleyn: hethyns: feyne* 414, *myght: wroght: soght: noght* 514, *wyst: trew* 632, *here: past: ere: thrast* 739, *myght: availe* 856, *meny: plente: fle: be* 960, *Sirrie: desire* 1036, *gave: ychoone* 1125, *wretyn: stele* 1215, *knew: daw* 1342, *spare: law* 1419, *Antiochus: vs: thus: must* 1510, etc.

We can further state that the two MSS. are independent of each other. MS. **S** cannot have been copied from MS. **L**, nor MS. **L** from MS. **S** since the hiatuses, which occur in these MSS., do not correspond. As instances of gaps in MS. **S**, not found in MS. **L** and proving that MS. **L** was transcribed from a MS. other than MS. **S** may be adduced e. g.: 148/11—12, 212/3—4, 519/7—8, 528/11—12, 570/5—6, 653/11—12, 689/1—12, 870/11—12, 910/7—8, 926/5—6, 1008/7—8, 1138/5—6, 1218/1—2, etc.

From the gaps in MS **L**. given below as instances and not met with in MS. **S** we may conclude that the latter MS. was not copied from the former: 164/7—8, 190/9—12, 716/12 (partly), 973/7 (partly), 1088/8 (partly). Apart from the loss of lines and stanzas due to missing leaves or inadvertent cutting off, there are very few lacunæ in MS. **L**, testifying to the carefulness of its scribe.

Next we are confronted with the question as to whether there are any proofs that the two MSS. have a source in common other than the original. In investigating the MSS. from the point of view of errors in common, proper allowance must be made for casual coincidences made by the scribes. When we are concerned with such coincidences in the choice of an erroneous word-form, it is impossible to decide whether the same form in both the MSS. has been put down by the scribes writing independently of each other, or whether it is due to a source in common, other than the original MS. Such doubtful cases are e. g.:

356/11 **S** *Sythyn* als þi self wold byde
L *Sithen* as thy self wolle byd

The original had, no doubt, *syn* or *sen*. The monosyllabic form makes the line metrically correct, and is well evidenced both in rimes and within the line. Cf. e. g. the rimes in **S**. *vermyne: fyne: soyne: wyne* **L** *vermyne* : *fyne syne: wyne* 145, *payn: lyne: syne*, adv.: *beniamyne* **L** *pyne: lyne: syne: Beniamin* 274. *Sene* is quite common, e. g. **S** 358/2, 587/10, 1439/5, 1442/9, 1447/9, 1481/1, etc.

The form *sythyn* is very common in both MSS., but is never used by the author in rimes. It may be mentioned that in MS. **L** the scribe very often uses the monosyllabic *sith* for *syn* or *sen*, e.g. 1439/5, 1442/9, 1447/9, etc.

358/10 **S** and fést yt whén he *sléped*
L and fést his hére whilst hé *dide slépe*

The rime-word is *depe*, and the verse consists here of three iambs only. Therefore the original apparently had the reading: *and fést yt whén he slépe*, *slepe* being OE. *slēop*, pt. of *slǣpan*. It is possible that a common source had *sleped* instead of *slepe*, an evidently archaic preterite, and that *sleped* was retained by MS. **S**, but changed into *did slepe* by MS. **L** (for the sake of the rime). But

it is equally possible that the two MSS. have replaced the pret. *slepe* independently of each other.

1287/9—12 **S** Als he lyft vp his eye *lyddes*
to loke agayns pe lyȝt,
hote fylth of swolows *byrdes*
fell down and lost his syȝt.
L as he lifted his een *lids*
to loke agaynes the light,
Hote filth of swalow *birds*
fell downe and loste his sight.

The original poem had the form *brids*. It is possible that *birds* occurred already in a common source of the two MSS., but this need not have been the case.

1450/3 **S** ser, mé *behouys* lýfe eftér my láw
L Ser, me *behoves* life after my law

The form *behouys/behoves* has been wrongly substituted for the shortened *bus*, which is required by the metre. That this was the author's own form is also proved by *bus* actually occurring in rimes, e. g. *bus* : *þus: deus: vs* 686, *bus*, 3 sg. pr. : *Antyocus: vs: þus* 1510/7. It is also quite common within the line, e. g.: 417/8, 567/4, 922/7, 1453/5 etc.

340/1—7 **S** *bade:* lede: stede: a dred
L *bad:* led: stoode: a dred

The original poem no doubt hade-rimes. Cf. stanzas 342, 672, where *bed,* pt. is found riming with words containing *ĕ*.

385/1—7 **S** *clene:* p a n y m: *be twen: wene*
L *clene:* p a y m e m: *betwene: wene*
401/1—3 **S** *phylysteyns:* p a y n y m s
L *Philistiens:* P a y n y m s
835/9—12 **S** *qwennes:* p a y n y m s
L *quenes:* p a y n y m e s

In these instances the forms should be *paynen(s)* or *payen(s)*. Cf. **L** 386/4, where the form *pathene* occurs.

The use of the form *paynym(es)* in the MSS., a frequently employed form in ME., may be due to a source in common, but equally well to chance.

389/9—12 **S** And fell þat *helcana*
with wyfe[s] and chyld[er] wentt
þar sácrafýce to *máke*
to gód with gúd entént
L It befell that *helchana*
with wyfes and childre went
Theire sácrifi'ce that dáy
to máke to gód with góode entént

The author wrote *to ma* riming with *helcana*. This Northern form *to ma* was possibly, but not necessarily, changed into *to make* in a source common to our two MSS. But in this way an incongruity arose, which, however, MS. **L** or one of its predecessors tried to avoid by adding *that day* and letting this expression rime with *helchana*. The erroneous *to make* of the common source was transferred to the following line, which thus got four stresses instead of three.

Let us now consider instances of such mistakes as occur in both MSS. and apparently are due not to the original, but to a copy in common, from which they have descended to **S** and **L**.

1. Mistakes, consisting in a *substitution of entirely different words* for those of the original, are e. g.:.

337/4 **S** thre hunderth fers *wulfes* from est and west
L thre hunderyth *wolves* fro este and west

Both the Vulgate and Comestor's Historia Scholastica have 'foxes'. And so have Middle English poems in general, e. g. Cursor Mundi and the Temporale, MS. Egerton 1993. The corresponding passage in an Old French biblical paraphrase, MS. C. C. C. Oxford 36, fol. 78 l. 21 b., runs, »*Il assembla treiz cenz gupilz salvages . . .*« It is therefore most probable that the word *wulfes* did not occur in the original, but has been wrongly substituted for *foxys*. If so, it originated or occurred most likely in a MS., from which both **S** and **L** have descended.

498/1—7 **S** *are:* s e r e: *whare: mare*
L *here:* s e r e: *where: more*

The rime-word *mare/more* proves that the original poem had the form *sare/sore*, and that in an intermediate MS. *sere* was wrongly introduced. Since *sere* is an entirely different word to *sare*, the occurence of *sere* in both MSS. is probably due to a common source.

588/10—12 **S** Dauid and his *Ebrews*
he honerd god all way
and fayged þe *phylysteyns*
L Dauid and his *Ebrews*
he honored god all way
and faged the *Philistiens*

The original rime-word no doubt was *cananews;* cf. stanza 299. This incongruous rime, occurring in both MSS., most likely descends from a common source, which must be an intermediate MS. and not the original.

709/2 **S** to fynd how fayr he was to *fyȝt*
L to knawe howe faire he was to *fyght*

The context requires *to syȝt*, which at one stage in the development of the MSS., must have been misread and erroneously altered to *fyȝt*.

2. The only certain instance of the same *omission of words* in both MSS. is the following:

797/1—4 **S** Sen god wold noyȝt gyf leue to me
at make his howse and haue my med,
bot sayd þou suld þe maker be
a lely lyf [*by*] his laws to lede,
L Sith god wold not gyve leve vnto me
to make his hous and have my mede,
Bot said thou shuld the makere be
and lely life [*by*] his lawes to lede

The context requires the reading [*by*] *his laws to lede.*

3. We also come across some cases, in which *the same addition* has been wrongly made in the MSS. The following examples drawn from various parts of the poem may be given.

299/9—12 **S** Séx ȝere góuernd Gépte Ebréws
and sáued þem fróm all ángers ýll
Both of phýlysteýns and cánanéws
and þén he dýed os wás goddes wyll.
L Sex yere gouerned Iepte Ebrews
and saved theym fro all angers yll
Both of Philisteyns and Cananews,
and then he deid as was godes wyll.

The last four lines of each stanza never contain more than three stressed syllables each. When, at a natural scanning, we find, as here, four stresses in both MSS.. we seem to be face to face with a corrupt reading, evidently due to a common source. It should, however, be noticed that the last four lines of the stanzas often present a freer structure in point of the number of the unstressed syllables of the thesis. We may therefore also read the lines mentioned with three stressed syllables, except in the case of the third line, which requires four stresses unless *Both* is left out.

Sex ȝére gouernd Gépte Ebréws
and sáued þem from all ángers ýll
(Both) of phylystéyns and cánanéws
and þen he dýed os wás goddes wýll.

We believe that the lines under consideration were meant to be scanned in this way and therefore were the actual wording of the author, except in the case of *Both*, which undoubtedly points to a common source, other than the original.

300/5 **S** Ten ȝ*ere* and XX ȝ*ere* aftur þan
gufernd a gud man hyȝt Abdon.
L Ten *yere* and twenty *yere* after then
gouernyd a goode man hight Abdon.

It is evident that one of the two ȝ*ere* (*yere*) should be cancelled. The occurrence of this incongruity in both MSS. is, no doubt, suggestive of a common source.

473/9—12 **S** he lede þem be þer law
and *gouernd þem* be goddes bydyng
All Ebrews, als þei ow,
honerd hym as þer kyng
L He led theym by their law
and *gouerned* by goddes biddyng.
All Ebrews, as theym aw,
honored hym as theire kyng.

From a metrical and contextual point of view *gouernd* (*þem*) is certainly superfluous (cf. *ánd by góddes bydýng*), so that the existence of this verb in both MSS. may point to a common source. But the case is somewhat doubtful, since *gouernd* may also be retained without detriment to metre and is not contextually impossible (*þem* is in any case unoriginal), i. e. *and gouérnd by góddes bydýng*.

1160/5—8 **S** þat Cyte was, als we here say,
so mekyll and so wyde of ways
þat vnethes *þat* any man *þat* may
a fote pase thrugh yt of thre days.
L That Cite was, as we here say,
so mych and so wyde of ways
That vnnethes *that* any man may
on foote pas furth it in thre days.

Here the metre and context do not require the second *þat* (nor the third *þat* in **S**). Cf. *pát vnéthes aný man máy*.

Above we have given a number of different kinds of mistakes common to both the MSS. Since not all of them can be due to casual coincidence, we must assume the existence of an intermediate MS., which contained at least the majority of them, and from which they have been handed down to **S** and **L**. Let us call this source $\mathbf{O}_2$.

We have seen that **S** and **L** have several deviations from the original in common. We shall now examine whether the MSS. do not on several points differ considerably from one another. Heuser says (op. cit. p. 5), »Beide hss. stimmen, wie bereits erwähnt, fast wörtlich überein; die ganz minimalen unterschiede beschränken sich fast nur auf kleine umstellungen innerhalb das verses, die den

sinn and das reimwort nicht berühren, und auf charakteristische ersetzung nördlicher Wörter des Bodl. Ms. durch gemeinenglische in dem Bath Ms.» Our investigation will show that this opinion is erroneous, and that on the contrary the MSS. in numerous instances present divergencies in addition to such deviations as imply a dialectal dissimilarity. It is these non-dialectal differences that we shall give here, not fully, however, but in a number sufficient to give an idea of the extent and nature of their divergency. This also means the decision of the genealogically important question as to which of the MSS. is nearest to the original.

Let us begin with such divergencies in the case of which **S**, but not **L**, deviates from the original.

1. As regards *the word-order* the MSS. show comparatively few differences. In **S** an erroneous alteration in this respect has been made for instance in:

364/7 **S** And *sóne* bóth his éyn pútt þei owt
L And bóth his éghen *sone* pút they oúte

For metrical reasons — the **S** line has five stressed syllables - the **L** line no doubt represents the original reading.

377/1 **S** Ruth was ryȝt fayr of *hyd and hew*
L Ruth was right faire of *hew and hyde*

The rime-words *hyd: abyde: tyde: syd* make it clear that *hew* and *hyd* have been transposed in **S**. A similar mistake is found in 513/7.

388/12 **S** bot þoo þat *furth frutt* broyȝt
L bot thó that *frúte furth* bróght
487/11 **S** þen þe *kyng was* well esed
L Then *wás the kýng* wele eásed
498/1 **S** The sprett þat I *of spake* are
L The wýked spírit that I *spáke of* hére

In these three instances especially metrical reasons make it highly probable that the word-order in **L** was the original one. The requirements of the metre are in general much better observed in **L** than in **S**.

1428/6 **S** and pray þer *all god weldand*
L and pray there to *god all weldand*
Here the context and metre, no doubt, require the **L** reading.

2. Transposition of lines is sometimes met with in **S**. In most cases correction has been made already in the MS. itself, but not always. We find, for instance, a mistake in stanzas 172, where ll. 4 and 6, and 1497, where ll. 9—10 and 11—12 have been transposed.

There is only one case of *transposition of stanzas* in **S**, the stanzas 746 and 747 having been transposed.

3. In a great many instances *substitution of words and word-forms* has taken place in **S**, where **L** has the correct reading. The following may be given by way of example:

349/6 **S** both ȝattes and *postrons* he puld hym tyll
L both yates and *postes* he pull hym tyll

The word *postrons*, meaning 'back-door', is erroneous and should be replaced by *postes*, as in **L**. Cf. Hist. Schol. col. 1288: Samson vero media nocte surgens, ambas fores apprehendit cum postibus suis, et sera, et in humeris suis portavit in verticem montis, qui respicit Hebron.»

351/5 **S** In *secrett* can a lady lend
L In *soreth* couth a lady lende

The **L** reading is correct. Cf. Hist. Schol. col. 1289: »Post hæc amavit Dalilam, quæ erat in monte Sorec.»

366/8 **S** on dedes þat dalyda hym *dyȝt*
L on dedys that Dalida hym *did*

The **S** scribe has made a mistake, since *dyȝt* is rimed with *byde* : *be tyde* : *hyd*.

374/10 **S** in þat land *led þer lyues*
L in that land *left theire lyfes*

The context seems to require *left*. Cf. Hist. Schol. col. 1293: »Tamen Josephus dicit quod pater accepit filiis suis uxores, et manserunt ibi decem annis, et mortui sunt ambo sine liberis.»

383/5 **S** Sone Boȝe gart summond *ilke certayn*
L Sone Booȝ made somond *all citeȝins*

We do not expect to find *certayn* here, since it has already been used as a rime-word two lines above, and a word is scarcely rimed with itself in the same stanza. The original line no doubt ran: *Sone Boȝe gart summond ilke cytezeyn.*

409/1 **S** Two *oxin* þat myȝt yt well weld
L Twoo *kye* that wele myght it weld

Instead of *oxin* we should put *kye*, for later on, 410/1, we find *kye*. Cf. also Hist. Schol. col. 1301: »et conjungetis *duas vaccas fetas*, quibus non est impositum jugum.»

413/10 **S** and *sold* þem mony *fold*
L and *fulyd* theym many *folde*

The context and the alliteration require the **L** reading.

429/10 **S** and sone when þei *be gane*
L and soone when they *begyn*

The author used the form *begyn*, riming with *Beniamyn*.

439/5 **S** þare of to *thre* Cetys he sent
L Therof to *sere* Citees he sent

The **L** reading should be preferred, for the number of the cities given in the Vulgate is more than three, and moreover the alliteration is spoilt by putting *thre* for *sere*.

456/7 **S** þer ware bot few with hym *to abyd*
L They were bot few that with hym *abid*

The rimes *kyd*, pt.: *dyd*, pt. : *hyd*, pt. require the preterite *abid* instead of the infinitive in **S**, and this should therefore be given preference to the **S** reading.

476/12 **S** wast all *þat* dose þe wrang
L waste all *elles* doos thou wrang

The context requires the reading of MS. **L**.

549/7 **S** he was wel [glad] his wrshepe to *wysch*

Instead of *wysch* we expect *wyn*, riming with *gedyn*, n. pr.: *Cephyn: kyn.*

630/5 **S** A fyrm *sewrty* þore þei fest
L A firme *fewtee* there they fest

It is very likely that the poet wrote *fewtee* instead of *sewrty*, the former word alliterating with *fyrm* and *fest.*

688/7 **S** þer myȝt no *thyng* amend his mode
L Ther myght noo *myrth* amend his moode

For *thyng* we should put *myrth*, since in the original *myrth* was no doubt meant to alliterate with *myght* and *moode.*

726/3 **S** And at all pepyll come to *þe*
L And that all the people shal turne the *vntyll*

The **L** reading is the correct one, as far as the rime-word goes.

866/5 **S** þen for to *wepe* he con be gyn
L Then forto *grete* he gun begyn
866/12 **S** *wepand* to god full sore
L *gretand* to god full sore

The forms *grete*, *gretand* are required by alliteration and were therefore probably the original forms.

949/1 **S** kyng Acab wuned in *israel*
L Kyng Acab wonned in *Ieȝerael*

In **S** *israel* has been substituted for the *Ieȝerael* of the original, which was the name of the town where Achab lived. Cf. Hist. Schol. col. 1383.

991/2 **S** wyn and oyle and *all in* store
L wyne and oyle and *alkyns* store

The context requires the **L** reading, which must have been the author's own. Analogous instances are:

987/2 **S** and honerd hym in *all his* wyse
L and honored him in *alkyn* wyse
1004/7 **S** he wás wele wárs in *áll* thýng
L He wás wele wárs in *álkyn* thíng

In the last two instances, also, the word *alkyn* suits the context, and in the latter case the metre, better than the corresponding expression used in **S**, so that, in all likelihood, it was the original wording of the poem.

1358/5 **S** Old Thoby asked of his sun *sone*
L Olde Thoby asked of his sonne *syne*

As the rime *dyne: wyne: sone: myne* shows, the author wrote *syne* instead of *sone*.

1391/2 **S** to susa soyȝt *mony wyf and knaue*
L to Susa soght *man, wife, and childe*

In **S** *mony* and *knaue* have been wrongly put for the original *man*, and *childe* as is clear from the context and the rime.

1409/10 **S** for greued, both gull and *gryme*
L for greved, both goole and *grene*

The rime-word *qweyne* shows that the author wrote *grene*, retained in **L**.

4. From the many *omissions of words* made in **S** it is evident that its scribe was not a very careful copyist. Out of the many errors either he or his predecessors committed in this respect the following are chosen by way of example:

340/8 **S** he tóyȝt þei súld *yt réw*
L he thóght they shúld *that ryot réw*

The line in **S** is incomplete, containing only three stressed syllables instead of the usual four, which we find in **L**. Consequently the **L** reading is the correct one, and we should add *ryot* to the **S** line, substituting *þat* for *yt*.

342/2 **S** bot *tréste* in góddes gráce
L bot *wéle he trústed* in gódes gráce

In order to make the **S** line complete, *wele he* should be put before *treste*.

397/1 **S** Now wyll we rede and *reherse*
L Now wolle we rede and *reherce ryght*

The rime requires the addition of *ryȝt* in **S**.

418/8 **S** Agáyns phylýsteyns *fáce*
L agáyns philístiéns, *oure fóes*

The **S** reading is defective, the metre requiring the expression *our fas.*

472/2 **S** *full món* for hým was mént
L *for mých moón* for hým was mént

The **S** line is short of one foot; it becomes correct by adding *mekyll* before *mon.* In **L** *mych* has been inserted above the line. This has been done afterwards by way of correction, the scribe apparently noticing the wrong number of stressed syllables. Or perhaps the MS., from which he copied, contained three stressed syllables only.

513/8 **S** how Samuel prophett *sayd*
L how Samuel the prophet *sayd certayne*

L contains the original wording, as is seen from the rime.

1059/2 **S** *his knýghtes* he cáld by náme
L *his kénest knýghtes* he cálled be náme.

The metre requires an additional foot in **S**, viz. *kenest.*

1365/7 **S** And *kyndly* his commawndment
L and *kyndly kepe* his comaundment

For metrical and contextual reasons *kepe* should be added in **S**.

5. The existence of *erroneous additions* made in **S** is more difficult to prove, since in many cases the metre, the only criterion for ascertaining this feature, varies a good deal. The following lines seems to me to have been made metrically too long in the course of the development of the **S** version.

337/4 **S** thre *hunderth fers wulfes* from est and west
L thre *hunderyth wolves* fro este and west

The adjective *fers* turns the line into a five-beat one and must therefore be regarded as a later insertion.

396/10 **S** *all way when* þei do o mysse
L *when* they doo of mys

In **S** *all way* has probably been added by a scribe, for it does not occur in **L** and is metrically and contextually superfluous. If we pronounce *áll way,* the word makes the line a four-beat instead of the

three-beat one required here. If we read *all wáy*, which is permissible, the metre remains correct (i. e. three-beat).

558/10 **S** þat *nón of þém* awáy was wún

The line, no doubt, originally ran: *þat non away was wun*. For a thesis of three syllables occurs only rarely in the last four lines of the stanzas (and hardly ever in the other lines).

579/1 **S** þen *grett* folke of cephyn had *grett* enuy

The first *grett* is no doubt to be cancelled, being an anticipation of the second *grett*, and spoiling both metre and context.

629/3 **S** lordes *of all þe land*, both lowd and styll,
L Lordes *of that land*, both lovde and styll

In the original there was no *all*, as is evident from the metre.

1062/1—2 **S** þen *bad* þe kyng [ga] grett plente
and *bad* þat þis fatur fast ware feld.
L Then *bad* the king goo grete plente
and fast that this fature were feld.

In **S** *bad* of the second line has been added by the scribe, wrongly repeating *bad* of the preceding line, as is proved by the metre.

1423/10 **S** suld *both þen with* hert and hend
L shuld *both with* hert and hend.

The metre does not require *þen*.

6. The *scribal errors*, met with in **S**, are very numerous, more numerous than in **L**. This fact may be due to great inattentiveness on the part of the **S** scribe or some of his predecessors in copying out the MS. This is more likely than that it was written at a later stage than MS. **L** in the development of the MSS., i. e. when a great number of mistakes had accumulated. The following instances are given by way of example.

330/8 **S** of all þis fare *to* hed to fette
L of all this faire *fro* hed to fete

The word *to* has been anticipated from the expression *to fette*. **L** has correctly *fro*.

349/9 **S** Phylysteyns *þen* hym hattes
L Philistiens *that* hym hates

The original had *þat* instead of *þen*, which the copyist anticipated from the following line. MS. **L** has correctly *that*.

351/3 **S** *All of* phylysteyns ware noyȝt his frend
L And thogh Philistiens wer not frend

The form *All of* is generally considered as a scribal error for *all if*. Though we have corrected the form in the edition of the text, we suspect that it actually existed as a phonetic variant, due to a blending of *all þof* and *all if*. For the word-form occurs more than once in our text (e. g. 462/4), in Morthe Arthure and elsewhere.

366/9 **S** Thrugh his *gyltry* was he
L Thurgh hire *gylry* was he

The word *gyltry* was most probably not the author's form. It is apparently a hybrid form, originating in the mixture of *gylt* and *gylry*.

497/6 **S** of *maystry* ay more and more
L with *mynstrelcy* ay more and more

The context requires the **L** reading.

498/5 **S** he sentt for feysyke full *wyld whare*
L He sent for Physeshans full *wyde where*

The expression *wyld whare* is absurd; the author, of course, wrote *wyde whare*.

583/4 **S** þe duke of hym *þe hethyng hade*

The original line no doubt ran: *þe heryng*. In **S** *hethyng* was anticipated from the following line: *And answerd hym os in hethyng*.

1058/7—10 **S** To stroy *þem* was his desyre,
bot with quantyse he wold hym quell.
he wyst a privay strayt
wher *Iordan* oft con gang

L to stroy *Ioram* was his desire,
bot with quayntise he wold hym quell.
He wist a privey strayt
wher *Ioram* oft gun gang.

The **S** scribe or one of his predecessors has made nonsense of these lines, which apparently should run as in MS. **L**.

1108/9 **S** he went to *ierusalem*
L He went to *Iezerael*

The rime [: *Iezabell*] requires the **L** reading.

1521/1 **S** all *marters* on þis mold þei myst
L All *mirthes* in this warld they mist

In **S** *marters* spoils the context and has apparently been anticipated from l. 8 of the same stanza. The **L** reading is no doubt original.

Let us now turn to the relation of MS. **L** and the original. The investigation will show that the alterations made in **L** are more numerous and far-reaching than in **S**. If there are dialectal changes in the latter, these are at any rate few and sporadic. In **L** on the other hand we shall find that the dialectal alterations are more radical and systematic; we shall discover a conscious attempt at substituting Midland forms for typically Northern words, forms which very often spoil the metre, the alliteration or the rime.

1. Inversion of the word-order has sometimes taken place in **L**, e. g.

637/8 **S** of byniamyns both *born þei wore*
L of Beniamins both *were they borne*

The rime-words *þore: more* show that **S** is original.

1469/4 **S** and þat þei both *on slepe had beyne,*
L and that they both *had bene on slepe.*

The rime-words are *teyne: cleyne*, so the word-order in **L** must be erroneous.

2. In a great many cases *substitution of words* has been made in **L**. Out of the numerous instances noted, the following have been chosen as typical:

329/1 **S** he lered hyr *fyrst* of þis lyon
L He lered hire *fast* of the lyon

As is clear from the context, *fyrst* is the original reading.

338/5 **S** þei sayd þei suld yt *qwykly qwytt*
L They sayd they suld hym *swyftly whyte*

In **S** *qwykly* and *qwytt* alliterate, and as alliteration is one of the characteristics of the poem, it is probable that *qwykly* is original.

344/1 **S** god was ay *bown his bale to bete*
L God was ay *sone his bale to bete*

The alliteration and the context require the **S** reading.

346/4 **S** þat made grett maysterys þem *a mell*
L that made grete maistres thaym *amang*

As the rime shows, **S** contains the original expression. A similar substitution of words is also found in the following stanzas: 354/4, 393/5, 398/8, 407/2, 482/7, 485/5, 502/1, etc. In a few cases **L** also has kept *o mell, a mell*, e. g. 591/1, 712/5.

348/12 **S** þat *gart* hym be yll greuede
L that *made* hym evyll greved

In the original no doubt *gart* and *greuede* alliterated. Cf. 352/12, 365/8, 369/7, 370/2, 408/1, 490/7, 507/2, etc., where *ga(y)r(t)* occurs in alliteration. In non-alliterative phrases also the Scand *gar(t)* in **S** corresponds to the native *make, made* in **L**, and it is very likely that **S** contains the original reading. Cf. however **L** 711/11, where no substitution has taken place:

S he *gart* þo men ylkon,
L He *gart* thoo men ychoon. —

361/5 **S** Bot leman, loke þou layne *þis lare*
L Bot leman, loke thou layne *that I the lere*

The rime and the metre prove that **S** is original. Similarly *law(e)* for *lar* 447/12, 496/9, 1419/12.

364/4 **S** forto haue done, os he *are* dyde
L for to haue doone, as he *before* did

For metrical reasons, since *before* spoils the rythm of the line, the **S** reading is to be preferred and looked upon as original. Similarly *here* for *are* 498/1.

386/2 **S** mone aftur com in *carpyng* clene
L monne after come in *sayng* clene

As in so many other phrases, so here too, the **L** scribe has overlooked the alliterative words — here: *com, carpyng* and *clene*, — which prove the originality of the **S** line, and replaced *carpyng*, of Scandinavian origin, by the English word *sayng*. Similarly 1003/2. Cf. however 309/7.

S And to hyr kynradyn *carped* he.
L And to hire kyndred *carped* he.

390/2 **S** aftur þer folke ware *fele* or fone
L after his folke were *many* or foone

S gives the correct reading, as is proved by the alliteration. Similarly 390/7, 423/5, 439/6, 470/12, 478/8, etc.

417/8 **S** *bus* redy come vnto his call
L *must* redy come vnto his call

It has been stated above that the northern form *bus* seems to have been characteristic of the original poem. Therefore, as we now find that in **S** *bus* corresponds to the **L** form *must*, we most probably are entitled to conclude that the former was the original. Similarly 417/10, 490/2, etc.

428/6 **S** so ylkon *cayred* wher þei come fro
L so ych oon *went* where they come froo

It is highly probable that *cayred* is original since it alliterates with *come*. Besides, the Scand. origin of *cayre* easily accounts for the use of the corresponding English word in **L**. Similarly 876/12, 886/1, 1321/1. But in 890/6 the original *care* has been preserved in **L**.:

vnto Ierusalem he cast to *care*
Abiam forto fell with fight.

430/10 **S** of breyd and heyghnes *als*
L of brede and highnes *also*

The rime requires *als*, which is chiefly a Northern form. (According to NED.)

436/8 **S** þei cowd not *wele* þe werse of [þ]o,
L they couth not *chese* the warst of thoo

To judge from the alliteration in **S**, this manuscript contains the correct reading. Besides, here is another case of a Scand. loan-word being replaced in **L** by its English correspondent.

456/6 **S** for ferd þen wold þei *found* no fare
L for ferd then wold they *goo* no fare

In **S** *found* alliterates with *ferd* and *fare*, and is therefore likely to have been original.

457/1 **S** hys *moyn* be messege can he *ma*
L His *man* this message *bad he say*

The rime-words are *Ionata: fra:Gabatha;* so it is evident that the phrase in **S** is the correct one. Moreover, it is also evident that the original poem contained the Northern form *man*. This *mān* 'moan' seems to have been misunderstood by the **L** scribe or one of his predecessors and apprehended as *mān* 'man'. This misunderstanding then caused the other alterations in **L**.

457/5 **S** And how his folke ware fled *hym fra*
L And how his folke wer fled *away*

The **S** reading is the correct one, since both rime and alliteration require *fra*.

463/10 **S** bot a strayt *sty* of stone
L bot a strayt *way* of stoone

MS. **S** no doubt represents the original, since *sty* alliterates with *strayt* and *stone*.

463/12 **S** by þat *gatt* ar þei gone
L by that *way* ar they goone

The alliteration and in some measure also the Scand. origin of *gatt* prove the originality of the **S** reading.

472/9 **S** vnto þer *places* playne
L Vnto their *palace* playne

For contextual reasons the **S** wording is to be preferred.

474/10—12 **S** *at home wonnand with wyn*
The ryȝt names of þoo
was *mycoll and merobyn*
L *which was full faire women*
The right Names was of thoo
Merob and Mychol

In **S** the first line is undoubtedly correct on account of the rime with *merobyn*; the second line originally read as in **L**; and l. 12 is apparently correct in **S**, apart from *was* (which originally belonged to the second line), but corrupt in **L**, as is proved by the rime.

478/5 **S** hee *redyd* all his reme to ryse
L He *comaunded* all his Reaume to ryse

The alliteration requires the form *redyd*, which therefore undoubtedly was original. Similarly 1454/12.

485/12 **S** in hert he was full *wa*
L with woofull hert that same *way*

The word *wa*, whose originality is proved by the rime, seems to have had the spelling *way* in the MS. copied by the **L** scribe or one of his predecessors, so as to induce him to apprehend *way* as meaning 'way' and to change the line accordingly. Similarly *say* in **L** for *ma* in **S** 457/1, *away* in **L** for *fra* in **S** 457/5.

488/4 **S** Agag þat euer *on dregh hym drogh*
L Agag that *sorow had wroght*

Metre, rime and alliteration prove the originality of the **S** reading.

582/8 **S** and ouer a *burn* þei con þem bere
L and ouer a *dale* they gun theym bere

On account of the alliteration, the word *burn* in MS. **S** is to be preferred.

587/7 **S** Bot now he *wott* withoutyn were
L Bot nowe he *knew* withouten wene

In **S** *wott* alliterates with *were*, so it is very likely that the poet wrote the former word. Similarly 585/8.

643 **S** *con: sum: flum*: *thrum*
L *cum*: *trwly: flume*: *cumpany*

The rime shows that in **L** *trwly* and *cumpany* are substitutions made by a later scribe.

649/12 **S** *to buske* or ellys to abyde
L to *passe furth* or byd abyde.

The **S** reading was probably original, since *buske* alliterates with *abyde*. Besides, *buske* as a Scand. loan-word was no doubt unfamiliar to some scribe of the **L** version and therefore discarded.

724/12 **S** *bud* vnto end be broght
L *it shuld so to* ende be broght

For metrical reasons, the line running more smoothly in **S** than in **L**, the former MS. no doubt contains the author's own expression. Moreover, *bud* and *broght* alliterate.

743/8 **S** bot euer he *drowped* and was drery
L Bot euer he *sorowed* and was drery

The alliterating words *drowped* and *drery* certainly belonged to the original poem. It should also be noted that *drowped* is of Scand. origin and therefore may have been unfamiliar to a scribe of the **L** version. Similarly 742/9.

998/10 **S** and *fánd* to ése his hért
L and *bésye thé* to eáse his hárt

For metrical reasons the **L** line containing four stresses instead of three, we must regard the **S** reading as the original one. Similarly 797/9, 1243/8.

1008/1 **S** Bot quen þe *gayre* was gudly *grayd*
L Bot when they *wer* all wele *arrayd*

Note that *gayre* alliterates with *gudly* and *grayd*. Similarly 888/5.

1038/2 **S** now wex he lyxsom of his *late*
L now waxt he lightsom of his *chere*

In **S** *late* rimes with *state: gatte: ȝatte* and is therefore to be regarded as original. On account of its unfamiliarity as a Scand. loan-word it was avoided in **L**.

1075/1 **S** vnto þe Cyte *rayked* þe ryȝt
L Unto that cite *yoode* they right

On account of the alliteration we have every reason to believe that the author wrote *rayked*, all the more as it was a Scand. loan-word and therefore unfamiliar to some scribe of the **L** version.

1179/6 **S** to gette hym leue *þis is no lese*
L to gete him leve *this eas to lese*

The author wrote *lese* s. 'lie', as is shown by the rime with words containing $\bar{e}$, viz. *prese*, s.: *encrese*, inf.: *sese*, inf. This word has been mistaken for the verb *lēse* in **L**, and alterations caused by this error have been made.

1380/7 **S** vs thynke þis *lake* is not layd
L Us think this *faute* is noght laid

The **S** line no doubt contains the correct reading, since here *lake* alliterates with *layd*.

1451/1 **S** And, ser, so sall I tell þe *tyll*
L and, ser, I shall tell the *a skill*

The context decidedly requires the **S** reading.

1503/4 **S** tyll he was ded *with doles sere*
L to he was deid *withoute fayle*

In **L** the rime is incongruous, so its reading must be rejected in favour of the **S** wording, which is correctly rimed with *fere: chere: sere*.

1507/7 **S** he lyft his hede *with outyn hone*
L He lift his heved *vp anoone*

In **S** *hone* 'delay', which is a typically Northern word, is rimed with *sone: bone*,s.: *done*, all of which contain close $\bar{o}$. In **L** *anoone* contains open $\bar{o}$. Therefore *hone* was no doubt the original reading. Similarly *boone* in **L** for *hoyne* in **S** 439/8.

1518/6 **S** of ȝond fals domysman *with his dray*
L of yond fals domesman *for oght that he may*

The **L** line contains to many syllables. This is in favour of the originality of the **S** phrase *with his dray*.

1522/6 **S** þat wold [not] *menske* his mawmentry
L that wold noght *honour* his mavmentry.

In **S** the word *menske* is original, since it alliterated with *mawmentry*. Moreover, here is another case of a Scand. loan-word being replaced in **L** by a more familiar word.

3. Erroneous additions have been made in the following cases:

458/11 **S** The kyng *more furth hym* melled
L The kyng *of moo thinges then* hym melled

It is evident for metrical reasons that the **L** line, which should only contain three stressed syllables, has been made defective by addition.

492/12 **S** *or þat* hyrdman be here
L *or the tyme that* hirdman be here

Metrical reasons prove that in **L** *the tyme* has been wrongly added.

4. The *omissions of words* occurring in **L** seem mostly to be unintentional. Bot now and then the reader believes he can trace an attempt on the part of the **L** scribe to avoid certain words and forms which were too strongly dialectal to be familiar to him or to his reading public. As examples of omissions the following instances may be adduced:

375/4 **S** for *of hyre fare* ware þei not fayn
L for *of hire* were they not fayne

Metre, alliteration and context go to prove that *fare* was written by the author.

471/11 **S** ffor luf *and als* for dred
L ffor luf *and* for dred

The omission of *als* makes the **L** line defective; it requires an additional stressed syllable.

517/8 **S** no mýrth *on móld* myȝt máke hyr glád
L noo mýrth myght máke hire glád.

As is proved by the metre, which requires four stressed syllables, *on mold* has been omitted in **L**.

600/1 **S** Dáuid wás *neuer áyre so wó*
L Dauid was *full of wo*

In **S** the original *ayre*, which is a Northern form, is likely to have been avoided intentionally by the L scribe or one of his predecessors. Cf. 1108/12.

1297/9 **S** ȝong toby was *fayn þan*
L yong Thoby was *fayne*

The rime-word is *man*. Therefore the **S** version is the original one.

1421/1 **S** when þei had so *dystroyd and strayd*
L when they had so *distroyd*

The rime and the metre prove that the words *and strayd* have been erroneously omitted in **L**.

5. Scribal errors in **L** are comparatively few in number. The following may be given by way of example.

369/11 **S** Bot þe *boy*, þat he can warne
L Bot the *body* that he gun warn

380/7 **S** Scho wyst of boȝe: wyf had *he* none
L She wyst of Booȝ: wyf had *ben* noon

413/7 **S** And þer fader, *for he was old*
L And theire fadre, *for he wold*

In these instances it is evident from the context that **S** contains the correct reading.

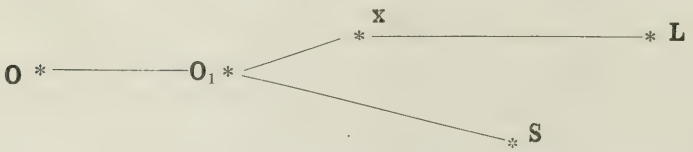
414/5 **S** Syr, þ[ou] semys sone to passe *hene*
L Ser, sone ye semes pas *for hethyns*

In **L** *for hethyns* is a scribal error for *fro(m) hethyn*. The rime-words require the **S** form.

473/6 **S** bo[t] *playn* pece in ylka place
L bot *pleuery* peace in euery place.

We have now accumulated sufficient material to be able to give a correct genealogy of the MSS. It has been proved above (p. x seq.) that neither of the two extant MSS. is the author's own copy, and that neither of them is the direct source of the other. Further, mistakes and errors of different kinds, common to both **S** and **L**, go to prove that both have originated from a common MS., which is not the poet's own. The alterations found in **S** seem to be due rather to lack of attention on the part of the scribes than to a conscious avoidance of rimes and readings unknown to their dialect. In **L**, on the other hand, the far greater number of more farreaching divergencies point to a definite attempt — like several other similar attempts in ME. — at transferring the original poem and its dialect into a form more familiar to Southumbrian readers. This attempt has not been made by the **L** scribe, but by one of his predecessors. For in the other works, preserved in MS. Longleat 257 and written in exactly the same hand, no effacement of dialectal features, such as we find in our paraphrase, can be traced. Thus each of the MSS. represents a distinct stage in the evolution of two manuscript-groups. Of these two groups the one represented by **S**, was nearer to the original both in dialect and wording and should therefore be made the basis of investigation into the poem.

The genealogy of the MSS. may be drawn in the following way:



O represents the author's own manuscript, $\mathbf{O}_1$ the common source of the two extant versions. Between $\mathbf{O}_1$ and **L**, **X** is that intermediate stage, where the substitution of Midland or Standard English forms and words for Northern ones must have been made or at least chiefly taken place.

CHAPTER III

THE PHONOLOGY OF THE ORIGINAL

A. The Vocalism of the Rimes.

In dealing with the stressed vowels of the original, we shall confine ourselves to the rime-vowels of MS. **S**. Only in so far as the forms in MS. **L** throw light on the original dialect, will they be taken into consideration. The investigation will cover all the different rime-words in the poem; when, however, the examples are more or less abundant, restriction will be made in the quotation of the figures, but not to such an extent as essentially to obscure an idea of the proportion between the numbers of the words. In this case an 'etc.' will indicate that all the quotations have not been given. From considerations of space the rime-words have only been quoted when they have been of special interest. For practical reasons it is advisable to start from the ME. vowels and arrange the material in small groups according to the origin of the different rime-words.

§ 1. *ME. ă.*

a) *OAngl. a + l + cons.*: *all*, 105, 443, 849, etc.; *with all*, adv., 682, 887, 1235, 1351; *als*, adv., 430; *be fall*, inf., 900, 1351, etc.; *calfe*, s. 164; *fall*, inf., 105, 144, 257, 915, 1158, etc.; *gall*, s., 1351; *halfe*, s. 164; *hall(e)*, s., 133, 144, 682, 699, 1380, etc.; *hals*, s. : als, 430; *stall*, s. and inf., 169, 431, 935, etc.; *wall(e)*, 154, 348.

b) *OE. ă before nasals* (except -nd and -ng): *ban*, pr. subj. and inf. : be gan, pt. : iordan, n. pr. : ⌣ : þen, 206; : man, s. : can, pr. : ⌣ : ran, pt., 1063, etc.; *began(e)*, pt. : Tubulcan, n. pr. : man, s. : ⌣ : then, 22; : þan: Aran, n. pr. : man, s. : ⌣, 33; : can, pr., 46; : man, s. : can, pr. : þan, 824; : woman: wan, pt. : con, pr. : ⌣, 1022, etc.; *can(e)*, *con*, pr. : be gane, pt., 46; : chanaan, n. pr. : þan : man, s., 110; : þen : be gan : Amasan, n. pr. : ⌣, 755, etc.; *man*, s., 22; : þan : Aran, n. pr. : ⌣ : began, pt. 33; : cane, pr. : chanaan, n. pr. : þan : ⌣, 110; : faran, n. pr. : þan : canan, n. pr., 173; : þen : wan, pt. : can, pr., 1001, etc. ; *mony*, pron. : any, pron., 80; *ran(e)*, pt. : be gane, pt. : then : wan, pt. : ⌣, 81 ; : þane : cane, pr. : man, s., 1018 ; : þan, 1048, etc; *þan(e)*, *þen*,

then, adv., 22; : Aran, n. pr. : man, s. : began, pt., 33; : cane, pr. : chanaan, n. pr. : ⌣ : man, s., 110; : madian, n. pr., 162; : man, s. : faran, n. pr. : ⌣ : canan, n. pr., 173, etc. ; *wan*, pt. : then : baran, a. : woman, s. : ⌣, 43; : can, pr. : ⌣ : faran, n. pr. : be gane, pt., 169; : þan, 964; : man, s. : þen : ⌣ : can, pr., 1001, etc.; *woman*, s. : then : baran, a. : ⌣ : wan, pt., 43 ; : wan pt. : con, pr. : began, pt., 1022.

In all these rimes we are concerned with *ă*-rimes only. This may also be true of the rime *mony : any*, since 'any' is the regular form in Northern English. But this rime may also be apprehended as an *o*-rime, since 'mony' is the normal (but not exclusive) form in Northern English and 'ony' is also met with in this dialect; cf. W. Heuser, Anglia 31.

In the rimes *Canan* : *then*, 35,108 and *then* : *rane*, pt., 81 we have the OE. doublet *þænne* in its stressless use instead of *þan*.

c) *OE.* (*e*)*a* + *rm* : *armes* : *harmes*, 464.

d) *OE.* *ă*: *asse*, *nase*, s., 20, 147, 342, 476, 1076; *farn*, *faryn*, p. p. : warn, inf. : ⌣ : barne, s. : tharn, inf., 112; : tharne, inf., 176.

e) *OE.* *ǣ*: *bad*(*e*), pt., 71, 305, 468, 517, etc.; *bras*(*s*)*e*, s., 199, 505, etc.; *fast*, a. and adv., 94, 147, 469, 484, 485, 620, 686, 708, 710, 770, 839, 880, 893, 983, 1195, etc.; *glad*(*e*), a., 71, 278, 305, 517, 627, 1057, 1334, etc.; *glas*(*se*), s., 91, 505; *had*(*e*), pt., 305, 468, 517, 896, 1057, 1334, etc.; *has*(*s*)*e*, *has*, *hays*, *hath*, pr., 73, 91, 98, 142, 147, 604, etc.; *last*, a. and adv. [ONorth. *lǽteste*], 176, 620, 971, 1195, etc.; *sade*, a. and adv. : glade : rade, a. : ⌣ : hade, pt. 305; : hade, pt. : lade, s. : rad, a. 583; : made, a., 742, 896, etc.; *small*, a., 105, 169, 443, etc.; *whalle*, s. : fall, 1158 ; *was*, pt., 20, 37, 98, 104, 147, 469, 1076, etc.

f) *ME.* *ă*: *lad*(*e*), s., 583, 1252, 1520 ; *las*, s., 'lass', 37; *sperre*, s. [cf. NED. s. v. *spar*, sb.[1]] : marre, inf. 1399.

g) *Shortened OE.* *ăa* + *rn*: *barne*, s. 112, 233, etc. ; *warn*(*e*), inf., 112, 233, etc.

h) *Shortened OE.* *ǣ*: *any* : mony, 80; *aga*(*y*)*st*, a. : past, p. p. : fast, adv., 94; : fast, adv. : cast, p. p. : brast, pt. : ⌣, 880, etc.; *last*, inf. [OE. *lǣstan*] : fast, adv. : kast, p. p. : ⌣ : ouerpast, p. p., 147; : fast, adv. : cast, inf. : a gast, a. : ⌣, 469; : vmcast, p. p. : past, p. p. : fast, adv., 480; : fast, a., 484; 565; : kest, p. p. : ouer past, p. p. : fast, adv. : ⌣, 770; : past, p. p. : ⌣ : fast, a. : vmcast, p. p., 839, etc. ; *last*, pt., 147, 871; *made*, a. [OE. *ȝemǣd*(*e*)*d*] : sad, a. 742.

As to the rime *any*: *mony*, 80 cf. above.

i) *OE ĕa + l* : *brydall* [<OE. *brȳdealo*], 318; *sall*, pr. [OE. *sceal, scæl*], 152, 257, 629, 1351, etc.

The auxiliary *sall*, sg. and pl., occurs in our text riming also with *ā*. Cf. p. LII.

j) *OScand. ă* : *brast(e)*, *brayste*, pt., 880, 1195, etc.; *call*, s. and vb., 105, 108, 915, etc.; *cast*, *kast*, inf., 469, 971, etc.; *cast*, *kast*, pt., p. p., 147, 657, 686, 871, 873, 880, 983, 1195, etc.; *vmcast*, p. p., 480, 839; *stad*, *sted(e)*, p. p. [OScand. *staddr*], 180, 896, 1020; *tharn*, *þarn*, inf. [<OScand. *þar(f)na*], 112, 176.

Side by side with *cast* we find *kest*, the rimes of which will be found on p. XLII. LUICK no doubt gives the correct explanation of the form *kest* in HGE. (p. 384), »Neben *casten* erscheint in den verschiedensten Gegenden auch *kĕsten* (gelegentlich *keasten* geschrieben), weil aus dem prät. *caste* nach dem Muster von prät. *laste*, präs. *lēsten* »dauern» (§ 363 Anm. 6) ein *kēsten* erschlossen wurde.» — Thereupon this *kesten* was inflected like *kasten*, and we obtained the pa. pple. *kest*.

The form *sted(e)*, p. p., which we find in the rimes *bad*, pt. : *sted* : *hade*, pt. : *glad*, a., 517 and *stede*, p. p. : *rade*, a., 180 is native. Cf. the early ME. vb. *stüden*, *steden* f. OE. *styde*, *stede*, s.

k) *early ME ĕ* from various OE., OScand., and other sources + r, which later on passed into *a*: *far(r)e*, *fer(r)e*, adv. [OE. *feorr*] : nere, 409; : marre, inf. : scarre, inf. : arre, pr., 602; : marre, inf., 605; : Abnarre, n. pr. : marre, inf. : arre, pr., 618; : warre, comp., 854; 875; : erre, pr. : merre, inf. : ⌣ : werre, comp., 900 ; : warre, comp., 907; : spare : are, pr. : marre, 1017; : warre, comp., 1148, etc.; *mar(r)e*, *mere*, inf. [OE. *merran*], 132; : ferre : Abnarre, n. pr. : ⌣ : arre, pr., 618; : nare, 'near', 631; : nerre : werre : Ader, n. pr. : ⌣, 841; : werre, 888; : warre, 979; : sperre, s., 1399, etc. ; *nare*, *ner(r) e*, adv. : ferre, 409; : werre, comp. : Ader, n. pr. : marre, inf. 841; 875; *scarre*, inf. : marre, inf. : ferre · ⌣ : arre, pr., 602, etc. ; *spare*, vb. [cf. MDu. *sperren*] : ferre : ⌣ : are, pr. : marre, inf. 1017; *war(r)e*, *werre*, comp. : marre, inf., 132; : marre, inf. : were, pt. : fere, adv. : ⌣, 509; 839, 854, etc.

l) *Shortened OScand. ā*: *thrall*, *thrale*, s., 318, 417, 1235; *rad(e)*, a. 'afraid', 180, 305, 583, etc.

m) *AN.* or *OF. a*: *alas(e*): passe, inf. : ⌣ : was : nase, s., 20; : was, 222, 1076, etc. ; *charge*, s., 735; *large*, 735; *metall*, s., 900, 915, 1126, etc.; *pas(s)e*, inf., 20, 85, 91, 142, 147, 966, 1076, etc.; *past*,

ouerpast, pt., p. p., 94, 147, 480, 485, 657, 708, 839, 871, 983, etc.; *trespas(s)e*, s., 104, 199, 469, etc.; *trespast*, p. p., 445.

n) *AN.* or *OF. ai : baran*, a. : then : ⌣ : woman : wan, pt., 43 ; *palas*, s. : has : pase : was, 998.

As to the change of AN. *ai* > *a* through loss of stress, characteristic esp. of Northern Engl., see LUICK, HGE., § 466,4. Then this *a* could be stressed owing to the accentual vacillation in OF. loan-words. Cf. *ordand* p. LVI.

o) *Foreign proper names: abessan*, 300; *Abias*, 871; *Abnarre*, 618; *Acab*, 955, 981; *achias, Achyas*, 472, 837; *Adan*, 246, 1146; *Ader*, 841; *Aman*, 1387, 1405; *Amasan*, 755; *An*, 1357; *Aran*, 33; *Beall, b-*, 915, 1126, 1133; *benedab*, 955, 981; *Cana(a)n, Chanaan, c-*, 35, 108, 110, 173, etc.; *Cephoram*, 136; *datan*, 185; *faran*, 169, 173; *gad*, 776; *gersam*, 136; *howade*, 278; *Io(a)cas*, 1135, 1141; *Ioas*, 1129, 1135, 1141; *Ionatas*, 501, 604, etc.; *Iordan, iorda(y)n*, 206, 259, 1039, etc.; *Iudas*, 85, 91 1092, etc.; *machias*, 966; *madian*, 162; *Naas*, 435; *nabad*, 896; *Naman*, 1039, 1053; *nat(h)an*, 662, 751; *Noball*, 567; *Obedyas*, 927; *occoʒias*, 1106; *Satanas*, 1092; *Tubulcan*, 22.

All these foreign proper names occur only with short *ă* in the riming syllable.

§ 2. *ME. au* or *a before nasals in French loan-words.*

AN. au + n + cons. or *OF. ă + n + cons.* riming with itself : *chaunce*, s., 432, 927, 1111, etc.; *dystance*, s., 1355; *gouernaunce*, 432, 461, 1355; *mys(e)gouernaunce*, s., 739, 1237, etc.; *graunt*, inf. : *hawnt*, inf., 694; *myschaunce, myschawnce*, 198, 739; *repentance*, s., 680; *sustinance*, 927; *veniance, venga(u)nce*, 198, 680, 1111, 1237.

Concerning the ending phoneme AN. *-aund* or OF. *-ănd* riming with the ME. ending phoneme *-and*, see p. LVI.

§ 3. *ME. ĕ.*

a) *OE. e*: *bed(e)*, s., 71, 518, 694, 807, 995, 1095, 1157, 1357, etc.; *bell*, s., 482; *bent*, s., 1528; *bent*, p. p., 1478, 1482; *best*, superl., 67, 319, 365, 521, 630, 678, 1000, 1055, etc.; *brest*, inf., 369; *clerkes*, [OE. *clerec, clerc* + OF. *clerc*] s. pl., 6, 122, 859, etc.; *depest* : best, superl. : rest, s. : fest, p. p. : ⌣, 1055; *delue*, inf., 121, 774; *den*, s., 465; *dwell*, inf., *dwel(le)s*, pr., 36, 55, 78, 177, 381, etc.; *el(le)s, ellys*, adv., 78, 381, 763, etc.; *ete, eytt*, inf. : sett, pt. : ⌣ : flett,

s. : dette, s., 30; : dett, s. : sett, p. p. : ⌣ : mett, s., 1494; : threttt, pt. : ⌣ : sett, p. p. : bett, p. p., 1498; *etyn*, p. p. : gettyn, p. p., 1078, 1118; *euyn*, a. and adv., 31, 100; : steuyn, s. : heuyn : neuyn, 177; : neuyn, 428; 989, 1385, etc.; *vn euyn*, a., 1324; *fell*, inf., *fell(es)*, s., 86, 407, etc.; *fen(e)*, s., 721, 1235; *fett(e)*, vb., 331, 719, 723, 1121, etc.; *flett*, s., 30, 490; *freke*, a., 553, 1424; *fresche* [< OE. *fersc* + OF. *freis*], 156, 158, 1004, 1268; *hell*, s., 20, 187, 730, 1094, 1502; *hent*, inf., pt. and p. p., 6, 60, etc.; *lengh*, s., 647; *lent*, vb., 6, 9, 872, etc.; *lett*, s. [< OE. *lettan*, inf.], 429, 826; *lett*, vb., 205, 421, 478, 490, 524, 620, 887, 919, 928, 1080, etc.; *men(e)*, s. pl., 102, 327, 721, 851, 1439, etc.: *mett*, s. [OE. *ȝemet*], 524, 1494; *mett*, p. p., 9, 331; *neke*, s. 'neck', 115, 1424; *bytturnese*, 156; *doyghtynes*, 512; *drynes*, 928; *fayrnese*, s., 1438; *for gyfnes*, 565, 1265; *gudnes(e)*, 387, 670, 1182, etc.; *kyndnese*, 260; *liknes*, s., 11; *meknese*, 512, 1162; *ryȝtwysnes*, *ryghtwysnes*, 1236, 1256; *sekeness*, 1043; *suthness*, 1037; *swettenes*, 323; *wodnese*, 1037; *wyldernese*, 158, 542; *wy(t)t(e)nese*, 568, 1294; *nest*, s., 319, 1287; *nett*, s., 548; *qwell*, inf., 123, 530, 1400, etc.; *reke*, inf., pr. [OE. *reccan*] : beke, s. : freke, a. : Abymaleke, n. pr., 553; : abymalech, n. pr. : freke, a. : neke, s., 1424; *rent*, p. p., 486, 855, 1036; *rest*, s., 319, 765, 1055, etc.; *schell*, s., 1196; (*to*) *schent(t)*, *shent* pt., p. p., 84, 117, 401, 903, etc.; *hym-*, *his self(e)*, 82, 630, 644, etc.: *þi self*, 476, etc.; *sell*, v., 68, 323, 1016; *sent(t)*, vb., 9, 60, 93, 117, etc.; *sett(e)*, *seytt*, inf., pt. and p. p., 9, 30, 205, 316, 490, 601, 826, 919, 929, 1121, 1488, 1494, etc.; *vm sett*, p. p., 1080, 1482; *spell*, s., 400; *stede* s. and vb. : bade [OE. *bēad*, pt.] : lede, p. p. : ⌣ : a dred, p. p., 340; : led, p. p. : wede, inf. : bed, s., 518; : led, pt. : spred, p. p. : a dred, a., 592; : lede, pt., 599; : drede, p. p. : spred, p. p. : fed, p. p., 682; 694, 804, 995, 1157, 1277, etc.; *steuen*, *steuyn*, s., 31, 177, 642, 989, 1385, etc.; *strengh*, s., 647; *swelt*, inf., 'perish', 614; *tell*, inf., *tels*, pr., 78, 90, 454, etc.; *treyst*, inf. (most probably native; f. OE. **trȳstan*[1])) : best, superl. : kest, p. p. : prest, p. p., 678; *twelfe*, *XII*. 82, 121, 630, 644, etc.; *wed*, s., 536; *wed(e)*, vb. 'marry', 63, 316, 518, 807, 1357, etc.; *well*, s., 23, 177, 553, 1456; *wemen*, s. pl., 374; *went(t)*, vb., 6, 18, 50, 95, etc.; *were*, s. 'man', 1271; *werest*, superl., 1287; *west*, s., 67, 765, 972, 973, etc.

It is worth noticing that *ete*, inf., is sometimes rimed with short *ĕ*, as, at least in Northern English, the lengthening of the vowel in an open

[1]) Cf. E. Björkman, »Zur dial. Provenienz der nord. Lehnwörter im Engl.» in Upsala Universitets Årsskrift 1898.

syllable has not always taken place before *t*. Cf. STRANDBERG: The rime-vowels of Cursor Mundi, p. 143.

b) *OE. æ* (or *e*) : *fest*, vb., 391, 630, 1000, 1055, etc.; *nesch*, a., 1481; *rest*, vb., 67, 1042, etc.; *þen*, *then*, adv., 109, 118, 175, etc.; *was* (for *wes*), pt. [OE. *wæs* unstressed] : wyldernese : fresche : gresse, 158, 324; *when*, *qwen*, conj., 150, 993.

c) *OE. ē*, *ēo* when shortened: *bett*(*e*), pt., p. p. [the weak forms no doubt started from ME. *bēt*, pt. sg. from OE. *bēot*, pt. of *bēatan*] : geyte, inf. : dette, s. : hette, pt., 736; : thrett, pt. : ete, inf. : sett, p. p., 1498; *bett*, p. p. : fett, p. p., 1503; *bled*, p. p. : bed, s. : ⌣ : fede, p. p. : led, pt., 1472; *bred*, p. p. : led, pt. : ⌣ : bed, pt. : fled, pt., 672; : wede, inf. : ⌣ : sted, p. p. : dred, pt., 1336; *fede*, pt., p. p. [OE. *fēdan*] : bed, s. : Adrede, p. p. : cled, pt. : ⌣, 71; : lede, p. p., 151; : beyd, pt., 319; : drede, p. p. : spred, p. p. : sted, p. p. : ⌣, 682; : a dred : bed, s. : sted, p. p. : ⌣, 694; 1227, 1425, etc.; *fell*, pt., 6, 23, 36, 522, etc.; *be fell*, pt., 43, 86, 90, etc.; *fled*(*e*), pt., p. p. [weak form of *flē*, inf. <OE. *flēon*], 237, 342, 464, 672, 804, 877, 1095, 1157, etc.; *grett*(*e*), pt. [OE. *grētan*, inf.], 309, 639, etc.; *grett*(*e*), pt. 'wept', 117, 549, 929, 1080, etc.; *hett*(*e*), pt.,p. p. : geytt, inf. : mett, pt. : sett, inf., 293; : thrett, pt. : mett, pt. : ⌣ : sett, inf., 601; : geyte, inf. : bette, p. p.: dette, s. : ⌣, 736; : mette, pt. : lett, pt. : dett : ⌣, s., 886, etc.; *leuer*(*e*), comp. : euer, adv., 1082, 1385, 1488; : neuer, adv., 1523, etc.; *mett*(*e*), pt., p. p., 117, 293, 316, 421, 478, 549, 601, 620, 826, 887, etc.; *sped*(*e*), pt., p. p., 523, 804, 1357, etc.; *ten*, num. [OE. *tēn*, unstressed], 109, 118, 747, 893, etc.

d) *OE. eo*: *derke*, a., 1343; *eleuyn*, *aleuyn*, 100, 192; *ferr*, comp. [OE. *feor*(*r*)], 335; *hert*, s., 998, 1302; *heuyn*, *heuen*, s., 7, 31, 157, 177, 989, 1385, etc.; *lene*, inf. : þen : kene, inf. : ⌣ : men, s., 1439; *seuyn*, *seuen*, *VII*, num., 31, 62, 81, 835, 1385, 1481, etc.; *werk*(*es*), s., 6, 106, 331, etc.

The word *leuyn*, s. 'lightning' : euyn, a. : steuyn, s. : neuyn, inf., 306, 642, etc., is of obscure origin. Cf. N. E. D. s. v. *Levin*.

e) *OE. ēa* ‡ when shortened in ME.: *bed*(*e*), *beyd*, *bade* (for *bed*), pt., p. p. [the weak forms no doubt started from ME. *bēd*, pt. sg. from OE. *bēad*, pt. of *bēodan*] : fede, pt., 237, 319; : fled, pt., 342; : led, pt. : bred, p. p. : ⌣ : fled, pt., 672; : rede, p. p., 678; : red, pt. : ⌣ : cled, p. p. : fed, p. p., 1425, etc.; *thrett*, pt. : mett, pt. : hett, pt. : sett, inf., 601; : ete, inf. : sett, p. p. : bett, p. p., 1498; *reft*, p. p. : left, pt.,

1167. In the rimes *berme*, s. [OE. *bearm*] : *herme*, s. (OE. *earm*) 'arm', 92, *-er* is only inverted spelling for the phoneme *-ar*.

f) *OE. ēa* when shortened in ME.: *cled*,[1]) pt., p. p., 71, 1425, etc.; *vn cled(e)*, p. p., 464, 1455; *delt*, pt., 614; *euere*, adv. : neuer, 51; : leuere, comp., 1082, 1385, etc.; *flesch*, s. : fresch, a., 1004; : prowes, s. : ryches, s., 1030; : ryches, 1195; : nesch, a., 1481; *led(e)*, pt., p. p. [of OE. *lǣdan*], 63; : fede, p. p., 151; : sted, p. p. : wede, inf. : bed, s., 518; : spred, p. p. : a dred : sted, p. p., 592; : sted, p. p., 599; 672, 877, 995, 1227, etc.; *left*, pt. : reft, p. p., 1167; *les(s)e*, comp. : expresse, 65; : gese, inf. : fresche, a. : bytturnese, s., 156; : kyndnese, s., 260; : gudnese, s. : processe : expresse, 387 ; 512, 542, 568, 726, 928, 984, 1037, 1162, 1182, 1221, 1236, 1256, 1265, 1268, 1303, 1361, etc.; *ment*, vb., 58, 65, etc.; *neuer*, adv. : euere, 51; : leuer, a., 1523, etc.; *spred*, pt., p. p. : dred, p. p. : sped, p. p. : bede, s.: ⌣ , 523; : led, pt. : ⌣ : a dred : sted, p. p., 592; : drede, p. p. : ⌣ : sted, p. p. : fed, p. p., 682.

g) *OAngl. ē* (WSax. *ēa* or *īe*) when shortened: *a dred(e)*, *drede*, pt., p. p.: bed, s.: ⌣ : cled, pt.: fede, p. p., 71;: wede, inf., 316;: bade, pt.: lede, p. p.: stede, p. p.: ⌣, 340; : sped, p. p.: bede, s.: spred, pt., 523; : led, pt.: spred, p. p.: sted, p. p., 592;: spred, p. p.: sted, p.p.: fed, p. p., 682;: bed, s.: sted, p. p.: fed, p. p., 694; : lede, pt.: sted, p. p.: bed, s., 995, etc.; *red(e)*, pt., p. p.: bede, pt., 678; : sted, p.p.: sped, pt.: fled, pt., 804; : sted, p. p. : bed, s.: fled, p. p., 1157;: bed, pt.:. cled, p. p.: fed, p. p., 1425, etc.; *ȝett* [OAngl. *ȝēt*; WSax. *ȝiet*] adv.: sett, p. p., 824; 1015.

h) *OScand. e: a mell, omell*, prep. and adv., 36, 68, 80, etc.; *beke*,[2]) s., 553; *brent(t)*, *brynt(t)*, *breyn(t)*, pt., p. p., 58, 165, 401, etc.; *es*,[3]) 'is', 3 pr. sg: prowesse, 512; *ys*, 3 pr. sg. : lesse, a., 542
: swettenes, 323 : forgyfnes, 565
: drynes, 928 : gudnes, 670
: sekenes, 1043 : lese, a., 984, 1303
: gudnese, s.: ryches, s.: lese, comp. : lese, comp., 1182
ese : lese a., 1361 *is* : ryghtwysnes, 1261
: ryches, s., 868
: lese, a., 1256.

[1]) As to the derivation of *clede*, see Palæstra, XV p. 91 foot-note.

[2]) From OScand. *bekkr* + OE. *bece*, s. 'brook'.

[3]) The form *es* should here most probably be apprehended as a Scand. loanword (ON. *es*) and not as a modification of OE. *is*.

These rimes show that in the author's speech *es*, 3 sg. pr., was the normal form, as in the North of England.

gert, p. p., 998; *ge(y)st*, s., 365, 505, 938, etc.; *get(te)*, *geytt*, inf. : hett, pt. : mett, pt. : sett, inf., 293; : forfeytt, pt., 481; : bette, p. p. : dette, s. : hette, pt., 736; : sett, inf. : mett, p. p.: lett, s., 826; : dett, s. : lett, p. p.: sett, p. p., 919; : lett, inf.: sett, p. p.: grette, pt., 928; : dett, s., 1014, etc.; *gettyn*, p. p. : etyn, p. p., 1077, 1118; *gre(s)se*, s., 158, 1418; *kest*, *kast*,[1]) pt. : west, s. : ⌣ : rest, inf. : best., a. 67, 319, 337, 347, etc.; *ken(e)*, inf., *kene(d)* pt., 109, 327, 622, 721, 1439, etc.; *merke(s)*, *marke*, s. and inf.: werke(s), s., 331, 794, 859, 1309; *neuyn*, inf. : heuyn, 7; : steuyn : heuyn : euyn, 177; : leuyn : euyn : steuyn, 642; 989, etc.; *qwerte*, s. 'rest', 1302, etc.; *seke*, s. 'sack', 115; *werre*, comp., 335.

i) *ME. ĕ*: *ge(y)se*, inf. [as regards derivation see N. E. D.], 11, 156; *smell*, s., 1328.

k) *OE. y : ment*, s. [prob. f. OE. *gemynd* ; cf. ME. 'to be on ment' and OE. 'beon on gemyndum'] : entent, 64.

l) *AN.* or *OF. e : Amen*, 223; *(arch-)angell*, 6, 1318, 1349, etc.; *a(s)sent*, s. and vb., 6, 58, etc.; *attent*, 9; *buschement*, s., 655; *castell*, s., 958; *catell*, 36, 1369; *cheke*, s., 289; *commawndment(es)*, s., 286, 872, 885, 911, etc.; *conuent*, *couent*, s., 557, 786; *cruell*, 203; *cypresse*, s., 823; *dam(i)sell*, 62, 780, 1032, etc.; *det(te)*, s., 30, 88, 723, 736, 887, 919, 1014, 1080, 1494, etc.; *dystre(y)s(se)*, s. and vb., 1037, 1182, 1236, 1268, 1418; *entent*, s., 64, 65, 84, etc.; *experiment*, s., 143, 284; *expres(s)e*, 65, 387, 1236, 1256, 1268, 1438, etc.; *fell*, a., 203, 892, etc.; *firmament*, 9, 1488; *forest*, 546; *gent*, a., 955; *Innocent*, a., 1223, 1229, etc.; *iugment*, 95, 681, 820, etc.; *mell*, vb., *mels*, *mellys*, pr. 54, 78, 381, etc.; *mesell*, 172, 1033; *oyntment*, s., 489; *payment*, 117; *pelfe*, 476; *presence*, 1026; *present*, s., 132, 140, etc.; *prest*, pt., p. p., 546, 630, 678, 972, etc.; *proces(s)e*, 387, 542, 1418; *prophet*, s. : forfett, p. p., 910; *prowes(s)e*, s., 512, 1030; *rebell*, s., 1154; *releschest*, p. p., 1163; *rent*, s., 382, 383, 1007; *repent*, pt., 183, 1092; *ryches*, s. 1030, 1182, 1191, 1195, 1221, 1265; *sell*, s. 441; *serpent*, s. 18, 140, etc.; *spence*, 1026; *tent*, s. and vb., 50, 58, 140, 183, etc.; *tent*, s., 'portable shelter', 596; *turnament*, s., 559; *t(o)urment*, s., 969, 1499; *vntment*, 446; *vessell*, s., 825, 1016.

[1]) As regards the form *kest*, see p. XXXVII.

m) *AN.* or *OF. ai: batell*, s., 203; *benett*, a., 490; *consell*, 203; *for-te(y)t(t)*: seytt, pt., 910; 1015, 1488; *fuell*, s., 936.

n) *Foreign proper names: abell*, 20; *Abymaleke, abymalech*, 289, 553, 1424; *aȝ(a)ell*, 625, 1101, etc.; *Aȝabell*, 1096; *archyt(t)ofel*, 712, 715; *batuell*, 62; *Bethell*, *b-*, 896, 904; *Carnel, carmele*, 940, 1022; *gabell*, 1297; *Iacabell*, 123, etc.; *Ieȝabell*, 1108; *Iessen, jessen*, 118, 144, 150; *Iezerael*, 1108; *israel(l)*, 84, 207, 1033, etc.; *Mis(i)bosett*, 665, 719; *moysen*, 150, 215, 217, etc.; *rachell*, 80; *Raguell*, *r-*, 1314, 1322, 1349, etc.; *raph(a)ell*, 1297, 1306, 1349; *ruben* : men, s., 102, 217; *samuel(l)*, 392, 567, 629, etc.; *ysbo(t)sett*, 620, 636, etc.; *ysmaell*, 43, 54.

All these proper nouns occur in our text with short *ĕ* in the rimming syllable.

§ 4. *ME. i.*

a) *OE. i: be gyn(e)*, inf., *be gynnys*, pr., 1, 17, 83, 190, 423, 645, 866, 1183, 1495, etc.; *byd*, inf., 93, 530, etc.; *blyn(e)*, v., 17, 39, 49, 1183, 1495, etc.; *blys(s)e*, s., 4, 171, 386, etc.; *blyst, blest*, p. p. : lyst, s. : wyst, pt. : myst, pt. : ⌣, 24; 30; : myst, p. p., 207; : lyst, s. : ⌣ : wyst, pt. : myst, p. p., 1248; *byrdes*, s., 'birds', : lyddes, 1287; *byt(t)e, bytt*, s., 17, 145, 1027; *chyn*, s., 327; *drynke*, v., 576, 945; *dym*, a., 1485; *flynt*, s., 1215; *fyn*, s., 10; *fytt*, s., 'time', 356; *fytt*, inf.' put', 1015; *grym*, a., 504, 1485; *hydder*, adv., 1038, 1302; *hym*, pron., 504, 566, 1485, etc.; *hys, his*, pron., 4, 45, 192, 667, etc.; *in*, prep., 70, 109, 645, 866, 1183, 1495, etc.; *with in*, prep., 10, 24; *þer in*, adv., 49; *lyddes*, s., 1287; *lyfe*, inf., *lyfes*, pr., 353, 695, 706, 819, 957, etc.; *lym*, s., 416, 1485, etc.; *lyth*, s. [OE. *liþ*], 519; *of mys(s)*, s., 670, 1236; *mys(e), myst*, s. and vb., 10, 24, 45, 171, 192, 207, 1247, etc.; *slytt*, p. p., 563; *spyll*, inf., *spylt*, p. p., 107, 111, 165, 746, etc.; *styll*, a. and adv., 14, 27, 52, etc.; *swynke*, inf., 945; *sytt(e)*, inf. 294, 356, 510, etc.; *this, þis*, pron., 10, 667, 670, 1203, 1236, etc.; *thryd(e)*, num., 22, 88, 578, etc.; *wyll*, s., 14, 27, 92, etc.; *wyn, wynd, wen*, inf., 1, 10, 17, 49, 70, 866, etc.; *wynke*, vb., 945; *wyst*, pt., p. p., 24, 30, 112, 153, 470, 1247, etc.; *wys(ch)*, vb. [OE. *wissian*], 4, 120, 1205, 1258; *wyth*, prep., 583, 626; *wytt*, s. and inf., 17, 356, 608, 995, 1028, etc.; *ydder*, adv. [app. for *þder* = OE. *þider*; cf. NED. s. v. *Thither*], 175, 815, 1302, 1445, etc.; *yne*, s. 'house', 423; *ys*, pr., 430; *yt*, pron., 2, 17, 608, 995, 1028, etc.

b) *OE. ȳ : dyd(e)*, pt., 22, 123, 249, 260, 456, 578, 656, etc.; *dyn(e)*, s., 551, 552, 595, 1080, 1262, etc.; *flygh(t), flyȝt*, s., 25, 620, etc.; *fulfyll*, inf., 52, 59, 758, etc.; *fyll, fyllyd*, vb., 14, 111, 144, etc.; *gylt*, p. p.,

165; *gylt*, s., 189, 746, etc.; *hy(l)l(e)*, s., 27, 100, 660, etc.; *knytt*, p. p., 723; *kyll*, inf., 92; *kynd*, *kyn(e)*, *kene*, s., 17, 49, 109, 233, 281, 423, 588, etc.; *man kynd*, s. 1; *kyse*, inf., *kyst*, pt., 419, 557; *kytt*, *cutt*, pt., p. p. [OE. **cyttan; *cut(t)ian*], 563, 608; *lyst*, s. and vb., 24, 204, 343, 470, 1025, 1220, 1247, 1254, etc.; *syn(e)*, s. and vb., 1, 24, 866, 1094, etc.; *thynke*, vb., 576, 945, etc.; *wyn(d)*, s., 'joy', 10,114, 474, etc.; *werke*, *L wyrk* :chyrche, 1174.

c) *OScand. i* or *í* when shortened : *byrn*, *L bryn*, inf. : syn, s. : Iabyn, n. pr. : ⌣ : kyn, s., 281; *bryn*, 477, 558, etc.; *clype*, inf., 569; *chyrche*, *L kyrk* : werke, 1174; *fyrth*, s., 738; *gyfe*, *gyfes*, vb., 353, 695, 706, 819, 957, etc.; *gyll*, s., 1319; *kyd*, s., 1309; *hytt*, p. p., 294, 510; *yll*, s., 14, 566, 607, 700, 726, etc.; *myn*, comp., 237, 645, 649, etc.; *myne*, inf., 732; *ryne*, inf., 337; *skyll*, s., 92, 629, etc.; *skyn(e)*, s., 405, 1495; *(vn)tyll*, prep.[1]) 27, 92, 100, etc.; *þer tyll*, 27, 100; *tytt*, adv., 1028; *twyne*, *twene*, *twyn(e)s*,s. and vb., 114, 190, 423, 1183, etc.; *tynt*, p. p., 1215; *wyght*, *wygt*, a. and adv. [OScand. *vígt*], 43, 113, 303, 514, etc.

d) *OScand. y: flytt*, inf., 563.

e) *OAngl. i + ht: dyght*, *dyȝt*, pt., p. p., 9, 25, 52, 59, etc.; *plyght*, *plyȝt*, s., 181, 575, 821, etc.; *syght*, *syȝt*, s., 20, 47, 130, 477, 503, 838, 1200, 1465, etc.; *wyght*, *wyȝt*, s., 52, 130, etc.

f) *OAngl. e + ht : bryȝt*, *brygh(t)*, s. and a., 5, 9, 84, 130, 503, etc.; *fyȝt*, s. and vb., 277, 477, 534, etc.; *kny(ȝ)t*, 'knight', 534, 617, etc.; *myȝt*, s., 5, 53, 138, 477, 503, 617, 838, etc.; *almyght*, a., 1010; *nyght*, *nyȝt*, s., 5, 43, 47, 84, etc.; *mydnyght*, 76; *ryght*, *ryȝt*, s., a. and adv., 74, 84, 130, 160, 617, 1432, 1465, etc.; *vn ryȝt*, 838.

g) *OE. e* : *to geydder*, *to geyddyr*, [OE. *toȝedere*] : ydder, 175, 815, 1445, etc.; : hydder, 1039, 1302, etc.

These rimes are no doubt meant to be *ĭ*-rimes, and thus they indicate that *to geydder*, *to geyddyr* here contained *i*. These forms with *i* are met with in North ME. and Sc.; cf. NED. s. v. *Together*. Luick deals with them in his HGE, § 379, and ascribes them to a sound-change *e* > *i* between *g-* or *ȝ-* and a dental, a change which seems to have been characteristic of the North and East of England.

h) *ME. ĭ* : *byll*, s. 'letter', 678, 1291; *fytt(e)*, a., 17, 510, 1432; *slype*, inf., 569.

i) *ĭ in words of Romance origin*: *baptyst*, p. p. : *cananyst*, p. p., 1521; *cosyn*, 39; *fynd*, s. 'end' : fyn, s. : with in : wynd, inf. : ⌣, 10; *gyn(e)*, s.,

[1]) Scand. at least in point of frequency.

70, 337, 633, 893, 1451, etc.; *ingyne*, s., 732; *fylystyen, phylysteyn* : syn : wyne, inf. : skyne, 405; : In : myn : be gyn, 645; *prince*, s., 1031, 1373; *provynce*, s., 1031, 1373; *pupplyst*, p. p., 371; *vn qwyte*, p. p., 1015; *rauyschett*, p. p. : lyst, pt., 1365.

j) *OE.* $\bar{\imath}$, $\bar{y}$ when shortened: *abyd(e)*, pt. : betyde, pt. : hyde, p. p.: dyde : ⌣, 314; : hyd, pt., 456; *be tyd(e)*, pt., p. p., 88; : byd, inf. : ⌣ : dyd, pt. : hyd, pt., 93; : chyd, pt., 134; : dyde, pt., 656; : kyd, p. p. : hyd, p. p. : dyd, pt., 815; : kyd, p. p. : hyd, p. p. : byd, inf., 1131, etc.; *cryst* : pupplyst, 371; *chyd*, pt. : be tyd, pt., 134; *hyd*, pt., 93; : dyd, pt., 123; : abyd, pt., 456; : be tyde, pt. : kyd, p. p. : ⌣ : dyd, pt., 815; : be tyd, pt. : ⌣ : kyd, p. p. : byd, inf., 1131, etc.; *kyd(e)*, pt., p. p. : dyd, pt., 249; : dyd, pt. : hyd, pt. : abyd, pt., 456; : dyde, pt., 744; : betyde, pt. : ⌣ : hyd, p. p. : dyd, pt., 815, etc.; *kyth*, s. : dauid, n. pr. : lyth, s., 519; : dauid, n. pr., 1130; *trest*[1]), *L trist, tryst*, s. : wyst, 112, 153, 310, etc.; *treyste*, s. and vb. : lyst, 204; : wyst, pt. : threyst, s. : lyst, pr. 470; : lyst, pr., 1220; : lyst, 1254, etc.; *threyst*, s.. *L thryste* : lyst s. 343; : treyst, s. : wyst, pt. : ⌣ : lyst, pr. 470, etc.

k) *OAngl.* $\bar{\imath}$ + *hþ* when shortened: *hyght(e)* [OAngl. *hīþho*], s. 5; *heght* : dyght, 59; : syȝt : bryȝt : ⌣ : myȝt, 503; *heygh(t)* : myȝt : vnryȝt: syȝt, 838; : ryȝt, 1432; *hyȝt* : lyȝt : syȝt, s. : ⌣ : ryȝt, 1465; *heyȝt*, 422, etc.

The word rimes only with forms containing short *ĭ*. The long OE. vowel in *hĭhþo* was shortened somewhat late before the consonant-group *-hþ* (or *-ht* from the 13th century). The adj. *hēh* had, of course, a conservative influence. The result of this late shortening was a close *e*, very similar in sound to *i*. Cf. Luick, Stud. p. 196. *Hight* was the typically northern form, and *height* the southern (N.E.D.).

l) *OE.* *ĕ* + *ht* : *hyght, hyȝt, heght*, pt., p. p. [< OE. *hĕht*], 74; : myght : ryȝt : dyght, 160; *heyght* : myȝt, s., 138; 308, 477, 1200; *heyȝt*, 175, 179, 181, 310, etc.

This word is only rimed with forms containing *ĭ*.

m) *OAngl.* *ē*, *WSax.* *ie*, $\bar{\imath}$ when shortened : *ȝytt, ȝett*, adv. : fytt, s. : sytt, inf. : wytt, inf. 356; : cutt, pt. : yt : wyt, inf., 608; : wytt, 1304; : wytt, inf. 1331, etc.

n) *Shortened OAngl.* $\bar{\imath}$ ($\bar{e}$) + *ht: lyȝt*, s. and a. 20, 60, 534, 1465, etc.; *lyȝt*, inf. 'alight', 562, 684.

o) *Foreign proper names: byniamyn, biniamyn, byngemyn*, 83, 109,

[1]) As to etymology see note on p. xxxix.

etc.; *Cephyn*, *sephyn*, 542, 566, 588, etc.; *Cys*, 419, 768, etc.; *dauid*, 519, 583, 626, 738, 1130; *Dota(y)m*, 1061, 1071; *gedyn*, 549; *genesis*, 4, 120; *Iabyn*, 281; *judyth*, 1432, 1479; *merobyn*, 474; *Neptalym*, 1332.

§ 5. *ME.* ŏ.

a) *OE.* ŏ: *brokyn*, p. p.: spokyn, 1217; *god*, s. 948, 1523; *spokyn*, p. p. : brokyn,1217.

The quantity of *o* in *brokyn* and *spokyn* could probably also be short at the time of the original (cf. inf. *speck*, *breck*); the quantity cannot be settled here since the words rime with themselves only.

b) *OE.* ŏh and *OE.* ōh when shortened: *boyȝt* pt., p. p., 952, 1045, 1107, etc.; *bro(y)ȝt*, *broght*, pt., p. p. [< OE. ȝe-*brōht*(*e*)], 92, 95, 143, 345, etc.; *mo(y)ght*, *myȝt*, pt. [< late OE. or early ME. *mohte*] : wroyȝt: toyȝt: broyȝt, 345; : boyȝt, 1107, etc.; *noyȝt*, *not* [< OE. *nōht* < *nōwiht*] 61, 92, 115, 143, etc.; *oght* [< OE. *ōht* < *ōwiht*], 4, 356; *roght*, pt. [OE. *rōhte*], 1483; *so(y)ght*, pt., p. p., 115, 789, etc.; *be sogh*, p. p., 808; *toyȝt*, *toght*, s. and vb. [< OE. *þōht*, *þōhte*, ȝe*þoht*], 4, 61, 92, 115, 828, 988, etc.; *be toyȝt*, 564; *vnsogh*(*t*), *vn soyȝt*, p. p., 4, 61, 92, 826, etc.; *wroyȝt*, *wrogh*(*t*), p. p., pt. [by metathesis from OE. *worhte*], 4, 61, 95, 115, 826, etc.

Note the absence in the orthography of the parasitic vowel *u* between the short ŏ and *ht*. This is characteristic of the Northumbrian in contradistinction to the Southumbrian. Cf. the same phenomenon in the case of long $\bar{o} + ht$. See Luick, HGE., § 403 (espec. Anm. 5).

c) *OScand.* ŏ: *ode*, a., 1523.

d) *Foreign proper name: nabod*, 948.

§ 6. *ME.* ŭ.

a) *OE.* ŭ: *begun*(*e*), *be gun*(*e*), p. p., 35, 72, 88, 127, 236, 648, 778, 1203, etc.; *burgh*, s. : throgh, 375; *com*(*e*), inf. and pr. subj., 36, 237, 822, 1262, etc.; *dum*, a., 1262; *kun*, inf., 1333; *sun*(*e*), *son*, *suns*, s., 34, 35, 62, 70, 72, 88, 127, 236, 374, 399, 441, 499, 584, 648, 718, 1017, etc.; *sum*(*e*), pron., 237, 258, 643, 752, 1262, etc.; *thrum*, s. [probably from a non-mutated variant of OE. *þrymm*, 'multitude'] 'company', 237, 643; *throgh*, prep. : burgh, 375; *tune*, s., 'cask' 1017; *þus*, adv. 120, 686, 1044, 1211, etc.; *wun*(*e*), *wonn*, inf., p. p., 34, 35, 127, 236, 441, 499, 648, etc.; *wun*, a. 'accustomed', 718, 1203.

b) *OE.* ō when stressless in ME.: *bus*, pr., [contracted f. *behōves*]: þus: deus, Lat : vs, 686; : Antyocus: vs: þus, 1510; *-dom: kyngdom*(*e*):

flome, s., 202; : sum, pron., 752; *maystur dome:* come, 1052; *wysdum, wysdom* : sum, 433; : canticorum, Lat.: sum: com, 822; : com, 852, etc.

There are no rimes in *-dŏm*: *ō* in our text.

c) *OE.* *ū* when shortened: *bun, bown, boun,* p. p., 'bound' : wun, inf. : son, s. : fun, p. p. : ⌣, 34; 334, 441, 584, 1203, etc.; *fun(e) fon(e), fown,* p. p. 'found', 34; : wune, inf. : sune, s. : be gune, p. p., 35; 62, 127, 441, 648, 714, 778, 1017, 1203, etc.; *vs,* pron., 686; : þus, 1044; : þus: iustus, Lat.: vycyus, a., 1211; 1510, etc. — Cf. p. CXXXII.

d) *ME.* *ŭ: run,* inf. and p. p., 965; : tune, s., 'tun' : sun: fun, p. p., 1017; *fon,* inf. 'find', 70.

e) *AN.* *o̧*, *ǫ̆* (both soon *ū* = *OF. ou, ō*) in ME. suffixes *-ūs, ūn,* here shortened : *beneson,* s.: son, s. : wun, p. p. : veneson : ⌣, 69; *veneson,* s., 69; *venyson,* s. : son, s. : fon, 'find' : wonn, 70; *vycyus* : vs: þus : iustus, Lat., 1211.

f) *AN.* *ū* for *ũ̄* = *OF.* *ũ* (*Lat.* *ū* before nasals) : *flum(e), flom(e),* s. : come, inf., 36; 475; : sum, pron., 258: : Iudicum, 263; : con, inf. : sum, pron. : ⌣ : thrum, s. 643; 1038, 1053, etc.

g) *Lat.* *ŭ* : *canticorum* : wysdom : sum, pron. : com, pr., 822; *deus:* bus : þus : ⌣ : vs, 686; *Exodus* : þus, 120; *Iudicum* : flome, 263; 370; *iustus* : þus : ⌣ : vs : vycyus, 1211; *paululum* : dum : sum : come, 1262.

h) *Foreign proper names* : *Antyocus,* 1510; *asmodyus,* 1315; *mardochius, mardochyus,* 1383, 1398; *Salamon* : fun, p. p.: begun: sun, s., 778.

Long Vowels.

§ 7. *ME* *ā*.

In this paragraph will be found not only all rime-series spelt with *a, ay,* as orthographic expression for *ā*, but all those which contain rime-words written with *o* and at least one written with *a* (=*ā*), provided there is no undoubted *o*-word. For in the latter case, too, we can presuppose an original *a*. There have apparently been many more *ā*-rimes in the author's original copy, but subsequent scribes have turned these into *o̧*-rimes. These will be found under *o̧* whenever there is no criterion to indicate whether the *ō* is due to the author or to the scribe. As will be shown later on, the author also used *o̧*-rimes even of such forms as are elsewhere in the poem rimed with words containing *ā*.

a) *OE. ā: abayd*, s.: made: rode: brayd, a., 216; *abad*(*e*), *abayd*, pt. : brayd, a., 1068; : glad, inf.: made, p. p.: brad, a. : ⌣, 1103; : made, pt., 1405; *a*(*l*)*lon* : stone, s.: tane, p. p.: none, pron. : ⌣, 52; : sloyn, p. p.: tane, p. p. : stone, s. : ⌣, 290; : slayn, p. p., 342; *alswa*, adv. : ma: twa : juda : ⌣, 1101; *on*(*e*), *ond*, num.: wand : tane, p. p. : ylkon, 193; : tane, p. p.: none: ⌣ : wone, 651; *bade*, s. 'delay' : made, p. p.: fade, a.: glade, inf. : ⌣, 1285; *brad*, *brayd*, a. : abayd, s.: made : rode, pt. : ⌣, 216; : glad, inf.: made, p. p. : ⌣ : abad, pt., 1103; *fa*, s. sg., *fayse*, *face*, *foys*(*e*), pl.: grace : space: pase : ⌣, 248; : has, pr. : place: space, 473; : case, 600; : grace: case : ⌣ : has, pr., 848; : space : ⌣ : place: has, pr., 946, etc.; *ga*, *go*, inf. and pr. *gase*, *gayse*, pr., 48; : fra: sela, n. pr.: ta, inf. : ⌣, 90; : two : ⌣ : cecilla, n. pr.: Iuda, n. pr., 644; : ta, inf.: gabatha : ⌣ : ma, 659; : mays, pr. 'makes': place : ⌣ : hays, pr. 'has', 679; : ma: Iuda: fra : ⌣, 783; : Iuda, n. pr.: swa: fra, 874; : swa: fro : ⌣ : sarepta, n. pr., 919; : place: case, 926; : fra: abbana, n. pr.: twa : ⌣, 1040; : fra : ⌣ : susa, n. pr.: ma, 1383; *gast*, s. 'ghost' : most: tast, inf.: chast, a., 1; : wast a., 4; : mast, a. : hast, s. : ⌣ : brast, p. p., 343; : hast, pr. : wast, s. : brast, p. p. : ⌣, 799; *gone*, p. p. : slayn, p.p., 471; *hale*, *hole*, s., a., and adv. : dale, s.: bale, s. : ⌣ : sall, pr., 110; : tale, s., 170; : tayle, s. 'tale': ⌣ : dale : vayle, s., 200; : sale, s.: tale, s.: bale, s., 577; : dale, s., 961, 1455;: tale, 1031; : bale, s., 1217; : tale, s., 1275; : bale, s.: sall, pr.: tale, s. : ⌣, 1401; : bale: smale, a.: ⌣ : tale, s., 1412; : tale, s.: sall, pr.: ⌣ : bale, s., 1512, etc.; *ham*(*e*), *home*, s.: name: same: tame, 41; : tame, a.: ⌣ : name : same, 45; : abraham, n. pr., 53; : name: tame: same : ⌣, 67; : name: tame: schame, 399; : same: name: blame : ⌣, 463; : blame, 506; : name, 520; : name: same: ⌣ : blame, 584; : same: blame: schame, 597; : defame : ⌣ : schame: blame, 675; : tame: schame: lame, 696; : schame, 729, 937; : fame, s., 830; : same: roboam: ⌣ : name, s., 863; :name: fame : ⌣: lame, 1030; : dame: name: lame, 1033; : name: same: shame : ⌣, 1059; : tame: same: lame, a., 1230; : shame: blame: same : ⌣, 1240; : name : ⌣ : same: Dame, 1333; : schame: name : ⌣ : tame, 1341, etc.; *hate*, s. and a.: late, a. : ⌣ : astate: debate, 805; : late, : ȝate, s. : ⌣, 1227; : ȝate, s.: late, a.: ȝate, s. : ⌣, 1437, etc.; *hatt*, pt. [OE. *hatte*] : Rabat, n. pr., 673; *lake*, s. 'play': make, inf.: bake, s. : ⌣ : spake, pt., 854; : spake, pt.: ysac, n. pr.: blake, a., 934; *lare*, s.: mare, a., 361; : declare, inf., 447; : fare, 496; : spare, inf., 1419; *lathe*, a. [OE. *lāþ*] : scath, s., 1508; *ma*, *mo*, a. : dyna, n. pr., 83; : Jonata, n. pr., 451; : ta, inf.: gabatha, n. pr.: ga, inf.

: ⌣, 659; : Cyba: Ionatha : ⌣ : fra, 719; : Iuda, n. pr., 747; : Iuda, n. pr.: fra: ga, inf., 783; : Iuda, n. pr. : ⌣ : þa : fa, s., 861; : jojada, n. pr. : ⌣ : juda, n. pr.: ta, inf., 1133; *ma*, inf., 'make': Ionata, n. pr.: fra : gabatha, n. pr., 457; : twa: Iuda, n. pr. : alswa, 1101; : fra: ga: susa, n. pr. : ⌣, 1383; *mare*, *more*, comp.: hayre, s., 70; : ware, pt., 152; : bare, pt., 272, 1022; : care, s.: ⌣ : spare, inf.: sare, a., 954; : spare, inf., 981; : sware, pt., 1127; : fayre, s., 1240; *mast*, *most*, superl.: tast, inf.: gast, s.: chast, a., 1; : wast, p. p., 186; : hast, s. : gast, s. : brast, p. p., 343; : hast, s. : wast, p. p. : brayst, p. p. : ⌣, 359; *none*, pron.: tane, p. p., 52; : gone: ylkon: ⌣: slayn, p. p., 471; : tane, p. p.: wone, s.: on : ⌣, 651, etc; *rode*, pt.: abayd, s.: made, pt. : ⌣ : brayd, a., 216; : made, pt., 1345; *rare*, vb.: mare, comp.: hare, s.: stare, inf., 937; : bare, a.: ⌣ : sare, a.: fare, 1201; *s(w)a*, adv. : Cyba, n. pr.: fra : ⌣ : two, 750; : Cyba, n. pr: fra : Abelay, n. pr. : ⌣, 761; : ga, inf.: iuda, n. pr.: ⌣ : fra, 874; : fro: ga: sarepta, n. pr., 919; : juda, n. pr., 942; : sla, inf.: Juda, n. pr.: ⌣ : jojada, n. pr., 1128; *sare*, *sore*, a.: hare, s., 328; : ware pt., 866; : care, s.: mare, comp.: spare, inf. : ⌣, 954; : fare, s., 1047; : Are, adv., 1108; : care, s. : ⌣ : hare, s. : ware, pt., 1189; : bare, a.: rare, pt.: ⌣ : fare, pr., 1201; *sla(y)*, inf. (f. northern OE. *slān* + Scand. *slā*) : fray, adv.: Ceilay, n. pr.: ⌣ : ta, inf., 543; : asa, n. pr., 904; : juda, n. pr.: swa : jojada, n. pr., 1128; *slayn(e)*, *sloyne*, p. p.[1]) : ylkon: ⌣ : tane: wone, 39; : tane, p. p.: stone, s.: alon, a., 290; : alon, 342; 403, 471, 609; *stone*, s.: tane, p. p., 52; : sloyn, p. p.: tane, p. p.: ⌣ : alon, 290; *strake*, pt. : take, inf.: make, inf.: ⌣ : wrake, s., 809; : wake, a.: brake,s.: ⌣ : make inf., 1422; *sware*, pt. 'swore': mare, comp., 1127; *twa(y)*, *two*, num. : melkala, n. pr., 33; : þai: sara: ⌣ : go, 48; : Debora, n. pr., 281; : fro: Tanna, n. pr.: Sarra, n. pr., 310; : Ionata, 453; : ramatha, n. pr., 530; : fra : Cissylla, n. pr.: ⌣ : wo, 588; : Iuda, n. pr., 618; : baana, n. pr., 637; : go: cecilla, n. pr.: Iuda, n. pr., 644; 1011; : Cyba, n. pr.: fra : sa, adv. : ⌣, 750; : gabatha, n. pr., 906; : fra: abbana, n. pr.: ⌣ : ga, inf., 1040; : ma: ⌣ : Iuda: alswa, 1101; *þa(i)*, pron. : sara, n. pr.: twa: go, inf., 48; : Iuda, n. pr., 641; : Iuda, n. pr.: ma: ⌣ : fa, 861; *wrath*, a. : wath, s., 88, 1310; : bath: rath: scathe, 105;: wath: scath: ⌣ : bath, 349; : bathe: skathe: wath : ⌣, 916; *wa*, *wo*,

[1]) As to *slayne*, p. p. in the rime: *ylkon : tane : wone*, we are concerned with the ordinary northern writing *ay* for *ā*, *slān* being a new formation from the inf. *slā* on the analogy of *gā* - *gān*.

s. and a.: Fenenna, n. pr., 390; : Ramatha, n. pr., 485; : Iuda, n. pr., 616; : asa, n. pr. : Ramatha, n. pr.: juda, n. pr., 901; *wate, watt, wayte, wott*, pr. [OE. *wāt*], 66; : astate: ⌣ : ȝate, s.: debate, 78; : debate: astate: hate, inf. : ⌣, 782; : ȝate, s.: late, a.: ⌣ : astate, 1384; : ȝate, s.: ⌣ : debate, s. : fote hate, adv., 1467; (*ay*) *whare*, adv.: kare, s., 125; : are: sare: ⌣ : mare, 498; *ylkon*, pron.: sloyn, p. p. : tane, p. p. : wone, s., 39; : gone: ⌣ : none: slayn, p. p., 471; : slayn, p. p. : ⌣ : gone: ton, p. p., 609.

In the rime *whom: am*, 140, *wham* was no doubt short since it occurs also in the Southumbrian.

b) *OScand. á* : *are, ayre*, adv. [OScand. *ár*] : bare, pt., 133; : fare, inf., 345; : sare: whare: mare, 498; : ware: fayre, inf.: spare, inf., 599; : fare: spare, inf.: declare, 725; : hare, s.: fare, pr.: ⌣ : bare, pt., 739; : fare: þore: ⌣ : mare, 752; : sare, a., 1108; *bath*(*e*), *both*, num., [probably < OScand. *báðir*, m., *báðar*, f.] : wrath: ⌣ : rath: scathe, 105; : wath: scath: wrath, a. : ⌣, 349; : skathe: wath: wrath, 916; : wathe, 1011; : rath, adv.: scath: wath, 1328; *cale*, s. [possibly from OScand. *kál;* cf. N. E. D. s. v. *cole;* Björkman, op. cit., p. 106] :dale: tale:small, a. : ⌣, 682; *fra*(*y*), *fro*, prep., 77; : sela: ta: ga, 90; : twa : ⌣ : Tanna, n. pr.: Sarra, n. pr., 310; : ma: Ionata, n. pr.: ⌣ : gabatha, n. pr., 457; : Ceilay, n. pr.: slay, inf.: ta, inf., 543; : Cissylla, n. pr.: two: wo, 588; : Cyba, n. pr.: Ionatha, n. pr.: ma : ⌣, 719; : Cyba, n. pr.: ⌣ : sa: two, 750; : Cyba, n. pr.: ⌣ : Abelay, n. pr.: swa, 761; : Iuda, n. pr., 764, 1168; : ma: Iuda, n. pr. : ⌣ : ga, 783; : ga: Iuda, n. pr. : swa : ⌣, 874; : swa: ⌣ : ga: sarepta, n. pr., 919; : ⌣ : abbana, n. pr.: twa: ga, 1040; : ga: susa, n. pr.: ma, 1383; *hare, hayre, here*, s., 'hair', : bayre, 66; : mare, 70; : fayre, s.: declare,vb.: sare : ⌣, 328; : spare, inf., 698; : fare: mare: ⌣ : declare, 709; : fare, inf.: ayre, adv.: bare, pt., 739; : rare: mare: ⌣ : stare, inf., 937; : care, s.: sare: ⌣ : ware, pt., 1189; *late*, s.: state, s.: gatte : ȝatte, 1038; *wane, wand, wone*, s. [OScand. *ván*]: ylkon: sloyn, p. p.: tane :⌣, 39; : ond, 'one': ⌣ : tane: ylkon, 193; : tane, p. p.: none: on : ⌣, 651; *war*(*e*), *wayre, wore, wer*(*r*)*e*, pt., 'were' : fare: spare: ⌣ : care, 49; : thamar, n. pr., 86, 861; : farre, inf.: charre, s.: thamar, n. pr., 98; : mare, a., 152; 251; : fayre : charre, s.: Eleȝaar : ⌣, 258; : Abyathar, n. pr., 558; : ayre, adv.: ⌣ : fayre, inf.: spare, inf., 599; : fare, s.: ⌣ : þare, adv.: bare, pt., 759; 866; : kare, s.: þare, adv.: spare, inf.: ⌣ , 868; : declare, inf.: fare, s. : ⌣ : care, s., 1095; : care, s.: sare, a.: hare, s. : ⌣, 1189; : fare, s.: care, s.: bare, a. : ⌣,

1193, etc.; *wath(e)*, s.: wrath, 88; : scath: wrath: bath, 349; : skathe, 901; : bathe: skathe: ⌣ : wrath, 916; : scathe, s., 985 : bathe, 1011; : wrath, a., 1310; : bathe: rath: scath : ⌣, 1328; *waytte*, a. [OScand. *vátr*, 'wet'] : latte, 285.

c) *OE.* *ă*, *ă̆*, *ča* lengthened in *ME.* into *ā* in an open syllable : *answer*, s. : fare, inf. : spare, inf.: : ⌣ : care, s., 532; *a schamed, schamyd*, p. p., 17, 208; *bake*, s. 'back' : make, inf.: ⌣ : lake, s.: spake, pt., 854; *bale(s)*, *bayle*, s. 110, 182, 395, 577, 648, 1040, 1069, 1217, 1401, 1412, 1512, etc.; *ba(y)re*, a., 66, 1201; *bare, bayre*, pt., 133, 272, 621, 739, etc.; *blake*, a. 'black' : lake: spake, pt.: ysac : ⌣, 934; *care, ka(y)re*, s. and vb., 49, 125, 304, 868, 954, 1115, 1189, 1193, 1239, etc.; *char(r)e*, s. [ONorth. **cœrr* < OTeut. **karriz* or **karziz*], 98, 258, 360, 581, 626, etc.; *craue*, inf., *crauyd, craued*, pt., 3, 112, 746, 1071, etc.; *dale*, s., 110, 200, 682, 961; *dales*, s. pl., 962; *dare*, pr. : chare, s.: ⌣ : ware, a., 360; *fare, fayre, farre*, s. and vb., 49, 96, 98, 196, 304, 328, 345, 496, 598, 599, 725, 739, 752, 958, 1047, 1193, 1201, 1228, 1239, etc.; *mysfayre*, inf., 412; *for sake*, inf., *forsakyn*, p. p., 402, 796, 1224, etc.; *glad(e)*, inf., 1103, 1285; *graue*, s., 116, 774, 1202, etc.; *has, hays*, pr., 473, 848, 946, etc.; *ha(tt)e*, inf., *hattes*, pr. : ȝattes, 349; 698, 782; *haue*, inf., 92, 112;: of schaue, inf., 639; : vouchsaue: ⌣ : knaue, s.: craue, 1071, etc.; *knaue*, s., 116, 806, 1071, etc.; *lame*, a., 696, 1030, etc.; *late, latt(e)*, a. and adv., 66, 285, 626, 698, 805, 1227, 1384, 1437, etc.; *made*, pt., p. p., 216, 1103, 1285, 1345, etc.; *make*, inf. and pr., 854, 874, 1411, 1422, 1462, etc.; *mase, mays, makes*, pr. [contracted from ONorth. *macas*], 679, 727, 1433, etc.; *nakyd*, a., 17; *name*, s., 13, 41, 45, 67, 399, 463, 520, 584, 863, 1030, 1333, 1341, etc.; *quake*, inf., 1039, 1224; *rath*, adv. : wrath : bath : ⌣ : scathe, 105; : bathe : ⌣ : scath: wath, 1328; *sake*, s., 77, 702, 919, 1389, 1411, etc.; *sale*, s., 577; *sall*, pr [OE. *sceal*]: tale,s.; 42; : dale : bale : hale : ⌣, 110; : tale, s., 1330;: bale, s.: ⌣ : tale : hale, a., 1401; : tale, s. : ⌣ : hale, a. : bale, s., 1512, etc.; *schame, shame*, s., 114, 399, 597, 675, 696, 729, 937, 1240, 1341, etc.; *slake*, inf., 442, 802, 1015, 1224, etc.; *smale, small*, a., 682, 1412; *spake*, pt. : make, inf.: bake, s.: lake, s. : ⌣, 854; : make, inf. 874; : sake, s., 919; : lake : ⌣ : ysac: blake, 934; 944; : ysaac, 1337; *spare*, inf. and pr., 37, 49, 96, 532, 599, 868, 954, etc.; *stafe, staue*, s. : haue, inf., 92; 1064, etc.; *stare*, inf., 937; *stal(le)*, pt.. 395, 1250; *tale(s)*, *tayle*, s., 42, 170, 182, 200, 577, 579, 962, 1031, 1038, 1040, 1275, 1330, 1401, 1412, 1512, etc.; *tame*, a., 41, 399, 696, 1230, 1341, etc.; *wake*, vb., 77, 944, 1411, 1422,

1462, etc.: *war(re)*, a., 360, 581, 1228, 1489, 1523; *wrake, wreke*,s., 459, 607, 702, etc.; *ȝat(t)e, ȝattes*, s. [OE. *ȝæt* in oblique cases], 49, 1227, 1384, 1437, 1439, 1467, etc.

Note the long *ā* in the auxiliary *haue*, inf., *ha(y)s*, pr. sg. by the side of forms with *ă* (cf. above). Note also the auxiliary *sall*, pr. sg. and pl., with *ā* as a variant of the stressless form with *ă* (cf. above). Attention should also be drawn to the sb. *char(r)e* with a long *ā* in spite of its originally double *r*, which must have been analogically simplified in inflected forms.

d) *OScand. ă* when lengthened in open syllables: *cake*, s., 944; *gate, gatte*, s., 49, 171, 530, 698, 1437, etc.; *ƥus gatte*, 1439; *same*, a., 13, 41, 45, etc.; *scaƥe, scath(e), skathe*, s., 105, 349, 901, 916, 985, 1328, 1508; *ta*, inf. *tas*, pr. [contracted form from OScand. *taka*], 90, 602, 659, 1133; *takyd*, p. p., 17, *takyn*, p. p.. 402, 431, 1505; *mystakyn*, p. p., 448; *take*, inf. : qwake, inf.: slake inf. : ⌣ : for sake, 1224; : sake, 1389; 1411, 1462, etc.; *tan(e)*, *tone*, p. p. [contracted form from *taken*], 39, 52, 154, 193, 290, 403, 609, 651, etc.; *ƥare, ƥore, ƥer(e)*, adv. : spare: fare : ⌣, 96; : fare, inf., 598; : fare, inf.: ⌣ : ayre, adv.: mare, comp., 752; : fare s.: ware pt.: ⌣ : bare, pt., 759; : kare, s.: ⌣ : spare, inf.: ware, pt., 868; *vndertake*, inf., 1020.

e) *AN.* or *OF. a*, chiefly in an open syllable:

abate, inf., 530, 920; *age*, s., 666, 754, 1514; *astate*, s., 78,171, 626, 782, 805, 1384, etc.; *asale*, inf.: bale, s.: ⌣ : fale, s.: consale, s., 648; *barre*, s., 1523; *blame*, s. and vb., 13, 463, 506, 584, 597, 675, 1240, etc.; *blamed, blamyd*, pt., p. p., 17, 208, 1150; *brake* [OF. *brac*] s., 1422; *brast(e), brayste*, pt., p. p., 303, 343, 359; *cabull*, s. [OF. *cable* or possibly MLG. *kabel*]: fabyll: vnstabyll: vn mesurabyll, 1215; *careayge*, s., 1356; *case*, s., 342, 561, 600, 727, 848, 926, etc.; *chast(e)*, a. and adv., 1, 1329; *dame, D-*, s., 922, 1033, 1333, etc.; *debat(e), D-*, s. and vb., 66, 626, 782, 805, 1467, etc.; *declare*, inf. and pr., 37, 328, 447, 709, 725, 818, 1095; *defame*, s., 675; *fabyll*, s., 1215; *face*, s., 705; *fade*, a., 1285; *fame*, s., 646, 830, 1029; *grace*, s., 28, 157, 248, 848, 1433, etc.; *hales*, s. pl., 962; *hast*, s. and inf., 303, 343, 486, 651; *heritage, herytage*, s., 460, 754, 1369; *homage*, 713; *lynag(e)*, s., 269, 380, 1273, etc.; *male*, s. 'he-ass', 1347; *maryage, mayreg*, s., 380, 521; *mate*, a. : hatte, inf. : gate, s: latte, a., 698; 1247; *merakyll*, s., 188, 194, 234, etc.; *message*, s.,1356; *owtrage, otrayg(e)*, s., 51, 460, 1273, etc.; *page*, s., 269, 460, 521, 754,

1273, 1356, 1369, etc.; *pase*, s.[1]) : grace: space : ⌣ : foyse, 248; : case 561; *pasce*, s., 231; *perage*, 666; *place*, *plays*, s., 28, 231, 473, 679, 926, 946, 1265, etc.; *prelate*, s., 1173; *rast*, p. p., 486, 1140; *raue*, inf., 112, 683, 840, 1009, etc.; *sa(y)ue*, inf., *sa(y)uyd*, pt., p. p. [OF. *sauver*], 3, 112, 190, etc.; *seruage*, 278; *space*, s., 157, 166, 248, 473, 946, 1265, 1433, etc.; *solace*, s., 368; *stabyll*, a. 1215, 1250; *stage*, s., 269, 521, 666, etc.; *state*, s., 66, 920, 1038; *tabernakyll*, s., 188, 194, 234, etc.; *tast(e)*, s. and inf., 1, 183, 1140; *trace*, s., 1200, 1433, etc.; *tripage*, *trypage*, s., 269, 278; *vnstabyll*, a. : *vn mesurabyll*, a., 1215, 1250; *vayle*, s., 200: *vouch saue*, 806, 1071; *wage*, s., 380, 460, 521, 666, 713, 754, 1273, etc.; *wast*, s., a. and vb., 4, 183, 186, 303, 486, 651, 1329, etc.; *ymag*, s., 51.

The rime *place* : past, pt. : was : has, 98, seems to indicate that *place* could facultatively be pronounced with a short *a*.

f) ME. ai of various origin : *ayre*, s. 'heir' : kayre, inf. : ⌣ : fayre, inf. : *dyspayre*, s., 304; *bale*, s. 'bail' : *asale*, inf. : *fale*, s. : *consale*, s., 648; *trayst*, inf. [OScand. *treysta*] : hast, inf. : wast, inf. : ⌣ : rast, p. p., 486; *wayte* [OF. *waiter*] : strayt, s., 1058.

These rimes no doubt involve *ā-* rimes. In these words, which are elsewhere in the poem rimed with words containing *ai*, the original diphthong has been monophthongized and turned into *ā*. This monophthongization is characteristic of the Scottish dialects, but seems also to have taken place in some parts of Yorkshire. Cf. Luick, HGE., § 434. As to *trast*, inf., see Luick, HGE., § 427 : 4.

g) Foreign proper names:

Abelay, 761; *Abnar(r)e*, 581, 618, etc.; *Abyathar* : wore, pt., 558; 798, etc.; *abythiar*, 745; *Adoram*, 856; *abbana*, 1040; *abraham* : home, s., 53; *Adam* : name : ⌣ : same : blame, 13; *Anna*, 388; *Asa*, *a-*, 895, 901, 904; *baana*, 637; *baasa*, 906; *Cecilla*, *Cissylla*, 588, 602, 644; *Ceilay*, 543; *Cyba*, 719, 750, 755, 761; *Dasore*, : war, pt., 251; *Debora*, 281; *dyna*, 83; *Elcana*, *helcana*, 388, 389, 392; *Eleazare*, *Elezaar*, *Eleaser*, 196, 258, 412; *ffenenna*, *f-*, 388, 390; *gabatha*, 457, 659, 906; *gasa*, 345; *Ieroboam*, 899; *Ionat(h)a*, 451, 457, 719; *Ioiada*, 1128, 1133; *Iuda*, 616, 618, 641, 644, 764, 783, 861, 874, 901, 942, 1011, 1101, 1128, 1133, 1168; *melkala*, 33; *Rabat*, :hatt, pt., 673; *ramatha*, *R-*, 485, 530, 901, etc.; *roboam*, *R-*, 856, 863; *salmana*, 288; *sara*, *saray*, 33, 48; *Sarra(a)*, 310, 345; *sarepta*, 919; *sela*, 90;

[1]) The sb. *pas* in the sense: 'passage, road, route' contains, as is shown by the rimes, a long *ā*, as opposed to the verb *pass*, which has short *ă*. Cf. p. xxxvii.

Senagar, 280; *susa*, 1383; *Tanna*, 310; *thamar, T-*, : were, pt., 86; 98, 693; *tharsa*, 906; *ysa(a)c*, 934, 1337.

All these foreign proper names occur in our text only with long $\bar{a}$ in the riming syllable.

§ 8. *ME. -ald.*

a) *OAngl.* $\bar{a}$ + *ld: old*, a.: hold : cald : tald : ⌣, 46; : cald : bold : sold : ⌣, pt., 413; *ald:* tald, pt., 1311, etc.; *bold*, a. : told: sold: cald : ⌣, 117; : cald, s., 171; *bald*, a. : cald, pt. : hald, pr. : ⌣ : told, pt., 1051; *cald*, s. : bold, 171; *cald*, a. : wold pt., 195; *cald*, inf.: told :sold : ⌣ : bold, 117; *fald*, inf. : cald p. p.: hald inf. : told, pt. : ⌣, 3; : told, pt., 166; *hald*, inf. : cald, p. p. : ⌣ : told pt. : fold, inf., 3; : cald, p. p., 446; : cald, p. p., 646; *held*, pt. : cald, p. p. : ⌣ : wold: told, p. p., 374; *hold*, inf. : cald : ald : old, 46; : wald, pt. : vnsald, pt. : ⌣ : cald, p. p., 733 ; *hald*, pr. : cald, pt. : ⌣ : bald: told, pt., 1051; *sold*, pt. : told : ⌣ : cald : bold, 117; : cald : bold : ⌣ : old, 413 ; *vnsald* pt. : wald, pt. : ⌣ : hold, inf.: cald, p. p., 733; *tald*, pt., p. p. : hold : cald : ⌣ : old, 46; : ald, 1311; *told*, pt., p. p. : cald, p. p. : hald, inf. : ⌣ : fald, inf., 3; : sold : cald : bold, a., 117; : cald, p. p. held, pt. : wold, pt. : ⌣, 374 ; : wald, s., 844 ; cald, pt. : hald, pr. : bald, a. : ⌣, 1051; *wald*, s. : told, p. p., 844, *wald*, pt. : callyd, 31 ; *wold*, pt. : cald, p. p., 157 ; : cald, p. p., 195; : cald, p. p. : held, pt. : ⌣ : told p. p., 374 ; *wald* pt. : vnsald, pt. : hold, inf. : cald, p. p., 733; : told, p. p., 844.

b) *ME. cald*, pt., p. p. [ultimately from OScand. *kalla*, inf.] : hald, inf. : told, pt. : ⌣ : fald, inf., 3; : hold : ⌣ : tald: old, 46 ; : wold, 157; : hald, 374 ; : bold: sold: old, 413; *cald* : hald, inf., 646; : wald: vnsald : hold : ⌣, 732; *callyd*, pt. : wald, 31.

Our text does not here present any undoubted or complete *o*-rimes. As to the vowel-quantity in *cald*, pt., p. p. Strandberg, op. cit. p. 81, says, »*cald*, pt., p. p. certainly had a short *a* and the weak-stressed auxiliary *wald*, pt. presumably had a short *a*, cfr. the form *wollde* in *Orrm.*» The same opinion is advanced by F. Eilers, op. cit. pp. 9 and 190. We admit that *cald*, pt., p. p., generally contained short $\check{a}$, its phonetically normal development. But we do not consider it absolutely impossible that there might have existed a collateral form with a long $\bar{a}$, throughassociation with the many forms ending in OAngl. *-ald*. This supposition seems to be supported by the rimes with such words as *ald, bald, fald, sald, tald*. On

the other hand the rimes *cald* : *hald*, inf., 446, 646 point to a short *ă* in both *cald* and *hald*, vb., since *hald* often had *ă*, as is evident from the rime-usage in other ME. poems. The often weak-stressed *walde*, pt., rimes with *cald*, pt., p. p., and *hald*, inf., which intimates a short *a*. But other rimes suggest the existence of a collateral form with a long *ā*. In other words we seem to be entitled to assume the existence of both long and short *ă* in *walde*, pt. Further. it is not unlikely that *tald*, p. p., and *sald*, p. p., had parallel forms with a short vowel. But whether the vowel-quantity of the remaining words in question, i. e. *ald*, a., *bald*, a., *cald*, s., a. and inf., *fald*, inf., *wald*, s., also could be short is uncertain. In our opinion it is not probable.

§ 9. *ME. -and.*

a) *OE. -and*, *ONorth.* pr. pple. ending *-ande*,and *ME. -and*: *-and*, pr. pple ending : *byrnand*, : stand, 137; *connand* : stand, 143; *cryand* : fand : hand : ⏑ : land, 1063; *dredand* : land, 1320; *dwelland* : fand: warrand : hand, 126, etc.; *falland* : land : ⏑ : hand : ordand, 660; *fleand:* stand: hand: land, 149, etc.; *grochand:* wand, 156; land : renand : hand : ⏑, 909, etc.; *lastand:* land, 1496; *ligand:* fand: connand : vnderstand : ⏑, 79; *redand* : fand, pt., 1400; *renand* : land : ⏑ : hand : grochand, 909; *rynnand:* land : ⏑ : hand : warrand, 1040; *slepand:* seruand : fand : ⏑ : husband, 1343; *sorowand:* fand: land: ⏑ : hand, 1277; *soiornand* : land : ⏑ : fand : hand, 529; *traueland:* land: hand: ⏑ : stand, 622; *weldand* : warrand : hand: ⏑ : land, 696; 881, 1428, 1430, etc.; *wonnand:* land : fand : ⏑ : hand, 1026; *band*, pt. : land: stand: thythand, 670; 967, etc.; *brand*, s., *brandes*, s., pl. : landes : handes : tythandes, 39; 1493, etc.; *errand* s. (OE. *ærende*): hand, 1112; *fownd*, inf. [OE. *fandian*, in ME. sometimes with the diphthong *ou* from *au*. Cf. Mod. Phil. *XX*, p. 189 seq.] : staned, 238; *fand*, pt., 28; : land, 118; : dwelland: ⏑ : warand: hand, 126; 452; : land : hand : stand : ⏑, 478; : stand: ⏑ : offerand: tythand, 491; : land: soiornand : ⏑ : hand, 529; 557, etc. ; *hande*, (*-es*), s., 39; : warand: dwelland: fand : ⏑, 126; 452; : stand: fand : ⏑ : commawnd, 467; : land: ⏑ : stand: fand, 478; : land : soiornand : fand : ⏑, 529; 557, 642, 1046, etc.; *husband*, s. (OE. *hūsbonda*, f. OScand.), 63; : seruand: fand: slepand : ⏑, 1343; : land: ⏑ : stand: ordand, 1381, etc.; *land*, (*-es*), s. : ordand: stand: ⏑ :wand, 8; 28; 103; 108; : fand, 118; : wand, 140; :

commawnd: ⌣ : fand: tythand, 141; 452; : hand : fand : stand, 478; : hand: fand: ⌣ : ordand, 502; : hand: fand: ⌣ : soiornand, 529; 622; 660; : commawnd, 702, etc.; *sand, (es)*, s.: vnderstand: land: ⌣ : ordand, 174; 287; *stande (-es)*, vb. : ordand : ⌣ : land : wand, 8; 459; : fand: hand: commawnd, 467; : land : hand : ⌣ : fand, 478; : fand : offerand : tythand, 491; 670, 1126, etc.; *vp stand, (-es)*, vb.: land, 76; 287; *staned*, p. p. : fownd, inf., 238; *thows(s)and*, num. (OE. *ðūsend*) : land : ⌣ : stand : ordand, p. p., 151; : hand, 642; etc.; *vnderstand*, vb., 28 : fand : connand : ⌣ : ligand, 79; 108; : land : sand : ordand, 174; 834, 854, etc.;

b) OScand. -and : band, (-es), s.: fand, pt. 104; : seruandes, 152, etc.; *tythand, (-es) thythand*, 39; : stand: fand : offerand : ⌣, 491; 948, 987, etc.; *wand*, s.: ordand: stand: land : ⌣, 8; : vnderstand : land: ⌣ : hand, 140; 156, 854, etc.

c) -and in AN. or *OF. loan-words: besand*, s.: fand, pt., 869; *comma(w)nd, commaund*, pt., p. p. : land: fand: tythand, 141; : stand : land : ⌣ : hand, 164; : thousand: fand: ordand, 170; : stand : fand : hand, s. : ⌣, 467; : vnderstand : ⌣ : fand : land, 470; 557; : land, 702; 933, etc.; *connand(e), cunnand*, s. : fand : ⌣ : vnderstand: : ligand, 79; *offerand*, s. (early ME. *offrende* f. OF. *ofrende* f. MLat. *offerenda*) : hand : ⌣ : fand : ordand, 58, 60; *ordand*, pt., p. p.: stand: land; wand, 8; : hand : offerand : fand : ⌣, 58; 108, 452, 660, 810 etc.; *presand, present*, s.: fand, pt., 638, etc.; *semlandes*, s. pl. : standes : handes : brandes, 1492; *seruand(es), seruant*, s., 63; : bandes, 152; 1343, 1440, etc.; *war(r)and*, 95; : dwelland : fand: ⌣ : hand, 126; 515, 557, 695, 854, etc.

In the AN. or OF. loan-words *-and* has as prototype AN. *-aund, -aunt* or OF. *-ānd, -ānt* and became *-and* under loss of stress. The only exceptions are *offerand*, s., which has *-and* through association with the northern pr. pple. *offerand* 'offering', and *ordand*, pt. or pa. pple., which got its inf. *ordáin* changed into *órdan* and then to *ordán* as a variant form owing to the accentual vacillation in French loan-words. The ending in *presand*, s. may be apprehended as an analogical formation on the ME. sb. *presance* or else as influenced from the pr. pple. ending *-and*.

The only conclusion we can draw from the rimes above is that the OE. lengthening of *a* before the consonant-group *-nd* in these words has disappeared; we find each of the forms riming with the ME. ending *-and*, which certainly contained short *a*. Only the rime *fownd*, inf. : astaned, 238, involves *-ānd* or else *-ond* (*o̜* in *fownd* may then

have originated from OE. *ā* or rather from ME. *au*, i. e. *faund* for *fand*, cf. p. LV). Thus our text differs from the results at which STRANDBERG and EILERS have arrived. The latter considers that the lengthening of *a* before *-nd* has been preserved in *aand*, s., *faand*, s. and inf., *saand*, s., and *waand*, s. and inf., in E. E. Ps., Cursor Mundi and Richard Rolle, and STRANDBERG bears him out in this statement. Cf. EILERS, op. cit. p. 20, and STRANDBERG op. cit. p. 86.

§ *10. ME. -ang.*

a) *OE.-ang: a mang(e), omang, emong* : lang : gang : sang, 22; : lang, 41; : sprange, pt., 117; : gang : strong : lang : ⌣, 178; : wrang : strang : gang, 184; : wrang : gang: strang : ⌣, 422; : wrang, 476; : lang : strang : ⌣ : gang, 579; : lang : wrang : strang, 637; : sang : gang : ⌣ : wrang, 826; : sang, 829; : gang : ⌣ : wrang : lang, 955; : sang : ⌣ : gang : thrang, 982; : dang : thrang, pt. : gang : ⌣, 990; : gang: ⌣ : hang: lang, 1021; : lang: strang:wrang : ⌣, 1210; : wrang: strang: gang, 1216; : wrang: gang, inf. : lang, 1433, etc.; *fang*, inf. (ME. new formation for OE. *fōn*) : lang : gang : ⌣ : strang, 253; : wrang, 615; : strong, 672; : wrang : gang : lang, 1236, etc.; *gange*, s. and vb. : amang: lang : ⌣ : sang, 22; : strang : lang : ⌣ : wrang, 26; : amang : ⌣ : strong : lang, 178; : amang : wrang : strang : ⌣, 184; : wrang : ⌣ : strang : amang, 422; : strang, 507; : a mang : ⌣ : lang : strang, 579; : wrang, 632; : lang, 691,: wrang, 707; : sang : ⌣ : amang : wrang, 826; : amang : wrang : lang, 955; : amang : sang : ⌣ : thrang, 982; : dang: thrang : ⌣ : amang, 990; : strang, 997; : hang : lang : amang : ⌣, 1021; : amang : wrang : ⌣ : lang, 1433, etc.; *hang* (ME. new formation), pt. : lang : amang : gang, 1021, etc.; *lang, long* a. : amang : ⌣ : gang : sang, 22; : strang : ⌣ : gang : wrang, 26; : emong, 41; : gang: strong : ⌣ : a mang, 178; : wrang, 425; : strang: a mang : gang, 579; : amang: ⌣ : wrang: strang, 637; : gang, 691; : wrang, 817; : strang, 887; : gang: amang: wrang : ⌣, 955; : hang : ⌣ : gang: amang, 1021; : a mang : strang : wrang : ⌣, 1210; : a mang : wrang : gang : ⌣, 1433, etc.; *langer*, adv. : angere, 359; *sang(e), song, euyn sang*, s. : amang: lang: gang : ⌣, 22; : strang, 233; : amang : gang : ⌣ : wrang, 826; : amang : gang : thrang, 982, etc.; *sprange*, pt. : a mange, 117; 160, etc.; *strang, strong*, a. : lang : gang : wrang, 26; : gang : ⌣ : lang: a mang, 178; : amang : wrang : ⌣ :

gang, 184; : song, 233; : gang : wrang : ⌣ : amang, 422; : gang, 507; : lang : ⌣ : gang : a mang, 579; : amang : lang: wrang : ⌣, 637; : fang, 672; : lang, 887; : gang, 997, etc.; *tang*, s. : a mang : ⌣ : gang : wrang, 199; *thrang*, pt. : amang : sang : gang : ⌣, 982;: dang: ⌣ : gang : amang, 990.

b) *OScand. -ang: angere*, s. : langer, 359; *dang*, pt. : amang: gang: strang : ⌣, 216; : amang: gang : ⌣ : thrang, 999, etc.; *wrang*, a. : gang: strang: lang : ⌣, 26; : amang: ⌣ : strang: gang, 184; : amang: strang: gang : ⌣, 422; : lang, 425; : fang, 615; : gang, 632; : amang: lang: ⌣ : strang, 637; : gang, 707; : lang, 817; : amang: gang: ⌣ : lang, 955, etc.

The rime- lists above do not seem to afford any evidence as to the quantity of *a* in the phoneme *-ang*. But the enormous preponderance of *a*-writings undeniably points to a short *ă*. Similarly is the case with the material examined by Eilers and Strandberg.

§ *11. ME. -ard.*

a) *OE. -eard* (and ME. pt. and p. p. of OE. *sparian*): *frowerd*, *L frowarde*, a. : herd, *L* harde, a., 146; *herd*, *L harde*, a.: frowerd, 146; *spayrd*, p. p. : reward, s., 482.

b) *AN.* or *OF. -ard* (and ME. pt. and pp. of the French loanword *declare*), *declared*, pt. : reward, p. p., 1354; : reward, s., 1401; *garde*, a. : reward, s., 81; *reward*, s. and vb. : garde, a., 81; : spayrd, p. p., 482; : declared, pt., 1354; : declared, pt., 1401.

We are not justified in concluding anything definite from such a scanty material. But there is no doubt that in our poem the shortening of the long *a* had taken place, but, of course, not in such preterites and past participles as *spayrd*, *declared*, where the phoneme *-ārd* originated in ME. times and the corresponding infinitives had a long *ā*. Eilers, op. cit. p. 37, says in the case of Cursor Mundi, »Die Kürze ist unzweifelhaft überall durchgedrungen. Es beweisen dies namentlich die reime mit afrz. a, dann aber auch die auf nebentoniges *a* in englischen Wörtern.»

§ *12. ME. ę̄.*

a) *Prim. OE. ē: crede*, s. [OE. *crēda*], 1480; *ȝe*, pron., 16, 174; *he*(*e*), pron., 7, 16, 131, 499, 591, 707, 1129, etc.; *here*, *heyre*, adv., 18, 32

492, 693, 1040, 1319, 1443, 1516, etc.; *hett(e)*, inf. and pr. [< inf. *hīt(e)* taken over from OE. *hīt*, pt.], 250, 285, 330, 355, 574, 705, 1098, 1387, 1495; *hett*, pt., 748, 1113; *lete*, pt. [OE. *lēt*], 759; *me(e)*, pron., 19, 25, 60, 139, etc.; *med(e)*, s. [OE. *mēd*], 88, 363, 371, 621, 683, 722, 759, 797, 1002, 1044, 1052, 1209, 1223, 1296, 1312, 1360, 1378, 1403, 1480, 1509, etc.; *sleped*, pt : depe, a, 358; *þe*, *the*, pron., 19, 35, 131, 484, etc.; *we*, pron., 11, 116, etc.

In all these cases we are concerned with rimes which undoubtedly contained close *ē*.

b) *OE ē* by i-mutation of *ō*: *bete*, *bette*, vb., 344, 705, 929, 1024, 1319, 1347; *bled(e)*, inf., 967, 1490, 1509; *bred(e)*, inf., 10, 12, 832; *breme*, a., 333, 1231, 1423; *deme*, inf., *demed*, *demyd*, pt., p. p., 229, 683, 809, 1231, 1381, 1423, etc.; *be de(y)ne*, *by de(y)ne*[1]), adv., 115, 194, 640, 786, 830, 864, 908, 921, 973, 990, 1074, 1102, 1174, 1193, 1231, 1261, 1359, 1385, 1405, 1419 etc.; *fed(e)*, inf., 10, 42, 125, 313, 315, 554, 695, 832, 1178, 1281, 1312, 1356; *fele*, inf., 18, 127, 222, 363, 400, 550, 572, 589, 676, 875, 905, 925, 931, 1030, 1166, 1204, 1206, 1209, 1214, 1220, 1241, 1320, 1325, 1351, 1398; *fere*, s. [OE. *ȝefēra*], 12, 18, 23, 286, 332, 565, 860, 874, 882, 1071, 1077, 1083, 1109, 1120, 1232, 1237, 1319, 1339, 1356, 1359, 1360, 1392, 1416, 1432, 1443, 1459, 1491, 1503, 1518, etc.; *fet(t)e*, s. pl., 130, 250, 285, 330, 344, 355, 574, 705, 748, 759, 781, 929, 1024, 1113, 1319, 1347, 1492, 1495; *grene*, a., 137, 194, 918, 1166; *grette*, inf., 705, 1098, 1319, 1492, etc.; *hed(e)*, s. 'heed', 107, 160, 176, 385, 425, 471, 621, 665, 708, 771, 793, 800, 863, 1015, 1180, 1267, 1302, 1325, 1351, 1360, 1410, 1419, 1443, etc.; *hele*, *heyle*, s., 741, 1322; *kele*, *keyle*, inf. [OE. *cēlan*], 1214, 1466; *kene*, *keyn(e)*, a., 115, 255, 573, 640, 729, 746, 780, 786, 787, 971, 973, 1074, 1117, 1207, 1240, 1373, 1500, etc.; *kepe*, s. and inf., 89, 90, 581, 1177, 1353, 1462, etc.; *keped*, pt., 1050; *mete*, *met(t)e*, inf. and pr., 330, 748, 759, 926, 929, 1024, 1113, etc.; *seke*, inf. 419; *sped(e)*, s. and inf., 35, 104, 107, 160, 176, 206, 313, 371, 468, 708, 720, 728, 797, 800, 813, 832, 941, 959, 967, 1171, 1296, 1312, 1325, 1378, 1443, 1506, etc.; *stede*, s., 'steed', 621; *swete*, *swett(e)*, *sweytt*, a., 329, 344, 759, 781, 929, etc.; *qwene*, *quene*, *qweyne*, *qwenne(s)*, s. [OE. *cwēn*), 680, 831, 889, 914, 973, 1109, 1117, 1376, 1385, 1386, 1405, etc.; *we(y)ne*, s. and vb., *wenys*, pr., 16, 186, 195, 501, 519,

[1]) Presumably f. ONorth. *bi dæne* 'bei getanem'; Cf. Brandl-Zippel: Me. Sprach- und Literaturproben, Glossary. Berlin, 1917.

etc.; *wepe*, inf. and pr., 634, 1353, 1462, 1464, etc.; *wer(e)*,[1]) s. 'doubt', 7, 21, 565, 882, 925, 1372, 1476, 1531, etc.

c) *OAngl.* *ē* (= WS *ie*, *i*) by i-mutation of *ēa*, *ēo* and *-eah: fleme*, inf., *flemed*, pt., 333, 714, 1381; *ȝeme*, s. and inf., *ȝemed*, pt., 229, 714, 1231; *he(y)re*, inf., *hers*, pr., 40, 80, 498, 648, 853, 872, 920, 1029, 1030, 1104, 1109, 1127, 1204, 1432, 1446, etc.; *beleued*, pt., 238: *leue*, *lefe*, s. 'leave' [OE. *lēaf*, but influenced by the OAngl. verb *lēfan*], 14, 532, 593, 1182, 1239, 1453, etc.; *nede*, s. and inf., *nedes*, pr., 12, 32, 35, 125, 176, 328, 371, 412, 425, 527, 612, 665, 683, 720, 728, 771, 793, 800, 813, 823, 863, 1005, 1209, 1260, 1281, 1288, 1330, etc.; *sen(e)*, *seyn(e)*, p. p. [OAngl. *ȝesēne*, a.], 16, 55, 115, 137, 427, 449, 640, 669, 680, 729, 787, 830, 864, 889, 908, 918, 921, 971, 990, 1036, 1042, 1051, 1074, 1166, 1174, 1180, 1185, 1197, 1207, 1214, 1234, 1246, 1288, 1311, 1317, 1326, 1336, 1359, 1373, 1374, 1405, 1414, 1456, 1469, 1487, 1500, 1521, etc.; *stele*, *styele*, s., 925, 1206.

d) *OE. ēo;* : *be(e)*, inf., pr. conj., 2, 7, 11, 15, 16, 19, 50, 131, 484, 499, etc., etc.; *bede*, inf. [OE. *bēodan*], 425, 652, 1052, 1178, 1360, 1423; *for bede*, pr., 1356; *ben(e)*, *beyn(e)*, p. p., 115, 118, 427, 472, 780, 830, 889, 908, 914, 918, 921, 990, 1051, 1102, 1180, 1185, 1197, 1210, 1214, 1231, 1240, 1244, 1258, 1311, 1383, 1456, 1469, 1471, etc.; *be twen(e)*, adv. and prep., 55, 255, 680, 830, 1036, 1051, 1117, 1166, 1214, 1229, 1456, 1487, etc.; *ches(s)e*, inf., 13, 267, 434; *crepe*, inf., 817, 1353, 1462; *depe*, a., 1177; *dere*, a. and adv., 23, 51, 671, 766, 988, 1077, 1104, 1127, 1135, 1137, 1170, 1187, 1253, 1338, 1518, 1531, etc.; *fee*, s., 184, 508, 1051, etc.; *faurth* (for *ferthe* f. OE. *fēorða*) num. : erthe, s., 1500; *flee*, inf., *flees*, pr., 'flee', 161, 403, 434, etc.; *free*, a., 33, 77, 139, etc.; *ȝede*, *ȝode*, pt. [OE *ȝe-ēode*], 97, 313, 315, 369, 461, 527, 554, 562, 695, 967, 1153, 1281, 1302, 1308, 1320, 1347, 1351, 1419, 1423, 1443, 1476, 1486, etc.; *glee*, s. [OE. *glēo(w)*], 295, 499, 636, etc.; *knel(e)*, *knell*, inf. and pr. [OE. *cnēowlian* > *cnēolian* through influence of *cnēo*; s.], 662, 1387, 1398, 1403, 1466; *lede*, s. [OE. *lēode*], 64, 107, 125, 1209, 1260; *lefe*, *leue*, *leyfe*, a. [OE. *lēof*], 5, 1305, 1377; *lese*, inf. [OE. *lēosan*], 434; *se(e)*, inf., 2, 7, 128, 131, 707, etc.; *seke*, a. [OE. *sēoc*], 950; *stere*, inf. [OE. *stēoran*], 289; *tene*, *teyne*, s., a. and inf. [OE. *tēona*, resp. *tēonian*], 16, 577, 669, 729, 889, 908, 987, 1109, 1117, 1166, 1180, 1185, 1197, 1207, 1244, 1288, 1317, 1469, etc.; *thre*, num., 19, 23, 48, 83, etc.; *tre(e)*, *tress*, s., 13, 16, 47, 528, etc.

[1]) As to etymology cf. STRANDBERG, op. cit. p. 230.

e) *OE. ĕo* when lengthened before *-rð* : *erthe* s. [OE. *ēorðe*] : faurth, *L* erth: fourt, 1500.

We do not hesitate to assume a long *ē* in *erthe* and thus to place it here. Eilers, op. cit. p. 43, adduces the same rime, in the case of Cursor Mundi, but says, »Dieser kann uns nichts inbetreff der Quantität beweisen.» Strandberg, op. cit. p. 137, who also deals with the rimes of the latter text, takes the spelling *feirth* into consideration and seems inclined to regard this as a criterion of *e*. At any rate a regular phonetic development requires a long close *ē* in this ordinal numeral (cf. OE. *fēorða*).

f) *OAngl. ĕ*, by smoothing; *ner(r)e*, a. and adv., 12, 23, 648, 693, 766, 988, 1071, 1077, 1083, 1098, 1120, 1137, 1144, 1232, 1253, 1293, 1298, 1319, 1356, 1392, 1394, 1416, 1426, 1493, 1516, 1531, etc.

g) *OAngl. ē* (*ēo*, *ēa*) + *final -h* (from *-h* or *-ȝ*) : *the*, s. 'thigh' [OE. *þēoh*, OAngl. *þēoh*), 670. — Cf. p. cxxxi.

h) *OScand. é, œ́, ió, iú: se(y)re, sayre*, a. [OScand. *sér*], 7, 12, 21, 32, 64, 80, 671, 860, 874, 925, 1098, 1104, 1135, 1137, 1151, 1175, 1183, 1187, 1204, 1232, 1237, 1293, 1372, 1394, 1416, 1443, 1476, 1493, 1503, 1516, etc.; *fere*, a. [OScand *fœ́rr*], 1143; *vnfere*, a. 917; *seme* inf., *semyd* pt. [OScand. *sœ́ma*], 396, 683, 714, 1231, etc.; *skele*, s. [OScand. *skióla*, 'pail'], 921; *meke*, a. and inf. [OScand. *miúkr*], 419, 950.

i) *OE. ĕ* when lenghtened: *wele, well, uell*, adv.: dele s., 96, 252, 341, 431, 503; : ȝele, s.: fele, vb.: ⌣ : dele, s., 127; : dele, s.: ⌣ : fele, vb., 222, etc.

j) *OAngl. e, WSax. ie* (*by palatal diphthongization*) before *-ld: ȝele*, s. [OE. *gield*] :fele, inf. : : well, adv. : dele, s., 127.

In all cases of ME. *ĕ* quoted above we have only to do with words undoubtedly containing close *ę̄*. It is also certain that the words riming with them had or could have close *ē* in ME.

k) *AN. e* or *OF. e, ie: apeyre, appeyre, apere*, inf., 18, 163, 165, 397, 766, 1237, 1394, 1237, 1394, 1459, etc.; *bachelers, s.*, 853; *bewty*, s., 128; *bonite* s., 822; *bounte*, s., 911; *brefe*, s. and a., 1305, 1377; *cety, C-, cetyse, C, ceteyse, C-, cyte*, s., 37, 267, 434, 538, etc.; *charite, charete*, s., 909, 1192, 1268, 1413; *comonalite*, s., 933; *commynte*, s., 845; *chefe, schefe*, s., 5, 593, 1377; *cher(e)*, s., 21, 40, 51, 328, 492, 526, 611, 693, 874, 920, 925, 1071, 1077, 1083, 1098, 1183, 1187, 1237, 1359, 1364, 1392, 1394, 1446, 1448, 1459, 1491, 1493, 1503, etc.; *clere*, a., 7, 12, 32, 286, 860, 920, 1083, 1204, 1232, 1298, 1359, 1360, 1426, 1459, 1479, etc.; *conquere*, inf., 671, 1120, 1151, 1448; *cress*, s. : chese,

inf. 13; *creue*, inf., 1182; *cuntre(e)*, s., 11, 38, 82, 484, etc.; *decre*, s., 648; *degre(e)*, s., 2, 7, 16, 23, 37, etc.; *dyuinite* s., 2; *enquere*, *inquere*, inf., 51, 332, 353, 766, 1098, etc.; *entre*, s., 240, 464; *gre*, s., 484; *grefe*, *greue*, s., 1305, 1377; *greue*, inf. and pr., *-s*, pr., *greued(e)*, pt., 145, 181, 198, 238, 564, 699, 1041, 1453, etc.; *lewte*, s., 487; *maner(e)*, s., 2, 7, 18, 122, 332, 587, 1151, 1187, 1204, 1339, 1446, 1479, etc.; *mayntene*, *maynteyn*, inf., 853, 1414, 1521, etc.; *mede*, n. pr., 1302; *men(eȝ)e*, *menyhe*, s., 50, 538, 1129, etc.; *messynger*, s., 48, 611, 1183; *meue*, *mefe*, inf., *meued*, *meuyd*, pt., p. p., 145, 238, 564, 699, 1047, 1182, 1453, etc.; *mone*, 1076; *moynay*, s.: be, inf., 1307; *myschefe*, *myscheve*, s., *myscheued*, pt., p. p., 14, 145, 181, 238, 437, 532, 564, 1047, 1239, 1305, etc.; *paynym(s)*, s.: : clene, 385, 386; : qwennes, s., 835; etc.; *pauste*, *pawste*, *powste*, s., 11, 770, 1194, 1208, etc.; *pertene*, inf., 827; *pere*, *peyre*, s., 801, 1151, 1175, 1443, etc.; *pyte*, *pety*, *pete*, s. : he: see : me *L* pitee, 707; 820; 1246, etc.; *phylysteyn(e)*, *-s*, n. pr. : menys, pr., 311; : bene, p. p., 472; 519, 767; *plente*, *plenty*, s., 26, 30, 82, 89, etc.; *pouerte*, s., 179; *power(e)*, s., 219, 251, 498, 565, 660, 671, 1127, 1183, 1418, 1479, 1491, etc.; *prayer*, s., 302, 988, 1364; *priuate*, *priuete*, *preuyte*, *preuyty*, s. : plente, 30, 698, 978, etc.; *releue*, s. and inf., *-s*, pr. 145, 1041, 1047, etc.; *re[leu]ed*, pt. : greuede; *L* releved: greved 198; 570, 748, etc.; *ryalte*, s., 567, 991, 1162; *ryuer*, 1319; *se*, s. 'see', 1129; *selere*, s., 302; *semle*, s., 1378; *sewrt(y)e*, s., 712, 1294; *sopere*, s. 1338; *sotelte*, s. 15, 1037; *solempnite*, s., 320, 631; *specialte*, s., 633; *Synophogy*, s., 830; *trinite*, s. 48.

All the foreign words given above are here only rimed with forms containing close $\bar{e}$. Words ending in *-y* are proved by the rimes originally to have contained $\bar{e}$. It is noteworthy that the poet also rimed *Ierusalem* with forms having open $\bar{e}$. Cf. p. LXXXII.

l) *Foreign proper names: Assuere* : lere, inf.: were, s. : ⌣ : sere, a., 1372; *barsabe*, 614; *Carmele* : wele, adv., 940; *Cirre*, 704; *Core* : be: fee, s.: hee, pron., 184, etc.; *elyachym* : deme: breme: seme, 1423; *gabell*, 1308; *galale*, 1269; *godole*, 1012, 1101; : he, pron. : mene, s.: se, s., 1129; *gylboy* : he, pron., 591; *ierusalem* : tene, inf., 987; *jesse* : glee, s. : hee, pron.: bee, inf., 499; 571, etc.; *Josue*, *j-* : thre, num.: flee, inf.: hee, pron., 161, 567, etc.; *lye* : thre, num., 83; 502; *Mambre* : tre : ⌣ see : be, 47; *manasse*, 643; *Matussile* : noe, n. pr.: thre : degree, 23; *mede*, 1302; *noe* : Matussile : thre : degree, 23; *Nobbe*, 538, 554; *Nynyue*, *Neneuye*, 1155, 1367; *occoȝe*, 1012; *thare* : thre : degree : free, 33,

m) *Latin loan-words : domine*, 770, 1246; *gloriose*, 155; *muliere*, 1244; *tempore*, 1244.

n) *OE.* $\bar{æ}^2$ = WS. $\bar{æ}$, *OAngl.* $\bar{e}$ < *WGerm.* $\bar{a}$: *bere*, s. 'outcry': dere, a.: inquere : ⌣ : chere, s., 51; *bere*, s. 'bier' : sere a. : chere, s. : were, s., 925; : power, s.: ⌣ : dere, a.: here, inf., 1127; : power, s.: ⌣ : sere, a.: messynger, 1183; : were, s: nere, adv.: dere, a., 1531; *ded(e)(s)*, s. 'deed', 64, 104, 133, 288; : hede, s. 'heed' : spede, s.: lede, inf., 160; : ȝede: fede, inf.: lede, inf., 315; 328, 363, 385, 460, 487, 515, 523, 527, 612, 665, 683, 695, 720, 722, 759, 771, 793, 797, 823, 863, 941, 959, 967, 1002, 1015, 1044, 1052, 1153, 1171, 1191, 1209, 1223, 1260, 1281, 1288, 1296, 1312, 1320, 1330, 1360, 1378, 1382, 1410, 1419, 1423, 1476, 1480, 1490, 1509, etc.; *dred(e)*, s., 88; : lede, s. 'people': ⌣ : fede, inf.: nede, s., 125; : spede, inf. : ȝode, pt. : fede, inf., 313; 133, 328, 461, 468, 471, 487, 515, 523, 543, 554, 635, 695, 728, 771, 813, 959, 1002, 1178, 1180, 1260, 1281, 1325, 1330, 1410, 1423, 1486, 1506, 1509; *ette*, pt. pl. [OAngl. *ēton*, pt. pl.] : swett, a. 329; ȝer(e), s., 21, 23, 48, 64, 1006; : sere, a.: dere, a.: lere, inf., 1135; : dere, a., 1170; 1476, 1516, etc.; *let(e)*, *lett(e)*, vb. 'pretend' : fete, s., 130; 355, 1098, 1319; *mett(e)*, *a.* [OAngl. ȝem*ē*te], 250, 781; *rede*, vb. 'read', 12; : spede, s.: mede, s.: nede : ⌣, s., 371; 385, 468, 722, 1005, 1178, 1191, 1480, etc.; *schep(e)*, s. : kepe, inf., 89, 506; 697, 1177, etc.; *sed(e)*, s. 'seed', 10, 35, 42, 88; : dede, s.: presthed, s.: lede, inf., 460; 665, 1330, 1506; *se(e)le*, *seyle*, s., 550, 661, 676, 731, 741; : wele, adv.: fele, inf.: ⌣ : stele, s., 925; 931, 1166, 1220, 1325, 1351; *vnsele*, s., 363, 905, 1209, 1241; *slepe*, s. and inf. : kepe, inf., 391, 581; 937, 943; : schep, s.: kepe, inf.: depe, a. : ⌣, 1179; 1462, etc.; *slepyd*, p. p., 1050; *strett(e)*, s. : mett, pr. : ⌣ : fette, s.: hete, pr., 748; 285, 330, 926, 1113; *thred*, s.: ȝede, pt., 97; *were*, pt. pl. and sg. conj. : here, adv. : nere, a. : here, inf., 34; : heyre, adv.: ȝere, s.: sere, a., 64; 174, 1426, 1493, etc.; *wede*, *wedys*, s. : ȝede, pt. 369; 545, 1356, 1403, 1476; *wett*, a. :fette, s.: ⌣ : hette, inf. : strette, s. 285;

It is evident that all the words given above contain close *e* in our text, since they rime only with words containing close $\bar{e}$. If we compare this result with that of STRANDBERG op. cit. p. 108, we shall find that, in the case of words in *-ēd* in Cursor Mundi, he presumes close $\bar{e}$ mostly in *drede*, s., in all its significations, and in *wede*, s. 'clothes'. But on the other hand he says that, »*Red*= 'counsel,' 'help' and as a verb = 'advise', 'save', must have had *open* $\bar{e}$, to judge by the great number of rimes with $\bar{e}$.»

o) *OE* $\bar{æ}^1$ < *WGerm. ai* + *i*-mutation: *brede*, s. : lede, inf.: ⌣ : fede,

inf. : sede, s., 42; : nede, s.: spede, s.: hede, s., 176; : drede, s., 543; : dede, s.: hede, s.: ∽ : nede, s., 793; : drede, s.: dede, s.: ∽ : hede, s., 1410; *cle(y)ne*, a. : sene, p. p. : ∽ : bene, p. p.: be twene, 55; 168; : paynym, s.: ∽ : bene, p. p.: be mene, inf., 386; : be dene, adv.: grene, a. : wene, s., 194; : bene, p. p.: sene, p. p. : wene, pr., 195; : bene, p. p.: betwene, prep. : kene, a., 361; : seyne, p. p.: ∽ : be mene, inf.: bene, p. p., 427; : be dene adv.: kene, a.: sene, p. p., 640; : qwene, s. 'queen' : betwen, prep. : ∽ : sene, p. p., 680; : kene, a. : wene, s. : ∽ : meyne, inf., 746; :wene, s. : bene p. p. : kene : ∽, a., 780; : sene, p. p. : keyne, a. : be meyne, inf., 787; : grene, a. : ∽ : bene, p. p.: sene, p. p., 918; : sene, p. p., 1042; : be dene, adv.: sene, p. p.: kene : ∽, a., 1074; : mene, inf. : ∽ : be dene, adv. : bene, p. p., 1102; : sene, p. p.: ∽ : mene inf.: be dene, 1174; : tene, s.: ∽ : bene, p. p.: sene, 1185; : be dene, adv., 1193; : wene, inf. : ∽ : sene, p. p.: mene, inf., 1234; : sene, p. p., 1246; : weyne, s. : ∽ : seyne, p, p. : teyne, s., 1317; : seyn, 1326; : seyne, p. p.: ∽ : be dene, adv.: weyne, inf., 1359; : meyne, pr.: ∽ : kene, a.: sene, p. p., 1373; : be deyne, adv., 1419; : bene, p. p. : ∽ : be twene, prep.: sene, p. p., 1456; : teyne, s. : beyne, p. p.: ∽ : seyne, p. p., 1469; : seyne, p. p.: meyne, inf. : be tweyne, prep. : ∽, 1487; kene, a.: ∽ : seyne, p. p.: mene, inf., 1500; : maynteyn, inf.: ∽ : seyn, p. p., be meyn, inf., 1521, etc.; *vnclene*, a. : sene, p. p., 147; *de(y)le*, s. : fele, inf., 18, 589; : ȝele, s. : fele, inf. : well, adv. : ∽, 127; : wele, adv.: ∽ : well : fele, inf., 222; : wele, adv., 96, 252, 341, 431, 503, 732, 938, 970, 1050, 1224, 1330, 1397; : vn sele, s.: wele adv. : fele, inf. : ∽, 363; : well, adv.: fele inf.: sele, s., 550; : well, adv.: sele, s.: fele, a., 572; : fele, inf., 589; : seyle, s. 661; : fele, inf. : ∽ : well, adv.: sele s., 676; : well, adv.: hele, s. ' heel' : sele, s., 741; : wele, adv.: ∽ : vnsele, s.: fele, inf., 905; : wele, adv.: ∽ : sele, s.: fele, inf., 931; : seele, s.: ∽ : wele, adv.: fele, pr., 1166; : styele, s. : ∽ : fele, pr.: wele, adv., 1206; : wele, adv.: sele, s.: ∽ : fele, inf., 1220; : fele, pr. : vnsele, s. : ∽ : wele, adv., 1241; : wele, adv. : fele, inf.: sele, s., 1320; : wele, adv.: heyle, s. 'heel' : ∽ : mele, s., 1322; : fele, inf.: ∽ : sele, s. : wele, adv., 1325; : sele, s. : fele, inf. : wele, adv. : ∽, 1351; : knele, pr. : kele, inf.: wele, adv. : ∽, 1466, etc. ; *-hed: fayrhed(e)*, s. : lede, inf. : ∽ : dede, s. : sped, s., 104; : dede, s. : lede, inf. : dred, s., 515; *manhed*, s. : dred, s. : ∽ : ȝode, pt.: lede, inf., 461; *presthed*, s. : dede, s.: sede, s. : ∽ : lede, inf., 460; *het(t)e*, s. 'heat': bete, inf.: fette, s.: sweytt, a. : ∽, 344; 781; : fete, s. : ∽ : mete, inf.: bete, inf., 1024; : wete, s., 1054; : mete, a.: grett, inf.: fete, s. : ∽, 1492; *led(e)*, inf., imp , and pr., *-s*, pr. : brede, inf.: sede, s. : fede, inf. : ∽, 10; : nede, s.: rede, inf.: bred, inf., 12; : nedes, pr., 32; : brede, s.: fede,

inf.: sede, s., 42; : fayrhed, s. : dede, s. : sped, s., 104; : drede, s.: led, s.: ȝode, pt. : ⌣, 263; : dede, s., 288; : dede, s.: ȝede, pt.: fede, inf. : ⌣, 315; : dede, s.: ⌣ : hede, s.: rede, pr., 385; : hede, s.: ⌣ : bede, inf.: nede, s., 425; : dede, s.: sede, s.: presthed, s. : ⌣, 460; : dred, s. : manhed, s. : ȝode, pt. : ⌣, 461; : dred, s.: ⌣ : rede, pr.: spede, inf., 468; : fayrhede, s.: dede, s.: ⌣ : dred, s., 515; : dede, s.: drede, s.: ⌣ : spede, inf., 523; : dede, s. 'deed', 550; : drede, s., 635; : dede, s.: ⌣ : spede, s.: nede, s., 720; : nede, s.: drede, s.: spede, inf. : ⌣, 728; : med, s. : ⌣ : spede, inf. : dede, s., 797; : nede, s.: sped, s.: hede, s. : ⌣, 800; : sped, s.: ned, s.: dred, s. : ⌣, 813; : dede, s.: ⌣ : dred, s.: ȝede, pt., 1281; : mede, n. pr.: ȝede, pt.: ⌣ : hede, s., 1302; : ȝede, pt., 1308; : hed, s.: ⌣ : spede, s.: dred, s., 1325; : ȝode, pt., 1347; : for bede, imp.: wede, s.: fede, inf. : ⌣, 1356; : spede, inf.: dede, s.: mede, s., 1378; : dede, s., 1382; : mede, s. : wede, s. : sted, s. : ⌣, 1403; : dede, s. : ⌣ : hede, s. : ȝede, pt., 1419; : mysdede, s., 1429; : hede, s. : ⌣ : sped, s. : ȝede, pt., 1443; *le(e)re*, *leyre*, inf., *lerys*, pr. : maner, s., 2; : clere, a.: here, adv. : sere, a. : ⌣, 32; : nere, a. : apeyre, inf. : ⌣ : sere, a., 163; : power(e), s., 219, 660, 1418; : sere, a. : dere, s.: ⌣ : apeyre, 321; : enquere, inf.: ⌣ : fere, s.: manere, s., 332; : nere, a.: chere, s.: heyre, adv. : ⌣, 693; : sere, adv., : clere, a.: fere, s.: ⌣, 860; : here, inf., 872; : fere, s.: chere, s.: sere, a. : ⌣, 874; : here, inf.: ⌣ : chere, s.: clere, a., 920; : here, inf., 1029; : here, adv., 1040; : nere, adv.: chere, s. : fere, s., 1071; : here, inf.: dere, a.: sere, a., 1104; : ȝer, s. : sere, a.: dere, a. : ⌣, 1135; : dere, a. : sere, a. : nere, a., 1137; : here, inf.: sere, a.: ⌣ : pere, s., 1175; : chere, s., 1183; : clere, a.: ⌣ : nere, a. : enquere, inf., 1298; : fere, s.: manere, s.: ⌣ : prayer, s., 1339; : were, s.: Assuere, n. pr. : sere a., 1372; : nere, adv. : fere, a.: sere, a. : ⌣, 1416; : clere, a.: were, pt.: nere, adv. : ⌣, 1426; : here, inf.: chere, s.: manere, s. : ⌣, 1446; : were, s.: sere, a.: ⌣ : ȝere, s., 1476; : power s. : manere, s. : clere, a. : ⌣, 1479, etc.; *me(y)n(e)*, inf. and pr., *-ys*, pr.: wene, s.: sen, p. p.: ⌣ : tene, s., 16; phylysteyns, n. pr., 311; : clene, a., 327; : sene, p. p.: bene, p. p. : teyne, s. : ⌣, 577; : sene, p. p., 699; : kene, a.: sene, p. p.: ⌣ : teyne, s., 729; : kene, a.: wene, s.: clene, adv. : ⌣, 746; : be dene, adv.: sene, p. p.: wene, inf. : ⌣, 864; : bene, p. p.: wene, s.: ⌣ : qwene, s., 914; : bene, p. p.: be dene, adv.: sene, p. p., 921; : bene, p. p.: be dene, adv.: sene, p. p. : ⌣, 990; : wene, inf.: be twene, prep.: sene, p.p. : ⌣, 1036; : clene, a.: be dene, adv.: bene, p. p., 1102; : sene, p. p.: clene, a.: ⌣ : be dene, adv., 1174; : sene, p. p.: tene, s.: ⌣ : keyn, a., 1207; : be twene, prep. : bene, p. p. : sene, p. p., 1214; : sene, p. p. : clene, a.: ⌣ : tene, s.,

1218; : be twene, prep., 1229; : wene, inf. : clene a. : sene, p. p. : ⌣, 1234; : be dene, adv., 1261; : wene, s.: teyne, s.: ⌣ : sene, p. p., 1288; : qweyne, s., 1376; 1394; : cleyne, a. : kene, a., : sene, p. p., 1373; : beyn, p. p., 1383; : kene, a.: clene, adv.: seyne, p. p. : ⌣, 1500; *be me(y)ne*, inf.: clene, a.: paynym, s.: bene, p. p. : ⌣, 386; : seyne, p. p.: clene, a.: ⌣ : bene, p. p., 427; : clene, a.: sene, p. p.: keyne, a. : ⌣, 787; : qweyne, s.: be deyne, adv.: seyne, p. p., 1405; : maynteyn, inf.: clene, a.: seyn, p. p. : ⌣, 1521; *se(e)*, s. 'sea' : me, pron.: ⌣ : thre, num.: be, inf., 25; : josue, n. pr., 214; : he, pron. 877; : thre, 1164; : free, a.: þe: Cyte, s., 1429; : cuntre, s.: ⌣ : be, inf.: he, pron., 1525.

All the rimes given above prove conclusively that the following words with OE. $\bar{a}$ < WT. *ai* + *i*-mutation contained close $\bar{e}$ in our text, viz.: *brede*, s., *cleyne*, a., *dele*, s., *hete*, s., *lede*, inf., *lere*, inf., *meyne*, inf. and the suffix *-hed*. (cf. § 16, where also *-hēd* is proved to have existed). We are thus in agreement with Strandberg (op. cit.), who states that *OE* $\bar{a}^1 + d$, including the suffix *-hed*, *OE.* $\bar{a}^1$ before *n*, *del* s., and *lere*, inf. had a close pronunciation in the dialect of Cursor Mundi. As to *se(e)*, s. 'sea', it only rimes with words ending in close $\bar{e}$ in our text. Luick, Unters., p. 350, looks upon such rimes as inaccurate, assuming that *see* had the phonetic value of *sē* and ascribing the rimes to the vareness of words ending in an open $\bar{e}$.

p) OE. i, y lengthened in an open syllable *:-schepe : feleschepe*, s. : kepe, inf., 268; *wrschepe*, s.: wepe, inf. : crepe, inf. : ⌣, 1353; *stere*, inf. [OL. *styrian*] : apeyre, inf. : dere, a. : chere, s., 295.

These rimes prove that, in the above words, OE. short *i, y* in an open syllable had passed into $\bar{e}$.

§ 13. *ME. -eld.*

a) OAngl. e = WSax. ie < *OTeut. a + ld + i-mutation : beld(e)*, s. : ȝelde : eld, s. : ⌣ : weld, inf., 43; : eld, s. : be held, pt. : weld, inf., 134 : weld, inf. : feld, s.: ⌣ : beheld pt., 409; : feyld, s. : weld, inf. : vn weld, a. : ⌣, 618; : teld, s. : weld, inf. : ⌣ : feld, s., 664; : eld, s., 669; : be held, pt. : ȝeld, inf. : ⌣ : feld, s., 677; : vnweld, a. : eld, s. : keled, p. p. : ⌣, 780; : kneled, p. p. : ⌣ : eld, s. : weld, inf., 806; : feld, pt. 'felt' : ȝeld, inf. : weld, inf. : ⌣, 867; : weld, s. : feld, pt. 'felt' : eld, s. : ⌣, 994; : feld, p. p. 'felt' : eld, s. : ⌣ : ȝeld, inf., 1213; : kneled, pt., 1358; : eld, s. : felyd, pt

'felt' : ⌣ : weld, inf., 1366; : weld, inf. : sheld, s. : ȝeld, inf. : ⌣, 1431; : feld, s., 1440; : weld, inf. : eld, inf. : ⌣ :feld, s., 1447, etc.: *beld*, inf. : beheld, pt. : scheld, s. : ⌣ : feld, s., 479; : kneled, pt., 551; : beheld, pt. : ⌣ : held, inf. : feld, s., 740; : kneled, pt., 936; : ⌣ : weld, inf. : feld, s. : ȝeld, inf., 983; : feld, s., : weld, pr. : ⌣ : ȝeld, inf., 1427; : kneled, pt., 1444, etc.; *eld*, s. : ȝelde, inf. : ⌣ : beld, s. : weld, inf., 43; : weld, s. : be held, inf. : ⌣ : ȝeld, inf., 119; : belde, s. : ⌣ : be held, pt. : weld, inf., 134; : feld, s., 615; : beld, s., 669; : vnweld, a. : ⌣ : keled, p. p. : beld, s., 780; : kneled, pt. : beld, s. : ⌣ : weld, , inf., 806; : held, inf. : feld, s. : weld, inf. : ⌣ , 833, : weld, s. : feld, pt. 'felt' : ⌣ : beld, s., 994; : weld, inf. : beld, s. : ⌣ : beheld, pt., 1019; : ⌣ : feld, s. : scheld, s. : weld, s., 1111; : feld, p. p. 'felt' : ⌣ : beld, s. : ȝeld, inf., 1213; : ⌣ : felyd, pt. 'felt' : beld, s. : weld, inf., 1366, etc.; *weld*, s. : be held, inf. : eld, s. : ȝeld, inf., 119; : feld, pt. 'felt' : eld, : beld; s., 994; : eld, s. : feld, s. : scheld, s. : ⌣, 1111; *vn weld*, a. : eld, s., 68; : feyld, s. : weld, inf. : beld, s., 618; : eld, s. : keled, p.p. : beld, s., 780; *weld*, inf. and pr. : beld, s. : ȝelde, inf. : eld, s., 43; : eld, s. : beld, s. : be held, pt., 134; : beld, s. : beheld, pt. : ⌣ : feld, s., 409; : feyld, s. : ⌣ : vnweld, a. : beld, s., 618; : teld, s. : ⌣ : beld, s. : feld, s., 664; : kneled, p.p. : beld, s. : eld, s. : ⌣, 806; : eld: ⌣ : feld, s. : held, inf., 833; : feld, pt. 'felt' : ȝeld, inf; : ⌣ : beld, s., 867; : feld, s., 1051, 1119; : beld inf. : ⌣ : feld, s. : ȝeld, inf., 983; : eld, s. : felyd, pt. 'felt' : beld, s. : ⌣ , 1366; : feld, s. : ⌣ : beld, inf. : ȝeld, inf., 1427; : sheld, s. : ȝeld, inf. : beld, s., 1431; ⌣ : ȝeld, inf. : beld, s. : feld, s., 1447, etc.

b) *OAngl. e* = *WSax. ie* (*by palatal diphthongization*) : *ȝeld*(*e*), inf. and pr. : eld, s. : beld, s. : weld, inf., 43; : be held, pt. : ⌣ : beld, s. : feld, s., 677; : feld, pt. 'felt' : ⌣ : weld, inf. : beld, s., 867; : beld, inf. : weld, inf. : feld, s. : ⌣, 983; : feld, p. p. 'felt' : eld, s. : beld, s. : ⌣, 1213; : kneled, pt., 1407; : feld, s. : weld, pr. : beld, inf. : ⌣, 1427; : weld, inf. : sheld, s. : ⌣ : beld, s., 1431; : beld, inf., 1442; weld, inf. : ⌣ : beld, s. : feld, s., 1447, etc.; *scheld*, *sheld*, s. : beld, s. : weld, inf. : ⌣ : feld, s., 402; : beheld, pt. : ⌣ : beld, inf. : feld, s., 479; : eld, s. : feld, s. : ⌣ : weld, s., 1111; : weld, inf. : ⌣ : ȝeld, inf. : beld, s., 1431, etc.

c) *OE. e* < *OTeut. e* : *feld*, s. : beheld, pt., 57; : weld, inf., : ⌣ : beld, s. : beheld, pt., 409; : beheld, pt. : scheld, s. : beld, inf., 479; : eld, s., 615; : teld, s. : weld, inf. : beld, s. : ⌣, 664; : teld, s., 673;

: be held, pt. : ȝeld, inf. : beld, s. : ∽, 677; : beheld, pt. : beld, inf. : held, inf. : ∽, 740; : eld, s. : weld, inf. : ∽ : held, inf., 833; : beheld, pt., 949; : weld, inf., 959; : beld, inf. : weld, inf. : ∽ : ȝeld, inf., 983; : weld, inf., 1051; : eld, s. : ∽ : scheld, s. : weld, s., 1111; : weld, inf., 1119; ∽ : weld, pr. : beld, inf. : ȝeld, inf., 1427; : beld, s., 1440; : weld, inf. : ȝeld, inf. : beld, s. : ∽, 1447, etc.; *teld*, s., 136; : weld, inf. : beld, s. : feld, s., 664; : feld, s., 673, etc.; *teld*, inf. : weld, inf. : ∽ : scheld, s., : feld, s., 252.

d) *OE. e* ‹*OTeut. ă* + *i-mutation: dweld, dwelled*, pt. : feld, pt. 'felled' : vnteld, p. p. : held, pt. : ∽, 266; : feld, pt. 'felled', 544; : held, pt., 851, 925; : feld, p. p. ∽ : meld, p. p. : teld, p. p., 1062, etc.; *feld, felled*, pt., p. p., 'felled' : dweld, pt. : ∽ : vnteld, p. p. : held, pt., 266; : dwelled, pt., 544; : held, pt., 400, 473; ∽ : dweld, pt. : meld, p. p. : teld, p. p., 1062; : keld, p. p., 1067; *sold*, pt. : feld, p. p. : held, pt. : meld, pt. : ∽, 473; *teld(e)*, p. p. : feld, p. p. 'felled' : dweld, pt. : meld, p. p. : ∽, 1062; : be held, pt., 1504; *vnteld*, p. p. 'untold' : feld, pt. 'felled' : ∽ : held, pt. : dweld, pt., 266.

e) *OE.* $\bar{e}$ ‹ $\bar{o}$ + *i-mutation*: *feld, feyld, felyd*, pt., p. p. 'felt' : ȝeld, inf. : weld, inf. : beld, s., 867; : weld, s. : ∽ : eld, s. : beld, s., 994; : ∽ : eld, s. : beld, s. : ȝeld, inf., 1213; : eld, s. : ∽ : beld, s. : weld, inf., 1366; ∽ : weld, inf. : be held, pt. : beld, inf., 1396; etc.; *kel(e)d*, p. p. : vnweld, a. : eld, s. : ∽ : beld, s., 780; : feld, 'felled' p. p., 1067.

f) *OE. ēo: held*, pt., p. p. : feld, pt. : vnteld, p. p. : ∽ : dweld, pt., 266; : feld, p. p. 'felled', 400; : feld, p. p., 473; : dweld, 851, 925, etc.; *held*, inf. 'hold' [from the preterite *held*], 100; : beheld, pt. : feld, s. : ∽ : weld, inf., 100; : beheld, pt. : beld, inf. : ∽ : feld, s., 740; : feld, s. : weld, inf. : eld, s., 833; *be held*, pt. : feld, s., 57; : weld, s. : ∽ : eld, s. : ȝeld, inf., 119; : weld, inf. : feld, s. : beld, s., : ∽, 409; : scheld, s. : beld, inf. : feld, s., 479; ∽ : ȝeld, inf. : beld, s. : feld, s., 677; : feld, s., 949; : weld, inf. : beld, s. : eld, s. : ∽, 1019; : kneled, pt., 1189; : feld, pt. 'felt' : weld, inf. : ∽ : beld, inf., 1396; : teld, pt., 1504, etc.; *knel(e)d*, pt., p. p. : beld, inf., 551; ∽ : beld, s. : eld, s. : weld, inf., 806; : beld, inf., 936, 1444; : beld, s., 1358; : ȝeld, pr., 1407; : be held, pt., 1189.

g) *AN.* or *OF. e*: *meld, melled*, pt., p. p. : feld, p. p. : held, pt. : ∽ : sold, pt., 473; : feld, p. p. : dweld, pt. : ∽ : teld, p. p., 1062.

In studying all the rime-lists above we notice that the preter-

ites and past participles *dweld*, *feld* 'felled', *meld*, *sold*, *teld*, *vnteld*, *held* are always rimed with themselves only, but, apart from *feld* pt., which rimes once with *keled* (f. OE. *cēlan*), p. p., 1067, not with words which originally contained long *ē*. The forms *dwel(e)d*, *seld* and *teld* are late new-formations for OAngl. *dwalde*, *salde*, *talde* and did not exist at the time when *e* was lengthened before *ld*; and *feld*, pt. 'felled', had always short *e* in OE. Therefore all these rimes undoubtedly involve short *e* in the poet's language. As to the preterite *held*, OE. *hēold*, pt., it no doubt presents a shortened *e* as is intimated by the rimes. Yet note *beheld*, pt., with long *ē* below. Cf. Luick, HGE § 429 :4, where he gives a number of words with a shortened vowel before a lengthening consonant-group.

The other words, *beld*, s. and inf., *eld*, s., *weld*, s. and inf., *vnweld*, a., *ȝeld*, inf., *sheld*, s., *feld*, s., *teld*, s. and vb., *feld*, pt. 'felt', *held*, inf., *knel(e)d*, pt., and *beheld*, pt., are not rimed with the above preterites and participles; they are only rimed with words which in OE. contained long close *e*, and with themselves. In the case of these words we must therefore assume long close *e* in the dialect of our poem. As to *kel(e)d*, pt., it occurs in two rimes only, one with a short and one with a long *e*. From this fact we cannot draw any definite conclusion as to the vowel-quantity of the word, but it is likely that the vowel was long, so that the rime *feld* : *keled*, 1067, was incorrect. Eilers and Strandberg have arrived at much the same conclusions as regards *-eld* in their respective dialects; in *beheld*, pt., they presuppose both *ē* und *ĕ*.

§ 14. *ME. -end.*

a) *OE. ēo*, *ē* : *fend(e)*, *feynd*, s., 19, 180, 506; : wende, inf., 475; : hende, a. : frend, s. : schend, inf., 535; : ⌣ : frend, s. : shend, inf. : ende, s., 737; : end, pt. : mend, pt. : shend, inf. : ⌣, 914; : ⌣ : shend, p. p. : hende, a. : end, s., 940; : wend, inf., 1003; : end, s., 1091; : end, s. : ⌣ : remynd L remend, p. p. : tend, s., 1241; : hend, a. : ⌣ : wend, inf. : frend, s., 1243; : shende, inf. : ende, s. : wende, inf., 1326, etc.; *frend*, s., *-es*, pl. : wend, inf., 149, 503; : schend, inf., 521; : hende, a. : ⌣ : wende, inf. : lende, pr., 526; : wend, pt., 537; : schend, inf. : wend, inf. : tened, p. p. : ⌣, 547; : wende, inf., 556; : wendes, pr., 579; : wend, inf., 590; : shendes, pr., 597; : lendes, pr., 700; : wendes, pr., 716; : hend, a. : mende, pt. 'ment' : wende, inf., 725;

fend, s. : ⌣ : shend, inf. : ende, s., 737; : end, s. : wende, inf. : wend, inf. : ⌣, 756; : ⌣ : lende, inf. : shend, inf. : hend, a., 799; : shend, inf. : hend, a. : wend, inf., 903; : ⌣ : lend, inf. : wende, inf. : end, s . , 846; : tend, s., 862; : ⌣ : lend, inf. : end, s. : wend, inf., 943; ⌣ : tend, p. p. : lend, inf. : end, s., 966; : end, s. : ⌣ : hend, a. : lend, inf., 974; : lend, inf. : wend, inf. : ⌣ : shend, inf., 1122; : lendes, pr., 1199; : vnhend, a., 1056; : wend, inf., 1251; : wend, inf. : ⌣ : hend, a. : lend, inf., 1302, etc.; *tend, tened*, p. p. [OE. *tēon(i)an*] : schend, inf. 366; : schend, inf. : wend, inf. : ⌣ : frend, s., 547; : frend, s. : ⌣ : lend, inf. : end, s., 966; : wend, inf. : end, s. : ⌣ : shend, inf., 997; *tend, teynd*, s. [Cf. N. E. D.] 'tenth' : end, s. : ⌣ : frend, s. : lend, inf., 217; : wende, inf., 821; : frend, s., 862; : end, s. : fend, s. : remynd, L remend, p. p. : ⌣, 1241; *wend, wened*, pt. [OE. *wēnan*] : kend, pt. : dyscend, pt. : ⌣ : end, s., 222; : lende, inf. : ⌣ : kend, p. p. : mend, inf., 498; : dyffend, pr., 883, etc.

b) *OE. e* < *OTeut. a* + *i-mutation*, and *ME. e* in '*blend*', *s.* and *vb.*: *bend*, s. : end : kend : send, 107; *bend*, pt., p. p. : hend, s. : send, inf. : mend, inf., 912; : dyffend, inf. : ⌣ : lend, inf. : mend, inf., 1422; *blend*, s. and p. p. : mend, inf. : wend, inf. : lend, inf., 451; : hende, s. : descende, inf. : kynd, *L* kend : ⌣ , 495; : dyffend, inf. : lend, inf. : kend, pt., 762; *end*(*e*), s. and inf. : send, imp., 1; : kend, p. p. : wende, inf. : Amend, inf. : ⌣, 11; : bend, s. : ⌣ : kend, pt. : send, inf., 107; : fend, s. : frend, s. : shend, inf. : ⌣ , 737; : kend, pt. : send, pt. : lend, inf. : ⌣ , 790; : lend, inf., 801; : hend, s. : mend, inf.: send, p. p. : ⌣ , 828; : frend, s. : lend, inf. : wende, inf. : ⌣ , 846; : ⌣ : lend, inf. : dyffend, inf. : kend, pt., 848; : fend, inf. : kend, pt. : ⌣ : lend, inf., 907; : fend, inf. : send, pr. : kend, pt., 923; : fend, s. : shend, p. p. : hende, a. : ⌣ , 940; : frend, s. : lend, inf. : ⌣ : wend, inf., 943; : frend, s. : tend, p. p. : lend, inf. : ⌣ , 966; : ⌣ : frend, s. : hend, a. : lend, inf., 974; : wend, inf. : ⌣ : tend, p. p. : shend, inf., 997; : hend, s. : ⌣ : dyffend, pr. : send, imp., 1069; : kend, pt. : hend, s. : lend, inf. : ⌣ , 1282; : fende, s. : shende, inf. : ⌣ : wende, inf., 1326; : kend, p. p. : fend, inf. : send, inf. : ⌣ , 1330; : ⌣ : wende, inf. : hend, s. : kend, p. p., 1367; : lend, inf., 1421; : send, inf. : kend, p. p. : hend, s., 1431; : hende, s. : ⌣ : spend, inf. : mend, p. p., 1450; : spend, p. p., 1485; : amend, p. p., 1502, etc.; *end*(*e*), pt., p. p. [from OE. *endian*] : mende, s., 688; : spend, pt., 756; : ⌣ : mend, pt. : shend, inf. : fend, s., 914; *hend*(*e*), a., 47; : lend, inf. : fend, s. : wend

inf., 506; ⌣ : frend, s. : wende, inf. : lende, pr., 526; : frend, s. : ⌣ : mende, pt. 'meant' : wende, inf., 725; : frend, s. : lende, inf. : shend, inf. : ⌣, 799; : frend, s. : shend, inf. : ⌣ : wend, inf., 903; : fend, s. : shend, p. p. : ⌣ : end, s., 940; : end, s. : frend, s. : ⌣ : lend, inf., 974; : ⌣ : fend, s. : wend, inf. : frend, s., 1243, etc.; *vnhend*, a. : frend, s., 1056, etc.; *lend*(*e*), (*-es*), inf., pr. and pt. [OE. *lendan*] : kend, pt. : amend, p. p. : defend, inf., 54; : ⌣ : wened, pt. 'thought' : kend, p. p. : mend, inf., 498; : hende, a. : ⌣ : fend, s. : wend, inf., 506; : hende, a. : frend, s. : wende, inf. : ⌣, 526; : wend, inf., 698; : frendes, s., 700; ⌣ : wende, inf. : hende, s. : kend, pt., 711; : blend, s. : dyffend, inf. : ⌣ : kend, pt., 762; : kend, pt. : send, pt. : ⌣ : end, s., 790; : frend, s. : ⌣ : shend, inf. : hend, a., 799; : ende, s., 801; : frend, s. : ⌣ : wende, inf. : end, s., 846; : end, s. : ⌣ : dyffend, inf. : kend, pt., 848; : fend, inf. : kend, pt. : ende, s. : ⌣, 907; : frend, s. : ⌣ : end, s. : wend, inf., 943; : end, s. : frend, s. : hend, a. : ⌣, 974; : ⌣ : wend, inf. : frend, s. : shend, inf., 1122; : wend, inf. : dyffend, inf. : send, p. p. : ⌣, 1193; : frendes, s., 1199; : ⌣ : kend, p. p. : send, pt. : mend, pt., 1234; : mend, inf., 1242; : kend, pt. : hend, s. : ⌣ : end, s., 1282; : wend, inf. : frend, s. : hend, a. : ⌣, 1302; : hend, s. : ⌣ : mend, inf. : fend, inf., 1340; : amend, pr. : ⌣ : send, p. p. : kend, p. p., 1368; : amend, inf. : ⌣ : kend, p. p. : send, inf., 1395; : wende, inf. : amend, inf. : ⌣ : kend, pt., 1414; : dyffend, inf. : bend, p. p. : ⌣ : mend, inf., 1422, etc.; *schend*(*e*)(*s*), *shend*(*e*)(*s*), inf. and pr. : wende, inf., 155; : mayntend, pt., 350; : tened, p. p., 366; : frend, s., 521; : hende, a. : frend, s. : fend, s. : ⌣, 535; : ⌣ : wend, inf. : tened, p. p. : frend, s., 547; : frendes, s., 597; : fend, s. : frend, s. : ⌣ : ende, s., 737; : frend, s. : lende, inf. : ⌣ : hend, a., 799; : frend, s. : ⌣ : hend, a. : wend, inf., 903; : end, pt. : mend, pt. : ⌣ : fend, s., 914; : wend, inf. : end, s. : tend, p. p. : ⌣, 997; : lend, inf. : wend, inf. : frend, s. : ⌣, 1122, etc.; *shend*, p. p. : fend, s. : ⌣ : hende, a. : end, s., 940; *send*, inf., imp. and pr. : end, s., 1; : bend, s., : end, s. : kend, pt. : ⌣, 107; : wende, inf., 570, 600; : bend, p. p. : hend, s. : ⌣ : mend, inf., 912; : end, s. : fend, inf. : ⌣ : kend, pt., 923; : dyffend, inf. : kend, pt. : ⌣ : wend, pt., 931; : kend, p. p., 1269; : defend, inf., 1307; : kend, p. p. : fend, inf. : ⌣ : end, s., 1330; : amend, inf., 1371; : end, s. : ⌣ : kend, p. p. : hend, s., 1431; *send*, pt., p. p. : kende, p. p., 786; kend, pt. : ⌣ : lend, inf. : end, s., 790; : hend, s. : mend, inf. : ⌣ : end, s., 828; : fend, inf., 909; : amend, inf., 932; : hend s. : kend, p. p. :

wend, inf., 957; : amend, pr.: lend, pr.: ∽ : kend, p. p., 1368, etc.; *spend*, inf.: mend, inf., 1289; : hende, s.: ende, s.: ∽ : mend, p. p., 1450; *spend*, pt., p. p. : kend, pt. : sent, p. p. : lend, inf., 259; : ende, p. p., 756;: kend, pt.: hend, s.: amend, inf. : ∽, 1320; : wend, inf.: hend, s.: kend, pt., 1475; : ende, s., 1485; *wend(e)*, inf., *-es*, pr.: kend, p. p. : : Amend, inf. : end, s., 11; 149, 155; : : hand, s.: ∽ : kend, pt.: lend, inf., 329; 432; : hende, s.: ∽ : lend, pt.: amend, p. p., 545; : feynd, s., 475, 506, 1003; : frend, s., 503, 556, 590, 1251, 1348; : hende, a.: frend, s.: ∽ : lende, pr., 526; : schend, inf.: ∽ : tened, p. p.: frend, s., 547; : frendes, s., 579, 715; : send, inf., 570, 600; : lend, inf., 698; : lende, inf.: ∽ : hende, s. : kend, pt., 711; : frend, s.: hend, a.: mende, pt. 'meant' : ∽ , 725; : shende, inf., 754; : end, s.: ∽ : ∽ : frend, s., 756; : teynd, s. 'tenth', 821; : frend, s.: lend, inf.: ∽ : end, s., 846; : frend, s.: shend, inf.: hend, a.: ∽ , 903; : frend, s.: lend, inf.: end, s.: ∽ , 943; : hend, s., 970; : end, s.: tend, p. p. : shend, inf., 997; : ∽ : kend, p. p.: amend, inf.: send, inf., 1049; : lend, inf.: ∽ : frend, s.: shend, inf., 1122; : hende, s. : ∽ : send, p. p.: lend, inf., 1150; : end, inf., 1174; ∽ : dyffend, inf.: send, p. p.: lend, inf., 1193; : hend, a. : fend, s.: ∽ : frend, s., 1243; : mend, inf., 1295; : ∽ : frend, s. : hend, a.: lend, inf., 1302; : fende, s.: shende, inf.: ende, s.: ∽ , 1326; : shende, inf., 1341; end, s. : ∽ :hend, s. : kend, p. p., 1367; ∽ : amend, inf. : lend, inf. : kend, pt., 1414; : spend, p. p. : ∽ : hend, s. : kend, pt., 1475, etc.; *wende*, pt. : hende, adv., 47; : frend, s., 537; : dyffend, inf. : kend, pt. : send, inf. : ∽, 931.

c) *OE y* <*OTeut. u* + *i* - mutation : *kynd*, *L kend*, s. : hende, s. : descende, inf. : ∽ : blend, p. p., 495.

d) *OScand. e: hend(e)*, *hand*, s. 'hands' : wende, pt., 47, 970; : lend, inf., 161; ∽ : wend, inf. : kend, pt., : lend, inf., 329; ∽ : descende, inf. : kynd, *L* kend s. : blend, p. p., 495; ∽ : wende, inf. : lend, pt. : amend, p. p., 545; : amend, inf., 614; : lende, inf. : wende, inf. : ∽ : kend, pt., 711; : amend, inf. : dyscend, pt. : ∽ : kend, p. p., 777; ∽ : mend, inf. : send, p. p. : end, s., 828; : bend, p. p. : ∽ : send, inf. : mend, inf., 912; : send, pt. : ∽ : kend, p. p. : wend, inf., 957; ∽ : end, s. : dyffend, pr. : send, imp., 1069; : kend, pt. : ∽ : lend, inf. : end, s., 1282; : kend, pt. : ∽ : amend, inf. : spend, p. p., 1320; ∽ : lend, inf. : mend, inf. : fend, inf., 1340; ∽ : lend, inf. : wende, inf. : kend, pt., 1344; : end, s. : wende, inf. : ∽ : kend, p. p., 1367; : kend, pt. : mend, p. p. : dyffend, inf. : ∽ , 1392; : amend, inf., 1423; : end, s. : send, inf.

: kend, p. p. : ⌣ , 1431; ⌣ : ende, s. : spend, inf. : mend, p. p., 1450; : spend, p. p. : wend, inf. : ⌣ : kend, pt., 1475, etc.; *kend, kene*, pt., p. p. 'to know, teach' : wende, inf. : Amend, inf. : end, s., 11; : bend, s. : end, s. : ⌣ : send, inf., 107; : dyscend, pt. : wend, pt. 'thought' : end, s., 222; : hand, s. : wend, inf. : ⌣ : lend, inf., 329; : amend, inf., 489, 517; : lende, inf. : wened, pt. 'thought' : ⌣ : mend, inf., 498; : lende, inf. : wende, inf. : hende, s. : ⌣ , 711; : blend, s. : dyffend, inf. : lend, inf. : ⌣ , 762; : amend, inf. : dyscend, pt. : hend, s. : ⌣ , 777; : send, p. p., 786; : ⌣ : send, pt. : lend, inf. : end, s., 790; : end, s., : lend, inf. : dyffend, inf. : ⌣ , 848; ⌣ : lend, inf. : ende, s. : dyffend, inf., 871; : fend, inf. : ⌣ : ende, s. : lend, inf., 907; : end, s. : fend, inf. : send, pr. : ⌣, 923; : dyffend, inf. : ⌣ : send, inf. : wend, pt., 931; : send, pt. : hend, s. : ⌣ : wend, inf., 957; : amend, inf., 1032; : send, pr., 1033; : wend, inf. : ⌣ : amend, inf. : send, inf., 1049; : send, p. p. : end, s. : amend, inf. : ⌣ , 1097; : amend, inf., 1188; : lend, inf. : ⌣ : send, pt. : mend, pt., 1234; : send, inf., 1269; ⌣ : hend, s. : lend, inf. : end, s., 1282; ⌣ : hend, s. : amend, inf. : spend, p. p., 1320; ⌣ : fend, inf. : send, inf. : end, s., 1330; : wende, inf., 1344; : end, s. : wende, inf. : hend, s. : ⌣ , 1367; : amend, pr. : lend, pr. : send, p. p. : ⌣ , 1368; : wende, inf. : amend, inf. : lend, inf. : ⌣ , 1414; : end, s. : send, inf. : ⌣ : hend, s., 1431; : spend, p. p. : wend, inf. : hend, s. : ⌣ , 1475, etc.

e) *AN.* or *OF. e or ei: amend, A-*, inf. and pr. : dyscend : ⌣ : kene, p. p. : dyffend, 190; : kend, p. p., 489, 1032, 1188; : kend, pt., 517; : hend, s., 614; : ⌣ : dyscend, pt. : hend, s.: kend, p. p., 777; : send, p. p., 932; : send, inf., 1211, 1371; : wend, inf.: kend, p. p. : ⌣ : send, inf., 1049; : kend, pt. : hend, s. : ⌣ : spend, p. p., 1320; : hand, s., 974; lend, pr.: kend, p. p.: send, inf., 1395; : wende, inf.: ⌣ : lend, inf. : kend, pt., 1414; : hend, s., 1423, etc.; *amend*, pt., p. p., 54; hende, s. : wende, inf. : lend, pt. : ⌣ , 545; : ⌣ : lend, pr. : send, p. p. : kend, p. p., 1368; : end, s., 1502, etc.; *contened*, p. p.: end, s., 1105; *defend, dyffend*, inf. and pr., 54; 175, 190; : kend, pt.: lend, inf.: wend, inf. : ⌣ , 432; : blend, s. : ⌣ : lend, inf.: kend, pt., 762; : end, s.: lend, inf.: ⌣ : kend, pt., 848; : wend, pt. 'thought', 883; : ⌣ : kend, pt.: send, inf. : wend, pr., 931; : hend, s.: end, s.: ⌣ : send, imp., 1069; : lend, inf.: ⌣ : send, inf.

[1]) The rime requires the word *hend*, which must have been the author's original form. N.E.D. says s. v. *hend*, »Northern Eng. had in 14th—15th c. an umlaut plural *hend* from Norse.»

: end, s., 1173; : wend, inf. : ⌣ : send, p. p.: lend, inf., 1193; : send, inf., 1307; : kend, pt.: mend, p. p. : ⌣ : hend, s., 1392; : bend, p. p. : lend, inf.: mend, inf., 1422, etc.; *descende*, inf.: hende, s. : ⌣ : kynd, *L* kend, s.: blend, p. p., 495; *dyscend*, pt., 190; : kend, pt. : ⌣ : wend, pt. 'thought' : end, s., 222; : amend, inf.: ⌣ : hend, s. : kend, p. p., 777; : end, p. p., 999, etc.; *fend*, inf. : ⌣ : kend, pt.: ende, s.: lend, inf., 907; : send, pt., 909; : end, s. : ⌣ : send, pt. : kend, pt., 923;: kend, p. p.: ⌣ : send, inf.: end, s., 1330; 1340; *mayntend*, pt.: schend, inf., 350; *mend(e)*, s. and vb. : blend, p. p. : ⌣ : wend, inf. : lend, inf., 451; : kend, p. p., 489; : ende, p. p., 688; 828; : bend, p. p. : hend, s.: send, inf. : ⌣, 912; : ende, s., 1137, 1270; : lend, inf., 1242; 1289; : hend, s. : lend, inf. : ⌣ : fend, inf., 1340; : wende, pr., 1295; : lend, inf., 1413; : dyffend, inf.: bend, p. p.: lend, inf.: ⌣ , 1422, etc.; *mend(e)*, pt., p. p. 'amended', 78; : kend, pt.: ⌣ : dyffend, inf.: hend, s., 1392; : hende, s.: ende, s.: spend, inf.: ⌣, 1450; *plenyd*, pt. : restrened, pt., 1141; *remynd*, p. p. *L remend* [of OF. *remener*]: tend, num., 1241; *restrened*, pt. [OF. *restreindre*] : plenyd, pt., 1141.

A careful investigation of the material above will show that the words *fend* or *feynd*, s., *frend*, s., *tend* or *teynd*, s., and *tend*, pt., p. p., are rimed with themselves and with Teutonic infinitives and presents, but, apart from a few exceptions which may be regarded as incongruous rimes, hardly ever with preterites and past participles of verbs ending in *-end* or with such French loan-words as *amend*, *defend*, *descend*, all of which undoubtedly had short *e*[1]). As they contained *eo* and *ē* in OE., we may therefore assume that they had long close *e* in the poem. Only *wen(e)d*, pt. [OE. *wēnan*] of category *a*) must have had short *e*, at least facultatively, to judge from the rimes.

The infinitives *end*, *lend*, *schend*, *send*, *spend*, and *wend*, the substantives *blend* and *end*, and the adjective *hend*, had in certain dialects, e. g. in those of Orm and Robert of Gloucester, long *ē* only. In the present poem they are rimed not only with themselves and with the above substantives, which indicates that their *e* was long, but also with preterites and with French loan-words with short *e* in *-end*, which indicates that their *e* was short. They therefore seem to contain here both long and short *e*.

[1]) Cf. Orm's writings *wennde*, pt. sg., *wennd*, p. p., *sennde*, sb. sg.. *sennd*, p. p

A third group is formed by the remaining words, i. e. preterites and past participles of verbs in *-end*, French loan-words of the type just mentioned (e. g. *amend*), Old Scand. *hend*, s., and *kend*, pt. and p. p. (inf. *ken*). They are hardly ever rimed with forms of the first group. We are therefore entitled to assume short vowel quantity in these words and regard the exceptions as incongruous rimes. As regards the French loan-words *contened*, p. p., *mayntend*, pt., they can be apprehended as having both long and short *e* since *maynteyn* could demonstrably (cf. p. CXXV) and *contein* could probably have the stress on the first syllable. The quality of this *e* can scarcely with certainty be determined from the present rimes.

If we compare these results with those of EILERS and STRANDBERG, as to the quantity of the vowel in the phoneme *-end*, we shall find a slight difference. The former sums up thus, »Überwiegend herrscht Kürze des Vokals [*e*]. Die Dehnung [*ē*] ist erhalten in *feind*, subst., *freind*, subst., *heind*, adj., *leind*, subst., *sceind*, inf., *teind*, subst., *thritteind*, adj., und *weind*, vb (inf. und pr.), das aber auch Formen mit Kürze aufweist.» (op. cit. p. 27). STRANDBERG is not quite of the same opinion; he presupposes both *ē* and *ĕ* in *freind*, *heind*, adj., *sceind*, v., *wend*, v. (p. 124).

§ 15. *ME. -erd*

a) *OE. ē* < *WGerm. ō* + *i-mutation: ferd*, pt., p. p. [OE. *fēran*, 'to go'] : herd, p. p., 113, 525; : sperd, p. p., 697; : answerd, pt., 1299; ⌣ : spred, p. p.: herd, pt.: answerd, pt., 1501.

b) *OAngl. ē* (= *WSax. ie*) < *WGerm. au* + *i-mutation: herd, hard*, pt., p. p.: ferd, pt., 113, 525; : sperred, p. p., 348; : spyred, pt., 553; : sperd, pt., 1067; : answerd, pt., 469, 1487; : ferd, pt.: spred, p. p.: ⌣ : answerd, pt., 1501.

c) *OE. æ*[1]*: lernyd*, pt.: sword, s., 510 (*L lerde:* swerde); *lered*, p. p.: sword (*L lered:* swerd), 818.

d) *OE. ĕo: sword*, *L swerd*(*e*), s.: lernyd *L* lerde, pt., 510; : lered, p. p., 818.

e) *OE. ĕ* : *weryd*, p. p. [OE. *werian*] : enterd, p. p., 118.

f) *MLG.* (or *OScand.*) *e: sperd*, *sperred*, *spred*, pt., p. p. [MLG. *speren* or OScand. *sperra*]: herd, pt., 348; : hard, pt., 1067; : ferd, pt., 697; : ferd, pt.: herd, pt.: ⌣ : answerd, pt., 1501.

g) *ME. -erd* syncopated and usually unstressed: *answerd*, pt.: herd,

pt., 469, 1487; : ferd, pt., 1299: : ferd. pt.: spred, p. p.: herd, pt.: ⌣, 1501.

h) *OF. e* : *enterd*, p. p. [OF. *enterrer*] : weryd, p. p., 118.

i) *OE. y* in an open syllable : *spyred*, pt. : herd, pt., 553.

As the preterites *ferd* and *herd* are here rimed with *sperd*, pt. and *answerd*, pt., both of which had an etymologically short *ĕ*, we may safely suppose that their originally long *ē* had been shortened. If that is so, and if the rime *spyred*, pt. : herd, pt. is correct, the riming-vowels must be *ĕ* : *ĕ*. In that case we are concerned with a shortening of the long *e* in the former preterite, derived from OE. *spyrode* through lengthening in an open syllable. As to *lerd*, pt., and *swerd*, s., no definite conclusion can be drawn relative to the quantity of *e*, as they are only rimed with themselves. Cf. STRANDBERG, op. cit. p. 135, where *lerd*, pt., is assumed to have had a short *e* in the Curs. M. The past participle *weryd* had a long open *ē* in the inf., which was possibly shortened in the syncopated past participle.

§ 16. *ME. ē*

a) *OE ēa: barn teme*, s.,[1]) [OE. *tēam*] 859, 1130; *bed*(*e*), *bad*, pt., 166, 284, 857; *bete*, inf., 532; *bred*(*e*), s. [OE. *brēad*], 284, 920, 946, 980, 1028, 1463; *chese*, pt. [OE. *cēas*), 124, 214, 435, 489, 785, 1349, 1419; *ded*(*e*), s. 'death', 149, 210, 224, 236, 336, 742, 777, 896, 946, 962, 1140, 1249, 1273, 1446, 1500; *ded*(*e*), *deyd*, a., 8, 61, 103, 119, 131, 196, 263, 341, 594, 604, 612, 623, 636, 641, 667, 677, 779, 787, 803, 810, 818, 842, 895, 969, 980, 1003, 1063, 1095, 1099, 1112, 1280, 1335, 1463, 1470, 1477, 1492, 1496, 1531, etc.; *for bed*(*e*), pt., 236, 1522; *grett*(*e*), a., 19, 150, 379, 466, 882, 1027, 1310, 1334, etc.; *heuyd*, *hede*, s. : leuyd, leued, pt., p. p., 78, 479, 510, 1125, etc.; *hed*(*e*), s. [OE. *hēafod*], 383, 437, 563, 641, 810, 842, 857, 1280, 1463, etc.; *hepe*, s., 103; *led*(*e*), s. 'lead', 210, 612, 818, 1099, 1249, 1492, 1531; *les*(*e*), *lesse*, s. 'lie', 404, 585, 850, 1179, etc.; *nawte*, s.[2]) :gete, inf.: rehete, pr.: grette, a., 1348; *rede*, a., 166, 980; *reued*, pt. :hede, s., 563; *shredes*, s., 843; *streme*, s., 1426; *thrett*, *threytt*, inf., 532, 1523.

[1]) A word belonging to the northern dialects [N.E.D.].

[2]) The rime requires the form *nete*, s. < OE. *nēat; nawte* is the corresponding Scand. loan-word (OScand. *naut*).

All these forms are rimed with words which undoubtedly contained $\bar{e}$ in ME., apart from those derived from OE. $\bar{a}^2$.

b) *OE.* $\bar{a}^2$ = *WS.* $\bar{a}$, *OAngl.* $\bar{e}$ < *WGerm.* $\bar{a}$: *blette*, inf.: mette, s.: grett, a. : ete, inf., 1310; *breth*, s.: geth, n. pr., 586; *fere*, inf. 'frighten' : ⌣ : bere, inf.: were, s. 'war': ware, pt., 215; : were, pt.: geyre, s.: dere, s.: ⌣ , 265; : er, pr. : were, inf.: dere, s.: ⌣ , 453; ⌣ : spere, s.: bere, inf.: were, inf. 'wear', 508; : spere, s.: ⌣ : were, s.: dere, s., 516; : were, inf. 'protect': ⌣ : spere, s.: bere, inf., 524; : dere, s.: ⌣ : were, inf. 'protect': dere, s., 560; : dere, s.: are, pr.: bere, inf.: ⌣ , 641; : dere, s., 738; : dere, s.: ⌣ : were, s.: ere, pr., 755;: geyre, s.: ⌣ : schere, inf.: heyre, s. 'hair', 1490; ⌣ : swere, inf.: shere, inf.: bere, inf., 1504; : geyre, s. : were, s. 'war': ⌣ : spere, s., 1527, etc.; *heyre*, s. 'hair' : geyre, s.: fere, inf. 'frighten' : schere, inf.: ⌣ , 1490; *red*(*e*), s. 'counsel, advice' : sted, s.: ⌣ : sprede, inf.: dede, a., 8; ⌣ : sted, s.: holhed, s.: ded, a., 103; : ded, a., 131; : ded, s., 'death', 149; 962; 1500; : sted, s.: rede, a.: bede, pt.: ⌣ , 166; stede, s.: dede, a.: ⌣ : bede, s., 196; : stede, s., 217; stede, s.: brede, s. 'bread': bede, pt.: ⌣ , 284; ⌣ : bede, s.: dede, a.: stede, s., 341; : dede, a., 594, 636, 1003; : ⌣ : dede, s., 'death': stede, s.: bede, s., 742; : lede, s. 'lead': stede, s.: dede, a. : ⌣ , 818; : bade, pt.: ded, s. 'death': hede, s.: ⌣, 857; : bred, s. 'bread', 920, 1028; : led, s. 'lead': ded, a.: sted, s.: ⌣, 1099; : led, s. 'lead': sted, s.: ded, 'death': ⌣, 1249; deyd, a.: hed, s. : ⌣ : bede, s., 1280; : ded, a.: hede, s.: sted, s., 1470; : bede, s.: ded, a.: stede, s.: ⌣ , 1496; ⌣ : sted, s.: led, s. 'lead' : dede, a., 1531; *red*(*e*), inf. and pr. 'advise, counsel' : dede, s. 'death': sted, s.: ⌣ : godhede, s., 224; ⌣ : dede, a.: lede, s. 'lead': sted, s., 612; : dede, a., 667, 1063; : hed, s.: dede, a.: sted, s.: ⌣ , 810, etc.; *wer*(*e*), *ware*, pt.: for beyr, 14; : fere, inf. 'frighten' : bere, inf.: were, s.: ⌣ , 215; : bere, inf.: swere, inf.: dere, inf., 997; : ere, pr.: bere, inf.: geyre, s.: ⌣ , 1375; *wete*, s. 'moisture' : hete, s., 1054; *-red: hatred*, s.: stede, s.: bred, s.: ded, s.: ⌣ , 946; *kynred*, s.: dede, a., 119, 623; : sted, s.: dede, s. 'death' : led, s. 'lead': ⌣ , 210; : dede, s. 'death', 336, 1273; : hede, s., 383; : ded, a.: stede, s.: ⌣ : hede, s., 641; : bred, p. p., 1332; : sted, s.: ⌣ : dede, a.: bede, s. [OE. *ȝebed*, s.], 1335.

Apart from self-rimes, all the words given above are only rimed with forms containing open $\bar{e}$, so they must themselves have had a long open $\bar{e}$. It is worth noticing that in our poem *rede*, s., 'advice', and *rede*, inf. 'advise', contain open $\bar{e}$, as opposed to *rede*, inf. 'read', which has been proved to have a long close $\bar{e}$ (see p. LXIII). The preterite *were*

has above (p. LXIII) been shown to rime with close $\bar{e}$ also. This phenomenon is by no means destitute of parallels. Cf. REITEMEYER: Die Qualität der betonten langen *e*-vokale etc., p. 93.

c) *OE.* $\bar{æ}^1$ < *WGerm. ai* + *i-mutation: dele*, inf.: lele, a.: hele, pr. : wele, s., 327; ⌣ : hele, inf.: wele, s.: fele, inf., 1050; : mell, pr., 1081; : hele, s., 1313, etc.; *-hed(e): holhed*, s. : red, s. : sted, s. : ⌣ : ded, a., 103; *godhede*, s. : dede, s. : sted, s. : rede, inf. : ⌣, 224; *hele, heyll*, s. [OE. *hælu*]: wele, s.: fele, a.: dele, inf., 561; : fell, a., 892; : fele, a., 1156; : dele, inf., 1313; *hele*, inf.: dele, inf.: wele, s. : fele, inf., 1050; : dele, inf., 1310; *het(t)e*, s. 'heat' : wete, s., 1054; : grett, a.: mette, s.: ⌣: gette, inf., 1393; *lest*, superl. : beste, s., 159; : fest, s.: best, s.: honest, a.: ⌣ , 367; : fest, s.: ⌣ : best, s.: encrest, p. p., 873; *leuyd, leued*, pt., p. p. : he(uy)d, s., 78, 479, 510, 1125, etc.; *sprede*, inf. : sted, s.: rede, s. : ⌣ :dede, a., 8; *spredes*, pr.: shredes, s., 843; *swett*, s.: forfeytt, s. : eytte, inf.: grett, a.: ⌣ , 19; *teche*, inf.: preche, 1154; *qwete, hwett*, s.: mette, s.: grett, a.: ete, inf., 466; : rehete, inf.: ⌣: mete, s.: grette, a., 1027.

The words given above are rimed with forms containing long open $\bar{e}$. We can therefore assume that they have had $\bar{e}$. Note that the suffix *-hed*, stated above to have had long close $\bar{e}$, here rimes with at least two words with $\bar{e}$, so that the author's dialect probably had a collateral form with $\bar{e}$. The superlative *lest*, 367, need not be supposed to have had a variant form with *e* shortened, for *honest* (OF. *honeste*) may be assumed to have had a. collateral form with $\bar{e}$. (: *lest*, 367). It is surprising to find that *dele*, inf., has open $\bar{e}$, whereas the substantive has above been proved to contain close $\bar{e}$. This is also the case in the dialect of Cursor Mundi. Cf. STRANDBERG, op. cit. p. 112.

d) *OE.* $\check{e}$, $\check{e}o$ in open syllables: *bede, bode, boyd*, s. 'prayer', 196, 341, 742, 842, 1280, 1335, 1496; *be(y)r(e)*, inf. and pr., 150, 215, 234, 292, 378, 379, 439, 508, 524, 582, 641, 679, 981, 997, 1044, 1375, 1463, 1504, etc.: *breke*, inf. : speke, inf., 1200; *dere*, s. and inf. [OE. *derian*], 265, 378, 379, 453, 516, 560, 582, 587, 641, 679, 738, 755, 997, etc.; *eyt(t)e, et(t)e*, inf. and pr. : forfeytt, s. : ⌣ : grett : swett, s., 19; : grett, a. : ⌣ : gette, inf. : rehete, inf., 379; : whett, s. : mette, s. : grett, a. : ⌣ , 466; : geyte, inf., 492; : geyte, inf. : bete, inf. : thrett, inf. : ⌣, 532; : for gete, inf. : ⌣ : mette, s. : whette, s., 539; : grett, a. : mete, s. : ⌣ : forfeytt, inf., 882; : mette, s. : blette, inf. : grett, a. : ⌣, 1310; 1334,

1399, 1523; *for beyr(e)*, inf., 14, etc.; *fele, fell*, a. : wele, s. : ⌣ : hele, s. : dele, s., 561; : hele, s., 892, 1156; *mere*, s., 287; *met(e), mett(e)*, s., 'food', 157, 282, 466, 539, 766, 882, 945, 1027, 1163, 1284, 1310, 1316, 1334, 1393, 1399, 1405; *schere, shere*, inf., 378, 1490, 1504; *speke*, inf. : breke, inf. 1200; *spere*, s., 38, 177, 508, 516, 524, 582, 982, 1527, etc.; *sted(e), styd*, s., 8, 61, 103, 166, 196, 210, 217, 219, 224, 284, 341, 437, 559, 604, 612, 621, 641, 677, 742, 777, 779, 803, 810, 818, 842, 895, 896, 897, 946, 969, 980, 1095, 1099, 1112, 1140, 1335, 1446, 1463, 1477, 1496, 1531, etc.; *swere*, inf., 997, 1504; *wele*, s. 'weal': dele, inf. : lele, a. : hele, pr. : ⌣, 327; : fele, a. : hele, s. : dele, inf., 561; 1050, 1169, 1279, etc.; *were*, inf. 'wear', 508, 981, 1044, 1375; *were*, inf. 'defend', 453, 524, 560, 981.

All the words above are rimed with forms, which undoubtedly contained $\bar{e}$ in ME., apart from rimes with OE. $\bar{a}^2$. As regards *ete*, inf., we can state that it was used with both long and short *e* in our text. Cf. p. XXXIX.

Concerning *stede*, s., all the rimes presuppose a long open $\bar{e}$ in the author's dialect. In Cursor Mundi, according to STRANDBERG (op. cit. p. 109), most rimes prove a short *e* in *stedd*, s., which no doubt is the ONorth. shortened form of the ordinary OE. form *stede*, s. Cf. SIEVERS, Ags. Gram., p. 137. BOERNER, Reimuntersuchung, p. 319, seems inclined to suppose *stĕd* in Robert of Brunne's language.

The rime *VII* (= sen) : *bene*, p. p., 118 is an incongruous one, the riming-vowels being $\bar{e}$: $\bar{e}$. Through contraction, the OE. numeral *seofon* had become *sēn* in ME. Cf. LUICK, HGE., § 428.

e) *OScand.* $\check{e}$, $\acute{e}$ in open syllables: *ar(e), er(e)*, pr. pl. [OScand. *ero, -u*] : were, inf. : dere, s. : fere, inf. 'frighten', 453; : dere, s. : spere, s. : bere, inf., 582; : were, s. : manere, s. : dere, s. : ⌣, 587; : dere, s. : ⌣ : bere, inf. : fere, inf., 641; : dere, s. : fere, inf. : were, s. 'war' : ⌣, 755; : were, inf., 'protect' : bere, inf. : were, inf. 'wear', 981; : bere, inf. : gere, s. : were, inf., 1044; : bere, inf. : geyre, s. : were, inf., 1375; : were, s. 'war', 1422; *fele*, inf. 'to hide' : dele, inf. : hele, inf. : wele, s., 1050; *ge(y)re*, s. and inf. [OScand. *ger(v)a, gør(v)a*] : were, s. : dere, s. : fere, inf. 'frighten', 265; : were, s. 'war', 672; : ere, pr. : bere, inf. : ⌣ : were, inf., 1044; : ere, pr. : bere, inf. : ⌣ : were, inf., 1375; : bere, inf., 1463; : fere, inf. : schere, inf. : heyre, s., 1490; : were, s. 'war' : fere, inf. : spere, s., 1527; *gette, geyte*, inf. [OScand. *geta*] : grette, a., 150; : grett, a. : refette, p. p. : ⌣ : mette, s., 157; : grett, a. : ette, inf.

: rehete, inf., 379; : grete, a., 433; : forfeytt, pt., 481; : ete, inf., 492; : bete, inf. : thrett, inf. : ette, pr., 532; : grett, a., 686; : mete, s. ; grete, a. : forfett, s., 766; : grett, a., 1016, 1075; : mete, s., 1163: : nawte, s. : ⌣ : rehete, pr. : grette, a., 1348; : grett, a. : mette, s. : hette, s. : ⌣, 1393, etc.; *for gete, -geyte*, inf. : ette, inf. : mette, s. : whette, s., 539; : ete, pr., 1522; *mell*, pr. [OScand. *mæla*] 'to speak' : dele, inf., 1081; *sette*, s. [probably OScand. *sæti*] : mette, s. : ⌣ : geyte, inf. : ete, inf., 1284; : grette, a. : ete, pr. : mete, s., 1399.

All the words above are rimed with forms which undoubtedly contained long open $\bar{e}$, apart from rimes with OE. $\bar{æ}^2$. As to *gete*, inf. we have to state that, like the infinitive *ete* 'to eat', it is used with both long and short *e* in our text. There seems to be a slight preponderance of long forms.

If the rime *lucyfer* : *lyȝt beyrer*, 5, is correct, it involves an $\bar{e}$-rime, the lengthening of *e* in the suffix *-er* under stress giving an open $\bar{e}$. Cf. Luick, HGE, § 460, Anm. 2.

f) AN. or *OF. loan-words*: *best(e)*, s. : lest, superl., 159; : fest, s. : ⌣ : honest, a. : lest, superl., 367; : fest, s. : lest, superl. : ⌣ : encrest, p. p., 873, etc.; *chefe*, inf. : lefe, s., 593; *dese*, s.: chese, pt. : sesse: encrese, 785; *dyses(s)e*, s. and inf., *dysessyd*, pt. : plessed, 517; : plese, 810, 1097, etc. ; *encres(s)e*, *incresse*, inf., *encressyd*, *encressed*, *encrest*, pt., p. p. : sessyd, 27; : ffyneys, n. pr. : chese, pt. : peyse : ⌣, 214; : fynyes, n. pr. : presse : peyse : ⌣, 253; : prese, s. : ⌣ : fynyes, n. pr. : lesse, s., 404; : Iabese, n. pr. : sese : chese, pt., 435; : dese, s. : chese, pt. : sesse : ⌣, 785; : fest, s. : lest, superl. : best, s. : ⌣, 873; : sest, pt., 1018; : prese, s. : ⌣ : lese, s. : sese, inf., 1179; : Moyses : prese, s. : pese, s., 1424, etc. ; *ese*, *esse*, s. and inf., *esed*, p. p. : plese, inf., 412, 573, 1049, etc.; *enseled*, p. p. : repelyd, p. p., 1412; *fest*, s. : best, s. : honest : lest, 367; : best, s., 682; : lest, superl. : best, s. : encrest, p. p., 873, etc. ; *for-fe(y)tt*, s., inf. and pt. : eytte, inf. : grett, a. : swett, s., 19; : gett, inf., 481; : gete, inf. : mete, s. : grete, a. : ⌣, 766; : grett, a. : mete, s. : ette, inf. : ⌣, 882; *honest*, a. : fest, s. : best, s. : ⌣ : lest, superl., 367; : fest, s., 1476; *lele*, a. : dele, inf. : ⌣ : hele, pr. : wele, s., 327; : hele, s., 996; : seall, s. : israel, n. pr. : hele, s., 1034; : hele, inf., 1037; : dele, inf. : wele, s. : fele, 'many', 1169; : gabell, n. pr. : seall, s. : ⌣ : wele, s., 1279; : seall, s., 1294; *mes(s)e(s)*, s. and inf. : sesse, inf. : pese, s. : lese, s. : ⌣, 585; : peyce, s. : sesse : ⌣ : sese, 624; : pleses, pr., 884; :

plese : sese : ese, 1452, etc.: *pe(y)ce*, *pe(y)se*, s. : ffyneys, n. pr. : chese, pt. : encresse, inf., 214; : presse, s., 243; : fynyes , n. pr. : presse, s. : ⌣ : incresse, inf., 253; : sese, imp., 339; : Iabes, n. pr., 438; : prese, s., 478; : sesse, inf. : chese, pt. : relesch, inf. : ⌣, 489; : sesse, inf. : ⌣ : lese, s. : mese, s., 585; : sesse, inf. : messe, s. : sese, inf., 624; : encrese, inf., 1213; : chese, pt. : lese, s. : Rages, n. pr. : ⌣, 1349; : sese, inf. : olyfernes, n. pr. : ⌣ : chese, pt., 1419; : encrese, inf. : Moyses, n. pr. : prese, s. : ⌣, 1424, etc.; *plese*, inf., *pleses*, pr., *ples(s)ed*, pt. : esed, 487; : dysessyd, 517; : dysesse, s., 810; : meses, s., 884; : dysese, s., 1097; : mese, s. : ⌣ : sese : ese, 1452, etc. ; *preche*, inf. : teche, inf., 1154; *pres(s)e*, s. and inf. : moyses, n. pr., 197; : peyse, s., 243; : fynyes, n. pr. : ⌣ : peyse, s. : incresse, inf., 253; : encresse : fynyes, n. pr. : lesse, s., 404; : pese, s., 478; : encrese, inf. : lese, s. : sese, inf., 1179; : encrese, inf. : Moyses, n. pr. : ⌣ : pese, s., 1424, etc.; *refette*, p. p. : grett, a. : ⌣ : gette, inf. : mette, s., 157; *rehete*, inf. and pr. : grett, a. : ette, inf. : gette, inf., 379; : qwete, s. : mete, s. : grette, a., 1027; : grette, a. : ⌣ : mette, s. : ete, pr., 1334; : nawte, s. : gete, inf. : ⌣ : grette, a., 1348; : mete, s., 1405; *rele(y)se*, *relesch*,[1]) s. and inf., *relessed*, pt. : sesse, inf. : chese, pt. : ⌣ : pece, s., 489; : sessyd, pt., 769; : moyses, n. pr. : sesse, inf. : lese, s. : ⌣, 850, etc. ; *releschest*, p. p. : best, s., 1163; *repelyd*, p. p. : enseled, p. p., 1412; *seall*, s. : lele, a. : ⌣ : israel, n. pr. : hele, s., 1034; : gabell, n. pr. : ⌣ : lele, a. : wele, s., 1279; : lele, a., 1294; *sese*, inf., *sessyd*, *sessed*, pt., *sest*, pt., p. p. : encressyd, 27; : pese, s., 339; : encresse, inf. : Iabese, n. pr. : ⌣ : chese, pt., 435; : chese, pt. : relesch, inf. : pece, s., 489; : encressed, pt., 495; : pese, s. : lese, s. : mese, s., 585; : peyce, s. : ⌣ : messe, s. : ⌣, 624; : dese, s. : chese, pt. : ⌣ : encrese, 785; : moyses, n. pr. : ⌣ : lese, s. : releyse, s., 850; : encrest, p. p., 1018; : prese, s. : encrese, inf. : lese, s. : ⌣, 1179; : olyfernes, n. pr. : pese, s. : chese, pt., 1419; : mese, s. : plese : ⌣ : ese, 1452, etc.; *were*, *ware*, s. 'war' : spere, s., 38, 177; : fere, inf. 'frighten' : bere, inf. : ⌣ : ware, pt., 215; : beyre, inf., 234; : geyre, s. : dere, s. 'harm' : fere, inf. 'frighten', 285; : spere, s. : dere, s. : mere, s. : ⌣, 287; : beyr, inf., 439; : spere, s. : fere, inf. 'frighten' : ⌣ : dere, s. 'harm', 516; : manere, s. : dere, s. 'harm' : ere, pr. 'are', 587; : geyre, s., 672; : dere, s. 'harm' : fere, inf.

[1]) As regards the transition s > š see ch. VI.

'frighten' : ⌣ : ere, pr. 'are', 755; : ere, pr. 'are', 1422; : geyre, s. : ⌣ : fere, inf. 'frighten' : spere, s., 1527, etc.

As is proved by the rimes in our text as well as in other ME. poems, all these French loan-words were pronounced with a long open ę̄. It should be noted that, in accordance with its origin, ME. *werre* (OFrank., OHG. *werra*, strife) generally appeared with a short *e*, later turned into *a* (cf. Mod. Eng. *war*). But in ME. there was evidently a variant with a long open *e* (cf. the rimes above).

g) Forcign proper names:

ffyneys, fynyes : chese, pt. : peyse : encresse, 214; : presse : peyse : increse, 253; : prese, s. : encresse, inf. : ⌣ : lesse, s., 404; *gabell* : seall, s. : lele, a. : wele, s., 1279; *geth* : breth, s., 586; *Iabes, Iabese* : encrese, inf. : ⌣ : sese, inf. : chese, pt., 435; : pese, s., 438; *ierusalem* : salem, 264; : barn teme, s., 859, 1130; : streme, s., 1426, etc.; *Ioseph* : hepe, s., 105; *israel* : lele, a. : seall, s. : ⌣ : hele, s., 1034; *mede* : ded, a. 1276; *moyses, M-* : chese, pt., 124; : lese, s., 811; : sesse, inf. : lese, s. : releyse, s., 850; : encrese, inf. : ⌣ : prese, s. : pese, s., 1424, etc.; *olyfernes* : sese, inf. : ⌣ : pese, s. : chese, pt., 1419; *Rages(a), r-* : lese, s. : sese, inf. : encrese, inf., 1277; : chese, pt. : lese, s. : ⌣ : pese, s., 1349, etc. ; *salem* : ierusalem, 246; *sychem* : ierusalem, 848, 865;

The rimes given prove that all these proper names contained or could contain open ę̄,

§ 17. ME. ī.

a) OE. ī, ȳ: abyd(e), inf., 26, 123, 125, 1318, etc.; *by, be*, prep., 180; : why : lechery : for þi : ⌣, 1315; *herby*, 204; *ther by, þer by*, adv. 37, 93, 1238, 1271, 1310, etc.; *be tyde*, inf., 101, 1309, 1367, etc.; *blyth(e)*, a., 128, 688, 1411, 1490; *byd(e)*, inf. and pr., 6, 18, 93, 1210, 1261, 1298, 1313, 1345, 1367, 1371, 1398, etc.; *chyd(e)*, inf. and pr., 153, 819, 1210, etc.; *dryfe, dryue*, inf., 54, 148, etc.; *for þi, for thi, for thy(e)*, adv., 30, 74, 129, 146, 1292, 1310, 1315, 1323, 1343, 1346, etc.; *fyle*, inf., 362, 549; *fyre*, s., 57, 151, 709, 907, etc.; *fyfe, fyue*, num., 325, 558, 1506, etc.; *hyd(e)*, inf. and pr., 18, 125, 139, 1261, 1286, 1345, 1367, 1393, etc.; *hyd(e)*, s., 70, 133, 982, etc.; *hyne*, s., 'hind', 702, 946, 1192, etc.; *hyre*, s. and inf., 290, 613, 823; *knyfe*, s., 65, 518; *kye*, s. pl., 417; *kyngryke*, s., 685; *like*, a., 685; *-ly : barly*, s. 1027; *boldly*, 481; *bytturly*, 146; *bodyly*, 1179; *bowsomly*, 1164; *cu-*

monly, *communly*, 136, 257; *curtasly*, 129, 532, 1072, 1292, etc.; *daynthyly*, 827; *drerely*, 1019; *dyspytfully*, 870, 916, 1486; *falsly*, 984; *felously*, 697; *fouly*, 37; *frendly*, 443; *fully*, 324, 1168; *gladly*, 445; *hastely*, 547, 959; *herdely*, 1029; *in wardly*, 343, 1096; *lafully*, 507; *lely*, 163, 265, 811; *lyghtly*, 32, 1094; *on cumly*,37; *opynly*, 181, 1067; *priuely*, *preuely*, 93, 547, 1073, 1343, 1361, etc.; *properly*, 332; *rewfully*, 705; *sekerly*, 1527; *semly*, a. and adv., 1376, 1436; *schortly*, 46, 83; *skylfully*, 701; *sodanly*, 635, 967, 1087, etc.; *solemply*, 787; *sothfastly*, 1008; *sothly*, 533, 892; *soueranly*, 1457; *specialli*, *-ly*, 634, 862, 1393, etc.; *sta(l)lworthyly*, 355, 359; *tenderly*, 307; *trewly*, 800, 1362; *vilanly*, 1127; *vnlafully*, 1006; *wekydly*, 899; *worthyly*, 411; *wranguysly*, 1238; *wrschepfully*, *wrschypfully*, 1034, 1152; *wylfully*, 954; *wytterly*, 76; *wyttly*, 655; *lyf(e)*, *lyue*, s., 65, 1207, 1250, 1283, 1314, 1336, 1368, 1370, etc.; *be lyue*, *by lyue*, adv., 148, 1334, etc.; *lyne*, s., 274; *lyre*, s. [OE. *līra*], 57, 189, 999, etc.: *lyte*, s., 289; *lyth*, a., 735; *myle*, s., 549, 1156, etc.: *myne*, pron., 448, 702, 1192, 1358, 1407, etc.; *oft sythe*, adv., 128, 1411; *oft sythis*, 735; *prid(e)*, *pryd(e)*, s. [late OE. *prȳdo*], 31, 265, 1210, 1398, etc.; *pyn*, *pyns*, s.,[1]) [EarlyME. *pine* : — OE. *pīn*, a. Lat. *poena*, 'punishment, pain'] : cosyn : wyne : fyne, 40; *L* lyne : syne : Beniamin, 274; 289, 362, 476, etc.; *prime*, s. [OE. *prīm*], 247, 1166; *qwylle*, *whyle*, s., 15, 210, 549, etc.; (*ouer*) *ryde*, inf., 160, 1345, 1410, etc.; *ryfe*, *ryue* a., 195, 325, 1250, 1283, 1314, 1322, 1336, 1370, etc.; *ryse*, inf., 23, 27, 44, 178, 594, 615, 750, 1217, 1223, 1228, 1259, 1267, etc.; *smytt(e)*, inf. and pr., 197, 613, 647, 702, etc.; *stryke*, inf., 685: *swyne*, s., 476, 1486; *swyre*, s., 57; *swyth*, adv., 688; (*be*) *syd(e)*, s., 26, 123, 125, 134, 1269, 1298, 1313, 1367, 1371, 1398, etc.; *tyd(e)* s., 6, 18, 26, 45, 70, 125, 1261, 1269, 1279, 1286, 1313, 1318, 1345, 1371, 1398, etc.; *tyme*, s., 1166; *þin(e)*, pron., 326, 1278, 1407, etc.; *wyd(e)*, a. and adv., 26, 31, 1269, 1313, 1371, etc.; *wyfe*, *wyue*, s., 54, 83, 148, 1207, 1250, 1283, 1314, 1322, 1334, 1336, 1357, 1368, 1370, etc.; *why*, adv., 635, 1315; *wyn(e)*, s., 40, 362, 476, 574, 702, 869, 1278, 1358, 1375, 1407, 1438, etc.; *wyre*, s., 165; *wys(e)*, *wis(e)*, s. and a., 2, 13, 27, 44, 141, 153, 389, 458, 615, 750, 818, 1119, 1143, 1212, 1217, 1243, 1259, 1267, 1363, 1400, etc.; *vnwyse*, a., 277; *wyte*, *wytt*, inf. [OE. *wītan*], 338, 764, 864.

b) *OScand. ī, ȳ: lythe*, inf. 'listen' [OScand. *hlýða*]: blythe, a., 1490; *slyke*, a., 685; *thryve*, inf., 274, 897; *tyne*, inf. 'lose' 434, 869, 971,

[1]) The copyist of **S** often uses the later form *payn* < OF. *peine*.

1278: *tyte*, *tytt*, adv., 276; : dyscumfeyt, a.: respeyt, s.: lyte, s., 289: 338, 764, etc.

c) *ME. ī: I*, pron., 69, 1208, 1226, 1238, 1256, 1292, 1301, 1323, 1326, 1361, 1402, etc.: *syne*, *sone*, adv. [contracted form of ME. *sithen*], 145; : fyne, inf., 198; : dyne : wyne : myne, pron., 1358, etc.; *myte* s. [MDu. *mîte*], 1181; *þire*, pron. 'these': syre, n. pr.: desyre, inf.: yre, s., 1065; *þies*, pron. 'these' : enmyse, s.: thryse: wyse, s., 1143; : dyspyse: ryse : price, 1499.

d) *AN.* or *OF. loan-words:*

a(f)fy(e), inf. and pr., 180, 541, 1033, 1245, etc.; *archerye*, s., 69; *ascryd(e)*, pt., p. p., 227, 1060, 1286; *aspy*, inf., *aspy(e)d*, *aspyde*, pt., p. p., 227, 541, 1060, 1352, etc.; *assyse*, *asysse*, *asyce*, s., 2, 27, 168, 818, 1217, 1228, 1267, etc.; *avyse*, *a vyce*, *awyse*, inf. and pr., 458, 534, 750, 1228, 1243, 1259, etc.; *avowtry*, s., 674; *beguyle*, *begyle*, inf., 332, 549, etc.; *chewalry*, *chyualry*, s., 301, 605, 617, 711, 1034, etc.; *circumcisyd*, *-scised*, p. p., 45, 1524; *clerefyde*, p. p., 1269; *clergy*, s., 106, 827; *confyderacy*, 332; *contrary(e)*, s., 285, 1116; *cosyn*, s., 40; *couetyse*, s., 481, 1119; *cry(e)*, s. and inf., *cryse*, pr., *cryde*, *cryed*, pt., 50, 93, 563, 617, 818, etc.; *cumpany*, *company*, s., 170, 659, 974, 1239, 1376, 1381, etc.: *curtasay*, s. : hastely, 248; *defy(e)*, pr., 571, 1239; *delyce*, s., 13; *delytt*, s., 276; *deny(e)*, inf., 1098; *desyre*, s. and inf., 57, 151, 165, 613, 999, 1065, etc.: *deuyce*, *deuyse* s., 324, 193, 874, 915, etc.; *dyne*, inf., 390, 1358; *dyspytt(e)*, s., 338, 613, 647, 702: *dyscry(e)*, inf., *dyscryde*, p. p., 85, 316, 1331, 1375, etc.; *dyscumfe(y)te*, p. p., 197, 289, etc.; *vndyscumfeytt*, p. p., 276; *dyspyse*, *dyspyce*, inf., 44, 1223, etc.: *dyspyt(t)e*, s., 639, 654, 841, etc.; *empyre*, s., 290, 975; *enmy(s)(e)*, s., 141, 534, 571, 615, 1143, 1272, etc.: *enuy*, s., 76, 171, 513, 906, etc.; *Ermyn*, s., 1034; *fantasy*, s., 1226, 1304; *frauntchese*, s.: wyse, 857: *felony*, s., 191; *foly*, s. and a., 37, 624, 836, 889; *fyne*, a., 40, 111, 574, 702, 869, 1278, 1375, 1407, 1438, etc.: *fyne*, *feyn*, inf. and pr., *fynys*, pr., 145, 198, 362, 476, etc.: *genology*, s., 85; *glorefyd*, p. p., 6; *gyde*, s., 515; *gyle*, inf., 15; *gyllery*, s., 74; *gyse*, s., 44; *ingyne*, *engyne*, *engyns*, s., 362, 794, etc.; *ire*, *yre*, s., 189, 613, 907, 1058, 1065, etc.; *Iury*, s., 388, 785, 798, etc.; *justyce*, s., 227, 847, 1212: *iustyfye*, inf., *iustyfyse*, pr., *iustyfyed*, pt., p. p., 1210, 1219, 1228, 1256, 1261, etc.; *lechere*, *-y*, *lychery*, s., 37, 836, 863, 1315, 1326, etc.; *mangery*, s., 533, 701, 974; *mawmentry*, s., 163, 1271, etc.: *maystry*, s., 171, 1208, 1238, etc.; *medcyn*, s., 1035; *melody*, s., 513, 827; *mercy*, s., 445,

1223, 1236, 1259, 1290, 1301, 1313, 1317, etc.: *mes(s)elry, mesellrie*, s., 1052, 1259, 1268, etc.; *multiplye*, inf., *multiplied, -ply(e)d*, pt., p. p., 31, 42, 949, 1268, etc.; *mynstralsy*, s., 233, 659, 1346, 1375, etc.; *ocupy(e)d*, p. p., 18, 1286, 1517; *paradyse, -dyce*, s., 13, 23; *party, partyse*, s. pl., 27, 233, etc.; *perell*, s. : whyle, s. : be gyll : wyle, 370; *perfyt*, a., 702; *price, prise, pryce, prese*, s., 2, 200, 389, 847, 1119, 1378, etc.; *progenite*, s. : dy : fyfty : ⌣ : lyghtly, 32; 256; *progeny*, s., 906; *prophecy(s), profecyes*, s., 427, 928, 1013, etc.; *prophesyd*, pt., 983; *qwytt, aqwytt*, inf., 338, 647, 702, 841, etc.; *relyed*, pt., 464; *remedy*, s., 674; *respytt, respet(t), respeyt*, s., 276, 289, 764, etc.; *sacurfyce, sacrafyce*, s., *sacrifysyd*, p. p., 61, 458, 1259, 1267, 1272, etc.; *satayn*, s. : Ermyn : fyne : medcyn, 1034; 1438; *seruyce, seruys*, s., 153, 912, 1363, 1378, etc.; *socerry*, s., 312, 594; *spye*, inf., *spyed*, pt., *spyse*, s. pl., 194, 227, 634, 1343, etc.; *storyse*, s. pl., 2; *stryf(e)*, s., inf., 65, 195, 1250, 1283, etc.; *surpryse*, inf., 767; *sygnyfye*, inf., 106, 1112; *syre*, s., 189, 613, etc.; *trechery*, s., 635; *velany*, s., 238, 522, 669, 1461, etc.; *vermyne*, s., 145; *vyce*, s., 13; *vyle*, a., 1106; *victory, vyctory*, s., 162, 959, 1008, etc.; *wyle*, s., 210, 332, 1023, etc.; *yle*, s., 1156; *ymagry*, s., 653; *ypocrysie*, s., 1219.

e) Foreign proper names: abaȝai, abyȝai, Ab(b)ysai, 617, 634, 671, 736; *achy*, 889; *Achys(e)*, 586, 589, etc.; *Adonoy*, 782, 807, 809; *aȝary, -i*, 1304, 1323, 1361, 1362, etc.; *Amaryce*, 200; *Amaȝi, amasy*, 1140, 1147; *amanys, amonyse*, 433, 987; *Arabyse*, 1106; *Armyne*, 1438, *Asmody*, 1326; *assery*, 1271; *Banay*, 809; *Beniamyn(e), Beniamin*, 111; 274, etc.; *bersylyne*, 799; *caluery*, 777; *Cecile:* myle, s., 1156; *Cephyn*, 574; *chanany*, 85; *Cusy*, 717; *dauy*, 1127; *Dewtronomij*, 190; *Ely*, 929, 954, 1001, etc.; *gabonyse*, 243, 246; *galadyns*, 435; *gyeȝi*, 1019; *leui, leuy*, 83, 167, 170, etc.; *Malachis, m-*, 282, 589, etc.; *mary*, 171; *melcheys*, 474; *moaby(se)*, 277, 987, 1006; *Neomy*, 372, 377, etc.; *Numeri*, 190; *occoȝi*, 992, 1003; *Ofny*, 395; *Oȝi, o-*, 1152, 1427; *raphadyn*, 158; *saray, sarai*, 33, 46; *sedechy*, 980; *sodomyte*, 864; *Symei, Symey*, 798, 809; *Syn*, 158; *Synay*, 811; *Syre, Syry, s-*, 1036, 1046, 1058, 1065; *Toby, Thoby, t-*, 1271, 1317, 1331, 1346, 1349, 1366, etc.; *Tyre, tyre*, 651, 823, 1123; *vasty*, 1381; *ȝacary*, 1168.

All these words are proved by the rimes to contain long *i*.

f) OE. -iȝ, -iȝ : aby, inf., 534; *allmighty(e)*, a., 1245, 1259, 1272, 1353, 1393, etc.; *body, bodes*, s., 83, 85, 93, 178, etc.; *dughty, doghty*, a., 372, 533; *drery*, a., 743; *dry(e)*, a. ,28, 194, 1427, etc.; *fawrty*, num., 1140,

1268: *ferly*, s., 423, 1310, 1346; *fyfty*, num., 32, 188; *gylty*, a. [OE. *gyltiȝ*], 94, 1256, 1259, etc.; *haly*, *holy*, adv., 513, 840; *hony*, s., 322; *hy(e)*, s. and inf., *hy(e)d*, pt., 28, 46, 50, 136, 146, 634, 1272, 1323, 1331, 1343, 1349, 1352, 1353, 1393, etc.; *lyyse*, s. pl. 'lies', 750; *ly(e)*, inf. [from the OE. present stam *liȝ-*] *lyse*, *lyys*, *lese*, pr., 178, 193, 203, 206, 1119, 1290, etc.; *myghty*, *myȝty*, a., 136, 307, etc.; *neyne*, num., 289; *redy*, a., [cf. OE. *ȝerāde*], 1290; *sary*, *sory*, a., 595, 840, 866, 1427; *stalworthy*, a., 671; *thryse*, adv., 209, 643, 1143, etc.; *thrytty*, num., 321; *twyse*, adv., 389, 873; *worthy*, a., 30, 85, 146, 617, 1208, 1223, 1226, 1236, 1256, 1268, 1290, 1292, 1313, 1326, 1361, 1402, etc.; *vn worthy*, a., 191; *wylly*, a. 375; *wyty*, a., 1223.

g) *OE.* *ēo*+ȝ : *ly*, inf. [OE. *lēogan*], *lyse*, *leys*, pr., 534, 818, 862. The forms given above occur in regular *ī*-rimes.

h) *OScand. oy* : *dy(e)*, inf. and pr., *dyed*, pt.[1]), 32, 69, 89, 1226, etc.

i) *OE. i* or *e* in unstressed words and syllables: *kechyn* [OE. *cycene*] s. : tyne, inf. : wyn, s. : fyne, a. : ⌣ , 869; 1375; *þis*, sg. dem. pron. : a vyce : sacrafyce : wyse, s., 458; : amonys, n. pr. : wyse, a. : price, s., 667.

§ *18. ME. -ild.*

a) *OE. ī, ȳ* (whether in original length or not) : *chyld*, s. : exilyd, p. p. : wyld, a. : ⌣ : myld, a., 20; : wyld, a., 41; : myld, a. : be gylyd, p. p. : bylde, inf., 44; : byld, s., 306; : myld, a. : ⌣ : wyld, a. : byld, s., 420; : vnfyled, p. p., 1042; : wyld, a., 1390, etc.; *fyled*, pt. : be gyld, pt. : beld, s.: wyld, a., 836; *myld*, a. : exilyd, p. p. : wyld, a. : chyld, s. : ⌣, 20; : chyld, s. : ⌣ : be gylyd, p. p. : bylde, inf., 44; ⌣ : chyld, s. : wyld, a. : byld, s., 420, etc.; *vnfyled*, p. p. : chyld, s., 1042; *wyld*, a. : exilyd, p. p. : ⌣ : chyld, s. : myld, a., 20; : begylyd, p. p. : myld, a. : chyld, s., 784; : chyld, s., 41, 572, 1390, etc.

b) *OE. i, y* : *wyld*, pt. [a new formation from OE. *willan*] : *fyld*, *fyllyd*, p. p. 144, 1017.

c) *OE. e, WSax. ie: byld(e)*, *beld*, s. and inf. [OE. *beldo*; WSax. *bieldo*] : chyld, s. : myld, a., : be gylyd, p. p. : ⌣, 44; : chyld, s., 73; : myld, a. : chyld, s. : wyld, a. : ⌣, 420; : fyled, pt. : be gyld, pt. : wyld, a., 836; : chyld, s. : wyld, a. : begyld, p. p., 1084, etc.

d) *-ild in words of French origin: be gylyd*, *be gyld*, pt., p. p. :chyld, s. : myld, a. : ⌣ : bylde, inf., 44; beld : chyld, s. : wyld, a., :⌣, 73; : wyld,

[1]) Scand. at least in point of frequency.

a. : myld, a. : chyld, s., 784; : fyled, pt. : beld, s. : wyld, a., 836; : wyld, a., 917; *exilyd*, p. p. : wyld, a. : chyld, s. : myld, a., 20.

In all these words, apart from *byld(e)*, s., now obsolete, *wyld*, pt., and *fyllyd*, p. p., Mod. English postulates long *ī* in ME . We have therefore no reason to suppose that in the above forms the *-ild* did not have a long vowel. Cf. Eilers (op. cit. 15), who says that long *ī* appears still to be preserved in *-ild*. He adds, »Es ist nicht unmöglich, dass wir *child* und *mild* Doppelformen mit Länge und Kürze anzusetzen haben.»

As regards *byld(e)*, s. and inf., it is difficult to account for this form in our text, since ME *ĭ* at that time had not yet begun to pass into *ī*, which corresponds to the fact that nowadays English dialects seem to presuppose ME. *ĕ*. The regular form in our text is *byld(e)*, as is proved by the rimes. Therefore we are perhaps concerned with a loan from the southern (possibly London) dialect or with an incongruous rime. But it is preferable to assume that we are concerned with a confusion of the OE. verbs *beldan* and *byldan* (to build). Cf NED., s. v. *bield*, v.

The forms *wyld*, pt. and *fyllyd*, p. p. contained short *i*.

§ 19. *ME. -ind.*

a) *OE. ī* lengthened before *-nd* : *be hynd*, adv. : fynd, inf. : wynd, s. : bynd, inf. : ⌣, 656; : fynd, pr., 894; : fynd, pr. : blynd, a. : pynd, pt., 1072; : mynd, s. : Inde, n. pr. : fynd, inf. : ⌣, 1373, etc.; *blynd*, a., 68; : fynd, pr. : ⌣ : pynd, pt. : be hynd, 1072, etc.; *bynd*, inf. : fynd, inf. : wynd, s. : ⌣ : be hynd, 656; : fynd, pr., 1446, etc.; *fynd*, inf. and pr. : kynd, s., 21; : mynd, s. : Inde, n. pr. : ⌣ : be hynd, adv., 1373; mynd, s. : ⌣ : kyned, s. : pyned, p. p., 1386, etc.; *pyn(e)d*, *pynyd*, pt., p. p., : kynd, s., 575; : fynd, pr. : blynd, a. : ⌣ : be hynd, 1072; : mynd, s. : fynd, inf. : kyned, s. : ⌣, 1386, etc.; *wynd*, s. : fynd, inf. : ⌣ : bynd, inf. : be hynd, 656.

b) *OE. ȳ* lengthened before *-nd* : *kynd*, *kyned*, s. : fynd, inf., 21; 109: : mynd, s., 575; : mynd, s., 1243; : mynd, s. : fynd, inf. : ⌣ : pyned, p. p., 1386, etc.; *man kynd*, s. : fynd, inf., 24; *mynd*, s. and inf. : kynd, s., 248, 1243; : Inde, n. pr. : fynd, inf. : be hynd, adv., 1373; : fynd, inf. : kyned, s. : pyned, p. p., 1386, etc.

c) *OF. i* : *Inde*, n. pr. : mynd, s. : ⌣ : fynd, inf. : be hynd, adv., 1373.

As in the case of the forms given in the preceding paragraph, Mod. English postulates long *ī* in all the words above, with the exception of *Inde*, n. pr. Later in the 16th cent. (Cf. VIETOR: A Shakespeare Phonology p. 19) the latter word had short *ĭ* in accordance with its French origin. But in several ME. poems the word is evidently used with a long *ī*, as is proved by the rimes. Owing to its phonetic structure it tended to obtain long *ī* on the analogy of native words with a similar phonetic ending. If we compare EILERS' result, in the case of words in *-ind*, we shall find that he says (op. cit. p. 192), »Die Länge herrscht fast überall», but »Der Norden hat wahrscheinlich schon Kurzformen gehabt». STRANDBERG only repeats what EILERS has said before when he states, »The only word with short *ĭ* or *ī* seems to be *find*, inf.», which is rimed with *brind*, p. p. [a new formation from the infinitive *brinna* < OScand. *brinna*].»

§ 20. ME. -ing.

a) *OE. ĭ* lengthened before *-ng* : *bryng*, inf. and imp. : vp spryng. 8; : thryng, inf., 104; : yong, a., 110; : ȝyng, a. : kepyng, s. : thyng, s. : : ⌣ , 1121; : blessyng, s. : ⌣ : ȝyng, a. : thyng, s., 1338; : thyng, s., 1358; : lykyng, s., 1421, etc.; *of spryng*, s. : thyng, s., 19; : bryng, inf., 138; : thyng, s., 986, etc.; *(vp) spryng*, inf. : bryng, inf., 8; : thyng, s. : kyng, s. : tythyng, s., 38; : ȝonge, a., 82, etc.; *syng*, inf., *synges*, pr. : ȝong : thyng : ⌣ : lykyng, 235; : bryng, inf., 523, etc.; *thryng*, inf. : bryng, inf., 104; : kyng: bryng, inf. : ȝyng, a. : ⌣, 1522; *thyng(e)*, s. : bydyng, s., 12; : of spryng, s., 19; : yong, a., 110; : gruchyng, s. 174; : ȝeng, a. : ⌣ : hethyng, s. : kyng, s., 583; : kyng, s. : ȝyng, a.: doyng, s. : ⌣, 611; : ȝyng, a. : kepyng, s. : ⌣ : bryng, inf., 1121; : kyng, s., 1292; : blessyng, s. : bryng, inf. : ȝyng, a. : ⌣, 1338; : bryng, inf., 1358; : gedderyng, s. : ȝyng, a. : kyng, s. : ⌣, 1376; : kyng, s., 1396; : werkyng, s., 1414, etc.; *wryng*, s. : slyng, s. : bryng inf. ⌣ : thyng, s., 510; *ȝyng*, *ȝong(e)*, *yong*, *ȝeng*, *ȝeyng*, a. [1]) : thyng : spryng : mournyng, s., 41; : spryng, inf., 82; : bryng, inf., 110; : kyng, s. : lykyng, s. : thyng, s. : ⌣ , 139; : fluyng, s., 230; : ⌣ :

[1]) *ȝyng*, a., is the typically Northern form, which is recorded already in ONorth. (Cf. BÜLBRING § 307.)

thyng, s. : hethyng, s. : kyng, s., 583; : kyng, s. : ∽ : doyng, s. : thyng s., 611; : kyng, s., 643, 1124; : kepyng, s. : thyng, s. : bryng, inf., 1121; : bereyng, s., 1280; : blessyng, s. : bryng, inf. : ∽ : thyng, s., 1338; gedderyng, s. : ∽ : kyng, s. : thyng, s., 1376, etc.

b) *OE. ȳ* lengthened before *-ng* : *kyng, kynges,* s. [OE. *cyng* < *cyning*; see Luick, HGE., p. 245], 38; : ȝeng, a. : thyng, s. : hethyng, s. : ∽, 583; : ȝyng, a. : doyng, s., : thyng, s. ,611; : ledyng, s., 616; : hethyng, s., 618; : ȝ(e)yng, a., 643, 1124; : thyng, s., 1292; : gedderyng, s. : ȝyng, a. : ∽ : thyng, s., 1376; 1396; : hyng, inf., 1389; : bydyng, s., 1390, etc.

c) *The suffix -ing: askyng:* tythyng, 627; : thyng, 813; *bedyng(es), bydyng* : thynge, 12; : kyng, 792; : kynges, 908; : kyng, 1390, etc.; *begynnyng :* thyng, 46; *bereyng :* endyng, 953; : kyng, 1152; : ȝyng, 1280; *blessyng,* 377; *:* ȝyng : kyng : bryng : ∽, 711; : ȝyng, 1178; : bryng: ȝyng : thyng, 1338; *bredyng* : kyng, 753; *cloghyng :* likyng, 183; *comyng :* kyng : ∽ : thyng : bryng, 121; : ȝyng, 547; : bryng, 1449, etc.; *consellyng :* kyng, 216; *cryyng*: thyng, 444; *demyng :* tythyng : ∽ : thyng : endyng, 942; *desyryng :* kyng : lykyng : bryng : ∽, 1142; *doyng :* kyng : ȝyng : ∽ : thyng, 611; : thyng : kyng: ȝyng : ∽, 701; *dremyng* : hethyng : ∽ : kyng : hyng, pt., 101; *endyng(ys) :* bryng, 519; : kynges 802; : tythyng : demyng : thyng : ∽, 942; : ȝyng : thyng : kyng, 1004, etc; *fandyng :* gedderyng, 173; *fluyng :* ȝyng, 230; *fowlyng :* hethyng : kyng : thyng : ∽, 804; *gedderyng :* fandyng, 173; : ȝyng : kyng : thyng, 1376; *gouernyng:* thyng, 262, 448; *grochyng, gruchyng :* thyng, 174; 1041; *gyfyng :* thyng, 660; *helpyng* : kyng, 909; *hetyng* : of spryng, 256; *hethyng* [OScand. *héðing*] : dremyng : kyng : hyng, 101; : kyng, 618; : ȝeng : thyng : ∽ : kyng, 583; : bydyng : bryng : wellyng : ∽, 1490, etc.; *kepyng* : ȝyng : ∽ : thyng: bryng, 1121; *knawyng :* kyng, 968; *ledyng :* kyng, 845, 890; *lefynyng :* thyng, 148; *lernyng :* ȝyng, 993; *lesyng :* thyng ∽ : kyng : bryng, 760; *likyng, lykyng :* kyng : ∽ : thyng : ȝyng, 139; : cloghyng, 183; : kyng : ∽ : bryng : desyryng, 1142; *:* bryng, 1421, etc.; *louyng :* bryng, inf. : ∽ : ȝyng : thyng, 292; : thyng, 801; *:* kyng, 913; *lyfyng, lyuyng :* kyng, 605, 984; : kyng : thyng : ȝyng, 972; : kyng, 1106, etc.; *manasyng :* bryng : thyng : kyng, 1061; *mournyng :* yonge : thyng, : spryng ∽, 41; *offeryng :* ȝong, 242; *pertyng :* thyng, 536; *schylyng :* tythyng : ∽ : thyng : hethyng, 739; *tellyng :* kyng : thyng : bryng : ∽, 632; *tokenyng, tokynyng :* kyng, 564; : bryng, 928; *trowyng,* s.: bryng, 1196, 1479; *tythyng* [OScand. *tíðindi*] *:* spryng :

thyng : kyng : ⌣, 38; : askyng, 627; *vitaylyng* : kyng, 1088; *wellyng*: bydyng : bryng : ⌣ : hethyng, 1490; *werkyng* : kyng, 849; : thyng, 1414; *wonyng:* thyng : ȝyng : kyng, 831; *wrytyng* : kyng : ȝyng : bryng, 627.

d) *OScand. e* : *dyng*, inf. : bryng : ⌣ : spryng : thyng, 344; *hyng*, inf., *hynges*, pr. and imp., 101; 497; : kyng : bryng : thryng, inf. : ⌣, 104; : kyng, s., 1389, etc.; *slyng*, s. [possibly of OScand. origin] : wryng, s., 510, etc.

The many rimes with the suffix *-ing* intimate that the earlier tendency to lengthen *i* before *-ng* had been given up. But on the other hand it must be admitted that *i* in the suffix *-ing* which, when riming with other words in *-ing*, was stressed, may have been lengthened on the analogy of these *ing*-words. Eilers (op. cit. p. 34) comes to the same conclusion as regards *i* before *ng* in Cursor Mundi. Strandberg goes a step further and maintains that the shortening had already taken place in this dialect.

§ 21. *ME. ō*

a) *OE. ō: be houe, be hofe*, s., inf. and pr., 75, 1301, 1337, 1388; *blod(e)*, *blud(e)*, s., 103, 144, 582, 600, 663, 769, 1114, 1448, 1469, etc.: *boke*,s., 128, 168, 610, 826, etc.; *brother, brothyr*, s., 72, 73, 109, etc.; *com(e)*, pt. : hom(e), s., 109, 509, 1071, 1352; : esrom, n. pr., 98; *do*, inf. and pr., 519, 811, 882, 998, 1034, 1064, 1291, 1379, etc.; *do(y)ne*, (*vn*) *downe*, p. p., 131, 141, 288, 390, 423, 439, 524, 763, 806, 952, 1079, 1204, 1225, 1286, 1291, 1396, 1402, 1453, 1507, etc. ; *for done*, p. p., 791; *vn downe*, p. p., 131; *flode, flud(e)*, s., 22, 124, 234, 287, 716, 1054, etc.; *fode, fud(e)*, s., 14, 103, 106, 144, 688, 762, 1016, 1114, etc.; *for soke, -suke*, pt., 128, 335, 1010, 1173, etc.; *foyre*, pt., 1234; *fotte*, s., 187; *fother*, s., 86; *gud(e)*, s. and a., 14, 144, 582, 589, 663, 688, 716, 762, 769, 937, 1016, 1054, 1148, etc.: *hode*, s., 1388; *houe, hoyne*, s. and inf., 'delay', 288, 439, 1507; *loke*, inf., *lokyd*, pt., 21, 81, 128, 241, 335, 610, 715, 826, 1173, 1275, etc.; *mode*, s., 22, 106, 124, 582, 663, 688, 716, 762, 937, 1016, etc.; *loo, loe*, interj. [shortened form of OE. *lōca*, imp.], 977, 1064: *mone, moyne*, s., 100, 183; *mote*, s., 187; *noke*, s. [of obscure origin], 241, 788: *none, noyne*, s., 100, 288, 423, 1225, 1396, etc.: *noþer*, pron., 109; (*an*) *oþer, oyder*, pron., 72, 73, 86, etc.; *sone, soyne, suyn*, adv., 131, 524, 763, 952, 1079, 1165, 1204, 1208, 1286, 1396,

1402, 1453, 1507, etc.; *stod(e)*, *stud(e)*, pt., 14, 106, 234, 716, 937, 1054, etc.: *vp stude*, pt., 287; *to*, prep., 136, 533, 811, 881, 998, 1286, 1336, 1436, 1460, etc.: *toþer*, 86, 97; *þer to*, adv., 519, 1379; *vnto*, prep., 1336; *vnderstud*, *-stod*, pt., 103, 589, 769, 1016: *wode*, *wude*, a., 14, 103, 600, 688, 769, 937.

These words, apart from *com(e)*, pt., occur in regular *ō*-rimes. The rime *come : home*, s., is no emergency rime, as *home* has been proved to have a collateral form with a close *ō*. Cf. Luick, Unters. p. 79 seq.

b) *OE. -ōȝ*, *-ōh : clough*, s. [OE. **clōh*, *clōȝes*] : plough, s. : enogh, a. : wogh, s., 1253; *drogh(e)*, pt. : slogh, pt., 314; : enogh, adv. : ⌣ : wogh, s. : slogh, pt., 488; : sloygh, pt., 557; : woght, s. : togh, a. : slogh, pt., 635; : wogh, s. : plogh, s. : ⌣ : enough, a., 1184, etc.; *with drogh*, pt. : enogh, adv., 535; *enogh(t)*, *enough*, a. and adv. : slogh, pt., 322; : drogh, pt. : wogh, s. : slogh, pt., 488; : slogh, pt., 508; : with drogh, pt., 535; : wogh, s. : plogh, s. : drogh, pt. : ⌣, 1184; : wogh, s., 1206; : clough, s. : plough, s. : ⌣ : wogh, s., 1253, etc.; *loghe*, pt. [OE. *hlōh*, *hlōȝon*] : slogh, pt., 512; *plogh(t)*, *ployȝt*, *plough*, s. : sloght, 280; : slogh, pt., 452; : wogh, s. : ⌣ : drogh, pt. : enough, a., 1184; : clough, s. : ⌣ : enogh, a. : wogh, s., 1253; *slogh(e)*, *sloght*, *sloygh*, pt. : woghe, s., 272; : ploght, s., 280; : drogh, pt., 314; : enoght, adv., 322; : ployȝt, s., 452; : enogh : drogh, pt. : wogh, s. : ⌣, 488; : loghe, pt., 512; : droghe, pt., 557; : drogh, pt. : woght, s. : togh, a. : ⌣, 635; : enogh, adv., 1448, etc.; *togh*, a. [OE. *tōh*, *tōȝe*], 635; *wogh(t)*, s. [OE. *wōh*, *wōȝe*] : sloghe, pt., 272; : enogh : drogh, pt. : ⌣ : slogh, pt., 488; : drogh, pt. : ⌣ : togh, a. : slogh, pt., 635; : plogh, s. : drogh, pt. : enough, a., 1184; : enogh, a., 1206, etc. Note that here no parasitic *u* has been developed between *ō* and *h*, a Northumbrian characteristic (cf. p. xlvi). — See Luick, HGE, §403.

c) *OE. ēo: ȝode*, pt. : mode, s. : flud, s. : gud, a. : ⌣ , 230; : mode, s. : blud, s. : gud, a. : ⌣, 582; : blode, s., 600; : gud, a. : fode, s. : mode, s. : ⌣, 762; : gud, a. : flud, s. : ⌣ : stod, pt., 1054; : gud, a., 1148; : gud, a., 1182; : hode, s., 1388; : blod, s., 1448; 1469.

d) *OE. ā*: *(al)so*, adv. : to, prep., 533; : woe : two : do, 614; : to, prep. : Pharo, n. pr. : do, inf., 811; : vnto, prep., 1336; : two, num., 1340; : to, prep. : ⌣ : mo, a. : fro, prep., 1369; : so, adv., 1340; : to, prep. : ⌣ : fro, prep. : go, inf., 1436; *go*, inf. : to, prep. : so : fro, prep. : ⌣, 1436; : so : two : ⌣ : to, prep., 1460; *two*, num. : to, prep., 136; : so : woe, s. : to, prep., 614.

The transition *OE.* $\bar{a} > ME.$ $\bar{o}$ after consonant + *w* is discussed by Luick in HGE. § 370; he says, »Unter besonderen Umständen ging aber die Bewegung, die ae. $\bar{a}$ ergriffen hatte, noch weiter und führte im 13. Jahrhundert zu me. $\bar{o}$. Auf einem Gebiete, welches nachweislich einen grossen Teil des Mittellandes (aber nicht London) und Gloucester umfasste, war dies der Fall nach Kons. + *w*.: *twō* 'zwei' . . . .»

Of the close $\bar{o}$ in *go*, inf., a verb generally rimed with words containing $\bar{o}$ (see p. XCIII), Luick says in Unters. p. 79, »*Go* wird auch in solchen Dichtungen, welche sonst die beiden $\bar{o}$ scheiden, gelegentlich mit $\bar{o}$ gebunden, was. . . . auf eine Nebenform mit $\bar{o}$ weist.»

e) OScand. $\bar{a}$: *fone*, *foyne*, a. 'few' : sone, adv. : vn downe, p. p. : ⌣ : bone, s. 'boon', 131; : bone, s. 'boon' : done, p. p. : moyne, s., 'moon' ⌣, 183; : hone, inf. : ⌣ : none, s. 'noon' : done, p. p., 288; ⌣ : done, p. p. : one : none, pron., 390; : done, p. p. : noyne, s. 'noon' : ⌣ : sone, adv., 423; : sone, adv. : done, p. p. : ⌣ : hoyne, s., 439; : noyne, s. 'noon' : done, p. p. : sone, adv., 728; : none, s. 'noon' : sone, adv. : ⌣ : done, p. p., 763; : for done, p. p., 791; : bone, s. 'boon' : soyne, adv. : doyne, p. p. : ⌣, 1402; *fro*, prep. [OScand. *frá*] : do, inf., 880; : go : two : ⌣ : to, prep., 1327; : to, prep. : so, adv. : go, inf., 1436.

As has been shown above, p. L, *fro* is generally rimed with long $\bar{a}$. The rimes with *do*, inf. and *to*, prep. are not necessarily unsatisfactory. Owing to unstressed position, the $\bar{o}$ may have become $\bar{o}$. (Cf. Luick HGE., § 370, Anm. 2.) As regards *fone*, its rimes with words containing long close $\bar{o}$ should be specially noted (cf. the writing *foune* or *fune* in Minot and Curs. M.). In other ME. poems it is rimed with $\bar{o}$. Cf. Björkman: Scand. Loan-words, p. 102.

f) OScand. ó: *bone*, *boune*, *boyne*, s. [OScand. *bón*], 131, 183, 806, 1167, 1396, 1402, 1507; *brokyd*, a. »variegated» [cf. OSw. *brōkoter*, a.; Da. *broget*, a. of unknown origin]; *loue*, s., 1337; *toke*, pt., 21, 335, 715, 1173, 1275, etc.; *vndertoke*, pt., 241.

These words are proved by the rimes to contain $\bar{o}$.

g) OE., ME. $\check{u}$ in an open syllable *: a boue*, *above*, *abufe*, *A-*, adv. and prep. : yow : be hofe, s. : ⌣ : moue, inf., 75; : lufe, s. : proue, inf. : ⌣ : controue, inf., 130; : reproue, s., 317; : groyue, inf. : proue, inf. : controue, inf. : ⌣ , 408; : con troue, inf.: moue, inf. : ⌣ : loue, inf., 877; : reprofe, s., 1256, etc.; *loue*, *lufe*, s. and inf. : proue, inf. : a boue, prep. : controue, inf., 130; : con troue, inf. : moue, inf. : above,

prep. : ⌣, 877; : proue, inf., 1222, 1434; : proue, inf. : ⌣ : moue, inf. : groue, inf., 1288;: moue, inf. : proue, inf. : ⌣ : be houe, vb., 1301, etc.; *woke, weke*, s. 'week' [WSax. *wucu*] : for soke, pt. : toke, pt. : loke, inf., 335; : boke, s.: toke, pt. : ⌣ : loke, inf., 1345.

These rimes show that in the author's dialect OE. *ŭ*, when in an open syllable, had passed into *ō*.

h) *AN.* or *OF. loan-words: controue*, inf., *con trouyd*, pt., 130, 336, 408, 877; *dole*, s. : foyle, s., 1197; *foyle*, s. : dole, s., 1197; *moue*, inf., *moued, mouyd*, pt., p. p., 4, 25, 75, 336, 877, 1288, 1301, etc.; *pore*, a. : foyre, pt., 1234; *proue*, inf., 130, 408, 1222, 1288, 1301, etc.; *reprofe, reproue*, s., 317, 1256, 1337.

i) *Foreign proper names: Arnon* .: Seon, 200; *Getron* : done, p. p., 141; *esrom* : come, pt., 98; *Pharo* : so : to, prep. : ⌣ : do, inf., 811; *Seon* : Arnon, n. pr., 200.

§ 22. *ME. ō*

a) *OE. ā* : *alon(e), allon(e)*, 25, 89, 121, 815, 834, 915, 943, 965, 1007, 1048, 1144, 1159, 1189, 1201, 1237, 1242, 1245, 1261, 1363, 1441, etc.; *bon(e)(s), boune*, s. [OE. *bān*], 792, 1145, 1188, 1195, 1363, etc.; *foo, foe*, s., 15, 515, 537, 669, 710, 744 ,760, 834, etc.; *go(o), goe*,[1]) inf. and pr., 9, 38, 225, 251, 272, 462, 525, 572, 600, 625, 710, 737, 744 796, 816, 834, 858, 884, 924, 1003, 1436, 1449, 1516, 1524, etc.; *forgo*, inf., 436, 685; *gon(e), goyne*, p. p., 89, 456, 740, 790, 792, 861, 1011, 1048, 1075, 1085, 1124, 1131, 1159, 1245, 1259, 1261, 1363, 1370, 1441, 1528, etc.; *myse gone, mysgone*, p. p., 25, 268, 1242; *ouergone*, p. p., 68; *hom(e)*, s., 36; *hote*, a., 780; *lore, layre*, s. [< OE. *lār*], 852, 995, 1308, 1501: *mo(e), moo*, a., 50, 120, 251, 492, 572, 625, 685, 710, 716, 737, 834, 839, 858, 924, 936, 963, 973, 976, 1003, 1047, 1078, 1230, 1279, 1360, 1369, 1394, 1410, 1411, 1516: *mon(e), mene, moyne*,[2]) s., 159, 213, 703, 706, 943, 1010, 1159, 1189, 1201, 1245, 1259, 1528, etc.; *more, moyre, mare, mayre*, a. and adv., 15, 29, 80, 84, 102, 116, 140, 191, 232, 426, 458, 497, 507, 540, 559, 590, 599, 621, 637, 658, 802, 808, 835, 852, 886, 900, 903, 910, 913, 918, 922, 950, 964, 968,

[1]) Cf. also p. XCII.

[2]) The word is derived from OE. **mān* (cf. N. E. D. s. v. *moan*) or formed from the verb *mǣnan* on the analogy of *dāl - dǣlan, lād - lǣdan, swāt - swǣtan* (see PALMGREN: English Gradation-Nouns etc., p. 61.)

986, 991, 995, 1004, 1022, 1031, 1055, 1070, 1100, 1113, 1135, 1151, 1155, 1161, 1166, 1176, 1190, 1194, 1205, 1206, 1208, 1213, 1214, 1247, 1249, 1263, 1299, 1308, 1328, 1341, 1350, 1389, 1415, 1430, 1435, 1459, 1473, 1494, 1501, 1507, 1518, etc.; *non(e)*, pron., 25, 68, 121, 159, 166, 429, 706, 769, 810, 823, 861, 869, 902, 943, 977, 1048, 1068, 1085, 1105, 1144, 1195, 1233, 1242, 1363, 1417, 1441, 1526, etc.: *nones*, *noyns*, s., 794, 1145, 1188; *on(e)*, *ones*, *onys*, num., adv., 13, 48, 89, 201, 429, 593, 690, 815, 861, 894, 977, 1011, 1085, 1145, 1242, 1245, etc.; *so(o)*, *soe*, adv. : fro : two : go, 77; : moe : fro : wo, s., 120; : fro, prep., 444; ∽ : foo, s. : wo, s. : two, 537; foo, s. : wo, s. : ∽ : fro, prep., 669; : moo, a., 716; : wo, s. : ∽ : sloo, inf. : foo, s., 760; : two, 855, 1110; : slo, inf. : to, prep. : fro, prep. : ∽, 881; : fro, prep. : go, inf.: ∽ : two, 884; : two, 922; ∽ : wo, s. : go, inf. : mo, a., 924; : þo, pron. : wo, s. : moo, a. : ∽, 1000; ∽ : go, inf. : mo, pron. : fro, 1003; : wo, s., 1009; : mo, a. : slo, inf. : go, inf. : ∽, 1079; : go, inf., 1123; : wo, s., 1203; : wo, s. : to, prep. : ∽ : fro, prep., 1286; : fro, prep., 1257; : two : moo : ∽ : wo, s., 1279; ∽ : slo, inf. : wo, s. : fro, prep., 1281; : two : fro, prep. : mo, a. : ∽, 1360; : moo, a. : fro, prep. : ∽ : two, 1394; : mo, a., 1410, 1411; : ∽ : wo, s. : go, inf. : wo, s., 1428; : ∽ : fro, prep. : wo, s. : go, inf., 1449; *also*, adv. : fro, 162; : gerico, n. pr. : two : go : ∽, inf., 225; : moo, a. : foo, s. : ∽ : go, inf., 710; : go, inf. : two : ∽ : wo, s., 816; : mo, a. : wo, s. : slo, inf., 936; : two : fro, prep. : go, inf. : ∽, 1057; : go, inf., 1073; : fro, prep. : ∽ : two : go, inf., 1177; : wo, s. : do, inf. : go, inf. : ∽, 1267; ∽ : two : wo, s. : þo, pron., 1372; *sore*, *soyre*, a., inf. and adv., 102, 116, 559, 621, 910, 950, 964, 968, 986, 995, 1031, 1145, 1161, 1213, 1214, 1222, 1263, 1279, 1299, 1312, 1406, 1435, 1485, 1507; *two*, num. : fro, prep. : go, inf. : them, pron., 9; : mo : ∽ : þo : fro, 50; : gerico, n. pr. : ∽ : go, inf. : also, adv., 225; : fro, prep., 392; : mo, a. : ∽ : fro, prep. : so, adv., 428; : forgo, inf. : slo, inf. : þo, pron., 436; : go, inf., 462; : þo(o), pron., 474, 619, 1278; : þo, pron. : mo, a. : fro, prep., 492; : so, adv. : foo, s. : wo, s. : ∽, 537; : mo, a. : þer fro, prep. : ∽ : forgo, inf., 685; : þer fro, adv. : ∽ : go, inf. : wo, s., 796; : go, inf. : ∽ : also, adv. : wo, s., 816; : mo(o), a., 839, 973; : so, adv., 855, 1110; : fro, adv. : go, inf. : ∽ : moo, a., 858; : fro, prep. : go, inf. : so, adv. : ∽, 884; : so, adv., 922; : wo, s., 955; : blo, a. : go, inf. : mo, a. : ∽, 1047; ∽ : fro, prep. : go, inf. : also, adv., 1057; : fro, prep. : also, adv. : ∽ : go, inf., 1177; : moo, a. : so, adv. : wo,

s., 1279; : go, inf. : ⏑ : þer fro, adv. : þer to, adv., 1327; : fro, prep. : mo, a. : so, adv., 1360; : also, adv. : wo, s. : ⏑ : þo, pron., 1372; : moo, a. : fro, prep. : so, adv. : ⏑, 1394; : so, adv. : ⏑ : go, inf. : to, prep., 1460; : wo, s. : mo, a. : ⏑ : go, inf., 1516; : wo, s. : ⏑ : go, inf. : fro, prep., 1524, etc.; *ston(e)*, *stones*, pl., *stonys*, pl., 159, 167, 463, 663, 740, 793, 794, 824, 861, 869, 902, 915, 1144, 1145, 1210, 1526; *þo*, *them*, pron. pl. [OE. *þā*], 9, 38, 50, 492, 619, 976, 1000, 1278, 1372; *wo*, s. and a., 15, 120, 251, 515, 537, 572, 669, 744, 760, 796, 816, 924, 955, 963, 1000, 1009, 1082, 1186, 1203, 1267, 1279, 1281, 1286, 1372, 1426, 1428, 1449, etc.; *wote*, *wott*, pr. [OE. *wāt*], 34, 780; *wroth*, a., 554, etc.: *yl-kon(e)*, *ychon*, pron., 25, 68, 121, 213, 566, 604, 703, 712, 741, 769, 779, 790, 792, 902, 943, 965, 1000, 1008, 1048, 1105, 1124, 1125, 1131, 1417, 1472, etc.

Apart from *wo*, s., all these words occur in regular $\bar{o}$-rimes. As to *wo*, s., it is in four cases rimed with a close $\bar{o}$, viz. : wo : do, inf., 614, 963, 1267 and wo : to, prep., 1286. These must no doubt be regarded as incongruous rimes, as it was only after cons. + *w* that $\bar{o}$ became close. »Nach einfachem w ist keine derartige Entwicklung eingetreten : *wō* 'Wehe', *wōt* 'weiss', *wōn* 'Menge'.» (Cf. Luick, HGE. § 370, Anm.)

b) OScand. á: blo, a. [OScand. *blá(r)* = 'livid by contusion'], 1047: *bost*, s., 646; *both*, pron., 228, 554; *fown*, s. 'fool', 667; *fon(e)*, *foyn*, vb. (prob. of OScand. origin), 31, 184, 300, 692, 697, 786, etc.: *fro*, prep., 9, 15, 50, 162, 251, 492, 669, 858, 884, 1057, 1177, 1216, 1230, 1257, 1281, 1286, 1360, 1369, 1394, 1436, 1449, 1524, etc; *þer fro*, adv., 441, 516, 685, 796, 881, 1003; *slo(o)*, inf. and pr., 436, 515, 572, 760, 881, 936, 1079, 1082, 1216, 1281; *slon(e)*, *sloyn(e)*,[1]) p. p., 166, 347, 593, 605, 741, 769, 894, 977, 1105, 1467, etc.; *tone*, *toyn(e)*, *tan*,[2]) p. p., 48, 89, 121, 166, 167, 213, 241, 347, 405, 429, 438, 706, 740, 902, 965, 977, 1011, 1105, 1125, 1144, 1159, 1237, 1370, 1526, etc.: *þore*,[3]) adv.,

[1]) By the side of *slain*, p. p. < OE. *slaȝen* we meet with *slon(e)*, *sloyn(e)*, which is a new-formation from the inf. *slā* of Scand. origin on the analogy of *gā* ∽ *gān*.

[2]) In Northern and Midland dialects the *k* and the following short vowel in *take*, *takes*, *taken* were often suppressed, leaving the forms *ta*, *tas*, *tan*, of which *ta*, *tay* survives in Eng. dialects, *tane* in Sc. and many Engl. dialects, *ta'en* in Eng. poets.

[3]) This form corresponds to the rare OE. *þāra* (NED). Luick says about it, »Wo me. $\bar{o}$ einem ae. $\bar{a}$ zu entsprechen scheint, liegen altenglische Nebenformen

8, 29, 59, 152, 191, 232, 388, 426, 458, 507, 575, 595, 609, 621, 630, 637, 658, 900, 907, 913, 918, 926, 950, 968, 991, 1031, 1114, 1135, 1155, 1166, 1172, 1260, 1276, 1308, 1328, 1350, 1389, 1401, 1430, 1507, etc.: *whore*,[1]) adv., 140, 458, 595, 609, 900; *wone*, *woyn*(*e*), *wons*, *wonys*,[2]) s. [OScand. *ván*], 13, 68, 213, 429, 456, 522, 545, 566, 604, 690, 706, 740, 769, 792, 793, 823, 824, 834, 861, 869, 915, 965, 1000, 1068, 1075, 1085, 1188, 1195, 1210, 1233, 1370, 1441, 1467, 1472, 1526, etc.; *wore*, *woyre*, *ware*, *wer*(*e*), pt., 15, 75, 84, 143, 232, 388, 426, 497, 507, 540, 575, 587, 599, 637, 658, 802, 835, 852, 922, 991, 1004, 1055, 1084, 1104, 1113, 1145, 1155, 1161, 1208, 1213, 1222, 1249, 1255, 1275, 1389, 1406, 1415, 1501, etc.; *wothe*, s., 228.

Apart from *fro*, which is once rimed with *þerto*, 306, all these words occur in regular $\bar{o}$-rimes.

c) *OE.* $\breve{o}$ when lengthened in an open syllable: *be fore*, adv., 15, 59, 66, 80, 102, 191, 426, 497, 507, 540, 590, 599, 621, 630, 802, 852, 853, 900, 907, 913, 926, 968, 1004, 1007, 1022, 1031, 1084, 1100, 1104, 1138, 1139, 1146, 1161, 1168, 1172, 1194, 1205, 1206, 1222, 1232, 1247, 1260, 1275, 1276, 1296, 1299, 1308, 1350, 1389, 1406, 1415, 1435, 1459, 1507, etc.; *be forne*, adv. : were, pt. : mayre, comp. : þore, 232; 1501; *here fore*, adv., 1401; *hose*, s., 677; *los*(*s*)*e*, inf., [OE. *losian*], 415, 504, 774, 1248, 1391, 1526, etc.; *þerfor*(*e*), *þer for*(*e*), adv., 75, 143, 587, 808, 886, 922, 950, 964, 995, 1070, 1113, 1151, 1213, 1275, 1279, 1341, 1485, 1494, 1517, etc.;

The rime *couer*, inf. : *ouer*, adv., 1017 is no doubt imperfect, the riming-vowels being $\breve{u}$: $\bar{o}$ or rather $\breve{o}$. And so is the rime *smoke*, s. (OE. *smoca*] : *loke*, inf. 244, since the regularly lengthened form of OE. *smoca* was *smoke* with a long open $\bar{o}$.

d) *AN* or *OF. loan-words: chose*, s. (a variant of *choice*

mit $\bar{a}$ oder an. $\bar{a}$ zugrunde. So ergab sich ausserhalb des ostsächsischen Gebiets ein Nebeneinander: *mǭst—māst*, *mǭst; þǭre—þāre*, *þǭre*; *whǭre - whare*, *whǭre* usw. In der beginnenden Gemeinsprache gewann zumeist $\bar{o}$ die Oberhand, $\bar{o}$ in *mǭst*» (Luick, HGE § 369 Anm. 8). As *þāra* is very rarely met with in OE., we think that in most cases ME. *þār*^{e}, *þāre* is of Scand. origin, f. OScand. *ðar* with OE. lengthening of $\breve{a}$ on the analogy of OE. *þǣr*, especially as the forms are nearly always found in the Scandinavian parts of England. The same is true of ME. *whāre*, *whǭre* (cf. OE. *whǣr*, *-ē-*, *hwāra*, rare; ON. *hvar*)

[1]) See note [3]) on p. XCV.

[2]) In one case only *wone*, s., is rimed with close $\bar{o}$, viz. : ⌣ : done, p. p. : allon : gone, p. p., 1261. This is certainly an incongruous rime.

often treated as verbal sb. from *choose*, v.; see NED. s. v. *Choose*, sb.) : losse, inf. : glose, s. : purpasse, s., 415; : glose, inf. : ⌣ : hose, s. : lose, inf., 677; : glose, inf. : suppose, inf. : lose, inf. : ⌣, 724; : lose, inf., 1248; *glose*, s. and inf., *glosys*, pr., *glosed*, pt. : suppose, inf., 362; : chose, s. : losse, inf. : ⌣ : purpasse, s., 415; : chose, s. : hose, s. : lose, inf., 677, etc.; *ost*, s. : bost, s., 646; : most, a., 647; *purpose*, *purpasse*, s. : chose, s. : losse, inf. : glose, s. : ⌣, 415; : lose, inf., 1526; *restore*, *restoyre*, inf. : þore, 8; : be fore : were, pt. : ⌣ : more, adv., 15; : more, a. : be fore : ⌣ : þore, 66; : be fore : þore : more, adv., 913; : wore, pt. : ⌣ : more, a. : be fore, 1004; : be fore, 1146; : be fore : more : sore : ⌣, 1299; : more : sore : ⌣ : be fore, 1435, etc.; *suppose*, inf., *supposys*, pr., *supposed*, pt. : glose, inf., 362; : lose, inf., 504, 513, 635; : glosed, pt., 1451; : glosys, pr., 1529, etc.; *store*, *stoure*, s. : be fore : þore : ⌣ : more, 80; : more : sore : ⌣ : be fore, 102; : ware : mare : ⌣ : þore, 152; : wore : ⌣ : more : before, 497; : more : be fore : ⌣ : ware, pt., 540; : wore, pt. : ⌣ : þer fore : more, 922; : more : þore: wore, pt., 991; : be fore, 1138, 1232; : more, 1176; : wore, pt. : be fore: ⌣ : sore, 1222; : were, pt. : ⌣ : þer fore : be fore, 1275; : be fore : þore : more, 1350, etc.; *tres(s)our*, *thres(s)our*, s. : þore : ⌣ : wore : more, 658; : before : ⌣ : more: wore, pt., 802; : be fore, 1139.

e) *Foreign proper names: Abdon* : þeron, adv. : Achyron, n. pr.: ⌣ : fone, inf., 300; *Absalon*, *Absolon* : Ebron, n. pr., 625; : a pon, prep. : Anon, n. pr. : fown, s. : ⌣, 667; : amone, n. pr. : fon, inf. : tan, p. p. : ⌣, 697, etc.; : one, num., 861; *abyron:* fon, inf., 184; *acaron*: on, prep., 994; *Achyron*, 300; *Amon* : on, prep. : Absolon, n. pr. : ⌣ : fon, inf., 692; : fon, inf. : tan, p. p. : Absolon, n. pr., 697; *Anon* : a pon, prep. : ⌣ : fown, s. : absolon, n. pr., 667; *Aron*, 141; : non, pron. : mone s. 'moan' : ⌣ : ston, s., 159; : none, pron. : tone, p. p. : sloyne, p. p., 166; *Askalone*, *askalon* : ylkon, 333; *Assoton*, 406; *bablion* : foyn, pr., 31; *chelon* : Maalon, m-, 372, 373; *Dagon :* fon, pr.: ⌣ : sampson : on, 367; 405; *Ebron* : Absolon, n. pr., 625; : ylkon, pron., 712; *Eglon :* fon, 277; *fayran* (= pharaon) : ylkon: wone, s. : alon, 261; *Esmon* : on (= wone, s.), 201; *Gabaon*, *g-* : fon, inf. 270; : þeron, adv., 766; *ȝabulon* : symeon, n. pr., 642; *jerico*, *gerico*, : two : go : also, 225; : wo,s., 1426, etc.; *loth* : wott, 34; *Maalon*, *m-* : chelon, 372, 373; : ylkon, 378; *Nabogodhonosour* : more : be fore : ⌣ : wore, pt., 1415; *salamon* : ston, s., 663; : ylkon, pron., 779;: Wyon, n. pr. : fon, pr. : apon, adv. : ⌣, 786; : non, pron., 810, etc.; *sampson*; 367; : salamon, n. pr., 836; *sodome* : home, s., 36,

sydone, : stone, s., 915; *symeon* : ȝabulon, n. pr., 642; *Wyon* : fon, pr. : apon, adv.: salamon, n. pr., 786.

The words given above are all rimed with forms containing ǭ. It should be specially noticed that *chose*, s., seems to have ǭ in spite of its being associated with the OE. verb *cēosan*, which would have given a form containing close ǭ in ME.

f) *ME. on, a pon, þer on*, prep. and adv.: Anon, n. pr. : fown, s. : absolon, n. pr., 667; : Absolon, n. pr. : Amon, n. pr. : fon, inf., 692; : Absolon, n. pr., 733; : Gabaon, n. pr., 766; : Wyon, n. pr. : fon, pr.: salamon, n. pr., 786; : acaron, n.pr., 994, etc.

g) *OScand. o* when lengthened in an open syllable: *score*, s. [ON. *skor*]: be fore: sore: ⌣ : more, 559.

§ 23. ME. -old.

a) *OAngl. ā f. ă lengthened before -ld* : *bold*, a. : old, a. : told, pt : ⌣ :mony fold, a., 45; : ⌣ : told, p. p. : gold, s., 96; : told, p. p; : old, a. : ⌣ : wold, pt., 642; : wold, pt. : hold, inf. : ⌣ : told, p. p., 668 : told, p. p. : ⌣ : wold, pt. : old, 803; wold, pt. : ⌣ : gold, s. : hold, inf., 835; : old, a. : ⌣ : gold, s. : wold, pt., 898; : old, a. : told, p. p. : ⌣ : wold, pt., 1081; : ⌣ : old, a. : wold, pt. : sold, p. p., 1117; : gold, s., 1270; : told, p. p. : ⌣ : mold, s. : wold, pt., 1514, etc.; *cold*, a. : wold, pt., 807; : told, p. p. : mony fold, adv. : hold, s. : ⌣, 1152; : mony fold, s. : wold, pt. : told, p. p., 1078, etc.; *-fold* : *mony fold*, s., a. and adv. : old, a. : told, pt. : bold, a. : ⌣, 45; : wold, pt., 413; : cold, a. : ⌣ : wold, pt. : told, p. p., 1078; : told, p. p. : ⌣ : hold, s. : cold, a., 1152, etc.; *thyke fold*, adv. : told, p. p., 774; *fold*, inf.: old, a. : told, p. p. : ⌣ : bold, a., 45; : told, pt., 166; : old, a. : told, p. p. : ⌣ : gold, s., 887, etc.; *hold*, s. and inf. : wold, pt. : ⌣ : bold, a. : told, p. p., 668; : wold, pt. : bold, a. : gold, s. : ⌣ , 835; : told, p. p. : mony fold, adv. : ⌣ : cold, a., 1152; *old*, a. : told, p. p., 34; : ⌣ : told, p. p. : bold, a. : mony fold, 45; : wold, pt., 764; : bold, a. : wold, pt. : ⌣ : told, p. p., 803; : told, p. p., 842; : ⌣ : told, p. p. : fold, inf. : gold, s., 888; : ⌣ : bold, a. : gold, s. : wold, pt., 898; : ⌣ : told, p. p. : bold, a. : wold, s., 1081; : bold, a. : ⌣ : wold, pt. : sold, p. p., 1117, etc.; *sold*, p. p. : bold, a. : old, a. : wold, pt. : ⌣, 1117, etc.; *told*, pt., p. p. : old, a., 34; : old, a. : ⌣ : bold, a. : mony fold, 45; : gold, s., 96; : fold, inf., 166; : ⌣ : old, a. : bold, a. :

wold, pt., 642; : wold, pt. : hold, inf. : bold, a. : ⌣, 668; : fold, inf., 774; ⌣ : bold, a. : wold, pt. : old, a., 803; : old, a., 842; : old, a. : ⌣ : fold, inf. : gold, s., 888; : cold, a. : mony fold, s. : wold, pt. : ⌣, 1078; : old, a. : ⌣ : bold, a. : wold, s., 1081; : mony fold, adv. : hold, s. : cold, a., 1152; : bold, a. : mold, s. : wold, pt., 1514, etc; *wold*, s. : cold, a. : ⌣ : told, pt. : old, a., 404; : told, p. p. : bold, a. : ⌣ : old, a., 803; : old : told : bold : ⌣, 1081.

b) *wold*, pt., weak-stressed [ONorth. *walde*; OMerc. *walde*, *wolde*, 'would'] : told, p. p. : old, a. : bold, a., 150; : old : told, pt. : fold, s. : ⌣, 334; : mony fold, adv., 413; : gold, s., 584; : told, p. p. : old, a. : bold, a. : ⌣, 642; : ⌣ : hold, inf. : bold, a. : told, p. p., 668; : old, a., 764; : told, p. p. : bold, a. : ⌣ : old, a., 803; : cold, a., 807; : ⌣ : bold, a. : gold, s. : hold, inf., 835; : old, a. : bold a. : gold, s. : ⌣, 898; : cold, a. : mony fold, s. : ⌣ : told, p. p., 1078; : bold, a. : old, a. : ⌣ : sold, p. p., 1117; : gold, s., 1147; : told, p. p. : bold, a. : mold, s. : ⌣, 1514.

c) *OE. o : fold*, s. 'earth' : old, a. : told, pt. : ⌣ : wold, pt., 334; *gold*, s. : bold, a. : told, p. p. : ⌣, 96; : wold, pt. 584; : wold, pt. : bold, a. : ⌣ : hold, inf., 835; : old, a. : told, a. : fold, inf. : ⌣, 888; : old, a. : bold, a. : ⌣ : wold, pt., 898; : wold, pt., 1147; : bold, a., 1270; *mold*, s. : told, p. p. : bold, a. : ⌣ : wold, pt., 1514.

All the words with *o* from OE. *a* lengthened before *-ld* had undoubtedly a long open $\bar{o}$, if one of the riming words was an undoubted $\bar{o}$-word, i. e. contained $\bar{o}$ in all ME. dialects. Otherwise they probably implied an $\bar{a}$-rime (cf. § 7). As to the preterite *wold*, we have to state the great number of cases in which it is rimed with words containing *a* in OAngl.; this points to the existence of a form *wōld* or *wāld* in the author's dialect. This form, then, should be explained as deriving from OE. *walde*, pt., lengthened under stress into *wālde*, which in a southern district of the northern territory passed into *wōlde*. But *wold* is in five cases also rimed with words containing OE. *o*, viz. three times with *gold*, s., and once with *fold*, s., and *mold*, s., resp. These rimes probably imply rimes with a short $\breve{o}$. Here *wold* has as a prototype OE. *wolde*, pt., also met with in OMerc. (cf. Sievers, Ags. Gr³., § 428, Anm. 4). This form retained its short $\breve{o}$ owing to weak stress in the author's dialect, as is also the case in Orrm, who has the form *wollde*, and in most ME. poets, who rime *wolde* with words containing short $\breve{o}$. Cf. Eilers, op. cit., p. 191. We may thus suppose that *wold*, pt. had both

long and short *o* in our poem. As regards the substantives *gold*, s., *fold*, s., and *mold*, s. , we may safely assume that they all contained short *ŏ*. ME. *gōld*, derived from OE. *gold* with *o* lengthened before *-ld* and appearing in Stand. Eng. until about 1800 (pronounced gu:ld), often had its close *ō* shortened in late ME. Cf. Luick, HGE, § 429:3. Moreover, the Mod.E. pronunciation with diphthong [ou] presupposes in the case of both *gold* and *mold* a late ME. short *o* instead of *ō*, which would have given [u:] in Mod.E. The rime suggests that the shortening took place also in point of *fold*, s., which did not survive into the NE. period.

In three cases *gold*, s., is rimed with words containing OE. *ā*. These should no doubt be regarded as emergency-rimes.

§ *24. ME. -ord.*

a) *OE. ā: lord*, s. (OE. *hlāford*) : acord, p. p., 63; 788; : record, inf., 1116; : corde, s., 634; : acord, inf., 1511.

b) *OE. o : borde, burd*, s.: word, s., 730, 1408; *word*, s. : borde, burd, s., 730, 1408.

c) *AN.* or *OF. o*: *acord*(*e*), s. and v. : lord, s., 63, 788; : restored, p. p., 1282; : lord, s., 1511; *corde*, s. : lord, s., 634; *record*, inf. : lord,s., 1116; *restored*, p. p. : acorde, s., 1282.

The words *borde*, s., and *word*, s., rime with each other only; they had probably long *ǭ*. Cf. the spelling *burd*, s. As to *lord*, s., it only occurs in rimes with such French loan-words as contained a short *o* and seems therefore to have also been short. Eilers says (op. cit. p. 196) that the long vowel-quantity is mostly preserved in the works examined by him, whereas in *lord*, s., the vowel may be both short and long. As to *restored*, pt., riming with *acorde*, s., we may safely assume that it retained in the pret. the long *ǭ* of the inf., and that consequently the rime is imperfect, *acorde*, s., no doubt having a short *ŏ*. Cf. further Vietor , A Shakespeare Phonology, p. 76, seq.

§ *25. ME. -orn.*

a) *OE. o* lengthened before *-rn: corn*(*e*), s. *:* be forne, adv. : morne, s. : borne, p. p. : ⌣, 122; : be forn : scorne, inf. : ⌣ : born, p. p., 365; : lorn, p. p., 749; : be forn, adv. : lorn, p. p. : morn, s., 1428,

etc.; *morn(e)*, *s.* (the shortened form *morne(s)* is already found in OE. in oblique cases; see Bülbring, § 285, Note 3) : be forne, adv., 49; : be forne, adv. : ⌣ : borne, p. p. : scorn, inf., 54; : sworn, p. p. : ⌣ : scorne, s. : be forn, adv., 245; : schorne, p. p. : ⌣ : be forne : scorne, inf., 308; : be forne : born, p. p. : lorn, p. p. : ⌣ , 595; : be forne, adv. : for lorn, p. p. : born, p. p. : ⌣, 817; : corn, s., 1080, etc.

b) *OE. o* + *rn* syncopated *: be forn(e)*, *be fore*, adv. [OE *beforan*] : morn, s., 49; : morne, s. : borne, p. p. : scorn, inf., 54; : morne, s., 105; : morn, s., 226; : born, p. p. : lorn, p. p. : morn, s., 595; : born, p. p. : morn, s. : lorn, p. p., 692; : lorn, p. p. : ⌣ : skorn, s. : born, p. p., 1202, etc.; *þerforn*, *þerfor*, adv. : scorne, s. : morn, s. : ⌣ : lorn, p. p., 525; : scorn, s. : ⌣ : morn, s. : lorn, p. p., 1398; *born(e)*, p. p. : be forne : morne, s. : ⌣ : scorn, inf., 54; : lorne, p. p. : morn, s. : ⌣ : be forne, adv., 76; : corne, s. : sworne, p. p. : lorne, p. p., 338;: be forne, adv. : ⌣ : lorn, p. p. : morn, s., 595; : be forne : for lorn : ⌣ : morn, s., 817; : lorn, p. p. : be forn : skorn, s. : ⌣ 1202, etc.; *for born(e)*, p. p. : morne, s. : scorne, s. : be forne : ⌣, 350; : lorn, p. p., 572; : lorne, p. p., 838, etc.; *vn born*, p. p. : morn, s. : ⌣ : be forn, adv. : scorn, inf., 1300; *lorn(e)*, p. p. : morn, s. : borne, p. p. : be forne, adv., 76; : born, p. p. : corne, s. : sworne, p. p. : ⌣, 338; : be forne : born : ⌣ : morn, 595; : corn, s., 749; : for borne, 838; : scorn, s., 931; : be forn : skorn, s. : born, p. p., 1202, etc. ; *for lorn(e)*, p. p. : be forne : morn : borne, p. p. : ⌣, 312; : be forne : ⌣ : born : morn, 817; : morn : born, p. p. : be forn : ⌣, 1331, etc.; *schorne*, p. p. : morne, s. : be forne : scorne, inf., 308; *sworn*, p. p. : morn, s. : scorne, s. : be forn, adv., 245.

c) *OE. ā* in the OF. loan-word *scarn : scorn(e)* , *skorn*, s. and inf. : be forne, adv. : morne, s. : borne, p. p. : ⌣, 54; : borne, p. p. : morn, s. : be forne, adv., 97; : morn, s., 271; : morn, s. : þerforn, adv. : lorn, p. p., 525; : lorne, p. p., 931; : be forn : skorn, s. : born, p. p., 1202; : morn, s. : vn born : be forn : ⌣, 1300, etc.

The rimes with *beforn*, adv. [OE. *beforan*] and the syncopated participles, which here, no doubt, contained short *ŏ* (Cf. Luick, HGE, § 472), prove that shortening of long *o* before *rn* had already taken place. Eilers and Strandberg are of the same opinion. The former says, »Die Kürze ist wahrscheinlich schon überall durchgeführt.» (op. cit. p. 197).

§ 26. *ME.* ū.

a) *OE.* ū : *about(e)*, *abowt(e)*, adv. and prep., 232, 270, 364, 645, 1075, 1124, etc.; *bowr(e)*, s., *bowrs*, pl., 921, 1139; *doun(e)*, *down(e)*, adv., 77, 130, 688, 1084, 1201, 1425, etc.; *bow*, inf., 1164, 1219, 1229; *couth(e)*, *cowth*, *cowde*, pt., 352, 1232, 1260, 1378; *how*, adv., 1164, 1365; *lowd*, *a.*, 1482; *lowrs*,[1]) pr., 1139; *lowt*, *lawt*,[2]) inf., 270, 1124, 1426; *mouth*, *mowth*, *mouyth*, s. : cowth, pt., 352, 1232, 1378; *now*, adv., 75, 808, 1219, etc.; *owt(t)*, prep., 240, 1009, 1075, 1124; *our(s)*, pron., 256, 847; *prowd*, a., 1482; *south*, *sowth*, s., 1232, 1378; *toun*, *town*, s., 241, 292, 329, 613, 878, 885, 1084, etc.; *þou*, pron., 296, 924; *trow*, inf., [OE. *trūwian*], 856, 924, 1165, 1220, etc.; *without*, adv., 270.

b) *ME.* ū < ō + *w* [in the OE. pronoun *ōw* > *eów* by shifting of stress] : *yow*, pron. : vowe, s. : prow, s. : þou, pron. : ∽, 296; : trow, inf., 856; : trow, pr. : ∽ : now, adv. : bow, inf., 1229.

c) *ME.* ū < *OE.-uȝ* : *ȝowthe*, s., 1232, 1260, 1378.

d) *OScand.* ū and *ME.* ū in *spowte*, *s.* : *boun*, *bown(n)e* [OW. Scand. *būinn*] a., 130, 292, 613, 688, 878, 885, 1084, 1281, etc.; *schowt(t)*,[3]) s. and inf. 'shout', 240, 364, 1075; *spowte*, s., 1426.

e) *u in words of AN.* or *OF. origin: alow*, inf., 1164; *barown*, s., 688; *benesowne*, *benysown*, s., 1292, 1347; *colour*, s., 832; *commawndour*, s., 1507; *crown(ne)*, s., 77, 613, 688, 1201, 1425, etc.; *devocion*, *deuocion*, s., 877; *dowt(t)*, *dowte*, s., 232, 240, 976, 1075, 1124; *errour*, *errowr(e)*, s., 1417, 1489, 1507; *flour(e)*, s., 320, 516, 919; *fusyown*, s., 1417; *fawour*, s., 832; *generacion*, s., 77, 277; *gouernowre*, *gouernoure*, s., 280, 291, 1440, 1526; *honour(e)*, *honowre*, *-s*, s., 256, 280, 516, 867, 1139, 1417, etc. ; *howre*, s., 320; *lyon*, s., 329, 344, 885; *merrowr*, s., 1489; *nacion*, s., 1281; *oryson*, 939; *peramoure*, *paramowre*, s., 320, 832; *prisown*, s., 1280; *prow*, s., 296; *renown*, s., 243, 317, 751, 1201, etc.; *reso(w)n*, *resoun*, s., 639, 714, 877, 1292, 1425, etc.; *rowte*, s., 645; *sauour*, s., 832; *seson*, *sesoun*, *sessown*, s., 77, 243, 317, 885, 1201, 1440, etc.; *socour(e)*, s. and inf., 280, 516, 650, 902, 1526, etc.; *socours*, pr., 1497; *sownd*,

---

[1]) ME. *loure-n*, perh. repr. an OE. **lúrian;* other Teut. langs. have forms app. corresponding, but they have not been traced to any early date (NED.).

[2]) As to this spelling cf. ch. VI.

[3]) Cf. *shout*, sb. »This and the related verb first appear in the 14th c. The sb. corresponds formally to ON. *skúta* , *skúte* , a taunt : see *scout* , v³; derivation from the root of *shoot* , v., is probable». (N.E.D.) See also Björkman, Scand. loan - words, p. 134 seq.

s. : boun, a. : doun, adv. : toun, s., 1081; *stoure, stowre*, s., *stours*, pl., 280, 516, 556, 1417, 1440, etc.; *stowte*, a., 240, 270; *toure, towrs*, s., 650, 1139, 1146, 1440; *tresown*, s., 639; *vowe*, s., 296, 808, 1219; *waryson*, s., 613.

f) *AN.* *-ūre* occasionally for *-üre* = CF.*-üre* (<Lat.*-ūra*) : *creature, creatours, cryature*, s. : honoure, s., 867; : stoure, s. : honowre, s. : errowre, s. : ⌣, 1417; : ⌣ : socours, pr. : stours, s. : honours, s., 1497.

g) *Foreign proper names: gabown*, 243, 767; *matenours*, 902.

§ 27. *ME. -und.*

a) *OE. u* lengthened before *-nd. : fownd, found*, inf., pr. : drownyd, pt., 154; : ground, s. : stound, s. : hound, s., 509; : stound, s. : wound, s. : ⌣ : ground, s., 520; : stound, s. : ⌣ : rownde, a. : wounde, s., 606; *found*, pt. : swound, pt. : grownd, s. : stownd, s., 358; *grownd, ground*, s. : found, pt. : swound, pt. : ⌣ : stownd, s., 358; : fownd, inf. : ⌣ : stound, s. : hound, s., 509; : stound, s. : wound, s. : found, inf. : ⌣ , 520; : stownd, s., 1462; *hound*, s. : fownd, inf. : ground, s. : stound, s. : ⌣ , 509; *stound, stownd*, s. : found, pt. : swound, pt. : ground, s. : ⌣, 358; : fownd, inf. : ground, s. : ⌣ : hound, s., 509; :⌣ : found, pr. : rownde, a. : wounde, s., 606; : wound, s., 981; : ground, s., 1462, etc.; *wound(e)*, s. : stound, s. : ⌣ : found, inf. : ground, s., 520; : stound, s. : found, pr. : rownde, a. : ⌣ , 606; : stownd, s., 981.

b) *OScand. u in ME. drune(n)*, 'to drown': *drownyd*, pt. : fownd, inf., 154.

c) *OE.* *-ōȝ-* : *swound*, pt. [formed on OE. *ȝeswōgen*, p. p.]: found, pt. : ⌣ : ground, s. : stownd, s., 358.

d) *AN.* nasalized *õ* (soon *u*) = *CF. õ*, from *pop. L. o* before a nasal: *rownde*, a. : stound, s. : found, pr. : ⌣ : wounde, s., 606.

All the words given above have a Mod.E. form that postulates long *ū* in Middle English . As there is nothing to be said against the long vowel-quantity, and as is indicated by the spelling *ou, ow*, we should undoubtedly assume long *ū* in the above sound-combination in the author's language. Eilers says (op. cit. p. 193), »Fast überall ist Länge anzunehmen», but »Im Norden herrscht sicher Kürze». In fact in the present text, also, we come across instances of this short-

ening, viz. in the pa. pple. *bun* and *fun*, which rime with words in *-un*. Cf. p. XLVII.

§ *28. ME. -ung.*

yong, a. : *tong*, s., 'tongue', 132.

No definite conclusion as to the vowel-quantity of these words can be drawn. The spelling with *o* seems to speak in favour of a short *u* before *-ng*. Cf. EILERS, op. cit., pp. 35 and 56.

§ *29. ME. -urd.*

cowred, pt. [perh. of Norse derivation] : *deuored*, pt. [OF. *devourer*], 885.

These words, no doubt, contained long *u*, as is indicated by their development in the NE. period.

§ *30. ME. ü.*

AN. or *OF. ü< Lat. u. : excusyd, excused*, pt. : vsyd, p. p., 95; : refused, p. p., 555; *refusyd, refused*, pt., p. p. : vsyd, p. p., 25; : excused, pt., 555; *sepulcure*, s. : *Sethure*, n. pr., 61; *vsyd*, pt., p. p. : refusyd, p. p., 25;: excusyd, p. p., 95.

The rime *sepulcure*, s. : *Sethure*, n. pr., may imply an *ū*-rime, cf. p. CIII.

Diphthongs.

§ *31. ME. ai.*

a) OE. æ̆ȝ : a gayn, agayn(e), agane[1]) [OE. *onȝeȝn* or *onȝæȝn*], 28, 39, 111, 114, 187, 520, 1018, 1045, etc.; *brayn*, s., 148, 404; *clay*, s., 1248; (*ȝister-*)*day(s)*, s., 5, 7, 11, 56, 94, 665, 1321, 1350, etc.; *somerday*, s., 91; *fay*, a. [OE. *fǣȝe*], 690; *fayn*, a., 28, 55, 111, 126, 142, 187, 602, 820, 833, 1017, etc.; *fayr(e), fare*, a., 10, 26, 29, 55, 304, 378, 389, 390, 576, 663, 918, 1091, 1369, 1530, etc.; *lay*, pt., 53, 601, 690, 816, 1332, etc.; *may*, pr., 5, 69, 525, 783, 1350, 1495, etc.; *mayn(e)*, s., 55, 69, 126, 649, 833, etc.; *nale*, s. [OE. *næȝel*], 358; *slayn*, p. p. [OE. *slæȝen*], 51, 404, 443, 602, 649, 951, etc.; *tale*, s. [OE *tæȝel*], 730.

[1]) LUICK, HGE., p. 435 says, »Neben *again* finden sich, namentlich im Norden, Spuren eines noch unerklärten *agān*, welches durch neuere Mundarten bestätigt wird».

b) *OE.* *-ĕȝ* : *flay*, inf., *flayd*(*e*), pt., p. p. [OE. <**flēȝan*], 137, 205, 592, 968, etc.; *afflay*, inf. [OE. < *a flēȝan*], 188; *aflayd*, p. p., 748; *to flayd*, p. p., 238; *ayled*, pt. [of OE. *eglan*], 951; *blayne*, s. [OE. *blezen*], 148; *brayd*, s., 304, 703, 888, 968, etc.; *frayn*, inf., *frains*, pr., 544, 961, 1243; *hay*, s., 448; *brayd*(*e*), s. and vb., 74, 357, 565, etc.; *lay*, inf., *layd*(*e*), pt., p. p., 40, 59, 172, 921, etc.; *layre*, s., 918; *play*, s. and vb., 47, 53, 91, etc.; *rayn*(*e*), s. and vb., 449, 917, 1081, 1090, etc.; *say*, inf. [OE. *secȝean*, an OTeut. *ai*-verb; cf. Sievers, Ags. Gr.,[3] § 416], *says*, pr., *sayd*, pt., p. p., 56, 59, 74, 79, 205, 207, 505, 598, 711, 1350, etc.; *myssayd*, p. p., 748; *strayd*, p. p. [of OE. *strēȝan*], 1421; *a way*(*s*), s., 56, 99, 593, 665, 676, etc.

c) *OScand. ei, ey* and *e*+*g* : *arase*, inf., 665; *ay*, adv., 5, 7, 11, etc.; *bayn*, a., 111, 445, 858, 951, etc.; *frayst*, inf., 717; *gayn*(*e*), inf., *gayns*, pr. [OScand. *gegna*], 12, 242, 443, 870, 961, etc.; *grayd*(*e*), *grad*, *gratt*, inf., 67, 211, 215, 753, 1148, etc.; *kayre*, *kare*, *care*, inf. [OScand. *keyra*], 127, 304, 389, 576, 918, etc.; *lay*, s. 'hire' [OScand. *leiga*], 137; *layn*, inf. [OScand. *leyna*], 187, 335, 833, etc.; *lawse*, inf., [OScand. *leysa*] : prays, inf., 1235; *nay*, adv., 284, 448, 967, etc.; *swayn*, s., 1017; *rays*(*e*), inf., imp. and pr., 56, 99, 505, 593, etc.; *treyst*, *trest*, inf. [OScand. *treysta*], 346, 717; *þai*, *þei*, *thei*, [OScand. *þeir*] pron., 47, 207, 230, 454, 783, etc.

In all the cases given above we are concerned with *ai*-rimes only.

d) *AN.* or *OF. ai, ei: abayst*, a., 346; *a fray*, *a*(*f*)*fray*, s. and inf., *afrayd*, p. p., 94, 586, 598, etc.; *a ray*, s. and inf., *arayde*, p. p., 1, 91, 211, 368, 465, 568, 598, 1148, etc.; *mysarayd*, p. p., 414; *a*(*s*)*say*, inf., *assayd*, p. p., 53, 111, 284, 718, 1317, etc.; *asayle*, *assayle*, *asale*, inf., 358, 648, 655; *a vayle*, *avayle*, inf., *avayld*, pt., 220, 296, 892, 923, 951, 960, 1300, 1322, 1327, etc.; *ayer*, *ayre*, *A-*, s., 10, 29, 389, 918, 1091; *bayle*, *bale*, s., 648, 1069, 1091, 1300, 1327; *batell*(*e*), s. : avayle, inf. : ⌣ : fayle, inf. : consell, s., 220; *baytell*, s., *batellys*, s. pl., 649, 655, 865, 1069, etc.; *be tray*, inf., *betrayde*, pt., 74, 178, 462, 636, 638, etc.; *certayn*(*e*), *certan*(*e*), a., 28, 51, 111, 142, 187, 239, 520, 683, 820, 833, 858, 1018, etc.; *vn certayn*, a., 552; *cyteseyn*, s., 383; *consell*, *consaylle*, *consalle*, *coun-*, *conselys*, s. pl., 200, 494, 518, 617, 648, 649, 655, 668, 727, 730, 857, 892, 923, 960, 963, 1069, 1290, 1300, 1327, etc.; *Daray*, *dray*, s., 760, 1495, 1518; *delay*, *delese*, s. : pays *L* delays, 555; 1160, 1449; *dyspayre*, *dyspare*, s., 44, 576, 1091, 1530, etc.; *ese*, s. 'ease' : sese, inf.

: ⌣ : plese, inf. : ways, s., 275; *eys*, s. : prays, pr., 881; *fayl(l)e*, *fall*, *fale*, inf., *fayled*, p. p., 220, 245, 358, 494, 518, 617, 648, 655, 668, 727, 857, 865, 889, 892, 923, 951, 963, 1069, 1074, 1091, 1232, 1290, 1300, 1327, 1434, etc.; *faynt*, a., 1245; *feyne*, inf., 278, 414; *fuell*, s., 245: *gay*, a., 574, 1438; *heyre*, *(h)ayre*, s. 'heir', 29, 44, 55, 378, 389, 663, 1369, 1530, etc.; *journay*, s., 1350; *lay*, *law*, s., 40, 132, 568, 972, etc.; *metayle*, *metall*, s., 889, 892; *mountayns*, *mowntan*, s., 239, 961; *ordand*, inf. : payn, s. : slayn, p. p. : ⌣ : playn, 280; *owtrayd*, p. p., 440, 986; *pas*, s. : prays : ⌣ : rayse : says, 505; *pay*, s. and inf., *pays*, pr., *(a-)payd*, pt., p. p., 1, 5, 40, 79, 357, 568, 593, 1148, 1160, etc.; *paylays*, *palys(e)*, s., 676, 869, 1374; *payn(s)*, s., 55, 649, 961, etc.; *payre*, s. and inf., 26, 576, 1091, 1530; *playn*, s., 28, 890; *playn(e)*, a. and adv., 12, 28, 39, 40, 278, 1045, etc.; *playnt*, s., 1245; *plese*, inf., 275; *pray*, inf., *prays(e)*, pr., *prayd*, pt., *preyd*, pt., 67, 74, 593, 881, 935, etc.; *prays*, inf., 505, 665, 869, 1235; *purvay*, inf., *-d*, *purved*, pt., 368, 578, 598, 711, 921, 1148, etc.; *repayre*, inf., 29, 904; *sese*, inf., 275; *souerayn*, *soyuerayn*, *sufferayn*, s., 649, 864, 867, 878, etc.; *stray*, inf., 479; *strayt* s., 1058; *tayled*, p. p., 'settled', 951; *trayd*, pt., 74, 215; *trayn(e)*, s., 114, 153, 244, 520, etc.; *trauayle*, *trayuall*, *trauele*, *traueyle*, s. and vb., 358, 865, 923, 1232, 1434; *vayn*, s., 683; *ve(r)ray*, a., 935, 1022; *vytalle*, s., 865, 1074; *wayte*, inf., 1058.

e) Foreign proper names:Abygay, 568; *orfayn*, 375.

In all these cases we are concerned with *ai*-rimes only.

f) Northern ME. ey in the following adverbs : *hene*, 'hence' : dedyne : pleyn, inf. : feyne, 414; *þeyne*, 'thence' : dedyne : pleyne, inf. : feyne, inf., 1379.

In these two quotations we are only seemingly concerned with *ai*- rimes. The forms *hene* and *þeyne* are here, no doubt, contractions of the ME. adverbs *hethen* and *thethen*, both of Scand. descent (cf. OSw. *hœþan*, ON. *hēðan* 'hence' and OSw. *þœþan*, ON. *þaðan* 'thence', whence the Mod.Sw. contractions *hän*, *dän*.). They were undoubtedly pronounced *hɛ̄n*, *þɛ̄n* (*hɛ̄þen*, *þɛ̄þen*) with a long open *ɛ*. Now the AN. or OF. loan-words *feyne*, inf., *pleyne*, inf., and *desdeyne*, s. (of which *dedyne* is a variant) had collateral forms with *ɛ̄* instead of *ai*, representing a reintroduction of these words when AN. or OF. *ai* had been monophthongized to *ɛ̄*. Therefore we do not hesitate to assume that the quotations above are meant to involve *ɛ̄*-rimes. Cf. p. CXVIII.

§ *32. ME. au.*

a) *OE.* *ăȝ* : *awn*(*e*), a. [OE. *āȝen*] : drawn, p. p. : ⌣ : knawn, p. p. : kawn, p. p., 3; : knawne, p. p., 79; : sawyn, p. p. : knawn, p. p. : ⌣ : with drawn, p. p., 684, etc.; *aw*, vb. [OE. *āȝan*] 'ought to' : law, s., 185; : knaw, pr., 585; : draw, inf. : law, s. : saw, s. : ⌣, 791; : law, s. : knaw, inf.: ⌣ : saw, s., 970; : knaw, inf. : law, s. : saw, s. 978; : raw, s. : law, s. : ⌣ : knaw, inf., 1450; *Daw*, s. [OE. pl. *daȝas*, *-um*, etc.] : knaw, pr. : aw : law : ⌣, 623; *daw*, inf. : knaw, pr., 1342; *draw*, inf. [OE. *draȝan*] *drawys*, pr. : law, s., 94, 121; : law, s. : saw, s. : aw, vb., 791, etc. ; *owt draw*, inf. : thraw, s. : law, adv. : ⌣ : aw, s., 1504; *with draw*, inf. : law, s., 311; : law, s. : saw, s. : thraw, s., 706; : law, a. : saw, s. : knaw, pr. : ⌣, 1182; *drawn*, p. p. [OE. *draȝen*] : awn, a. : knawn, p. p. : kawn, p. p. : ⌣, 3; *with drawn*, p. p. : sawyn, p. p. : knawn, p. p. : awn, a. : ⌣, 684; *maw*, s. [OE. *maȝa*] : thraw, imp., 1327; : saw, s. : draw, inf. : law, s., 1340; *saw*(*ys*), s. [OE. *saȝu*] : law, s. : knaw, inf. : aw, s. : ⌣, 24; : knavs, pr., 131; : with draw, inf. : law, s. : ⌣ : thraw, s., 706; : schew, inf. : ⌣ : knaw, inf. : low, a., 980, etc.; *sawyn*, p. p. : knawn, p. p. : awn : with drawn, p. p., 684; : knawn, p. p., 1238; *thraw*(*e*), *-s*, s. [OE. *þrāȝ*] : law, s., 266; : with draw : law, s. : saw, s. : ⌣, 706; : blaws, pr. : ⌣ : knaws, pr., 1218.

b) *OScand.* *ăȝ* : *aw*, s. [OScand. *aga*]: law, s. : knaw, inf. : ⌣ : saw, s., 24; : knaw, inf. : ⌣ : draw, inf. : law, a., 1142, etc. : *law*, (*-ys*), s. [OScand. **laȝu*> OIcel. *lǫg*] : knaw, inf., 3; : knaw, inf. : aw, s. : saw, s., 24; : draw, inf., 94; : thrawe, s., 266; : raw, s., 567; : knaw, pr. : aw, pr. : ⌣ : Daw, s., 623; : raw, s. : ⌣ : aw, vb. : knaw, inf., 1450, etc.; *law*, *low*, a. [OScand. *lágr*] : with draw, inf., 204; : saw : knaw, pr. : draw, pr. : ⌣, 961; : schew, inf. : saw, s. : knaw, inf. : ⌣, 980; : saw, s. : knaw, pr. : with draw, inf., 1181, etc.

c) *OE.* *ăw* : blaws, pr. : thraws, s. : knaws, pr., 1218; *knaw*, inf. and pr., *knawys*, *knavs*, pr. : law, s., 3; : law : ⌣ : aw, s. : saw, s., 24; : sawys, s., 131; : aw, pr., 585; : schew, inf. : saw, s. : ⌣ : low, a., 980; : blaws, pr. : thraws, s. : ⌣, 1218; : raw, s. : law, s. : aw, vb. : ⌣, 1450, etc.; *knawn*(*e*), p. p. [OE. *cnāwen*] : drawn, p. p. : awn, a.: ⌣ : kawn, p. p., 3; : sawyn, p. p. : ⌣ : awn,a. : with drawn, p. p., 684; : sawyn, p. p., 1238, etc.; *vnknawn*, p.p. : awn : drawn : sawn, 336; *raw*, s. [OE. *rāw*] : schaw, inf., 491; : law, s.

567; : law, s. : aw, vb. : knaw, inf., 1450; : saw, s. : ⌣ :aw, s. : law, s., 1519, etc. ; *schaw, schew*, inf. [OE. *sc*e͡*ā̆wian*] : raw, s., 491; : aw, s. : law, s. : knaw, inf. : ⌣, 771; : saw, s. : knaw, inf. : low, a., 980, etc. ; *thraw*, imp. : maw, s., 1327.

d) *OE. ow* and *ME. ou* (< OE. *ēow* by change of stress) : *kawn*, p. p. [OE. *cowen*] : drawn, p. p. : awn, a. : knawn, p. p. : ⌣, 3; *trew*, inf. [OE. *trēowian*] : thraw, s. : law, s. : draw, inf., 1136.

As is evident from the rimes, both the words given contained *au* in the author's language. They are instances of the ME. sound-change *e͡u* > *au*, which, according to Luick, HGE., § 408:2, is characteristic of the Kentish dialect of the 14th cent., and which also took place in North-West Midland and perhaps in the adjoining North.

§ *33. ME. e͡u.*

a) OE. *ēow : brew*, inf. [OE. *brēowan*] : new, a. : trew, s. : ⌣ : rew, inf., 340; : persew, pr. : trew, a. : new, a., 1311; *brewed*, pt. : remeued, p. p. : rewed, pt. : persewed, pt. : ⌣ , 1471; *crew*, pt. : iew, s. : trew, a. : ⌣ : knew, pt., 1342; *hew*, s. [OE. *hēow*] : knew, pt. : ⌣ : sew, pt. : new, a., 29; : knew, pt. : vntrew, a. : persew, inf., 352; : trew, a., 568, etc.; *knew*, pt. [OE. *cnēow*] : hew, s. : sew, pt. : new, a., 29; : iew, s. : persew, inf. : remew, inf. : ⌣, 152; : vntrew, a., 583, etc.; *new*, a. and adv. [OE. *nēowe*, OAngl. *nēwe*] : knew, pt.: hew, s. : sew, pt., 29; : trew, a. : sew, inf. : ⌣ : esau, n. pr., 71; : jew, s., 169; : remew, inf. : persew, inf. : jew, s., 511, etc.; *rew*, inf., *rewes, rewys*, pr., *rewed*, pt., [OE. *hrēowan*]: Ebreus, s., 125; : new : trew, s. : brew, inf. : ⌣, 340; : remowes, pr. : trewes, s. : ebrews, s.: ⌣, 891; : trews, s. : jews, s. : ⌣ : persewes, pr., 894; : remeued, p. p. : ⌣ : persewed, pt. : brewed, pt., 1471, etc.; *sew*, inf. [OE. *sēow*(*i*)*an*] : trew, a. : ⌣ : new, a. : esau, n. pr., 71; *sew*, pt. [OE. *sēow* from *sāwan*] : knew, pt. : hew, s. : ⌣ : new, a., 29; : iew, s. : knew, pt. : ⌣ : dew, s., 377; *trew*, a. [OE. *trēow*] : sew, inf. : new, a. : esau, n. pr., 71; : sew, inf., 400; : hew, s., 568, etc.; *vntrew*, a. : knew, pt., 583, etc.; *trew, trewes, trewse*, s. sg. [OE. *trēowa*] : cananews, s. : jewes, s. : ⌣ : remeuys, pr., 197; : knew, pt. : persew, inf. : ⌣ : new, a., 244; : new, a. : ⌣ : brew, inf. : rew, inf., 340; : Ebrews, s., 544; : remowes, pr. : ⌣ : ebrews, s. : rewes, pr., 891; : ebrews, s., 1441, etc.

b) *AN. e͡u* = OF. *ieu* (later *iü, üi*): *cananews*, s. : jewes, s. : trewse, s. :

remeuys, pr., 197; : Ebrews, s., 588; *Ebreu(s)*, *Ebrew(s)*, *e-* : rewys, pr., 125; : trewse, s., 544; : cananews, s., 588; remowes, pr. : trewes, s. : ⌣ : rewes, pr., 891; : Elysew, n. pr., 1012, etc.; *iew*, *jew(es)*, *I-*, s. : persew, inf. : remew, inf. : knew, pt., 152; : new, adv., 169; : cananews, s. : ⌣: trewse, s. : remeuys, pr., 197; : new, a. : remew, inf. : persew, inf. : ⌣, 511, etc.; *persew*, inf., *persewes*, pr., *persewed*, pt. : iew, s. : ⌣: remew, inf. : knew, pt., 152; : knew, pt. : ⌣ : trew, s. : new, a., 244; : trew, s., 246; : hew, s. : knew, pt. : trew, a., 628; : remeued, p. p. : rewed, pt. : ⌣ : brewed, pt., 1471, etc.; *remew*, *remeu*, *remoue*, inf., *remeuys*, *remowes*, pr., *remeued*, pt., p. p. : iew, s. : persew, inf. : ⌣ : knew, pt., 152; : cananews, s. : jewes, s. : trewse, s. : ⌣, 197; : new, a. : ⌣ : persew, inf. : jew, s., 511; : trewes, s. : ebrews, s. : rewes, pr., 891; : rewed, pt. : persewed, pt. : brewed, pt., 1471, etc.; *sew*, inf. : trew, a. : hew, s. : ⌣ : knew, pt., 979.

c) *Foreign proper names* : *Elysew*: trew, a. : Iew, n. pr. : Ebrew, s. : ⌣, 947; : Ebrew, s., 1012; : knew, pt. : vntrew, a. : ebrew, s., 1068; : vertu, s., 1143; *esau* : trew, a. : sew, inf. : new, a. : ⌣, 71; *Iew* : Elysew, n. pr. : trew, a. : ⌣ : Ebrew, s., 947.

§ *34. ME. u.*

a) OE. *ēaw* : *hewe*, inf. : schew, inf., 1498; *schew*, inf., *schews*, pr. : thewes, s. : Ebrews, s. : schrews, s.,496; : Elysew, n. pr.,1042, etc.; *schrews*, s. pl. [OE. *scrēawa*] : Ebrews : Cananews : ⌣ : thews, s. pl., 262; : schews, pr. : thewes, s. : Ebrews, s. : ⌣, 496; : cananews, s. : Ebrews, s. : ȝebesews, s. : ⌣, 645; *thew(e)s*, s. pl. [OE. *þēaw*] : Ebrews, s. : Cananews, s. : schrews, s. : ⌣, 262; : Ebrews, s. : schrews, s. : schews, pr., 496.

b) *Foreign proper names: Cananews*, *c-* : Ebrews : ⌣ : schrews, s. : thews, s., 262; : Ebrews : ȝebesews, : schrews, s., 645; *Ebrews*, 262, 645; *Elysew*, : schew, inf., 1042; *ȝebesews*, 645.

The names *Cananews*, *Ebrews*, and *Elysew* are rimed with words containing both open and close *eu*. As the author has shown himself to be a careful rimer and doublets of proper names with open and close vowels or diphthongs have been proved[1]) to exist side by side, we are no doubt justified in assuming that the names given above had both *ęu* and *ęu* in the author's language.

[1]) NÖJD: The Vocalism of Romanic Words in Chaucer p. 157, seq.

§ *35. ME. oi, ui.*

OF. oi, ui : anoynt, vb., 501, 562; *dystroye*, inf., *dystroys*, pr., *dystroyde*, pt., 29, 232, 265, 762, etc.; *noye*, s. and inf., *noyys*, pr., *noyde*, pt., 29, 232, 265, 762, 886, etc.; *poynt*, s. 501, 562.

The words given occur in self-rimes only, so no conclusion as to the quality of the diphthong can be drawn.

§ *36. ME. ou.*

OE. ōw, ēow : groue, groyue, inf., *grouyd*, pt. : mouyd, pt., 4; : prove, inf. : controue, inf. : aboue, adv. 408; : prove, inf. : loue, s., 'love' : move, inf., 1288; : reproue, s. : loue, s. 'hand' : behove, s., 1288; *yow*, pron. : be hofe, s. : moue, inf. : Aboue, adv., 1337.

These are the only rimes in which the diphthong *ou* occurs in our text, and the rimes themselves are imperfect. LUICK says (HGE. pp. 365, 375) that OE. *ōw, ēow* passed into ME. *ǫu*. But this would here involve a rather great discrepancy in the rimes, which would be surprising since the author has shown himself to be a careful rimer. The question then arises if the diphthong does not imply *ǭu*, i. e. an incipientlengt hening of the first element of the diphtong. In our opinion this is quite likely, as the discrepancy in the rimes then is lessened. Cf. Mod. Phil. xx, p. 189 seq.

B. Untressed Vowels.

In dealing with the unstressed vowels, we shall confine ourselves to the unstressed *-e*, generally spelt *e* or else *y* (*i*) in ME., as occurring as ending phoneme or in suffixes before a consonant. Other questions are not of sufficient interest for our purpose to be dealt with here. The object of our investigation, then, will be to find out to what an extent the unstressed *-e* was pronounced in the positions mentioned, and what quality should be assigned to it. The tests to be applied are rime and metre in the former case, rime and an appreciation of the frequency of the spellings in the latter case. Quotation of a sufficient number of illustrative instances will be made from the first 500 stanzas of the poem. The result arrived at will naturally bear upon the author's poetical language, but viewed in the light of our knowledge of the language in other ME. works they may also enable us to draw conclusions as to the usage in the author's colloquial speech.

§ 37. *The frequency of the unstressed e.*

To begin with it is suitable in this paragraph to make a distinction between the unstressed *e* as occurring in a final position and that vowel as appearing before a consonant in a final syllable.

As to the unstressed *e* in a final position, it is never pronounced in the rime-words. For if pronounced, it would give rise to feminine rimes, which are very rare in our poem since they disagree with its iambic metre. The poet's language differs in this respect from that of Chaucer, who, in spite of iambic metre but in accordance with his pronunciation, very often uses the unstressed final *e* in the rimes. Cf. TEN BRINK, §§ 220 and 319. But in other Northern poems of the 14th cent. we find the same suppression of the unstressed *e* in rimes as in our text. As to the unstressed final *e* in the body of the verse, it is treated differently. As a rule its pronunciation is not required by the metre. But not infrequently this pronunciation is metrically indispensable. This is true of substantives, adjectives especially in an attributive position, rarely of verbs and more rarely still of adverbs. As examples:

Sbs.: 126/8 *And páyd hyr hýre ín hyr hánd*
130/10 *the crówn(e) kást he dówne*
178/6 *to lóke wher nó reléue lýse*
187/7 *the érthe sóne was clósed agáyn*
240/8 *and sét his sýng(e) tó them þóre*

Adjs.: 8/12 *The thrýd(e) éndyd þóre*
88/7 *wherfór he séruyd the sáme méde*
117/3 *I ám the sáme mán ȝe sóld*
187/10 *with féle fólke on fótte*
199/1 *Wýld(e) wórmes wex þém a máng*
264/3 *The Ebrews mén of grétt(e) mýȝt*
65/11 *And the móre ín all thýng*
87/11 *The fénd on the fýrst(e) nýȝt.*
10/8 *And sáme wón withóutyn fýnd*
11/12 *So was dón the séxt(e) dáy*
48/4 *Scho sall háue A són this sáme ȝére*
82/1 *By the fáurt(e) ȝére were fúlly góne*
149/1 *The áght(e) wás yll wórmes fleánd*
230/3 *And órdan þát on the thrýd(e) dáy*

249/3 *The ſíue kýnges held þém be hýnd*
263/6 *the sáme wáy sone áftur ȝóde*

Vbs.: 99/10 *to máke sácrafíce*
108/4 *all mén to cóme át his cáll*
229/8 *when báyles súld þem háue sláyn*
295/1 *So whén he mýȝt(e) hým selfe stére*
140/8 *to apeýre ín the kýnges presént*

Advs.: 259/3 *þen Jósué full clére kénd*
270/12 *how fówle þér þei fón.*

Although we must admit that we sometimes may be concerned with the suppression of a thesis, we are, when presuming the existence of the final *e* in our text, in conformity with the metrical usage in other Northern poems, e. g. the poems of Lawrence Minot and Cursor Mundi. The editor of the former poems, J. Hall, gives a few clear cases of the plural adjective and says, »We may conclude that when Minot wrote, the adj. inflections had almost disappeared in his dialect, but were still occasionally available for verse». (Introduction p. xv.)

Morsbach holds the same view with regard to the unstressed final *e* in the Cursor Mundi (Me. Gr. § 77 Anm.). Luick, in dealing with the loss of final *e* in disyllabic words, says (HGE. § 473) »Dieser Schwund ist im Norden zur Zeit des Einsetzens unserer ersten Texte bereits abgeschlossen, hat sich also hier schon im 13. Jahrhundert vollzogen (Anm. 5). Wenn manche Dichter gelegentlich *-e* im Vers als eigene Silbe verwenden, so ist dies eine Altertümlichkeit». We may therefore safely assume that the final *e* had disappeared altogether in the author's dialect, but that for metrical reasons it was facultatively pronounced in his poem.

Concerning the unstressed *e* before a consonant in final syllables, a distinction should be made between the inflectional endings *-es*, *-ed*, *-en* on the one hand, and the non-inflectional terminations *-ed*, *-en*, *-er* on the other. Let us begin with the former category.

When we turn to the inflectional ending *-es*, it is appropriate to allow its function as a substantival ending to be kept apart from its function as a verbal ending.

As substantival ending, denoting genitive case or plural number, *-es*, *-ys* has in the great majority of cases (after a vowel presumably always) lost its vowel, if we judge from the rimes. As examples: plural

-es (*-ys*): *bandes* 152/10; *bemys* 9/10; *bestes* 25/9; *brandes* 39/2; *chares* 152/5; *clerkes* 6/10, etc.; *cloghes* 162/3; *colys* 132/6; *cubbeyttes* 26/5; *dremys* 105/5; *fendes* 221/6; *floures* 137/10; *froskes* 144/12; *frendes* 142/1; *godes* 17/2; *gudes* 198/1; *handes* 39/6; *herbys* 8/7; *erbys* 13/9; *hertes* 117/5; *hurtes* 200/4; *kynges* 161/1, 216/7; *landes* 39/4; *ledes* 32/11; *lyfes* 10/7; *lottes* 238/5; *nyghtys* 27/4, 151/11; *patriarkes* 3/5; *poyntes* 2/4; *prestes* 215/7; *princese* 193/2; *remes* 256/8; *saynges* 3/6; *segnes* 143/9; *sekkes* 111/3; *sternys* 9/9; *taydes* 144/12; *talys* 140/4; *thefes* 115/4; *thynges* 22/3; *tythandes* 39/8; *werkes* 6/12, etc.: *wyfes* 25/7; *wynges*, 10/6; etc.

Genitival *-es*, *-ys: bestes* 144/6; *goddes* 1/12, 169/3, etc.; *kynges* 140/8; *manys*, 19/11; etc.

There are, however, in our text a great many instances where the pronunciation of the vowel in *-es*, *-ys* is required by the metre.

As examples: plural *-es*, *-ys: Armes* 240/4; *bakkes* 249/7; *bestes* 20/3, 81/7, etc.; *bones* 319/2; *burghes* 254/6; *cordes* 340/2; *farlys* 123/8; *feldes* 197/8; *fendes* 6/10; *fowles*, *foulys* (= birds) 29/4, 158/1; *ȝattes* 240/3; *ȝeres* 280/7; *heyrys* 182/5; *Jewes* 150/6; *knyȝtes* 237/6; *kynges* 38/2; *kyndes* 29/1; *landes* 480/8; *leues* 137/10, 194/5; *lordes* 182/12, 250/3; *lyghtys* 9/1; *marches* 267/1; *nyghtys* 9/3; *myrthes* 24/6; *othes* 338/6; *paynys* 19/6; *places* 81/6; *poyntes* 229/2; *princis* 162/7; *sawlis* 3/12; *sonys* 62/4; *sparkes* 241/4; *stages* 26/9; *strokes* 216/6; *sydes* 264/6; *sygnes* 139/11; *tables* 163/8; *tales* 177/1; *tentes* 173/2; *thankes* 61/8; *wandes* 81/9, 194/4; *wardes* 225/7; *wastes* 53/10, 313/10; *wellys* 156/5; *welthes* 301/12; *wordes* 298/7; *wormes* 11/4; *wyfes* 77/6; *wyndes* 7/6. Genitival *-es -ys: caymys*, n. pr., 22/1; *fowles*, 144/6; *goddes*, 100/1, 160/2; *kiddes*, 71/5, 103/6, etc. The occurrence of the *s*-form is in many cases expressed by the spelling with *-s*. But sometimes the spelling disagrees with the requirements of the metre, i. e. is due to a scribe, e. g. *barn*(*e*)*s*, s. pl., 395/10; *kayr*(*e*)*s*, s. pl., 283/1; *sun*(*y*)*s*, s. pl., 25/6; *payn*(*e*)*s*, s. pl., 480/5; *syn*(*y*)*s*, s. pl., 48/8; *town*(*y*)*s*, s. pl., 269/5.

As verbal ending denoting the 2nd and 3rd pers. in sing. pres. and also plural number in pres. and imper., *-es*, *-ys* has generally lost its vowel, if we can trust the metre. As examples: *beldes*, 3 sg., 4/5; *bydes*, 3 sg., 206/5; *comys*, 2 sg., 206/3; *comys*, 3 sg., 19/5; *encresse*, pr. sg. or plur., (in rime) 435/2; *helpes*, 3 sg., 1/8; *heuys*, imper. pl., 256/4; *lyges*, 3 sg., 107/2; *likes*, 3 sg., 21/11; *rewthes*, 3 sg., 24/11; *rewys*, 3 sg., 125/9; *sauys*, 3 sg., 152/12; *sendes*, 3 sg., 1/3; *settes*, pr. pl., 2/8; *spekkes*,

2 sg., 139/9; *takes*, imper. pl., 259/12; *vp standes*, pr. pl., (in rime) 287/1: *wendes*, pr. pl., 48/5; etc.

In several cases the dropping of the vowel is orthographically expressed or confirmed by rimes, e. g. *mels*, 3 sg.: *tels*, 3 sg.: els, adv.: *dwels*, 3 sg., 78/1; *knavs*, 2 sg.: sawys, s. pl., 131/9; *trows*, 3 sg., 91/4: *shews*, 3 sg., 98/5; *sparse*, imp. pl., 233/11, etc.

The cases where we are concerned with a preservation of the vowel in *-es*, *-ys* seem to be fairly few. As examples: *fenys*, pr. pl., 287/2; *haues*, imp. pl., 450/8; *neghys*, 3 sg., 259/9; *reherses*, 3 sg., 237/2: *thankes*, pr. pl., 61/8; *wendes*, 3 sg., 81/3; *wettys*, pr. pl., 2/2; etc.

As regards the verbal ending *-ed*, *-yd* in our text, it is treated uniformly whether it has preterital or participial function. But from a morphological point of view it is interesting to make a distinction between those cases where the stem of the verb ends in *-d* or *-t* or else in a vowel and those where the verbal stem ends otherwise.

When the verbal stem does not end in *-d* or *-t* or in a vowel, the ending *-ed*, *-yd* has in the great majority of instances lost its vowel in the pronunciation of the poem, as is proved by the metre.

As examples: *askyd*, pt., 58/2, 73/3; *blamyd*, p. p., 17/10 (in rime): *be gylyd*, p. p., 44/5 (in rime); *begyld*, p. p., 73/8 (in rime); *blessyd*, pt., 10/9, p. p., 70/8; *callyd*, pt., 18/3, 69/1, 86/4; p. p., 8/4, *cald*, p. p., 46/4 (in rime); *Cared*, p. p., 55/4; *consauyd*, pt., 20/5, 53/7; *coruppyd*, p. p., 24/10; *demyd*, p. p., 16/2; *dremyd*, pt., 100/1; *drownyd*, pt., 27/7: *dwellyd*, pt., 52/5; *encressyd*, pt., 27/9 (in rime); *exilyd*, p. p., 20/1 (in rime); *formyd*, pt., 12/7; *fulfyllyd*, pt., 75/9; *fyllyd*, pt., 13/5; p. p., 37/4: *gropyd*, pt., 72/5: *helyd*, pt., 93/7; *hyllyd*, p. p., 70/11; *ouer hyllyd*, p. p., 66/10; *karyd*, pt., 82/4; *leuyd*, pt., 89/8, 91/11; p. p., 52/8; *lokyd*, pt., 51/8; *louyd*, pt., 21/10; *lyfyd*, pt., 21/10, 83/12; p. p., 64/5; *meuyd*, pt., 90/5; *namyd*, pt., 5/7, 7/9, 8/5, 98/2; p. p., 74/9, 84/11; *ordand*, p. p., 8/1 (in rime); *ouer past*, p. p. (: place, etc.), 98/3; *passyd*, p. p., 51/1: *persauyd*, pt., 15/5; *raynnyd*, pt., 27/2; *rassyd*, pt., 78/10; *refusyd*, p. p., 25/10 (in rime); *sauyd*, p. p., 97/2; *a schamyd*, p. p., 17/12 (in rime): *schawyd*, pt., 79/8; *scornyd*, pt., 30/6; p. p., 16/10; *seruyd*, p. p., 88/7: *sessyd*, pt., 27/11 (in rime); *schewyd*, pt., 37/7; *soyllyd*, p. p., 24/10; *spoussyd*, pt., 37/11; *wenyd*, pt., 24/4, 52/7, 57/3; *wernyd*, pt., 14/5: *wonnyd*, pt., 54/1, 67/8; *wurthyd*, pt., 51/11; *vsyd*, pt., 25/12 (in rime).

The loss of the vowel in the verbal ending *-ed*, *-yd* has in the poem often been orthographically expressed.

On the other hand there are not a few instances where in the verbal ending *-ed*, *-yd* the pronunciation of the vowel is required by the metre or even, though rarely, by the rime. The proportion between this case and the suppression of the vowel in the former case is illustrated in some measure by our material, inasmuch as in point of the first hundred stanzas practically all instances of *-ed*, *-yd* (in the spelling) have been quoted (except a few cases where the scanning is doubtful).

As examples: *askyd*, pt., 18/6, 47/12, 65/8; *begylyd*, pt., 72/11; *chargeyd*, pt., 57/8; *cursyd*, p. p., 20/6; *demyd*, pt., 94/8; *dyssauyd*, p. p., 74/4; *helsyd*, pt., 47/10; *karyd*, pt., 85/6; *leuyd*, pt., 78/11 (in rime); p. p., 25/8; *lokyd*, pt., 81/9 (in rime); *marryd*, p. p. (inf. mar), 66/8; *mellyd*, pt., 22/2; *morned*, pt., 21/3; *neghyd*, pt., 79/6; *semyd*, pt., 77/2; *seruyd*, pt., 82/6; *sparyd*, pt., 82/7; *takyd*, p. p. (: nakyd, a.), 17/9; *werryd*, pt., 30/10; *worthed*, pt., 64/1.

As examples of the preservation of the full ending *-ed*, *-yd* from stanzas other than the first hundred may be quoted: *armyd*, p. p., 114/11; *blessed*, p. p., 426/2; *carped*, pt., 309/7; *dremyd*, pt., 105/3; *drowped*, pt., 301/8; *fulfyllyd*, pt., 118/7; *greued*, p. p., 291/3; *groched*, pt., 212/11; *hangyd*, pt., 105/12; *heldyd*, pt., 118/8; *helped*, p. p., 343/4; *mengyd*, pt., 275/8; *melled*, pt., 275/7; *named*, p. p., 281/10; *neghyd*, *neghed*, pt., 113/5, 156/3; *persayued*, pt., 318/9; *refreyshed*, p. p., 232/2; *re(gn)ed*, pt., 280/9; *scaped*, pt., 241/8; *schewyd*, pt., 130/7; *schon(ge)d*, p. p., 120/4; *segede*, pt., 265/3; *senssed*, pt., 185/5; *spared*, pt., 242/6, 254/3; *syghyd*, pt., 328/5; *thanked*, pt., 251/6; *wened*, pt., 206/12; *weped*, pt., 436/7.

Let us pass on to verbs with a stem ending in *-d* or *-t*. We should here keep in mind that, in OE. weak verbs of class I (*ja*-verbs) whose stems ended in *-d* or *-t* had as endings in the preterite and pa. pple. *-de* and *-ed* respectively, e. g. OE. *sendan*, 'to send', *hentan*, 'to seize'. pret. *sende*, *hente*, pa. pple. *ȝesended*, *ȝehented*, but with syncope in the WSax. dialect, i. e. *ȝesend(d)*, *ȝehent(t)*, and with syncope only in some inflected forms in the Anglian dialect. Cf. E. Sievers, Ags. Gr.[3] §§ 401, 402. Again, the OE. weak verbs of class II (*ō*-verbs) had as endings in the pret. and pa. pple. always *-ode* and *-od*, even if the stem ended in *-d* or *-t*. From these facts it is evident that in the ME. period, so destructive to the morphological system of the English language, we must find a struggle between two tendencies as to the inflection of verbs ending in *-d* or *-t*, i. e. on the one hand the tendency to leave verbs in *-d* or *-t* without any ending in the pret. or pa. pple.,

and on the other the tendency to add the ending *-ed*. This struggle is distinctly reflected in the language of our text.

In Modern English the latter tendency has been victorious, but in our text the former is decidedly predominant. In other words, to judge from spelling and metre, most of the weak verbs with stems in *-d* or *-t* have no particular ending in the preterite and pa. pple. in our poem.

As examples: *accepte*, p. p., 20/10; *acord*, p. p. (: lord), 63/9; *Acowntyd*, p. p., 170/4; *amend*, p. p., 54/6 (in rime); *a sent*, p. p., 58/4 (in rime); *beldyd*, pt., 43/10; *blend*, p. p., 156/8, 451/2; *bred*, pt., 93/4; *cast*, *k-*, pt., 17/8, 31/8, 92/12; *kest*, pt., 165/4; *comford*, p. p., 54/4; *commawnd*, pt., 155/5, 164/5 (in rime), 215/1; p. p., 28/5 (in rime); *commaund*, pt., 45/9, 170/1 (in rime); *command*, pt. (: ordand, etc.), 205/4; *commawndyd*, pt., 152/3; *coyuet*, p. p., 231/4; *dowt*, pt., 321/8; *dyght*, pt., 59/11; *dyȝt*, p. p., 52/1 (in rime); *dyscend*, pt., 222/3 (in rime); *fawted*, pt., 335/9; *grauntt*, pt., 56/12, 68/6; *grawnt*, pt., 214/5; *grawnted*, pt., 472/6, 487/7; *grayd*, p. p. (: prayd, pt.), 67/10; *hast*, pt., 28/11; *hastyd*, pt., 453/8; *hent*, pt., 6/2 (in rime), 60/9; *lent*, p. p., 6/4 (in rime); *parted*, pt., 239/4; *plantyd*, pt., 13/3; *putt*, pt., 13/4; *schent*, p. p. (: wentt, pt., etc.), 154/8; *to schent* (in rime) p. p., 84; *send*, pt., 76/5, 89/3, 291/10; *sent*, pt., 65/4 (in rime); 93/9 (in rime); *send*, p. p., 339/1; (in rime); *tent*, pt., 68/8; *wasted*, pt., 477/12; *wast*, p. p., 14/8; *wayt*, p. p., 484/8; *wed*, p. p., 85/7; *wend*, pt., 222/5 (in rime); *wentt*, pt., 6/6 (in rime), 49/9, 71/10 (in rime), 84/2 (in rime); *wendyd*, p. p., 152/1; *went*, p. p. (: sent, pt.) 93/11; etc.

Our text, however, is by no means destitute of instances of *-ed*, *-yd* being added to verbal stems in *-d* or *-t* in order to denote the preterite and pa. pple. But they are in a great minority.

As examples: *anoynt(ed)*, p. p., 495/1; *a noynt(ed)*, pt., 494/12; *assent(ed)*, pt., 494/10; *fastyd*, pt., 163/5; *founded*, pt., 162/10; *grawntt(ed)*, pt., 313/4; *hastyd*, pt., 135/8; *hasted*, pt., 207/6, 465/4; *mend(ed)*, pt., 198/10; *notyd*, p. p., 176/4; *partyde*, pt., 267/9; *present(ed)*, pt., 40/6; *stound(ed)*, p. p., 280/4; *wastyd*, p. p., 87/5; *wedded*, p. p., 64/1; *wedd(ed)*, p. p., 86/8; *wendyd*, p. p. (at least in MS. **L**), 152/1; etc.

Lastly we have to consider the case of the verbal stem ending in a vowel. In this case the vowel of the ending *-ed*, *-yd* always appears to have been dropped in our text. As examples: *cryde*, pt., 50/7 (in rime); *dyed*, pt., 64/7, 89/7 (in rime); *hyed*, pt., 50/1, 61/7 (in rime); *multiplied*, pt., 31/1 (in rime); *ocupyd*, p. p., 18/7 (in rime); *sacrify(d)*,

p. p., 61/1 (in rime); etc. Again, when the final sound of the stem is a diphthong, the dropping of the vowel is mostly met with, e. g. *be trayd*, p. p., 74/7 (in rime); *prayd*, pt., 67/12 (in rime), but not always, e. g. *noyed*, p. p., 84/1.

The terminative *-en*, *-yn* as a verbal ending is in our text employed not as a plural formative of the tenses, but only as a characteristic mark of the past pples. of the strong verbs. The treatment of this ending varies in our poem.

When the verbal stem ends in a vowel or a diphthong or else in *-r*, the phonetic form of the suffix always seems to be *-n*. As examples: *awn(e)*, pple. a., 3/4 (in rime), 79/10; *drawn*, p. p., 3/2 (in rime); *gone*, p. p., 73/7 (in rime); *myse gone*, p. p., 25/1 (in rime); *kawn* (OE. *cowen*), p. p., 3/8 (in rime); *knawn*, p. p., 3/6; *sloyn*, p. p., 39/3 (in rime), etc. — *born(e)*, p. p., 54/5 (in rime), 76/6 (in rime), 83/4 (in rime), 97/4 (in rime); *lorne*, p. p., 76/2 (in rime), 108/10 (in rime); *farn*, p. p., 112/3 (in rime); *faryn*, p. p., 176/9 (in rime).

When the verbal stem ends in *-n* or perhaps also in *-m*, the participial ending seems to have been dropped throughout the poem. As examples: *be gune*, p. p., (OE. *onȝunnen*), 35/8 (in rime), 72/8 (in rime), 88/6 (in rime), 127/1 (in rime); *wun*, *wonn*, p. p. (OE. *ȝewunnen*), 72/2 (in rime), 127/5 (in rime); *comyn*, p. p., 32/2, 208/4, 281/7, 331/1, 438/8, 464/5.

The dropping of *-en*, *-yn* is very frequently, but not always, found also in the pa. pple. of the verbs *bind*, 'to bind', *find*, 'to find', *wind*, 'to wind'. As examples: *bown*, p. p. (OE. *ȝebunden*), riming with *ŭ*, 34/7; *fun(e)*, p. p. (OE. *ȝefunden*), riming with *ŭ*, 34/5, 35/2, 72/6, 88/8; *fon*, 62/10 (riming with *ŭ*), *fown*, 127/3 (riming with *ŭ*); *wonn*, p. p. (OE. *ȝewunden*), riming with *u*, 70/7.

This loss of the ending seems only to be a special case of the loss in the pa. pples. *begun*, *wun*. For it is highly probable that the dropping of *d* in the pples. *bown*, 'bound', *fun*, 'found', and *wonn*, 'wound' already took place when OE. *ȝebunden*, *ȝefunden*, *ȝewunden* had become *bundu̯*, *fundu̯*, *wundu̯* (with syllabic *n*) in ME. dialects, whereupon they had the same phonetic structure as the two other verbs. In stanza 87/8 the pple. *funden* is dissyllabic.

As to all other strong pa. pples., the ending *-en*, *-yn* was no doubt retained as a syllabic phoneme in the poet's language. To take a few examples: *dronkyn*, 30/4 (with metrical ictus on *-yn*); *fallyn*, 15/2;

haldyn, 62/2, 104/12 (with metrical ictus on *-yn*); *holdyn*, 39/6; *strekyn*, 201/7; *waxin*, 134/3. Sometimes, however, instances are found where the dropping of the vowel of the suffix is required by the metre, e. g. *gyfyn*, 75/3; *strekyn*, 290/5. They are to be explained as examples of 'Verschleifung'.

Let us pass on to the non-inflectional terminatives *-ed*, *-en*, *-er*. To begin with, we can state that *-ed* is retained in its full form in the poem, e. g. *brokyd*, a., 81/11 (in rime); *crokyd*, a., 12/6; *nakyd*, a., 17/11 (in rime); *wekyd*, a., 21/2, 146/10; *wekydly*, 87/5. As regards the other endings the case is more intricate.

In dissyllabic words where the endings *-en* (*-yn*), *-er* (*-yr*) are phonemes destitute of any semantic import, the dropping of the vowel of these endings is often required by the metre in our poem. The words belonging here should be divided into two categories.

One category is represented by words belonging to the formal equipment of the language, viz. certain adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, consequently words of great frequency and therefore easily subject to reduction. In his HGE. § 454 Luick points out that final unstressed *e* was dropped in the 12th c. in such words as *þenne*, *þanne; whenne, whanne; alse* (*alsō*); *sōne*, etc., and somewhat later in *ēvre*, etc., the result being *þen*, *þan; when*, *whan; als*, *as*; *son*, *ĕr*. Moreover he maintains that about the same time, in unstressed endings, *e* was dropped before *-n* or *-r*, if the preceding consonant was a durative sound. Thus early ME. *beforen*, *hweðer*, *oþer* (= or), *over*, *siþen*, *seþen; abuven; hethen*, *hiþen; þeðen*, *þiðen; hweðen*, *hwiðen* passed into *beforn*, *hweðr*, *oðr*, *ofr* (= **ovr*) **siðn*, **seðn*; **abuvn*; **heðn*, **hiðn*; **þeðn*, **þiðn*; **hweðn*, **hwiðn* and then into *hwĕr* (= whether), *ŏr* (= or), *ŏr* (= over), *sĭn*, *sĕn* (= since); *abūn*, *abǭn* (= above); *hĕn*, *hĭn* (= hence); *þĕn*, *þĭn* (= thence); *whĕn*, *whĭn* (= whence). By their side the fuller forms were retained (under stress) (except *oðer* = or).

If we examine our poem, it will be found that these contractions are generally, but not always, required by the metre and that in point of some words, they have obtained orthographical expression. Such is the case with *syn*(*e*) occurring in *ī*-rimes, e. g. 145/5, 274/6, 326/12; *sen*, 'since' in the body of the verse, e. g. 180/9, 312/6, 325/9, 421/7, 445/1, 448/11, 471/3, 487/8; *hene* 'hence' met with in an *ē*-rime 414/5; *þeyne* 'thence' occurring in an *ē*-rime 1379 and within the line 483/4; *when* 'whence' within the line 109/9; *wher* 'whither' within the line

451/6. But often we also meet with the writing *sythyn*, though metrically monosyllabic, e. g. 281/1, 300/7, etc. (*sythyn*, 432/9 is dissyllabic); also *whethyn*, 378/10, though a metrical monosyllable.

On the other hand the words *euer*, *neuer*, *ouer*, *whed(d)er*, 'whether' (284/11, 408/4, 423/5, etc.) are never contracted in the spelling. And yet they are nearly always or mostly monosyllables, to judge from the metre. In view of the statements above there is no doubt that these words, too, actually had monosyllabic variants in the poet's language.

Another category is constituted by the words of relationship *fader*, *brother* (pl. *brethyr*), *moder* and the words *heuyn*, s., *steuyn*, s., *neuyn*, vb., *seuyn*, num., and *euyn*, adj. and adv. All these (*moder* is of rare occurrence) are in the vast majority of instances metrical monosyllables. This is at least true of *fader* and *euyn*. In view of the frequency of the monosyllabic function, it is tempting to assume that also in this case we are confronted with collateral contracted forms actually existing in the spoken language, and not with instances of 'Verschleifung'. In point of *seuen* (monosyllabic in 106/6, 107/11, 108/5, etc., but dissyllabic, e. g. 79/4) we need not hesitate, since it occurs riming with *bene*, p. p., 118/10 (an incorrect rime: $\bar{e} : \bar{e}$) and since the orthographic form *sen(e)* is actually met with in Hampole, Wyclif, etc. (cf. NE. 'sennight'). Nor do we hesitate in the case of *euyn*, adv., since *ene* has been recorded at least from the 16th c. and *e'en* (= ēn) is still used in poetry and is common in the Northern dialect (cf. NED. s. v. *even*, adv.) As to *heuyn*, *steuyn* and *neuyn*, they were certainly not contracted like *seuyn* and *euyn*, but they might have lost the *e* (*y*) of the ending without making the final *-n* syllabic, thus resulting in monosyllabic forms. But the modern dialects do not corroborate this supposition, unless phonetic forms like *hevn*, *hivn* in Wright's Eng. Dial. Gram. are meant to denote monosyllables. Again, the words of relationship are so easily exposed to modifications from the emotional life of man that we are convinced that they had monosyllabic variants expressing familiarity, just as is the case in the Swedish language (cf. Swed. *fader*, *moder*, *broder* on the one hand and *far*, *mor*, *bror* on the other).

This assumption, so natural, accounts for the extraordinary number of cases where these words are used as monosyllables in our poem. But in the modern dialects there seems to be no trace of these contractions.

Other examples of the suppression of *e* (*y*) in *-er*, *-en* being re-

quired by the metre are only occasional and should no doubt be explained as instances of 'Verschleifung', e. g. *oṗer*, pron., 7/7; *leuer*, comp., 90/3; *rayuen*, 28/3. The same is true of *-el*, e. g. *pepyl*, 15/10. This 'Verschleifung' was facilitated by the fact that, according to LUICK (HGE. § 472), the neutral vowel in *-er*, *-en*, *-el* was dropped in the 14th c. under certain circumstances, leaving the following *r*, *n*, *l* syllabic. That this loss of the neutral vowel actually existed in the language of our text is very likely, but it is also probable that there were collateral forms with the neutral vowel pronounced.

As to the treatment of unstressed *e* in final syllables, we can now state that the language of our text represents a much more advanced stage than does the language of Chaucer. But this is not due to any considerable chronological distance between them, only to a dialectal difference.

§ 38. *The Quality of the Unstressed e.*

The criterion by which the quality of the unstressed *e* can be ascertained is the rime or the spelling. As to the ending *-e*, *-es* (*-ys*), *-ed* (*-yd*), the rimes do not give any information. Such rimes as *circumcysyd*, p. p.: tyd, s., 45/11; *sacrifysyd*, pt.: besyde: tyde, s.: hyed, pt., 10/1, are no examples in point, since the actual riming-words, no doubt, were the collateral forms *circumcīd*, p. p., and *sacrifīd*, pt. But if we turn to the endings *-en* and *-er*, we shall find some conclusive rimes, viz. *kechyn*, s., 'kitchen', riming with tyne, inf. : wyn, s. : fyne, a., 869 and with fyne, a. : fyne, a. : wyn, s., 1375. These *ī*-rimes prove that the unstressed vowel *e* in the OE. form *cycene* had passed into a sound at least approaching short *i*, since this sound, when used in end-rimes, was lengthened into *ī* under metrical stress. Similar rimes are met with as early as the 13th cent. and are also found in Chaucer. Cf. LUICK, HGE., § 460 Anm. 1.

Even at a cursory glance at MS. **S** we notice the comparatively great number of endings containing *y* in the spelling. This *y* consistently interchanges right through the MS. with endings containing *e*. And we find this *y* in the endings *-ys*, *-yd*, *-yr*, *-yl*, *-yn*, *-yst* very often alternating with *-es*, *-ed*, *-er*, *-el*, *-en*, *-est* in the same words. Illustrative examples need not be given; we can content ourselves with stating the percentage of the number of endings with *-e-* and *-y-* respectively.

In the first 500 stanzas there are five times as many *e*-endings as *y*-endings, and there seems to be the same proportion in the other stanzas of the poem. This spelling with *y* is too often made use of to be due to a scribe only. It is quite possible that it was used already in the original MS. as a variant writing. At any rate the spelling with *y* seems to represent the author's pronunciation of the unstressed *e* in the above endings. This quality of the neutral vowel, then, reflected in the spelling with *y*, was according to Luick, HGE. § 460: 2 a sound between *ĕ* and *ĭ* (= *ė*). He points out that, in the orthography of Northern English, *i* (*y*) generally predominates, whereas *e* is the usual spelling in Southumbrian, and that this fact may imply some slight difference in quality. Later on the spelling with *i* (*y*) is not rare in Southumbrian.

An altogether different pronunciation must be assigned to the suffix *-er* derived from OE. *-ere* and used as a formative of agent-nouns, since it has a particular sense and is not a meaningless ending phoneme like *-er* in *fader* and similar words. It occurs once in a rime in the poem, viz. *lucyfer: ˌlyʒt beyrer*, 5, which no doubt implies a rime with open *ē̤*. The unstressed vowel of the OE. suffix *-ere* in the author's dialect was a short open *ĕ̤*, which, when metrically stressed as in the above rime, was lengthened to a long open *ē̤*. Cf. Luick, HGE., § 460 Anm. 2.

C. The Accent of the French Loan-words.

In this section the question of the stress of French loan-words in the author's language will be dealt with, the accentuation of native words being of interest chiefly from a metrical point of view. In coping with this question the metre will be used as a criterion and will no doubt give valuable hints if used with precaution. When at a natural reading of the author's on the whole strictly iambic rhythm word- and sentence-stress coincide with the metrical accent, the conclusions drawn with regard to the accentuation may be assumed to be fairly correct. But now and then irregular lines occur where a natural reading is at variance with the metre and requires a hovering accent. Thus, for instance, in the line

Now, wýll we réde and réherse rýʒt

the metrical system requires the accentuation *réherse*, which cannot be correct any more than *fórgyfe*, inf., in the line

Suld práy and fórgyfe þát trespáse, 472/5.

The line should be read with a hovering accent, which gives *rehérse* as the author's natural pronunciation. Such lines are not conclusive for determining the accent. And in doubtful cases statistics only can settle the question. Nor can the stress of the rime-words be unconditionally considered as the author's own, for these were nearly always stressed on the end syllable, whether the accent was a metrical or a natural one. The material will be drawn from the text published.

§ 39. *Dissyllabic Words.*

In this paragraph it is apposite to distinguish between nouns and adjectives on the one hand, verbs on the other.

As regards dissyllabic nouns and adjectives we should distinguish between two principal categories.

One category embraces nouns and adjectives composed with prefixes pre-eminently found in verbs and in them apprehended, not as meaningless phonemes, but as distinct morphological entities. This is the case with prefixes such as *a-*, *de-*, *des-* (*dis-*), *en-* (*em-*, *-in*), *ex-* (*es-*), *per-* (*par-*), *re-*. Just as native words derived with prefixes have the stress on the verb, not on the prefix, so French verbs composed with a prefix and introduced into English naturally retained the accent on the verb, provided the prefix occurred in a sufficient number of verbs to be apprehended as a morphological entity. When there were corresponding or phonetically similar French nouns and adjectives introduced into English, these, too, generally retained their accent on the last syllable under influence from the verbs, whether individual verbs or a collectivity of them.[1]) In our text there are several such dissyllabic nouns and adjectives constantly endstressed in natural pronunciation. As examples: *as(s)ént*, s., 184/9, 188/8; *asýsse*, s., 27/3, *asýce*, s., 168/8; *astáte*, s., 78/2; *debát(e)*, *debátt*, s., 36/7, 66/3, 78/8; *dedýne*, s., 414/1; *defáwt*, s., 372/8, 396/3; *degré*, s., 2/1; *delýce*, s., 475/1; *desýre*, s., 57/6 165/10; *deuýse*, s., 193/8; *dyspáyr*, s., 44/11; *entént*, s., 65/2, 447/2; *exprésse*, a. and adv., 65/11; *perténes*, s. pl., 130/4; *rewárd*, s., 81/10. Exceptions are sometimes met with, e. g. *rébels*, s. pl., 178/8, 273/6; *réspeyt*, s., 324/5, owing to some associative weakness.

[1]) Cf. Nöjd, op. cit., p. 19.

Occasionally the cause may also be an original trisyllabic form of the word, as in the case of *énmys* (from *énemỳ*), s. pl., 155/4, 161/11, 212/6, etc. Cf. *médcyn*, s., 406/4, *dámsell*, s., 352/4.

The other principal category comprises nouns and adjectives of other morphological types, including such words as in French were composed with prefixes which, in English, were obscured or else not more predominant in verbs than in nouns and adjectives, viz. *con-* (*com-*), *pre-*, *pro-* (*pur-*), *sub-*, *sur-*. These words were in colloquial speech, no doubt, stressed on the first syllable.

As examples: *ángels*, s., 5/5, 9; *ármowrs*, s., 342/1; *Áuter*, s., 99/9; *bárand*, a. 'barren', 388/6; *bárgan*, s., 101/8; *bátell*, *bátels*, s., 168/8, 217/1, 237/10; *bóndeyg*, s., 334/3; *bówels*, s. pl., 406/3; *bútler*, s., 105/7; *cátell*, s., 122/8, 147/3, etc.; *cáutels*, s. pl., 336/11; *cértan*, a., 9/11; *chéftan*, s., 161/6; *Cỳte*, *cỳtes*, s., 135/9, 36/12; *clárgy*, *clérgy*, s., 233/1, 325/2; *cólours*, s. pl., 80/10; *cústom*, s., 79/12; *cónnand*, s. 'covenant', 68/6, 187/11, 218/2; *créwell*, a., 184/3; *cúbbettes*, s. pl., 26/3; *dámsell* (dissyllabic), 352/4; *dówngyn* s., 104/6; *dỳner*, s., 377/11; *dỳuerse*, a., 10/2, 11/2, 200/5; *féllows*, a., 405/4; *fỳgurs*, s. pl., 3/7; *fórest*, s., 158/10,11; *gỳantes*, s., 266/8; *gréuance*, s., 282/11, 408/1, 449/5; *hárnes*, s., 161/1; *hédos*, *hédous*, *hédows*, a., 146/6, 165/2, etc.; *jórnay*, s., 245/6; *lépur*, s., 172/11; *lésson*, s., 325/3; *lỳcour*, s., 303/5; *lỳneg*, *lỳnage*, s., 170/10, 194/8, 217/7; *lỳon*, s., 318/10; *málys*, *málice*, *mályce*, s., 102/3, 145/8, 189/7; *mánace*, s., 482/7; *máner*, s., 233/6; *máters*, s. pl., 75/5, 78/1; *máystry*, s., 293/3; *máysterys*, s., 346/4; *máwmentes*, s. pl., 221/5; *médcyn*, s., 406/4; *ménəȝe*, s., 228/9; *méruel(l)*, *méruyll*, s., 138/1, 238/2, 292/8; *mércy*, s., 116/1; *méssage*, *méssege*, s., 225/11, 457/1, 459/9; *mésyll*, *méssels*, s., 143/5, 148/3; *métall*, s., 22/2; *mỳscheſ*, s., 275/8; *mówntan(e)*, s., *Mówntans*, s. pl., 240/7, 266/8; *pálys*, s., 129/3; *párty*, s., 29/2; *pénance*, s., 301/2; *pérell*, s., 147/7; *péty*, s., 181/4; *pléssance*, s., 485/8; *pówer*, s., 12/9, 39/10, 73/10, 155/8; *práyers*, s. pl., 391/3; *préson*, s., 107/2, 111/8; *préuay*, a., 53/7; *rémnand*, s., 213/12; *réson*, s., 322/7; *rỳall*, a., 408/6; *rỳot*, s., 340/8; *rỳuer*, s., 159/2; *sécund*, num., 7/12, 74/3; *sémland*, s., 305/5; *sénsurs*, s. pl., 190/5; *séruand*, *séruant*, *séruandes*, s., 63/10, 269/8, 421/1, 425/1; *séruyce*, s., 169/3, 268/4, 321/1; *séson*, *séson(s)*, s., 9/4, 47/3, 331/2; *sócur*, s., 126/4, 133/7, 199/6; *sódan*, adj., 149/9; *sólace*, s., 174/2, 363/1; *spówsall*, s., 385/1; *tráueyll*, s., 463/8; *trésone*, s., 166/5; *trésour*, s., 266/4; *tréspasse*, s., 291/9; *túrmentes*, s., 500/6; *vétell*, s., 252/4; *wárdyns*, s., 227/3; *véniance*, s., 187/1; etc.

Now all these and similar words could theoretically also appear endstressed in our poem, and a great many of them actually do so, though comparatively not so often. As examples: *angéll*, s., 6/9, 206/10; *awtér*, s., 56/9, 59/11; *bewtý*, s., 128/11; *butlér*, s., 105/2; *catéll*, s., 36/3; *certán*, a., 13/2, 28/6; *clergý*, s., 106/10; *cosýn*, s., 39/11; *cruéll*, a., 203/2; *cubbéyttes*, s. pl., 27/6; *cuntré*, s., 135/2; *curtás*, a., 451/3; *Cyté, cytés*, s. (pl.), 123/5, 51/5; *enuý*, s., 171/4; *forést*, s., 169/6; *forfeýtt*, s., 19/2; *lynág*, s., 261/7; *malýce*, s., 76/4; *manér*(*e*), 2/9, 18/6; *maryág*, s., 381/8; *maystrý*, s., 136/6, 171/8; *meneżé*, s., 155/1; *meséll*, s., 172/3; *Morán*, s., 147/3; *musýke*, s., 22/6; *myscháwnce*, s., 198/10; *plenté*, s., 107/9; *powére*, s., 219/2; *prayérs*, s., pl., 400/7; *serpént*, s., 16/3; *seruýce*, s., 185/5; *socóur*, s., 291/10; *talént*, s., 335/5; 345/12; *veniánce*, s., 198/12; etc.

In the case of all these words it is scarcely safe to say that the endstressed pronunciation is only metrical. At least in point of such words as contain a heavy ending syllable, it is likely that the French endstressed accent could be retained ,at any rate in solemn speech.

As to the dissyllabic verbs, it is appropriate to make the same distinction between two groups as in the case of nouns and adjectives. The first is a group consisting of verbs with one of the prefixes *a-*, *de-*, *dys-*, *en-*, *per-*, *re-*. For reasons mentioned above, these prefixes were unstressed in the author's language. As examples the following words may be given: *acórdes*, pr., 384/7; *amónyst*, pt., 311/10; *apéred*, pt., 398/8; *afý*, inf., 180/8; *aráy*, inf., 283/9; *assáy*, inf., 325/10; *asáy*, inf., 156/7; *aspý*, inf., 455/6; *asséntt*, pt., 325/12; *delýuerd*, pt., 266/11; *descénd*, pt., 190/2; *deuýsyd*, pt., 322/7; *dyfféndd*, inf., 432/7; *dyssáuyue*, inf., 352/10; *dyscrýe*, inf., 440/6; *endúryd*, pt., 149/8; *persá*(*y*)*ued*, pt., 322/5, 332/1; *perséw*, inf., 243/11; *rehérse*, inf., *rehérssed*, pt., 325/3, 397/1; *refétte*, p. p., 157/4; *refúse*, inf., 383/11; etc.

The second group embraces all other verbs, including such as contain any of the prefixes *con-* (*com-*), *pro-* (*pur-*), *sub-*, *sur-*. In the case of the present category, we seem on the whole to be entitled to say that in colloquial speech the verbs were stressed on the first syllable. As examples: *córumpyd*, 145/7; *fáuerd*, pt., 395/7; *fórfeyt*, pr., 470/2; *góuerne*, inf., 259/8; *góuerans*, pr., 387/1, 389/8; *hóner*, inf., 230/2, *hóners*, *hónowrs*, imp., 175/2, 260/1, 451/5; *hóners*, pr., 312/4; *hónerd*, pt., 164/2; *máry*, inf., 382/5; *máyntein*, inf., 407/2; *máynten*, inf., 103/5, 276/2; *máyntend*, pt., 372/4; *órdand*, pt., 9/1, 224/12; *pré-*

sond, pt., 104/9, etc.; *cómford*, p. p., 54/4; *cómforth*, p. p., 49/8, 327/9; *cómmaund*, *cómmawnd*, pt., 45/9, 155/5, 257/3; *cónquere*, inf., 210/1; *cónquerd*, pt., 202/10, p. p., 38/4; *cónsaued*, pt., 393/2; *cónsell*, inf., 485/6; *cónstru*, inf., 106/10; *púrueyd*, pt., p. p., 231/9; *sóiorne*, inf., 333/7, *sóiourns*, pr., 379/1, *sóiourned*, pt., 157/3, *sóiournd*, pt., 218/10, 468/1, *sóiornde*, pt., 202, 310/8; etc.

As in the case of nouns and adjectives, so here, too, we may assume that all these and similar verbs theoretically could occur endstressed in our poem. And, in fact, most of them actually do so. To take a few examples: *forféytt*, p. p., 469/7; *gouérand*, pt., 281/11; *gouérnd*, pt., 370/11; *ordánd*, pt., p. p., 150/11, 186/11, 191/7, etc. Here, too, it is likely that the endstressed pronunciation was not merely metrical, but could occur as a variant in solemn speech, at least in point of compound verbs or verbs derived with a prefix not altogether obscured in English, e. g. *mainten*, *purvey*. As to the verbs *chastýs*, imp. 396/9, *sustéyn*, inf. 337/10, which in Mod. Engl. are not destitute of stress on the last syllable, we have not ascertained whether they occur in our poem only endstressed. But if they do, that may, but need not, indicate that they were never pronounced with the stress on the first syllable. If they were always endstressed (which is not likely, cf. *maínten*, vb.), this points to a less degree of amalgamation with the English language on the part of these verbs, unless the stress on the final phoneme is conditioned by some strong associative influence. In these particular cases there is such an influence, viz. on the one hand the verbal suffix *-ize* (with secondary stress), and on the other the final phoneme *-ain* (with chief stress) in French loan-words like *disdain*, *regain*, etc. As the foreign loan-words must vary in currency, they may also vary in favouring the Teutonic or the French accentuation.

As to *consáued*, pt., the final stress is quite natural. For here *-sa(y)ue* must have been felt as a distinct morpheme, since met with in *recayue* and *discayue*, and since the prefixal nature of *con-* was no doubt salient in some measure. What is important, then, for the accentual future of a French verbal loan-word, derived with a prefix, is not only its partial or entire amalgamation with the English language, but above all the possibility of distinguishing in it a verbal root on the part of natural linguistic feeling.

Concerning the accentuation of the dissyllabic foreign names

in our text, they too occur with stress now on the first, now on the second syllable, according to the requirements of the metre. As examples: *Ánna*, 389/2; *Áron*, 219/10; *Córe*, 185/9; *Élу*, 396/12; *ýsaac*, 65/1; *Jácob*, 84/8; *Jóseph*, 115/1; *Júdas*, 277/2; *móyses*, 135/1; *Sául*, 420/9; *Séon*, 201/3, etc. — *Anná*, 390/5; *Arón*, 141/5; *Elý*, 394/10; *Isáac*, 67/1; *Jacób*, 84/1; *Joséph*, 113/6; *Judás*, 116/1; *Moysés*, 152/2; *saúl*, 419/10, *Seón*, 200/9, etc.

§ 40. *Trisyllabic Words.*

As regards trisyllabic French loan-words, they are in most cases stressed on both the first and the last syllable in the poem, e. g.: *cómmawn(d)méntes*, s. pl., 163/7, 219/7, 268/6; *cówntenánce*, s., 391/7, 465/2; *cúmpanу*, s., 455/8; *dám[e]séll*, *dám[e]séllys*, s. pl., 126/1, 129/5, 211/5, 346/6; *dýscumféte*, p. p., 197/12; *góuernánce*, s., 414/8, 448/12; *hérytáge*, s., 382/7; *lécheré*, s., 37/6; *máwmentrу*, s., 163/12; *méssyngér(s)*, s., 139/1, 234/1; *múltiplyéd*, pt., 122/7; *mýnstralcу*, 500/4; *nácion*, s., 415/1; *óffycérs*, s. pl., 412/3; *próphecу*, s., 394/8; *préuytу*, s., 30/6; *quéstión*, s., 323/10, 332/3; *sótelté*, s., 15/11; *sácrafýce*, s., 389/11, 390/4; *spécialté*, s., 194/2; *sýgnyfýe*, inf., 323/4; *véniánce*, s., 165/8; *víctorý*, *výctorý*, s., 161/8, 162/6, etc.

These French loan-words originally had the chief stress on the final syllable with a secondary stress on the initial syllable. In the author's language these accents no doubt changed places so as to be more in harmony with English accentual habits. For trisyllabic words cannot be assumed to have had final stress, if dissyllabic words had not; cf. Nöjd, op. cit. p. 9. This tendency towards initial stress is also indicated by such dissyllabic words as *dámsell*, *médcyn*, *súfferan*, etc., stressed on the first syllable and originating from trisyllabic words through loss of the medial vowel before the unstressed final syllable. Cf. Luick, HGE., § 463.

In a few cases the trisyllabic French loan-words are also stressed on the medial syllable, mostly for metrical reasons, e. g. *inchéson*, s., 359/7; *mauméntre*, s., 213/2; *Messýngers*, s., 499/9; *phylýsteyns*, *fellésteyns*, n. pr., 402/5,8, 404/3. But these words are seldom stressed on the final or the initial syllable only, unless metrical syncope may easily be made, as in *préscius*, a., 167/10; *súfferan*, a., 191/6. For metrical reasons such forms would naturally be avoided by the author: they would be

difficult to handle in the iambic metre, e. g. *fírmament*, s., 7/3, 7/9; *mérakyll*, s. 188/11, 194/12.

Trisyllabic foreign names are treated in the poem in exactly the same way as trisyllabic French loan-words. Thus they have generally the metrical stress on the first and the last syllable, e. g. *Ábrahám*, 63/6; *Béniamýn*, 429/12; *Dálydá*, 352/4; *Émaléc*, 372/6; *ffénená*, 390/9; *Néomý*, 372/7; *rébeccá*, 65/3; *sámuél*, 400/1, etc. But mostly they may also be stressed on the second syllable only, e. g. *abráham*, 64/3; *Beniámyn*, 110/10, 111/5; *Dalída*, 353/1; *fenénna*, 390/7; *Rebécca*, 62/9, etc.

They may even be stressed on the last or the first syllable only, if required by the metre. Examples are not rare, e. g. *Abrahám*, 61/11; *Beniamýn*, 111/12; *Gedión*, 289/5; *Josué*, 182/7; *Sámuel, s-*, 394/11, 400/10, 421/12, etc.

French loan-words that contain more than three syllables are not numerous in our text. The transposition of the chief stress from the last syllable to the antepenult, so common in point of trisyllables, is evidently the leading principle for the accentual anglicization of quadrisyllables also. Thus we find: *dyuínité*, s., 2/5; *genólogý*, s., 85/4; *posséssións*, s., 274/9; *procéssión*, s., 410/7; *progénité*, s., 32/6; *tábernákyll*, s., 168/9, 169/7, etc. The accentuation *éxperimént*, s., 143/8 is framed on the pattern of trisyllables, since the metre here requires a trisyllabic word, but the accentuation *tábernákyll*, 168/9, no doubt reflecting contemporary pronunciation in actual speech, is due to the light phonetic structure of the last syllable, which in English never bears a secondary non-metrical stress. Also in the quinquesyllable *generácion*, 77/7, we recognize the principle of laying the chief stress on the antepenult.

The result of our investigation, then, is that we can maintain that in our text the French loan-words have practically adopted the English way of accentuation. Though we have admitted the likelihood that, at least in rhetorical speech, the French stress in many words lingered behind as an accentual variant, the above fact nevertheless seems to point to a fairly late date for the text. In Chaucer's language the Teutonic system of stressing was prevalent in the French loan-words, but scarcely to the same extent as in our poet's language. This need not point to any considerable chronological gap between them, only to a geographical distance.

D. The Consonants.

In this section we shall deal with those features in the consonantism which can actually be proved to have belonged to the author's language. For this purpose rime and alliteration will be used as criteria. But by these tests only some points can be proved, and we shall therefore have to content ourselves with some fairly meagre results, chiefly of interest from a dialectal or chronological point of view.

§ 41. *Qualitative Changes.*

1. *OE. palatalized c* is a stopped consonant in the rimes *chyrche*, **L** *kyrke* : *werke*, **L** *wyrk*, 1174; *kyngryke*, s., 685. Other examples present the almost invariable writings *ylk(a)*, *ylkan*, *-on; swylk(e)*, *qwylk(e)*, *whylc*, *wylce*, (rarely *whych*), *mekyll*, where the Southumbrian, except in the northernmost districts, has *tʃ*, spelt *ch*.

2. *OE. palatalized ʒ* remains in *ʒate*, s. (OE. *geat*) 'gate', and has not got stopped *g* (as in Mod. Eng.) from the plural cases (OE. *ʒatu*, *ʒata*, *ʒatum*). This is evident from the alliteration in a line like *Sho sett ʒyng men to ʒeme þe ʒate*, 1437. This palatalized form alliterating with *ʒing* and *ʒeme* is universal in Northern and in North- and West-Midland writers in ME. and remains beside *g*-forms dialectically in Northern and North-Midland districts. Cf. NED. s. v. *Gate*, sb. and J. Wright, EDG.

3. *OE. sč* in *sceal*, *sceolde* appears as *s* in the original, as is proved by alliteration in a number of lines such as

And sayd that suld hym son ryʒt sore, 102/4,
ffor sone he sayd þou sall þem slo, 288/7;

similar instances 90/8, 92/4, 95/3, etc. This sound-change, which is due to weak stress, is characteristic of the Northern dialects. The adjective *fresch(e)*, a. (OE. *fersc*), appears with *s* for *sh* in rimes: less, comp. (s.) : gese, inf. : ⌣ : bytturnese, s., 156; : was (=wes): wyldernese, s.: gresse, s., 158. The *s* may be of French origin since the forms with *fre-* do not occur until the 13th c. and decidedly point to adoption of OF. *freis* masc., *fresche*, fem. Note, however, that in Yorkshire documents of the 15th c. we find *flesch*, s., and *asch*, 'ask' inf., riming with words in *-s*.

4. In the proper noun *Joseph* (< Hebrew *yō-sēph*) riming with *hepe*, s. 'heap', the original *f*-sound has been replaced by *p*.

5. *OE. final f* appears as *v* in several words owing to associative interference of corresponding inflected forms. Thus we find: *fyue*, num. (OE. *fīf*) : stryfe, inf. : belyue : wyue, s., 558; *graue*, s. (OE. *græf*) : knaue, s. : sayue, inf. : ⌣ : haue, inf., 116; *myschefe, myscheue*, s. (AN. or OF. *meschef, -chief*) : greue, inf., 181; : releue, inf., 437; *staue*, s. (OE. *stæf*) : saue, inf. : craue, inf. : haue, inf. : ⌣, 201; *walkyng-stafe* : haue, inf., 92; *twelfe*, num. : delue, inf., 121/12; *wyue, wyfe*, s. : dryfe, inf., 54; *by lyue* : ⌣ : dryue, inf. : str(yv)e, 148. We also find a strong preterite sing. with *v* substituted for *f* under influence from the plural, viz. *rayue* (pret. of Eng. *rive*, f. OScand.), 486/4 (not in rime). Nearly all these instances also occur with *f* in our text, though seldom in rime, e. g. XII : self, 82.

6. *OE. final þ* has become *t* in the sound-combination *hþ* in *hyght, heght, heyght*, s., (OE. *hēhþo*) : myȝt : ⌣ : bryght : nyȝt, s., 5; : dyght, 59, and *syght*, s., *syȝt*, 'sight' : fyȝt, s., 434; : heyght, pt. : myȝt., s. : ⌣ : fyȝt, s. 477, etc. It is doubtful whether this change is due to phonetic causes or to analogical formation. Cf. Horn, Hist. ne. Gr., p. 158. At any rate we know that these forms in *-t* were predominant in the North. Cf. NED. s. v. *Height*.

OE. initial þ appears in our text so frequently as *t* in the descendant of OE. *þohte*, pt., *ȝeþoht*, p. p., and *ȝeþoht*, s., that this *toyȝt, toght*, pt., p. p., and s. seems to have been a collateral form of *þoght* in the author's language. The genuineness of the *þ*-form is evidenced by alliteration, e. g. *toght*, pt. ⌣ tharne, inf., 112/7. The *t*-form is due to dissimilation caused by the other sibilant, i. e. *h* (= *χ*), and is particularly liable to be established in a word of such common occurrence.

7. *OE. ē* (*ēo, ēa*) + velar *ȝ* and *OE. ē* (*ēo, ēa*) + *-h* have a particular development in the ME. period north of the Humber. OE. *ē* (*ēo, ēa*) + velar *ȝ* develops into *ęi* after 1200, i. e. after the time whenOE. *ē* (*ēo, ēa*) + palatal *ȝ* (before a palatal vowel) became *ęi*, proximately from *ei* as in OE. *flēoȝeþ, -es*, 3 sg. pr. 'puts to flight'; **dēȝeþ, -es*, 3 sg. pr. 'dies'; *lēoȝeþ, -es*, 3 sg. pr. 'tells a lie' > earliest ME. *flęieþ, -es, dęȝeþ, -es, lęieþ, -es*, > c. 1200 *flęieþ, -es, dęieþ, -es, lęieþ, -es*, whence also the infs. *flēien, dēien, lēien*. Thus for instance, the OAngl. infinitives *flēȝan* 'disperse', **dēȝan*, (perhaps of Scandinavian origin) 'to die', *lēȝan*, 'to tell lies', where *ȝ* was velar, passed into *flęien, dęien, lęien* after c. 1200, and this *ęi* became *ī* before 1300, whence *flīen, dīen, līen*. This development

took place also north of the Humber, if the following vowel was preserved until after 1200. But in the north the inf. lost its final *-e* before 1200 and then ȝ became final and passed into χ, e. g. North. *flēgh*, *dēgh*, *lēgh*, later also *flē*, *dē*, *lē*. When in Northern English we find *flī*, *dī*, *lī* in inf., the *ī* has analogically been introduced from 3 sg. pr., which in its turn has got *ī* through analogical adoption before 1200 of the *ēȝ* of the inf. When in the Northern dialect we find *flay*, *day*, *lay*, they are due to analogical transference from 3 sg. pr. in its undisturbed development. Thus, if in ME. texts we come across forms like *fli*, *di*, *li*, or *flay*, *day*, *lay*, they do not point to a particular dialect. But when we meet with forms like *flegh*, *degh*, *legh*, or *fle*, *de*, *le*, they decidedly point to the language north of the Humber.

Which, then, is in our text the phonetic dress of the words under consideration? We meet with the *ī*-forms in rimes, viz. *dy*, inf. and pres., *dyed*, pt. 'to die', 32, 89, 1226; *ly*, inf., *lys*, *leys*, pr. 'to tell a lie', 534, 818, 862. We find the rime *neyne*, num. 'nine': pyn, s., 289, where the form *nīn*, which also occurs in Southumbrian, is probably orthographically represented by the true Northern and Scotch form *nēn* (the *ey*-spelling is then due to a Scotch or Northern scribe). We also come across the *ay*-form in rime, viz. *afflay*, inf. 'terrify': way, s. 188; *flayde*, p. p., 'frightened': sayd pt., 502/10; *to flayd*, pt. 'fled': sayd, pt. : layd, pt. : be trayd, pt., 238/1; *flayd*, p. p., 'terrified' : sayd, pt., 444/9. This form is no doubt a descendant of OE. *ā̆flēȝan* 'to put to flight'. True, the sense 'terrify, frighten', seems to imply that we are concerned with a variant of the verb *affray*, of French origin. But the consonantal difference finds a natural explanation, if we assume that the native *afflay* and the foreign *affray* were confused so as to make *afflay* adopt the sense 'terrify' from the latter. This confusion was due to great phonetic and semantic affinity, both having in common the sense 'to put to flight', since *affray* also meant 'to frighten away'.

The particular Northern forms are not met with in rimes, but we find them within the line, e. g. *fleand*, 'flying' (OE. *flēoȝende*, *-ande*, pr. pple., 146/3, 149/1, presupposing the inf. *fle*, and *leys*, (=*lēs* unless a diphthongization of *līs*) pres. instead of *lis* (cf. above) and *neyne* (= *nēn*) instead of *nin*. The forms *Eye*, s. 434/7, 436/4, etc., pl. *Eyne*, 442/2, 442/4 should perhaps also be explained as chiefly Scotch writings involving *ē*, pl. *ēn*, but the probability exists here that we are concerned with a real diphthong. We also find *degh*, 'to die', several

times in the body of the verse. But that these forms also belonged to the dialect of the poem is proved by instances from the development of OE. *ē* (*ēo*, *ēa*) + *-h*, which is entirely on a par with *-ēh* originating in ME. from OE. *ē* (*ēo*, *ēa*) + velarȝ. The fact is that the ME. *-ēh* from OE. *ē* (*ēo*, *ēa*) + *-h* is retained north of the Humber, i. e. it does not, like the Southumbrian, develop a parasitic *i* before *h*, but later on it drops the *h*, passing into *-ē* in the 14th and the 15th c. Of this development there is in our text one instance supported by rime, viz. *the*, s. 'thigh' (OE. *þēoh*, OAngl. *þēh*), 670. The substantive *be*, 'ring' (OE. *bēaȝ*, OAngl. *bēh*) is recorded within the line, viz. 92/10 (*be*), 96/5 (*bee*). Note also *hely*, 'highly', 61/7, *hegh*, a. and adv., 461/3, 462/2, 465/3, 472/2; *negh*, inf., 411/4, 456/8. Thus we can state that the author's language presents one of the most striking features of Northern ME. Cf. Luick, HGE. pp. 364, seq. 416, 417, 430, Untersuch. p. 83 ff., Stud. p. 157 ff.

8. *OE. ð* (voiced sibilant) appears sometimes as *d* in *oþer*, pron., in our text, e. g. *oyder*, 73/10, 416/11, etc. This form is not evidenced by rimes and scarcely belonged to the author's language. But it occurs more or less sporadically in later ME. texts north of the Humber. It rimes with genuine *d* in Gawain Douglas, 1513, and is found already in Orm.

The converse change of *d* > *ð* in such words as *fader*, s., *moder*, s., *together*, adv., *gedder*, v., *ydder*, (= þider), adv., is not met with in our text. In the numeral *hunderth* 170/6, 188/2, 189/5, etc., the regular form in the poem, *th* has seemingly been substituted for *d*. (Cf. OE. *hundred*). But the word should instead be apprehended as a Scand. loan-word (cf. ON. *hundrað*, whence already OE. *hundraþ* in the Lindisfarne gospels of c. 950).

9. *OE. hw* often appears as *qu*, *qw* in the poem, e. g. *quylke*, pron., *quat*, pron., *quyls*, adv., etc. This spelling is by Morsbach (Me. Gram. p. 14) looked upon as a characteristic of Northern English (and Scotch) and of the North Midland dialect and as having the phonetic value of *kw*, though there is no trace of *k* in the modern dialects.

10. Change of *t* to *d* in the ME. ending *-aunt*, *ant* (from AN. or OF. *-aunt* or *-ānt*) is very common in our text, not only in the body of the verse, e. g. *remnand*, 213/12, *remland*, s., 166/8, but also in rimes, viz. *besand*, s., *connand*, s. 'covenant', *presand*, *present*, s. *semlandes*, s. pl., *servand*, *servant*, s., *warrand*, s., cf. p. Lvi. This change is probably due to assimilation of the French form to Northern Eng. *-and*, pr. pple. ending, primarily in the case of adjectives, e. g.

sembland, *presand*, then also in substantives, first by intermediary agency of such adjectives substantivized. If so, the appearance of *-and* must be common chiefly north of the Humber. The change took place in the 15th c. according to NED. (s. v. *-and*, suffix).

A change of *t* to *d* is also met with in the verb *comford*, 54/4, p. p. earlier *comfort* (AN. or OF. *cun-*, *conforter*) probably through associative interference of verbs ending in the phoneme *-ord*, e. g. *accord*, *record*, *discord*, etc. Cf. the passing of the ME. vb. *aforth* (OE. *ȝeforðian* f. *forþ*, adv.) into *afford*.

A change of *t* to *th* is in our text presented by the corresponding sb. *comforth*, 211/2, 393/6, 437/3, elsewhere also by the verb. It is likely enough that we are here confronted with a case of popular etymology, i. e. with association with *come*, vb. and *forth*, *furth*, adv. (Cf. the ME. spelling *comfurth*) The phonetic change of *con-* to *com-* is English and due to the following labial. Phonetic similarity, and in some measure also semantic affinity (cf. the sense 'to encourage, support') and 'to come forth, to help'), brought about the change.

§ 42. *Loss of Consonants.*

1. Dropping of ME. *final -d* after *n* has taken place in the author's dialect in some words. This loss is proved by rimes in a couple of cases, viz. *syne*, pt. or p. p.: wyne, s., 52/9; : wyn, inf. : chyn, s. : ⌣ : kyn, s., 327; *wand*, s. (ON. *vǫndr*) : on ond, adv. phr. : ⌣ : tane, p. p. : ylkon, 193. It is also proved by spellings like *grone*, s. (OE. *grund*) 178/1; *turn*, p. p., 120/8; *kene*, p. p., 190/6 and such inverted spellings as *on ond* (= on on) 193/1; *souerand*, s., 471/5; *gouverand*, inf.; *man kynd*, s. (OE. *mancynn*) : wyn, inf. : be gyn, inf. : syn, s., 1/2. To these examples may be added the preterites *bown*, *bun*, 'bound', *fown*, *fun(e)*, 'found' and *wonn*, 'wound', where, however, the dropping of *d* probably took place in medial position. Cf. p. CXVII.

The dropping of *d* in the preterites and in other cases is found also in the York Plays even in rimes (written in the 14th c., MS. from the 15th c.[1]) As to modern dialects WRIGHT says (EDG. p. 235), »This loss of final *-d* in the pret. and p. p. of verbs like *bind*, *find*, *grind*, *wind*,

[1] Cf. IDA BAUMANN, Die Sprache der Urkunden aus Yorkshire in 15. Jahrhundert, Heidelberg 1902, p. 86.

Cf. H. GERKEN, Die Sprache des Bischofs Douglas von Dunkeld, Strassburg 1898, p. 56.

is quite regular in Sc. Irel. and the north and north midl. counties. Otherwise final *d* is seldom dropped in n. and n. midl. counties». He also points out that final *d* has generally disappeared after *n* in northern Scotch, in I. Ma. Glo. w. Brks., w. Hmp. and the south-western counties, and that in other counties the loss of *d* in this position occurs occasionally. From this it is evident that the loss of final *d* after *n* in our text is a feature characteristic of the language north of the Humber.

2. Dropping of ME. *final -d* after *l* is in the case of the noun *ȝele* (OE. *ȝeld, -ie-*) evidenced by a rime : fele, inf. : well, adv. : dele, s. 127.

As to modern dialects Wright says (EDG. p. 234), »Final *d* has often disappeared after *l*, especially in Sc. (except in the southern counties), I. Ma. and the southwestern counties. In other counties the loss of *d* in this position is not so frequent. But in a few words, however, it extends over a large area.»

3. Dropping of ME. *final -t* after *s* sometimes occurred in the author's language, as is proved by rimes like : *wysch*, pt. (OE. *wissian*, 'to direct, show') : genesis : blyse, s. : hys, pron., 4; *ouer past*, p. p. : place, s. : was, pt. : has, pr., 98. As to the dropping of final *-t* after *h* or *þ*, e. g. *flygh*, s., 402/7, *egyp*, 108/12, see chap. vi.

4. Dropping of *h* in the initial combination *hw-* seems sometimes to have taken place, to judge by the alliteration in the line 158/4: *ay qwýls þei wónnyd in wýldernése*. But perhaps *qwyls* need not be counted as a member of the alliteration. Cf., however, spellings like *wylke*, 142/8.

5. Dropping of *initial þ* seems to have taken place in *ydder*, (OE. *þider*) 175/10, 1349 (in rime) and *ydderward*. This is, however, a Scotch spelling, app. for *þdir*, etc. (cf. NED. s. v. *Thither*, adv.)

6. Loss of consonants through contractions is met with in several words in *-en*, *-er*, which have been dealt with above (p. cxviii seq.). Here belongs also the verb *behove*, which generally appears as *bus* in 3 sg. pres. and as *bud* in pret., but also as *behoued*, 489/8.

§ 43. *Metathesis.*

Metathesis has taken place in the numeral *hunderth* (f. OScand. *hundrað*), the regular form in our text, and seemingly also in *fresch*,

(as compared with OE. *fersc*) evidenced by rime, cf. 156/6. The metathesis in the latter word is due to French influence, unless we ought to say that we are concerned with a French loan-word. Cf. p. CXXVIII.

It may be mentioned in passing that, apart from orthographical additions of a consonant, viz. *d* in words like *souerand*, s., 471/5 and *t* in words like *Thurght*, adv., 154/7 (cf. chap. VI), there are a few cases where a real phonetic addition of a consonant has taken place, e. g. *þe tother*, 86/4, *messynger(s)*, s., 438/5, 499/9. The insertion of *n* in the latter word and its congeners, generally took place towards the end of the ME. period.

CHAPTER IV

ACCIDENCE

This chapter will above all deal with forms which are found in the rimes, and which therefore must be looked upon as original, although we cannot be sure that the author himself used them in his own speech, since he may also have borrowed from other dialects and from the incipient Standard English. These forms will generally be given first, in a special section. But as this material would not suffice to give a fairly comprehensive picture of the accidence of certain parts of speech, and in some cases is altogether lacking, we shall have to adduce forms from within the line and, if possible, state when these may be regarded as the author's own. In either case, both with regard to forms in the rimes and within the line, space prevents the quotation of any considerable number of forms.

§ 1. *Declension of Nouns.*

In the present text there is not much left of the inflexional system of the OE. nouns. Apart from some isolated forms there exists one inflexional type only. This is descended from OE. masc. *ŏ*-stems and characterized by lack of all endings except *-es*, *-s* in gen. sing. (and plur.) and *-es*, *-s* in plural number.

a) Genitive Singular.

There is no gen. sg.- ending in the rimes. Within the line this ending is generally *-es* (*-ys*, *-is*), *-s*. As has already been shown above (p. CXIII), the vowel of the ending was facultatively mute. The following instances may be given by way of example: *goddes*, 1/12; *bestes*, 11/6; *manys*, 19/11; *kyddes*, 71/5; *chyldes*, 126/1; *werres*, 169/4; *kynges*, 705/3, 710/7, etc. The instances are not very numerous since senses of the genitive case are also expressed by the *of*-construction, and moreover the case-ending is in the singular very often

lacking in words of relationship, in proper names, and also in personal appellatives in general.

As examples of words of relationship without *-s*, but with genitival sense the following may be quoted: *fader*, 58/1; his *brothur* son, 62/12; his *brothyr* rewll, 85/5; thi *broþer* sed, 88/3; his *moyder* dede, 99/2; the *moder* pappe, 127/4; on his *moyder* syde, 704/4. All these forms are old *r*- stems, which in OE. did not as a rule end in *-s* in the genetive case. Further we find e. g. þe *wedow* sun, 924/2; hyr *sun* body, 1127/4; þat *husband* hert, 1353/1; hyr *sun* wyfe, 1357/12.

The following proper names may be given as instances of non-inflection in the genitive case: *Adam* suns, 22/9; *noye* suns, 29/5; *loth* fader, 34/4; *abraham* sake, 77/9; *Iacob* name, 120/4; *Aron* wand, 194/5; *Eleazar* son, 213/10; *caryn* son, 236/5; for *Sampson* þer sun sake, 315/12; of *Dauid* fare, 598/2; *Dauid* frendes, 579/10; *Dauid* towre, 650/3; *Sisoc* seruandes, 867/11; *Nabod* feld, 951/5; *Iob* chylder, 1183/3, etc.

As examples of personal appellatives in singular with genitival sense, but without the case-ending: That *stewerd* wyf, 104/3; in the *kyng* seruyce, 153/8; no *man* sayng, 347/2; þe *byschop* clerkes, 558/4; in the *pepyll* syȝt, 723; þe *pepyll* plyȝt, 821/6; in þat *prophett* presence, 1026/12; þe *prophett* hand, 1057/9; The *prophett* hert, 1099/1. We even meet with a non-personal substantive without the genitive ending, viz. þer *flesch* delytt, 276/3.

b) *Nominative Plural.*

1. The commonest endings in the nom. pl. are *-es* (*-ys*, *-yse*) *-s*. From the rimes the following may be given by way of example: *storyse*, 'stories' : wyse : price : ⌣ : assyse, 2/6; *clerkes* : *werkes*, 6; *partyse* : wyse : asysse : ryse: ⌣, 27/7; *ways* : rayse, pr., 99/11; *handes* : *landes*, 102; *werkes* : *clerkes*, 106; *sawys* : knavs, pr., 131/11; *enmys*, s. : wyse, s., 141/9; *bodes*, 'bodies' : enmys : ⌣ : lyse : ryse, 178/2; *cananews* : *jewes* : trewse : remeuys, 3 sg., 197; *kynges* : *thynges*, 250; *Cetyse* : chesse, 267/12; *handes* : *sandes* : *landes*, 287; *suns*, 'sons' : wunnes, 374/9; *face*, 'foes' : case : space : place, 418/8, etc. As for additional examples within the line see p. CXIII.

2. Stray remnants of the *weak declension* are represented by the following forms within the line : *eyn*(*e*), 'eyes', 68, 364, 442, 1217,

1351; *oxe*, *oxin*, 409, 410, 1184. The plural *stern*, 'stars' 42/10 should probably be apprehended as a scribal error (cf. *sternys*, pl. 100/10 of *stern*, a Scand. loan-word) and not as a descendant of OE. pl. *steorran* syncopated.

3. The following *Mutation Plurals* may be quoted from the rimes: *men(e)* : ruben, n. pr., 102/11; : kene, 327/12; *fette*, 'feet' : hett : mett : grett, 250/2; *hende*[1]) : lend, 161/9; : kend, 177/12. Within the line : *brethyr*, 30/11, 100/2, 102/3, 289/10, etc.

From within the line we may quote a few additional instances : *wemen*, 136, 212; *myse*, 'mice', 145, 405; **L** *kye*, 409, 417.

4. *Collective nouns* and *nouns expressive of measure or number*, etc. often take no suffix in the plural. Among these unchanged or invariable plurals we find the following in the rimes: *ȝere*, 'years' : dere : fere : nere, 23/2; *here* (= *hār*, f. OScand.) 'hair' : bayre, pt., 66/10; *schepe* : kepe, 89/12; 506/12; *provynce* : prince, 1373/11; *schylyng* : tythyng : thyng : hethyng, 739/3; *myle*, 'miles' : wyle : whyle : gyle, 901/6.

Within the line we find e. g. : *nawtt*, *nawte*, 89/12; 1348/1; *fee*, 136/1; *swyn*, 147/4; *asse*, 147/4; *hors*, 177/11; *dere*, 465/6; *score*, 558/3; *payr*, 1035/3; *kynred*, 'tribes', 839/10, etc.

5. The plural in *-er* (*-yr*) is represented by *chylder*, 24, 47, 49, etc.

§ 2. *The Adjectives.*

a) Declension.

Already in a preceding chapter (cf. p. CXII) we have had occasion to point out the absolute disappearance of the final *-e* in all parts of speech, consequently also of the final inflexional *-e* in attributive adjectives in the author's language. This implies that the adjectival declension has entirely disappeared in our text. True, we sometimes come across a remnant of the weak declension (in sing. or plur.) or even of the strong declension (in plur.) inasmuch as an adjective, ending in a consonant and used attributively, may get an inflexional *-e* added, if required by the metre. But that should be apprehended as a loan from the Southumbrian. Such loans are met

[1]) The OE. plural of *hand*, *hond* was *handa*. The mutated plural *hend*, which is found in Northern Eng. in 14—15th c. is from OScand.

with also in Northern poems from the 14th. cent. Cf. SCHIPPER: History of English Versification, p. 162.

b) Comparative.

The suffixes of the comparative are written *-er(e)*, *-yr*, *-ur*, the phonetic value of which was certainly *-ër*. In the rimes we find such a form as *leuere* : euer, 1082/10, etc. From within the line the following may be given by way of example: *langer*, 34/8; *ȝonger*, 53/5; *heynder*, 62/2; *wyser*, 96/12; *myryer*, 110/7; *swettur*, 331/7; *feller*, 504/1, 623/2; *trewer*, 614/5; *fayrer*, 687/3; *fuller*, 781/8; *febyler*, 1231/11; *fowler*, 1240/6; *wyser*, 1501/3.

We are struck by the great number of monosyllabic adjectives which express the comparative degree by means of *more*. These are no doubt used for the sake of the metre. In rime we note e. g. : *mor myld :* chyld, s., 66/11. From within the line the following may be quoted: *moyr schort*, 2/9; *mor strang*, 66/5; *more hard*, 331/5; *more wyse*, 814/1; *more fell*, 884/12; *more gay*, 1476/9.

Mutated and irregular comparatives are: *more :* wer, pt., 16/9; : be fore : ware : þore, 507/8; *mare* : are : sere : whare : ⌣, 498/7; : ware : ⌣ : store : þore, 152/3; : hare, s. : ⌣ : lare, s. : ware, pt., 361/3; *mo* : two : þo : fro, 50/2; : slo : also : wo, 370/1; *ma :* dyna, n. pr., 83/7; *lesse :* expresse, 65/12; : gese, inf. : fresche, a. : bytturnese, 156/2; : geysse, inf., 726/12; *ware*[1], 'worse' : mare, inf. : ⌣ : fare, adv. : nere, adv., 456/4; *werre*[1], 'worse' : marre, inf. : were, pt. : fere, adv., 509/8; *myn*[1], 'less' : with in, 237/11; : In : phylysteyn : begyn, 645/4.

Additional instances are found within the line, e. g.: *elder*, *eldyr*, *alder*, 53/1, 66/9, 69/1; *lenger*, 781/7, etc.

c) Superlative.

The ending of the superlative is written *-est(e)*, *-yst : depest :* best : rest : fest, 1055/8; *werest :* best : rest : nest, 1287/4. Within the line we meet with e. g. *fellyst*, 15/1; *ȝongest*, 34/3; *gaynyst*, 49/10; *heghtest*, 207/6; *ffayrest*, 212/2; *leuest*, 221/2; *stalworthest*, 322/2; *wysest*, 326/1; *kenyst*, 557/3; *wurthest*, 742/3; *hardest*, 1187/2.

Here also we find the periphrastic superlative in the case of monosyllabic adjectives, e. g. *most lefe* : schefe, 5/11; *most nere* : were :

[1] Scand. loan-word.

here: ⌣, 34/6; *most yong :* bryng, inf., 110/11; *most wyse :* ryse, inf.: lyyse : avyse, 749/21, etc.

Mutated and irregular superlatives are : *most :* tast, inf. : gast, s. : chast, a., 1/1; *mast :* wast, p. p., 186/10; : hast : gast : brast, p. p., 343/2; *lest :* beste, s., 159/10; : fest : best, s. : encrest, 873/3; *best :* kest, pt. : nest, s. : ⌣ : rest, s., 319/5, etc. Within the line we find further : *vttmast*, 19; *eldyst*, 73, 85, 289, 492; *werst*, *warst*, 353 , 908, 914, etc.

§ 3. *Numerals.*

a) Cardinals.

one : tone, p. p., 48/12; *two :* fro : go : them, 9/1; *Tway*, 'two' : melkala, n. pr., 33/10; *twa* : þai : sara, n. pr. : ⌣ : go, 48/5; : Iuda, n. pr., 618/12; *thre :* be : the : me, 19/1; : the, 35/10, etc. ; *fyue :* lyue : wyfe : stryfe, 250/1; *V :* ryue, a. : stryue : wyfe, 325/1, etc.; *seuyn :* neuyn : euyn : heuyn, 825/5; *VII :* euyn : heuen : steuen, 31/2; [*VII*] : bene, 118; *ten :* þen : men : ⌣ : kene, 109/5; *eleuyn :* euyn, 100/10; *aleuyn :* neyvn : heuyn : euyn, 192/2; *twelfe :* delue, 121/12; : hym selfe, 630/12, etc.; *thrytty :* þi, 321/12; *fawrty :* Amaȝi, 1140/9; *fyfty :* dy, inf. : ⌣ : progenite : lyghtly, 32/4; *two hunderth and fyfty :* allmighty : cumpany: hy, 188/2; *milia* (= þusand) : commaund : ⌣ : fand : ordand, 170/3.

Within the line we find e. g. : *faur*(*e*), *fawr*(*e*), 23/11, 161/1, 542/12, 824/7; *sex*, 83/1; *aght*, 25/7; *neyn*, 211/6; *fyftene*, 830/2; *sexty*, *sexti*, 21/8, 151/1; *A hunderth*, 119/6; *Twa hunderth*, 34/10; *Thre hunderth*, 26/3; *hunderthes*, 835/1; *T-*, *thowssand*(*es*), 23/8, 31/2, etc.

b) Ordinals.

Thryd, 'third' : dyd, pt., 22/9, etc. ; *faurth* (for *ferthe* f. OE. *fēorða*) : erthe, s., 1500/12; *tend* 'tenth' : end : ⌣ : frend : lend, 217/3; *teynd :* wende, 821/10.

From within the line the following may be mentioned: *fyrst*, 6/12, 66/6; *secund*, 7/12; *fyft*, 10/12; *sext*, 11/12; *seuynt*, 148/6, 235/7; *aght*, 25/7, 149/1; *twelft*, 192/8; *aghtdane*, *aghtyn*, 'eighteenth', 1011/4, 1376/5, etc.

c) Other numerals.

Twyse : wyse, a. : prese, s. : sacrafyce, 389/5; *thryse :* wyse, s. : moabyse : prophecyse, 209/3; : avyse : sacrafyce: wyse : ⌣, 446/7. Within the line we find: *onys*, 'once', 873/2, etc.

§ 4. *Pronouns.*

a) Personal Pronouns.

Sg. 1st. Pers. Nom. : *I :* hye : archerye : ⌣ : dy, pr., 69/6; : crye, inf. : mercy : cumpany, 1077/5, etc. Dat. and Acc. : *me(e)* : thre : be : the : ⌣, 19/7; : be : se : ⌣ : the, 56/6, etc. — 2nd. Pers. Nom. : *þou* : vowe, s. : prow, s. : ⌣ : yow, 296/5; *yow, ȝe*, 60/7, 71, 1188, etc. Dat. and Acc.: *the :* thre : be : ⌣ : me, 19/5; *þe :* pety : Cety : ⌣ : we, 382/5, etc.; *ȝe, yow*: vowe : prow, þou : ⌣ : 296/7; 75/1, etc. — 3rd. Pers. Nom. *he* : see : be : ⌣ : degre 7/5; : ȝe, 16/12, etc.; *scho(e), sho*, 'she', 16/7, 302/1, 811/5, 1432/3, 1440/1, etc. *yt*, 3/1, 1449/2, etc. Gen. *hys :* wysch, imp. : genesis : blyse : ⌣, s., 4/7; *his :* mys, s., 45/10; *is*, 3/11, etc. *hyr, hir*, 43/2, 46/6, etc. Dat. and Acc. *hym :* lyme, s., 1419/11; *hyr, hir*, 53/6, 65/4, etc. *yt :* wytt, inf., 994/12; : sytt, inf. : wytt : bytt, 1028, etc.

Pl. 1st. Pers. Nom. : *we :* bee : cuntre : ⌣ : pauste, 11/5; Dat. and Acc. : *vs :* þus, 1044/11 ; : þus : instus : vycyus, 1211/5. — 2nd. Pers. Nom. : *you*, 1229/7, etc. *ȝe :* me, 174/10; : thre : pety : me, 1214/3, etc. Dat. and Acc. : *ȝow*, 221/6; *yow*, 1214/4, 1229/10, 1237/2, 1238/7, etc. — 3rd Pers. Nom. : *þai :* day : play : way : ⌣, 47/7; : pray : day : ⌣ : way, 230/5; *thei :* day : play : aray : ⌣, 129/7; etc. Gen. : *þer, ther, þa(i)r, þare, theyr*, 3/6, 10/6, 14/3, 25/7, 55/12, 226/3, 249/7, 384/2, 672/8, 893/4, etc. Dat. and Acc. : *þem, them*, 8/2, 101/10, 502/5, 680/4, etc.; *them :* go : fro : two : ⌣, 9/7; *þai :* sara, n. pr. : twa : go, 48/1; *þa* : Iuda, n. pr., 641/2; *þo* : go, 38; : mo : two : ⌣ : fro, 50/6, etc.

The commonest forms of the 3rd pers. pl. are *þei, þer* and *þem* with their spelling-variants in *th-*. Rarely we meet with the forms *þe* or *the* and *þai*, and still less frequent is the objective *þam*.

b) Reflexive Pronouns.

Sg. 1st. Pers. : *my self*, 71/4; *me*, 554/1, 1051/3. — 2nd. Pers, : *your self(e)*, 115/7; *yow*, 116/12; *þi self(e)* : pelfe, s., 476/11; 312/7.

471/6; *þe*, 496/2, 544/6, 800/1. — 3rd. Pers. : *hym self(e)* : XII, 82/9; : twelfe, 644/9; 5/6, 11/5, 82/9, 184/6; *his self*, 394/11, 1048/8; *hym*, 47/3, 63/3, 202/5; *hyrself(e)*, *hir self(e)*, 302/2, 383/3; *hyr*, *hir*, 91/5, 126/7, etc.

Pl. 1st. Pers. : *our self*, 238/3; 179/2, 471/3. — 2nd. Pers. : *your self(e)*, 416/7, 432/2; *yow*, 262/5. — 3rd. Pers. : *þem self*, 548/3, 1061/1; *þem*, *þam*, *them*, 29/3, 91/11, 129/3, 150/5, 161/4, 300/11, 906/7, etc.

c) *Possessive Pronouns.*

Sg. 1st. Pers. : *myn(e)* : pyne, s., 448/12; : fyne, a. : hyne : wyne, s., 702/7, etc.; *my*, 2/10, 18/8, 377/10, etc. — 2nd. Pers. : *þin(e)* : pyne: myn : tyne, 871/5; : fyne, inf. : tyne : myne, 1056/4, etc.; *þi*, *thy*, *thi* within the line : 14/8, 19/8, 77/10, etc.

Pl. 1st. Pers. : *our*, 1/8, 11/10, etc. — 2nd. Pers. : *your*, 74/8, 111/4, etc.

d) *Demonstrative Pronouns.*

Sg. þis, *this*, *thys* : myse, 10/12; 670/9, 1237/12; : amonys : wyse, a. : price, 667/1; : wysch, inf., 1203/11, etc.; *þat*, *that*, 6/1, 14/3, 83/10, 87/8, etc. ; *swylk(e)*, 108/2, 138/2, 144/7, etc.; *slyke*, 'such' : kyngryke : like : stryke, 685/1; *sych*, 'such', 581/2; *yond*, 271/8.

Pl. : *þies*, 'these' : enmyse : thryse : wyse, 1143/1; : dyspyse : ryse : price, 1499/1; *þire*, 'these' : syre : desyre : yre, 1065/3. In the body of the verse: *thos*, *þos*, 10/8, 39/8, 50/8, 89/7, 162/1, etc.; *þer*, 6/8, 631/3, etc.; *tho*, *þo*, *þa*, 'those', 15/4, 38/4, 103/3, etc.

For the definite article MS. **S** generally uses the uninflected forms *þe*, *the* in all cases, both in sg. and pl. In a few cases, however, *þo(o)* appears, mostly before a plural noun, but also before a singular form, e. g. *þo wemen*, 212/9; *þo folke*, 302/8; *þo men*, 330/6; *þo paynyms*, 476/2; *þo prophett*, 662/11; *þo plenyng*, 707/11, etc. This form of the definite article has recently been shown to have been used over a comparatively large area in the northern parts of the Midlands. Cf. Holmqvist, On the History of the English Present Inflections etc., p. 147.

The plural of *þis*, *this*, etc. is expressed by the forms *þies*, *thies*, *þis*, *þire* and *þer* in **S**. Of these pronouns *þies*, *thies* preponderates; it occurs about twice as many times as its synonyms *þer* and *þis*, which latter are few in number. The typically Northern *þire* is extremely

rare. The isolated examples of it occurring in rimes should, however, be specially noted.

The plural forms of *þat*, i. e. *þo*, *tho* and *þos*, *thos*, interchange and occur in about the same number in the poem.

e) Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.

The following relative pronouns occur: *who*, 14/3, 321/6, etc.; *whos*, 208/4; *whom :* am, pr., 140/9; *qwom*, *whom*, 1/6, 123/8, 594/7, etc, ; — *wych*, *the wych*, *qwych*, *wylke*, *qwylke*, 31/6, 37/4, 59/2, 142/8, 173/8, 181/8, 210/1, etc. — *that*, *þat*, 1/1, 14/9, 668/4, etc. — *what*, 31/9, 106/11, 141/11, etc.

Among the interrogative pronouns we note e. g. *who*, 73/3, 96/4; *what*, 101/3; *whedder*, 935/2.

f) Indefinite Pronouns.

all : call : small : fall : ⌣, 105/8; : small, 443/11; etc.; gen. pl. *aller*, 384/2; *an oþer:* toþer : fo[ther]: brothyr, 86/2; : broþer, 734/10, etc.; *any*, *ony :* mony, 80; 44/12, 75/2, etc. ; *any thing*, 235/4; *aþer*, *ayder*, *ayther*, 82/5, 517/2, 623/7, 819/1, etc. ; *alkyn*, *alkyns*, 1118/2, 1407/2; *bath*, *both :* wrath : ⌣ : rath : scathe, 105/3; : wath : scath : wrath : ⌣, 349/7, etc.; *fele*, 'many' : wele, s. : hele, s. : dele, s., 561/4; : hele, s., 892/10, etc.; *fone*, *foyne*, 'few' : moyne, s. 'moan', 183/8; : done, p. p. : one : none, 390/2, etc.; *many*, *mony*, *mony a(n) :* any, 80; 21/5, 26/10, 77/4, 86/6, 204/2, etc.; *no(e)* 4/10, 20/4, 109/10, 134/4, etc.; *non(e) noyn(e) :* gone, p. p. : ylkon : ⌣ : alon, 25/5; : stone : tane : ⌣ : allon, 52/6, etc.; *no kyns*, *nokyns*, 114/10, 328/4, 938/4, 1096/1; *nothyng*, *no thyng els*, 38/3, 78/5, 145/9; *noyght*, *noyȝt*, 79/10, 356/7; *noþer* : brothyr, 109/10; 561/8, etc.; *no ma*, 83/7; *oght* [OE. *āwiht*] *:* toyȝt : vnsogh : wrogh : ⌣ : 4/8, etc. ; *oþer*, *oyder*, *the toþer :* brothyr, 72/9, 73/10; : an oþer : fo[ther] : brothyr, 86/4, etc.; *sere*, *seyr* [OScand. *sér*] : wer : cher : ȝer : ⌣, 21/7; : heyre, inf., 80/10, etc. ; *som*, *sum :* com : flome : ⌣: thrum, 237/5; : wysdum : flome : come, 433/2, etc.; *ylkon :* gone : ⌣ : none : alon, 25/3; : sloyn : tane : wone, 39/1; *ychon :* wone, 566/10; *ylka*, *ylke*, *ilka*, *euery ylkon*, *euerylka*, *yche*, 11, 18, 87, 119, 125, 173, etc.

The gen. form *aller* was used in all dialects down to 1600.

The pronoun *alkyn(s)* is from the OE. genitive phrase *alles cynnes*, which was placed before the noun on which it depended. In course

of time it became treated more or less as an adjective and finally reduced to *alkins*, *alkin*.

As to *fone*, *foyn* N. E. D. says that they seem to have arisen from the addition of *n* as a plural suffix to *fa* (northern) *fo* (northern and north-midland), which have the appearance of being from ON.

It is not evident from the rime *any : mony*, 80, whether the author used *o*- or *a*-forms of these pronouns. Cf. p. XXXVI.

§ 5. *Verbs.*

In the following short survey of the verbs, which cannot be exhaustive owing to want of space, we will begin with the personal endings and then give the formations of the different tenses, in both cases starting with the weak verbs. As in the preceding paragraph, so here also the material in the rimes will above all be adduced, but the riming-words will only be quoted when they are of special interest. In case of need forms within the line will be given and taken into consideration, and the dialectal point of view will be well borne in mind. No attempt will be made to explain the various forms or spellings.

A. Personal Endings.

1. *Present Indicative.*

Sg. 1st. Pers. : wene, 195/8; *tell*, 207/11; *warne*, 233/9; *lere*, 1448/5. — *fynd*, 24/9; *se*, 1099/2. — *watt*, 78/4; *sall*, 110/8. — *am*, 140/11.

There is no ending in this person in the author's language. In early Northern ME. the 1st. Pers. ended in *-e*, which was dropped in ordinary speech in the 13 th c., but could be retained later as an archaism in poetical works. There is no trace whatever of this *-e* in the rimes of our poem.

2nd. Pers. : wunes, 399/9; *has(e)*, 469/7; 1039/8; *mase*, 'make', 727/10; *schendes*, 744/4; *frayns*, 961/2; *dystroys : noyys*, 1496. — *lyse*, 534/8; *leys*, 818/5. — *dare*, 798/7; *wyll*, 812/9, 874/11; *sall*, 849/5. — *ys*, 'art', 565/9, 1303/11, etc.

The endings of the 2nd pers. were consequently *-s*, *-es*, *-ys*, whose unstressed vowel was always mute in the rimes. Within the line this vowel, however, was facultatively pronounced. In other Northern

texts the corresponding ending was *-es*, the *-e* of which was facultative, at least in those of the 14th cent. and later. The Preterite Present verbs had no ending.

3rd. Pers. : twyns, 190/9; *says*, 200/3; *menys*, 311/11; *wendes*, 334/10; *dwelles : mellys*, 381; *wenys*, 'thinks', 519/9; *tels*, 454/11; *has*, 461/2, 883/7, etc.; *bus*, 'behoves', 686/1; *cryse*, 818/1; *spredes*, 843/9; *as*, 'asks', 883/7; *dyse*, 'dies', 1217/3; *mase*, 'makes', 1225/5; etc. — *lys(e)*, 178/6, 354/10; *begynnys*, 190/11; *hynges*, 387/3; *gase*, 'goes', 926/8; *tas*, 'takes', 1172/7. — *may*, 5/2, 69/12, etc.; *can*, 116/10, etc.; *sall*, 133/8; *aw*, 'ought', 185/10; 425/3; *wate*, 1384/6. — *es*, 512/6, 928/6, etc.

This person has exactly the same ending as the 2nd person, viz. *-(e)s*. The Preterite Present had no ending.

The forms *as*, 'asks', *mase*, 'makes' and *tas*, 'takes' are typically Northern contractions. (Cf. NED.)

Pl. It is unnecessary to distinguish between the forms of the various persons, as they all end in *-(e)s* or else have no ending, e. g. : *foyn*, 3., 31/10; *spare*, 3., 37/11; *dwell*, 3., 55/9; *dwels*, 3., 78/7; *rayse*, 3., 99/9; *lyse*, 3. : wyse : enmys : seruyce, 153/6; *chyde*, 3., 366/3; *wonnes*, 3., 374/11; *lyfes*, 3., 483/9; *wendes*, 3., 716/11; *call*, 3., 915/7, etc. — *go*, 3., 48/7; *vp standes*, 3., 287/1; *flees*, 3., 434/3; *lyse*, 3., 691/5; *com*, 3., 822/7; *ta*, 3., 1133/7; *blaws*, 3., 1218/4, etc. — *wott*, 3., 34/10; *sall*, 3., 42/10; *cane*, 1., 110/1; etc. — *er(e)*, 3. 'are', 453/1, 755/8; *ys*, 3. : procese : wyldernese : lesse : ⌣, 542/7; *are*, 'are', : dere : spere : bere, inf., 582/2, etc.

The forms without ending are used when preceded by a personal pronoun; otherwise those ending in *-(e)s* occur. The same usage of the two different forms prevails in all Northern texts. Cf. MORSBACH, Me. Gr., p. 15.

2. *Preterite Indicative.*

A cursory glance at the various preterites indicative will show that in our text there are no personal or numeral endings whatever in this tense of strong or weak verbs, as is also the case in other Northern texts. It is not necessary to quote any instances; we can confine ourselves to stating the fact.

3. *Conjunctive.*

Both the present and preterite subj. tenses lacked endings in the poet's language, as is proved by the rimes. We find e. g. the follow-

ing forms: *wysch*, 3 sg., 4/1; *syne*, 3 pl., 56/9; *fyne*, 2 sg., 476/8; *avyse*, 3 sg., 534/6; *crafe*, 3 sg., 548/1; *found*, 2 sg., 606/4; *dwell*, 1 pl., 715/7; *dy*, 2 sg., 1141/10; etc. — *ban*, 2 sg., 206/5; *fare*, 2 sg., 486/11; *blyne*, 2 sg., 490/4; *gang*, 3 sg., 632/11; *go*, 2 sg., 676/11; *ete*, 3 sg., 1399/6, etc. — *be*, 2 sg., 19/3; 391/11, 969/8; etc.; *be*, 3 sg., 7/3; *be(e)*, pl. 38/4, 608/2, etc.

4. *Imperative.*

The forms occurring in the rimes are all in the singular form and lack endings, e. g. : *lede*, 35/3; *rays*, 52/9; *kare*, 576/1; *spare*, 1017/3. — *gyfe*, 819/11; *abyd*, 920/11; *wynke*, 945/2; *thraw*, 1327/11, etc. Within the line the plural form generally has the ending *-(e)s*, e. g. : *honowrs*, *kepes*, *coueyttes*, *trows*, 260, etc.

B. Formation of Tenses and Nominal Forms.

I. Weak Verbs.

1. Old English Verbs.

a) Infinitive. Class I : send, 1/9; *leere*, *leyre*, 2/11, 32/7, etc. ; *sprede*, 8/6; *bryng*, 8/11; *brede : fede*, 10; *lede*, 10/7, 12/2, etc.; *myse*, 10/10; *wende*, 11/4; *rede*, 12/6; *fyll*, 14/2; *hyd*, 18/1; *fele*, 'feel', 18/10; *dwell*, 36/1; *weld*, 43/8; *bylde*, 44/7; *fulfyll*, 52/10; *lend*, 54/2; *here*, 'hear', 40/3; *sell*, 68/2; *tell*, 68/12; *kepe*, 89/10; etc.

Class II: loke, 21/11; *wun*, 34/1; *wede*, 63/12; *wake*, 77/11; *warn*, 112/1; *crane*, 112/2; *cald*, 'to become cold', 117/5; *wysch*, 'teach' : genesis, 120/12; *hye*, 162/4; *ma*, 457/1; *make*, 167/1; *wake*, 167/7; *hate*, 171/3; *fownd*, 'try' :staned 238/11; *teld*, 'to pitch a tent', 252/4; *slake*, 442/3; *glad*, 1285/6; *daw*, inf., 1342/12; etc.

Class III : say, 91/7, 1087/10; *lyfe*, 353/12; *haue*, 92/9; 112/6; etc.

The second class, which in OE. ended in *-ian* < *ōjan*, lost its *-i-* in all ME. dialects, except in the South and Kent, and was thus merged in the verbs of Class I.

To indicate the infinitive the prepositions *to* and *at* were used, e. g. : *to bete*, 1024; *to hew*, but *at layn*, 1199; *at fang*, 1324, etc. The use of the latter, which is of Scand. origin, is characteristic of the Northern dialects (Cf. N. E. D. s. v. *At*). It still occurs in Northern English and Scotch dialects.

b) *Preterite Indicative. Class I : hent*, 60/11; *wentt*, 6/6; *sett*, 9/9; *ment*, 58/2; *sent*, 60/11; *lede*, 63/10; *toght*, 72/3; *leuyd*, 'left', 78/11; *betyd*, 93/3; *hyd*, 93/7; *ferd*, 113/12; *ȝemed*, 229/10; *last*, 282/5; *mett*, 117/11, 309/2; *grett*, 309/4; *lyst*, 310/1; *herd*, 348/9; *fede*, 351/10; *feled*, 'felt', 355/12; *spred*, 386/1; *send*, 406/6; *lernyd* : sword, 510/8; *dwellyd*, 458/9; *wened*, 498/4; *dyght*, 59/11; etc.

Class II: hyed : syd, 50/1; *lokyd*, 81/9; *made*, 216/3; *kneled*, 551/11; 806/1; *reued*, 563/9; *crauyd*, 3/10; *end*, 914/2; *thrett*, 1498/1, etc.

Class III : had(e), 305/7; 1020/3, etc.; *sayd*, 205/12, 598/3, etc.

c) *Past Participle. Class I: vnsogh : wrogh*, 4; *lent*, 6/4; *hyde*, 6/7; *sent*, 9/4; *mett*, 9/11; *dyght*, 9/12; *told*, 34/11; *tald*, 46/6; *went*, 'gone', 50/12; *Adrede*, 71/3; *fede*, 71/7, 151/10; *lede*, 151/12; *broȝt*, *broght*, 72/7, 92/8, etc.; *schentt*, 102/7; *herd*, 113/10; *hent*, 133/5; *layde*, 172/11; *flayde*, 205/10; *leued*, 'left', 216/9; *send*, 339/1; *hytt*, 294/12; *boyȝt*, 482/8; *spred*, 682/3; *pynd*, 1480/7; etc.

Class II: blest : lyst : myst : wyst : ⌣, 24/8; *weryd*, 118/9; *fett*, 331/6; *tened*, 366/10; *spayrd*, 482/11; *wede*, 1357/6; etc.

Class III: sayd, 59/10; etc.

As to the endings in pret. and pa. pple. of weak verbs (no matter of what descent) whose stems end in *d* or *t*, in a vowel or a diphthong or else otherwise see p. CXVI seq.

d) *Present Participle. Class I: dwelland*, 126/2; *weldand*, 881/7; *dredand*, 1319/10; *redand*, 1400/9; *lastand*, 1496/12; etc.

Class II: wonnand, 1026/6; *sorowand*, 1277/6; etc.

2. Old Scand. Verbs.

a) *Infinitive : neuyn*, 7/11, 42/12; *dy*, 32/2, 466/5; *gayn*, 'to be useful', 12/11; *kene*, 109/7; *tharn*, 112/7; *care* : fayre, 127/11; *fon*, 184/12; *rayse*, 200/1; *kest*, 337/2; *treyst*, 346/10; *slype*, 569/9; *lete*, 'behave', 1098/5; *lythe*, 'listen', 1490/10; etc.

b) *Preterite Indicative : kend*, 54/4; *kast*, 67/3; *cled*, 71/5; *dyed*, 89/7; *brent*, 165/3; *frayst*, 'tried', 717/11; *brast*, 880/6; etc.

c) *Past Participle : kend*, 11/2; *takyd*, 17/9; *callyd*, 31/11; *brentt*, 58/6; *grayd*, 67/10; *drownyd*, 154/11; *stede* : rade, 180/10, 896/2; *cast*, 983/2; *gert*, 996/12; etc.

3. *Old French Verbs.*

a) *Infinitive : tast*, 1/3; *aray*, 1/10; *restoyre*, 8/10; *attent*, 9/6; *Amend*, 11/6; *gyle*, 15/12; *apeyre*, 18/2; *passe*, 20/2; *repayre*, 29/2; *dystroye*, 29/11; *declare*, 37/9; *moue*, 75/5; *sayue*, 112/4; *proue*, 130/4; *greue*, 145/4; *avayle*, 220/1; *persew*, 244/4; *enquere*, 332/2; *deuyse*, 993/6; *abate*, 530/12; etc.

b) *Preterite Indicative : encressyd : sessyd*, 27; *cryde*, 50/7; *prayd*, 67/12; *mend*, 78/12; *ordand*, 108/5; *commawnd*, 164/5; *releued*, 198/9; *dyscend*, 222/3; *forfeytt*, 481/9; *assent*, 1042/3; *rest*, 1042/6; *aspyde*, 1352/12; *repent*, 183/1; *past*, 230/12; etc.

c) *Past Participle : sauyd*, 3/12; *blamyd : aschamyd*, 17; *refusyd : vsyd*, 25; *begylyd*, 44/5; *amend*, 54/6; *asent*, 58/4; *acord*, 63/9; *betrayd*, 74/7; *past*, 94/5; *refette*, 157/4; *greuede*, 198/11; *ascryde*, 227/3; etc.

d) *Present Participle : grochand*, 156/9, etc.; *soiornand*, 546/4; *praueland*, 622/6; *rennand*, 909/3; *cryand*, 1063/6, etc.

4. *OE. Strong or Reduplicating Verbs having become weak.*

Among those verbs which have passed over into the weak conjugation, we find the following in the rimes of our poem, viz. : *grouyd*, pt. [OE. *grōwan*], 4/10; *dred*, pt. [cf. OE. *ondrādan*], 995/3; *bette*, p. p., [f. OE. *bēatan*], 736/4; *brayd*, p. p., [f. OE. *breȝdan*], 74/3; *hett*, p. p., [f. OE. *hātan*], 429/5, 887/8; etc. Within the line we find e. g. : *fayrd*, pt. [f. OE. *faran*], 334/9; *chesed*, pt. [f. OE. *cēosan*], 581/2; *fled(e)*, pt. [f. OE. *flēon*], 274/3, 877/12; *fraynd*, pt. [f. OE. *freȝnan*], 468/10; *hewed*, pt. [OE. *hēawan*], 1054/7, 1463/6; *morned*, *mornyd*, *mourned* [f. OE. *murnan*], 21/3, 311/1, 625/1; *rede*, p. p. [f. OE. *rādan*], 732/1; *sleped*, pt. [f. OE. *slāpan*], 944/12; *syghtyd*, pt. [f. OE. *sīcan*), 614/1; *worthed*, pt. [f. OE. *weorðan*], 64/1, 486/4; etc. Side by side with these weak forms we find in some cases the corresponding original strong forms.

5. *ME. Verbs from various sources.*

ge(y)se, inf., 11 9, 156 4 [possibly MDu. *gessen*]; *found*, inf. 'find', 358/2; *swound*, pt., 358/4; *sper(re)d*, pt., 348/11, 697/1 [MLG. *speren*].

II. Strong Verbs.

In this section the verbs will not be divided up into native and foreign verbs, it being less convenient to treat the latter separately owing to their infrequent occurrence in the rimes. They will be placed together with the OE. verbs in the class to which they belonged in ME. and early Mod.E. In this section, too, will be found infinitives of such OE. verbs as have both weak and strong forms in the author's language. In a few cases new-formations of strong verbs are met with; these will be placed in that class to which the original verb belonged. No attempt to explain them has been made.

A. Infinitive.

Class I : byd, 'remain' : tyd, s. : glorefyd : ⌣ : hyde, p. p., 6; 18/5; *ryse*, 27/5, *vp ryse*, 23/10; *dryfe :* wyue, 54/11; *dryue :* by lyue: wyfe : ⌣ : stryve, 148/5; *smytte :* dyscumfette, 197/10; *stryfe* [OF. *estriver*], 250/7; *thryue* [OScand. *þrífask*], 274/5; *ryd*, 561/1; *ouer ryde*, 160/12, etc.

Within the line the following forms occur: *bytt*, 17/6, *stryke*, 159/7, *wrytt*, 192/11, etc.

Class II : chese, 13/11; *chesse*, 267/11; *flee*, 161/4, 213/12, 403/2; *lawt :* strowt, a. : ⌣ : withowt : abowt, 270/3; *brew*, 340/6; *bede*, 'offer', 425/6, 1423/4; *bede*, 'command', 652/10; *lese*, 'lose', 434/7; *ly*, 'to tell lies', 860/7; *hewe*, 1498/11.

Class III : wyn, 1/4; 17/4, etc.; *begyn*, 1/6, 17/2, etc.; *vp spryng*, 8/9; *blyne*, 17/6; *fynd*, 21/12; *thryng*, 104/6; *delue*, 121/10; *fyght*, 161/12; *bynd*, 209/2, 339/9; *syng*, 235/6; *ryne*, 337/7; *dyng* [OScand. *dengja*], 344/4; *hyng* [OScand. *hengja*], 421/8; *swelt*, 614/9; *run*, 'run', 1018/6, etc.

The form *ryne*, inf. 'run', seems to be chiefly Scotch and Northern, and the infinitive *hyng* is characteristic of Northern English. Cf. NED.

Class IV : beyre, 150/9; *for beyr*, 14/11; *come*, 36/10, 475/11; *schere*, 378/6; etc.

Class V : se, 2/7; *see*, 7/1; *eytt*, 'eat', 30/3; *ette*, 'eat', 379/4; *gette* [OScand. *geta*], 150/10, 379/6; *sytte*, 294/10; *sytt*, 356/6; *ly*, 'lie', 353/6, 653/8; *gyfe* [OScand. *gefa*], 353/10, etc.

Class VI : stand, 8/3; *vnderstand*, 28/1; *fare*, 49/2; *ta* [OScand. *taka*], 90/6, 543/8; *draw*, 94/12, 409/2; *forsake*, 211/11; *slo*, 278/3, 344/10,

436/6, 881/2; *slay : ta*, 543; *sla*, 904/5; *take*, 809/2, 1073/12; *swere*, 997/6; etc.

Class VII : hald, hold, 3/3, 46/2; *fald*, 3/7, 166/9; *knaw*, 3/9; *gang*, 22/8; *rede*, 'interpret', 107/5; *beheld*, 119/3; *ban*, 'curse', 236/8; *hone*, 288/2; *slepe*, 397/12; *wepe*, 817/3; etc.

B. Preterite Singular.

Class I : bad, 71/9, 1020/1, etc.; *strake*, 808/6.

Within the line: *rafe, rayue, rofe*, 1036/7, 1189/5, etc.; *rayd*, 1115/5; *rayse, rose*, 391/1, 397/7, 1408/11; *strake, stroke*, 159/11, 216/11, 1126/5; *wrott*, 22/11; etc.

Class II : ches, 124/9; *chese*, 214/3; *bede*, 'commanded', 166/6, 284/6; *beyd*, 'offered', 319/11; *rew*, 'rued', 773/3; etc.

Class III : be gan(e), 22/5, 46/12; *fand*, 28/7, 79/1; *wan*, 43/7, 81/5, 169/4; *ran(e)*, 81/7, 1017/2, 1063/5; *sprang(e)*, 117/12, 160/9; *brayde*, 357/10, 565/3; *dang*, 990/1; *hang*, 1020/1, 1250/1; *sang*, 1060/5; etc.

Class IV : come, 98/11; *bare*, 133/9, 390/12; *stale*, 'stole', 1250/9; etc.

Class V : lay, 53/1, 354/3, 363/8; *ette*, 'ate', 329/9; *spake*, 874/9, 919/9; etc.

Class VI : stud, 14/1, 234/8; *toke*, 21/9, 128/2; 335/5; *for suke*, 128/4; *sloght*, 280/10; *drogh*, 318/12, 488/8; *slew*, 1014/5; *foyre*, 1234/9; etc.

Class VII : fell, 36/7, 400/7, 404/11, 1082/1; *be fell*, 43/9; *hyȝt, hyght*, 52/3, 53/4; *beheld*, 57/1, 136/5; *crew*, 1342/5; *knew*, 128/1, 152/8, 412/5; *lete*, 'behaved', 130/9; *helt*, 293/1; *slepe*, 358/10; *red*, 'advised', 1157/3; etc.

Within the line : *blew*, 148/2; *wex*, 196/5, 612/5, 1134/2, etc.

C. Preterite Plural.

Class I : rode, 216/5; *abade*, 1068/11; *strake*, 1422/5.

In the body of the verse : *aboyde*, 276/9; *bott*, 199/4; etc.

Class II : chese, 435/8, 1419/8.

Class III : fand, 58/5, 118/2, 197/8, 665/11, 869/10, etc.; *began(e)*, 169/8, 1487; *wan*, 202/8, 990/11, 1229/6; *dang* (OScand.), 216/8; *band*, 670/2; *thrang*, 982/8; *brast* (OScand.), 1117/12, 1140/2; etc.

Class IV : come, 109/9, 1052/12, 1071/9; *stall*, 395/9; *bare*, 1115/9; etc.

Class V : wer(e), 14/9, 64/1, etc.; *was*, 37/10, 1106/4; *ware*, 49/6; *woyre*, *wore*, 84/12, 129/2, 191/8; *saw*, 432/9; *lay*, 462/2; *spake*, 854/2; etc.

Class VI : stud(e), 106/8, 716/4; *stod*, 406/3, 1054/7; *toke*, 168/9; *sloghe*, 272/11; *sloght*, 1448/10; *loghe*, 512/11; *vndertoke*, 637/12; *drogh*, 657/11; etc.

Class VII : fell, 6/11; *knew*, 29/1, 979/7; *sew*, 29/6; *be held*, 134/5, 409/7; *bett*, 1156/7; etc.

A comparison between the forms in the last two sections will prove that the strong preterite sg. and pl. had been levelled under one form in the author's language, viz. that of the preterite sg., as is the case in the Northern dialect in ME.

D. Past Participle.

Class I : slytt, 563/8.

Class II : kawn (OE. *cowen*), 3/8; *lorne*, 76/2; etc.

Class III : fun(e), 34/5, 35/2; *be gun(e)*, 35/8, 72/8, 88/6, etc.; *fon*, 62/10, 441/1; *wun*, 72/2; *wonn*, 127/5; *run*, 965/8; *bun*, 269/8; etc.

Class IV : borne, 54/5, 76/5, etc.; *brokyn*, 1217; *sworn*, 245/1; *schorne*, 398/2; *forborn(e)*, 350/7, 572/12; etc.

Class V : sen, 16/3; *etyn : gettyn*, 1077; *spokyn*, 1217; etc.

Class VI : drawn, 3/2; *with drawn*, 1149/3; *sloyn(e)*, 39/3, 405/1; *lone*, 48/10, 403/11; *slayn*, 51/7, 404/11; *tane*, 52/4, 651/1; *farn*, 112/3; *takyn : for sakyn*, 402, 431; *mystakyn*, 448/9; etc.

Class VII : knawn(e), 3/6, 79/12; *heght*, 60/7; *heyght*, 138/11; *sawn*, 262/8, 1149/7; *rede*, 386/5; etc.

E. Present Participle.

The verbs need not here be divided up into classes. : *ligand*, 79 7; *byrnand*, 137/11; *fleand*, 149/1, 775/3; *fulland*, 660/4; *rynnand*, 1049/3; *wepand*, 1143/8; *slepand*, 1343/6; etc.

III. Minor Groups.

Instances of the present tense of verbs belonging here, viz. *preterite-present* and *mi*-verbs, have already been given on p. CXLIII seq. We shall therefore confine ourselves to dealing with illustrative forms in the preterite tense. From among these the following may be adduced.

A. Preterite-present Verbs.

wyst, 24/4, 470/4, 1247/5; *myȝt*, 295/8, 673/2; *moyght*, 345/6; *moght*, 544/4; *cowde*, 352/9; *cowth*, 1232/7; etc.

B. Verbs in -mi.

dyd, 22/11; *wald*, 31/9; 733/2; *wold*, 1078/6; *wyld*, 144/10; 1017/9; *ȝede*, *ȝode*, 97/9, 263/6, 313/5, 582/7; etc.

CHAPTER V

DIALECT AND DATE OF THE ORIGINAL

The question as to the dialect and date of the original has naturally interested all those who have hitherto dealt with the poem, and has long ago been summarily answered. Already HORSTMAN, Altengl. Legenden, N. F. p. LXL, has pointed out that the poem seems to belong to the North-Western or Northern dialect. HEUSER, Anglia 31, is apparently of the same opinion: he says, »Es (i. e. the original) wird einen ziemlich nördlichen Charakter getragen haben, jedenfalls viel mehr als beide hss., die — zumal das Bodl. MS. — wohl einen starken nördlichen anflug haben, aber doch nicht eigentlich nordenglisch sind.» And finally WELLS, op. cit. shares this view, saying that »the work is probably of 1350—1400 and was originally Northerly». These conclusions, no doubt founded on a superficial examination of the MSS., certainly contain a good deal of truth, but they can by no means be regarded as satisfactory. In this chapter we will sum up the results of the preceding detailed investigation and thus make an attempt at solving the dialectal and chronological problems.

A. The Dialect of the Original

In dealing with this question, the ordinary dialect tests put forward esp. by Morsbach, Kaluza, Luick will be applied and the whole problem taken under consideration from the point of view of the Vocalism, Consonantism, Accidence, and Vocabulary. It is evident that the rimes afford the best material, and they will therefore be adduced first.

§ 1 *The Vocalism.*

Let us state to begin with that in our text OE. *y* has been delabialized into *i*, that the OE. prefix *ȝe-* has been dropped (except in *enogh*), and that OE. *ā* before a single nasal or non-lengthening nasals always appears as *ā*, except in the pronouns *mony, ony*, which sometimes.

and the prep. *on*, which always, appears with *o* in our text as well as in the Northern dialect in general. In addition to these features we may adduce the following characteristics.

1. OE. *ā* has now been retained, now given as *o* in the riming words of our text. Apart from some of these words, only appearing in *a*-rimes, viz. *abade*, s., *abad*, pt., *bad*, s., *brad*, a., *gast*, s., *hale*, a., *lath*, a., *mast*, superl., *rade*, pt., *rare*, vb., *slay*, inf., *slayne*, p. p., *strake*, pt., *whare*, adv., most of them are rimed with both *o*- and *a*-forms. Of these forms the former preponderate in the actual versions of the MSS., but in the original the converse was most likely the case (cf. p. XLVII). The OE. phoneme *ald* mostly occurs in *a*-rimes in our text. This existence of *o*- and *a*-rimes side by side is no doubt to be explained with LUICK, HGE., § 369 Anm. 2, partly as a literary mixture of different dialectal forms, partly as evidence of influence from the incipient Standard English . He says, »Mischung von *a*- und *o*-Reimen zeigt auch eine Reihe nicht durch äussere Kriterien lokalisierbarer Denkmäler des 14. und namentlich des 15. Jahrhunderts, deren sonstige sprachliche Merkmale auf das nördliche Mittelland oder angrenzende Teile des Nordens weisen. Zumeist wird nur literarische Mischung verschiedener Dialektformen vorliegen, namentlich sind die nordenglischen Dichter des 15. Jahrhunderts von der beginnenden Gemeinsprache beeinflusst. Aber auch das umgekehrte scheint stattgehabt zu haben (Morsbach s. 187).» In the present case the *a*-rimes are too many to allow us to assume that they are loans from the Northern dialect in a text belonging to the Southumbrian territory.

2. OE. *ō* occurs in rimes containing *ǭ* only, including such an *ǭ* as originated from OE. *ā* and never, like OE. *ō*, in the Northumbrian passed into an *ü*-sound. OE. *ō* is rimed with *ü* of AN. or OF. descent in several Northern texts but not in our poem. We may therefore be sure that OE. *ō* remained intact in the author's language and that the frequent spelling with *u* instead of *o* occuring in MS. **S**, e. g. *flude*, 'flood', 124, *fude*, 'food', 14, etc., *gud*, 'good', 14, etc., should be put down to a scribe. This fact need not point to a Southumbrian origin of the poem. For OE. *ō* was retained also in some parts of the North, viz. South Cumberland, Lancashire, and the South Western and Southern parts of Yorkshire. Cf. LUICK, HGE, § 406, Anm. 2.

3. OE. *a* before the lengthening nasal combinations *nd*, *ng* always appears as *a* in rime in our text. Cf. p. LV seq., LVII seq. The

consistent use of *a* in this position should be apprehended as a characteristic of the Northumbrian.

4. OE. *ĭ*, *ŭ* in an open syllable appear in our text as *ē*, *ō*, in some cases evidenced by rime. Cf. p. LXVI, LXXVI, XCII. There are also several examples outside the rime, e. g. *mekil*, *wemen*, *evil*, etc. This phonetic change is met with in the Northumbrian and the adjoining northern districts of Midland. Cf. LUICK, HEG. § 393.

5. *ME. ǫu* has given *au* in a few words in our poem, i. e. OE. *cowrn*, pa. pple., appears once in an *au*-rime, 3/8, and in the body of the verse OE. *fōwer*, 'four', several times appears as *faur(e)*, and OE. *fēowertiȝ*, 'fourty', as *faurty*. According to LUICK, HGE. § 408, the change of *ǫu* into *au* took place in Kent, in a small area of North-West Midland, and perhaps in the adjoining North.

6. ME. *ai*, *oi* under stress have in our poem sometimes been monophthongized into *ā*, *ō*, evidenced by rime and also by some writings in the body of the verse, e. g. *voce*, 'voice'. Cf. p. LIII, XCVI. In LUICK's opinion (HGE. § 434) this change is characteristic of Scotch, perhaps also of Northern English in some districts, maybe Yorkshire. We may here anticipate the result of our investigation and maintain that the phonetic change actually occurred in the West Riding of Yorkshire, since it is met with in our poem.

7. ME. *ai* under loss of stress appears in French loan-words as *ā* in several cases evidenced by rime or else occurring in the body of the verse. Cf. p. LXXXVIII. This took place within a small area especially in the North. See LUICK, HGE. § 464:4.

8. The early ME. phoneme *-ēh* appears in our text as *-ēh* (spelt *-egh*), later as *-e*. This is proved by one rime and several forms in the body of the verse. Cf. p. LXI and CXXX seq. The development is pre-eminently characteristic of the language north of the Humber. Cf. p. CXXXI.

9. The early ME. phoneme *ŏh* generally appears in our text without a parasitic *u*. Cf. pp. XLVI and XCI. This is a characteristic of the language north of the Humber. Cf. LUICK, HGE. § 403.

10. ME. *ĕ* between *ȝ* or *g* and a dental consonant appears in the poem as *i*, evidenced by rime (in point of *togither* and *yit*). Cf. p. XLV. This development is met with in the North and the East of England. The same development has taken place when *e* is surrounded by *r* and a dental, but only in the North and in the South East. From

our text we can adduce from outside the rime e. g. *pristys* 162/7. Cf. Luick, HGE. § 379.

11. ME. *dele*, inf. 'to deal', appears in our text with a long open $\bar{e}$, whereas the corresponding sb. *dele* has a long close $\bar{e}$. The same is the case with the Cursor Mundi, a typical specimen of Northern English. Cf. p. lxxviii.

12 ME. unstressed *e* in a post-tonic syllable ending in a consonant appears in the poem very often as *y* (*i*) in the orthography, and under stress it is riming with *i*. Cf. p. cxxi. This spelling is more common north of the Humber than south of that river. Cf. Luick, HGE. § 460.

13. Unstressed final *e* in dissyllabic words has in our text disappeared altogether, only occasionally remaining as a poetical archaism. Cf. p. cxii. North of the Humber this dropping took place in the first half of the 13th c., but in the Southumbrian the process was not accomplished until the end of the 14th c. Cf. Luick, HGE. § 473. When in our text as well as in the Cursor Mundi we find OE. *etan* 'to eat' and OScand. *geta* 'to get' not only with a long open *e* but also with a short *e*, the latter fact should be ascribed to the early loss of final *e* in the Northumbrian. Cf. p. lxxx.

14. ME. unstressed *e* (*y*) in a post-tonic syllable ending in a consonant is comparatively seldom pronounced in our text. In this particular the Northern dialect was undoubtedly more advanced than the Southumbrian idiom. Cf. p. cxx.

§ 2. *The Consonantism.*

As to consonantal features of dialectal interest the following may be adduced:

1. OE. *palatalized c* is a stopped consonant in rimes in our text. See p. cxxxviii. This phonetic state of things is presented by the Northumbrian and the adjoining districts of North Midland.

2. OE. *sc* in *sceal*, *sceolde* appears as *s* in the original. Cf. p. cxxviii. This is a characteristic of the Northumbrian but does not seem to be entirely foreign to literary documents from North Midland.

3. OE. *-hþ* appears as *-ht* in the poem. Cf. p. cxxix. The latter form is considered to be predominant in the North.

4. OE. *hw-* often appears as *qu*, *qw* is MS. **S.** Cf. p. CXXXI. This spelling is chiefly Northern but is also met with in the Midland dialect.

5. The ME. ending *-aunt*, *-ant* of French descent often occurs as *-and* in our poem . This use seems to be common chiefly north of the Humber. Cf. p. CXXXI.

6. Dropping of ME. *final -d* after *-n* has in some cases taken place in the author's language. This, too, seems to be a Northumbrian characteristic. Cf. p. CXXXII seq.

7. The OE. strong pa. pple. ending *-en* has in the poem generally been retained, a characteristic of the North and North Midland.

§ 3. *Accidence.*

1. There is practically only one declension of substantives in the poem, viz. that of the strong substatives ending in *-s* or *-es*. Of the OE. weak declensions only very few remnants are left.

2. There are hardly any traces left of the OE. adjective declension.

3. The 3. fem. sg. of the pers. pron. is always *scho(e)*, *sho*. The 3. pl. of the same pronoun has the following forms: Nom. *þei*, *þai* and *þe*; Acc. and Dat. *þem*, *þam;* Gen. *þe(i)r*, *þa(i)r*. No pers. pron. in *h-* are met with in the plural.

4. The plural of the demonstrative pronoun *þis* is mostly *þies*, *thies þis*, *þer*, rarely *þire*. The plural of the definite article is still retained as *þo* .

5. Verbum substantivum has in pres. ind. *es*, sing. and *ere*, plur., both of Scand. origin and evidenced by rime.

6. The endings of the pres. ind. are: Sg. 1. —
2. *-(e)s*.
3. *-(e)s*

The plural either ends in *-(e)s* or has no ending after a pers. pron.

7. The pret. ind. of strong verbs has no endings.

8. The pret. sg. and pl. of strong verbs have been levelled under one form, viz. that of the singular.

9. The pres. part. ends in *-and*.

At least half of these features are characteristic both of the Northumbrian and the Midland idiom. Note, however, especially the pro-

nouns *sho* and the plural forms of *þis*, the plural *þo* of the definite article, the present forms *es*, *ere* of verbum substantivum, and the levelling of the strong preterites under the singular form. These features seem to be more particularly Northern.

§ 4. *Vocabulary.*

Already in a preceding chapter it has been pointed out that MS. **S** contains several original words, chiefly of Scandinavian descent, which are met with in the Northern dialect, but which seem to have been foreign to some scribe of MS. **L.** The occurrence of these words may therefore be regarded as more or less characteristic of this dialect. In the following paragraph a list of such words will be given. They are chiefly, but not exclusively, found in the Northern dialect. For it is very rarely that a word is restricted in its use to a certain dialectal area and not also found in adjoining districts. The words are as a rule drawn from within the line, and when not occurring in rimes, their originality is proved by alliteration and by comparison with the vocabulary of other Northern texts. The list is by no means complete, but long enough to give an idea of the Northerly character of the author's vocabulary. The Scand. loan-words are marked by an asterisk.

**at*, 'that'; *beld*, 'to protect, shelter', 43; **brokyd*, 'variegated', 81; *be done*, 'together', 115; *breme*, 'fierce', 333; *barn teme*, 859; *blake*, 'pale, wan', 934; *bade*, s., 'delay', 1288; **carpyd*, 'talked', 115; *dre(gh)*, s. 'grief, trouble', 488, 1207; **fon*, a. 'foolish, silly', 62; **fone*, 'not many', 131; **flytted*, 'removed', 173; **frayst*, 'to try, to put to the test', 335; *by* **fyrth and* **fell*, 580, 591, 738; **formeld*, 637; *fay*, a. 'dying', 690; **fere*, 'in health'; **gaynyst*, superl. 'nearest, straightest'; **gar*, 'make, cause', 184; **grayd*, 'prepare', 67, 211; **helsyd*, 'greet, salute'; **hething*, 'scoffing', 101; **hyng*, 'to hang', 104; *hone*, s. 'delay'; **kast*, 31; **layn*, inf. 'to conceal, to hide', 187; **late*, 'look, appearance', 1038; **layte*, vb. 'to look for', 1126; **lythe*, inf. 'hearken, listen', 1490; **menske*, 'to adorn, render graceful', 533, 658; **make*, s. 'equal, peer, match', 803; *mese*, 'to mitigate', 1309; **nawte*, 'cattle, oxe ; **rade*, 'frightened'; **ruged*, 'pulled forcibly', 328; **stegh*, 'ladder', 76; *sprang*, s. 'streak, ray'; **sleghly*, 155; *spyre*, inf. 'ask', 194, 225; *soke*, 'ploughshare'; **skyll*, s.; **sytte*, s., 'sorrow, grief', 459; **skelp*, 'blow', 602; **skele*, s. 'a woo-

den bucket': *serk*, 965; **staker*, 'stagger', 878; **spened*, pt. 'grasped a spear', 982; **skyft*, 'shift', 1192; **scarth*, 'fragment, sherd', 1196; **tharn*, 'to lose', 112; **tang*, 'tongue of a serpent', 199; **tome*, s. 'case, leisure', 560; **tyne*, 'to lose', 1278; **wath*, s. 'peril', 58; **warre*, comp. 'worse' 132; **waytte*, a. wet, 285.

It is an easy matter to draw the conclusions of the results of our dialectal examination. For all these results point towards the same dialectal area, some exclusively and some non-exclusively. This area, then is the territory north of the Humber, more particularily the district of the Northern dialect since the linguistic aspect of the original is destitute of pre-eminently Scotch peculiarities. Thus we can state unhesitatingly that our poem was written in the Northern idiom. Two dialect tests should be especially noted as they seem to enable us to locate the poem more precisely. In the first paragraph we have seen that, in the author's dialect, OE. *ā* is preserved and does not become *ü* or *ö*, and that ME. *ǫu* has sometimes passed into *au*. These two facts, which, inter alia, characterize the southern border of the Northern dialect, make it highly probable that the poem was written in the county of Yorkshire and more particularily in the West Riding.

B. The Date of the Original.

There is no exterior criterion for the date of the poem. This will therefore have to be approximately fixed with the help of the vaguer evidence which considerations of language and literary influence may give. Wells, op. cit. p. 398, has suggested 1350—1400 as the probable limits within which the poet wrote his paraphrase. He is, however, hardly right in assuming 1350 as the one limit, as the terminus a quo, for the date. It must be admitted that this date, as the earliest possible is corroborated by a fairly strong piece of evidence. As we shall see later on, the poem has been influenced by some of the York Plays. Now these plays have been dated as far back as 1340 or 1350, so our poem must be assigned to some time after 1350. But on the other hand we have also seen (p. cxxx seq.) that, in the author's language, the ME. phoneme *-ēh* has become long close *e*. Now rimes with forms containing this *e* occur towards the end of the 14th cent. Luick, Unters., p. 90, says, »Um ungefähr dieselbe Zeit, zu Ende des 14. Jahrhunderts, erscheinen auch solche — i. e. in *ē* < OE. *ēo* , *h* — Reime in Nordengland und dem angrenzenden Mittelland, wie in Thomas of Erceldoun (Brandl Erc. 59 f.),

der Benedictiner-Regel (*ee* : *se* 420), Perceval (*eghe* : *slee* : *flee*, 691), den Towneley-Spielen (Brandl a. a. O.) und anderen Denkmälern (vgl. Köster QF. 76 S. 52), und dem entsprechend die Schreibung mit einfachem *e(e)*,» Therefore the loss of *h* in this position seems to have taken place in the latter half of the 14th cent. On the strength of this evidence we should fix a year between 1350—1400, say 1375, as the earliest possible date for the poem. About the same terminus a quo is suggested by another phonetic change, i. e. the monophthongization of *ai*, *oi* (*ui*) into $\bar{a}$, $\bar{o}$ ($\bar{u}$) recorded in point of the Scotch dialect since Barbour (1375) and evidenced in rime also in our demonstrably Northern text. Finally we can adduce the testimony of the French loan-words. As shown above (p. CXXVII), these are in by far the most cases stressed on the first syllable so that it is evident that the author's French vocabulary had adopted the Germanic stress-principle. This fact points to a rather late date and gives us the end of the 14th cent. as a terminus a quo for the composition of the paraphrase. As a terminus ad quem we may take the year 1440, i. e. a time before the incipient appearence of the phonetic changes which characterize the 2nd half of the 15th and the course of the 16th century. We can therefore say that the author wrote his poem between the end of the 14th cent. and a little before the middle of the following cent. But since the two extant MSS. present a rather late stage in the development of the MSS., some time must have elapsed between the date of the original and the date of the MSS. Moreover, we never find in our text that words like *cite*, which in the 15th c. were rimed now with $\bar{e}$, now with $\bar{i}$ (the later sound), are rimed with $\bar{i}$. (Cf. LUICK HGE. p. 533). Therefore, we no doubt come nearer the truth in saying that the poem was written about 1400 or 1410 rather than towards the middle of the 15th cent.

CHAPTER VI

THE DIALECTS OF THE MSS

In the preceding chapter we have proved that the poem was originally written in the Northern dialect. Let us now turn to the question as to the dialect of each of the MSS. In investigating and locating this, the usual tests will be applied. We do not aim at a complete and exhaustive examination. We have only made an attempt at outlining and defining the dialectal features which should be attributed to the copyists, and which have accumulated in the development of the MSS. In other words we will try — so to speak — to peel off that layer of late sounds, forms, and words which has been superimposed on the original poem, and which does not belong to the author himself, and to give a brief account of them.

A. MS. Selden Supra 52.

An examination of the language in **S** will show that the divergencies between the author's dialect and that of MS. **S** are not so great as in the case of **L**. MS. **S** is a late MS., later than **L** and therefore more influenced by the spreading London literary language and the incipient New English type. Now and then the purely dialectal influence and that of the beginning Standard English coincide, and it is then impossible to keep the two kinds of influence apart. When there is no coincidence, the dialectal point of view only will be born in mind. The material will be drawn chiefly from those rimes in which the original forms and words have been altered, and where thus the difference between the author's language and the dialect of MS. **S** comes to light clearly. Sometimes the body of the verse will afford examples.

1. In original *ā*-rimes early ME. *ā* oî various sources appears in several cases (about 30 %) as *ō*. The following examples may be given : *home*, s. : abraham, 53; *whom*, pron. : am, pr., 140; *go*, inf. :

þai : sara : twa : ⌣, 48; *wott*, pr. : debat : state : latt : ⌣, 66; *hole*, a. : tayle : ⌣ : dale : vayle, 200; *foyse*, s. pl. 'enemies' : grace : space : pase : ⌣, 248; *two* : Debora, 281; *fro*, prep. : twa : ⌣ : Tanna : Sarra, 310; *wo*, s. : Fenenna, 390; *mo*, a. : fra : Cissylla : two, 688; *rode*, pt. : made, 1345; etc., etc.

Within the line we find both *o* and *a* for early ME. *a*.

2. OE. *a*, *ea* before *-ld* has in original *a*-rimes in a great many cases (about 50 %) given *o* : *bold*, a. : cald, 171; *told*, inf. : *sold*, p. p.: cald : *bold*, 117; *bold*, a. *sold*, pt. : *old*, a. : cald, p. p., 413; *told*, p. p.: cald : hald : fald, 3; etc. In the body of the verse the *o*-forms seem to preponderate.

The increase of $\bar{o}$-forms, whether before *ld* or not, is indicative of Southumbrian influence.

3. In apparent *o*-rimes we occasionally come across words containing *a*, e. g. : *ware* : before : more : þore : ⌣, 191; *mayre* : were : ⌣ : beforne : þore, 232; *ware* : be fore : ⌣ : þor : more, 507; *ware* : be fore : more : store, 590; *mare* : *ware* : before : ⌣ : store, 599; *layre* : more : sore : þerfore, 995. These *a*-forms are best explained as being due to a scribe whose dialect was more Northerly than the author's own, perhaps Scotch. In view of other traces of Scotch influence the latter suggestion is highly probable.

4. OE. *a before a lengthening nasal combination* appears in very few cases as *o*. In apparent *a*-rimes the following *o*-forms are met with : *emong*, prep. : lang, 4; *strong* : gang : ⌣ : long : a mang ,178; 672; *song*,s. : strang, 233, etc. Rarely we come across *o* in a similar position within the line. In the forms *schonged* and *donger* *o* is of a different origin.

5. OE. *a* before *n* has in the following apparent *a*-rimes given *o* : *mony*, pron. : any, 80; *con*, pr. : woman : wan : began, 1022. This proves that the author's forms were or, at least, could be *many*, *any*, and *can*, which also occur in **L**, in several cases corresponding to an *o*-form in **S**. And when we consider the two *o*-forms above and meet with a greater percentage of forms with *o* than with *a* within the line in **S**, it is tempting to presuppose influence from a Midland dialect. But it is not necessary, since also in the Northern and Scotch dialects *many* and *mony*, *any* and *ony*, *can* and *con* interchange. This point may, however, be mentioned here as a possible, though not very certain, additional proof of West Midland or else Scotch influence.

6. OE. *myrgð*, 'mirth', which generally appears as *myrth* in MS.

S has in one unique case given *murth*, 990. This points to West Midland influence.

7. Although ME. *ou* occurs in an undoubted *au*-rime, 3/8, and thus a sound-change *ou* > *au* is proved to have taken place in the author's dialect, yet the rime *faurth* : *erthe* shows perhaps that *ferthe* not *faurth* was the usual form. In this case the diphthong *au* of the numeral is evidently due to the influence of some scribe. This may also be true of the following forms: *faurt*, *fawrt*, 831, 1448; *fawre*, 543; *fawrty*, 'forty', 1140, 1421, found within the line alongside with forms containing *ou*, which preponderate. The relation between the author's and the scribe's diphthong *au* should be viewed in the light of LUICK's statement, HGE., p. 434," Der entsprechende Wandel von *ou* zu *au* nimmt geringeren Raum ein. Er ist vor allem deutlich vollzogen im Kentischen des 14. Jahrhunderts: — Ausserdem hat es im nordvestlichen Mittellande und vielleicht dem angrenzenden Norden ein kleines Gebiet dieses Wandels gegeben, dessen Ergebnis in Handschriften aus diesen Gegenden gelegentlich neben *ou* auftaucht.» We may therefore perhaps look upon the forms with *au* which occur within the line as a proof of North-West Midland influence.

8. For early ME. *e* in unstressed final syllables *u* occurs in a slight percentage, e. g.: *doyghturs*, 50; *brothur*, 62; *hungur*, 107; *fyngurs*, 143; *enturd*, 235, 266, 309; *torfurs*, 314; *balturd*, 367, etc., etc. In all these words the endings are written out fully; but in the following instances they are expanded marks of abbreviation : *watur*, 7, 10, 26; *aftur*, 11, 38; *systur*, 53; *wyntur*, 107; *lengur*, 123; *bettur*, 127; *horssus*, 161; *maystur*, 250; *swettur*, 331, etc., etc. The commonest endings in **S**, are, as we have seen, *-er*, *-es*, *-ed*, or *-ys*, *-yd*, which latter should be apprehended as Northern. This spelling of the unstressed vowel with *u* chiefly before *r* no doubt points to West-Midland influence on MS. **S**. Cf. MORSBACH, Me. Gr., § 7 Anm.

9. For OE. *-ng*, chiefly in an unstressed position, *-n* only appears in a few cases: *werkyns*, 37; *felyn*, 72; *bryn*, 'bring', 132; *abydyn*, 'abiding', 235; etc. According to W. HORN (Beitr. zur Gesch. der engl. Gutturallaute, 1901 p. 47) *-in* for *-ing* is met with already in Barbour's Bruce riming with *-in*, and also in the Norfolk Guilds of 1389, whereas in the South (the London dialect) this change seems to be later.

10. Early ME. final *s* has in some words passed into *ſ*, written

sch. We find e. g. *relesch*, 'release' : sesse : chese : ⌣ : pece, 489; *wysch*, inf. [OE. *wissian*] 'to teach, show, direct', 422, 667, *wysched*, pt. 'taught', 286, 601; etc. About this sound-change, which is dialectal, EDG. (p. 245) says, »*s* has become *ʃ* in *kraʃ*, *kreʃ* 'cress' sSc. s. Durh. m. Cum. Yks. em. Lan.; this change of *s* to *ʃ* is very common in the s. Sc. dialects, especially after *l*, *n*, *r*.»

11. OE. *ht* appears as *t*(*t*) in a few isolated cases, e. g. *wrott*, 'wrought', 193; *knyt*, s. 'knight', 234; etc. This spelling with *t*(*t*) no doubt indicates that the spirant was already dropped as in the corresponding Mod. E. forms. Cf. Wild, Chaucer Handschriften, p. 16. This feature did not belong to the language north of the Humber. »In nördlichen denkmälern des 15. jahrhunderts,» says Dibelius in Anglia xxiii, 466, »sind für das schwinden des inlautenden gutturals beweisende reime überhaupt nicht».

12. The OE. explosive *t* is dropped in a great many words, especially after the guttural *χ*, e. g. : *vnsogh*, p. p., 4; *wrogh*, p. p., 4; *ryghwyse*, 'righteous', 8, 131; *hygh*, s., 46; *brogh*, p. p. 73; *noygh*, 'nought', 79; *brygh*, a., 84; *fyghand*, pr. pple., 170; *feyghyng*, *feghyng*, 'fighting', 273, 343, 465; *myghis*, s. pl. 'might', 354; *mogh*, pt., 370, 382; *ogh*, 'ought', 381; *flygh*, s., 402; etc. Conversely we sometimes meet with the addition of *-t* to *-gh*, used as an inverted spelling for *χ*, e. g. : *Thurghtowt*, 154; *heghtest*, a. 'highest', 207; *sloght*, pt. 'slew', 213, 280, 513 etc.; *ploght*, s.: sloght, pt., 280; *enoght*, 'enough', 322; etc. A similar loss and addition of *t* is also found in Douglas, in whose works forms like *contrak* : mak, *effek* : brek and *aneucht* (OE. *ʒenōh*), *dreucht* (OE. *drōʒ*) not infrequently occur. It is therefore quite likely that the forms given above should be assigned to Scotch influence on MS. **S**.

13. The most striking feature in the spellings of the various vowels is the frequent use of *y* or *i*, mostly after long vowels, but sometimes also after short vowels. Thus we find that the long vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, and *o* are often written *ay*, *ey*, *yy*, and *oy*, and that the short sounds *a*, *e*, and *o* are occasionally spelt *ay*, *ey*, and *oy*. And conversely we find that the diphthong *ai*, *ay* is often written *a*, which, however, may imply a real monophthongization. The usage of *i*(*y*) as a mark of lengthening is chiefly characteristic of the Northern dialects. It is explained by Luick, HGE., § 434. In dealing with the disappearance of the *i*-diphthongs in the Northern dialect in the course of the 14th cent. he says, »Die Schreibung machte einen Ansatz, diesem Wandel nachzukommen,

also das *i* (*y*) wegzulassen, aber zumeist wurde das überlieferte Schriftbild doch weitergeführt und das *i* (*y*) bekam den Charakter eines Dehnungszeichen, das man nun auch den einfachen Vokalen anfügte, um ihre Länge anzudeuten: es wurden Ansätze weitergeführt, die in nördlichen Texten schon früher hervorgetreten waren». We cannot exactly know the orthography of the original. But at least in point of the rimes, it is very likely that the author did not use diphthongal writings. These should therefore be attributed to a scribe of Northern or Scotch descent.

14. The diphthongization of the long vowels *i* and *u* seems to have begun in the language of some scribe already. This is indicated by the spellings *ey* and *aw* in words like *feyn*, inf. [OF. *finir*], 362; *leys*, pr. 'lies', 818; *sawre*, a. [OE. *sūr*], 929; *lawt*, inf. [OE. *lūtan*], 270, 1124, etc. Cf. Zachrisson, Pronunciation of English Vowels 1400—1700, p. 90 and Wyld, op. cit., pp. 223 and 230.

15. The consonant *t* is written *th* in the following cases: *then*, 'ten', 27, 163; *Tho*, 'two', 31; *thythand*, 'tidings', 182; *eth*(*e*), 'eat', 14, 17; *throly*, 'truly', 218; *thresour*, 'treasure', 267; *thourys*, 'towers, 308; *both*, 'but', 450; *noyȝth*, 'not', 524; etc. The writing of *th* for etymological *t* seems to be quite common in the 15th cent. MSS. Wyld, op. cit., gives an account of this spelling and is inclined to assign it to the influence of Anglo-Norman scribes, thus adopting the same view as Zachrisson, Contributions to the study of Anglo-Norman influence on English placenames. With regard to this spelling in the Chaucer MS. Gg. IV, 27, 'written mainly in one hand of the early xv. century,» Wild says, (op. cit. p. 16.) »Dieses MS. weist besonders viele anglofranzösische Schreibungen auf», and refers to Luhmann, Die Überlieferung von Laȝamon's Brut p. 22 ff.

16. The ME. voiced spirant *þ* is written *gh* in *cough* [OE. *cūðe*], 732; *cloghes*, *cloghys*, 'clothes', 244, 284, 323, 670, 779, 1034, 1049, etc.; *cloghyng*, 'clothing', 158, 183, etc; a unique form *tyghynges* [OScand. *tíðindi*] is found in 90. Side by side with these forms we find such as *cloyȝt*, 563; *cloght*, 967.

In the Paston Letters we come across *haghe* for *hath*, pr., in a letter dated Aug. 21, 1450. This writing does not reflect a sound- change but seems to be connected with the gradual disappearance or change of *h* in final position or before *t* (cf. the writing *th* for *gh*).

17. The *personal endings* of the *pres. ind.* differ from those of the

original poem and show Midland forms in the following cases : *hath*, 1 sg., 18, 921; *comest*, 2 sg., 1020; *hath*, 2 sg., 72, 141, 707, 1508; *hath*, 3 sg. [: was], 73; 28, 58, etc. The form *hath*, 3 sg., is very common. The plural occasionally ends in *-n* : *ben*, 2; *knawn*, 30; *comyn*, 1083, or in *-th* : *hath*, 103, 269, etc. This points to Southumbrian influence.

18. The *present participle* ends in *-yng* in a few cases: *mornyng*, 15, *gedderyng* (**L** *gedirand*), 378, *schynyng* (**L** *shynnand*), 479, *feyghyng* (**L** *fyghten*), 772, *connyng* (*cunnand*), 1269, *maynteinyng*, 1271, *sorowyng*, 1428 The corresponding form of the original has above been proved to end in *-and*. The ending *-yng* is no doubt due to influence from the spreading London literary language.

19. Already in a preceding chapter we have seen that substitution of words and word-forms has taken place in **S**. As a rule, the instances given show less a direct influence of a certain dialect or an avoidance of purely dialectal forms than carelessness on the part of the various scribes. In this section only such words and forms which indicate a definite dialectal influence on **S** or involve a tendency towards avoiding typically Northern words or word-forms, will be adduced.

Among the nouns replaced we notice especially *hend* and *kyndred*. Instead of the former substantive, which is a Scand. loan-word and characteristic of the Northern dialect, we find *hand* occurring in the rime wend: kend : lend, 329. The form *hend* seems to have been unknown to one of the **S** scribes. The form used in the place of the original *kyndred* is very often *kynradyn*, which never suits the metre, and which is therefore undoubtedly due to a copyist. Fairly common in early ME., it seldom occurs in late ME.; but as far as we have been able to find out, it then seems to be native in Lancashire. It is therefore highly probable that the use of *kynradyn* is another instance of West Midland influence, several traces of which are found in **S**. An instance of Scotch influence is the suffix *-rend* for-*red*, e. g.: *kynrendes*, pl., 217/10.

In some cases the original adjective *ȝing*, chiefly used in the dialects north of the Humber, has been replaced by *young*, e. g. *ȝonge* : spryng 82/10, *yong* : askyng, etc. 204/8, etc.

Instead of the Northern or North-Midland preterite *wore*, 'were, used by the author, we very often find *were*, e. g. *were* : be fore : ⌣ : restore : more, 15; *wer* : more, 16; *wer* : þerfor, 75; etc.

In a few cases a scribe has substituted the adverb *þer* for the Nor

thern *þar* riming with spare : fare : ⌣, 96. To judge by the incongruous rime *before* : *vp borne*, p. p., 1364, the author's adverb *beforn*, very common in the Northern dialects, has been avoided by some **S** scribe. This is also sometimes the case with *syne*, adv., instead of which we find *sythyn*, e. g. *sythyn* : fyne : bersylyne : myne : ⌣, 798.

The language of MS. **S** is on the whole Northern. This implies that, in the gradual copying out which has resulted in MS. **S**, the dialect of the original has in all essentials been preserved. But we have seen that the language of the MS. **S** is not free from dialectal influences. Some of these are of the kind which are met with in the Midland only, or in the incipient standard literary language. Other influences point to West-Midland and Scotland. So it is evident that MS. **S**, itself a copy, has passed through the hands of a West Midland and a Scotch scribe. The other Midland features may also be assigned to the West Midland scribe. But we do not know for certain, since it is also possible that they may have passed into an earlier or later copy. As far as the Midland features are met with in the London literary language, they may also be due to a scribe acting under the influence of London speech. The existence of such a scribe is proved by the pres. pples. in *-ing*. At any rate we can state that no attempt has been made consistently to turn the original Northern dialect of the poem into the language of the Midland.

B. MS. Longleat 257.

It has above (p. XXXIV) been intimated that the dialectal divergencies between the original poem and MS. **L** were so great and far-reaching that they could only be explained by assuming a conscious attempt at transferring the author's dialect into a form more familiar to Southern readers. This was clear for reasons of vocabulary. But other facts, too, point in the same direction: it can be proved by a detailed investigation of the phonology and accidence of the MS. In order to do this and at the same time to determine the nature of the dialect, the same tests as have been used in dealing with MS. **S** will be applied to MS. **L**.

1. OE. *ā* has in apparent *a*-rimes given *o* in **L** in six times as many forms as in **S**. The following cases may be given by way of

example: *fro* : *so* (**S** fra : sa), 750, 761; *hote*, s. 'heat' (: late : astate : debate), 805; *thoo*, dem. pron. (**S** þa : Iuda), 861; *woth*, s. (**S** wathe), 901; *wote*, 3 sg. pr. : yate: late : astate, 1384; *moste* : *goste* (**S** mast : gast), 1497; *loth* a. (**S** lathe); etc. Within the line there are far more *o*-forms in **L**, e. g. : *hoale*, a. (**S** hale), 1499; *todes* (**S** taydes), 144; *boote*, pt. (**S** batte), 146; *moon*, s. (**S** mane), 382; *wroth* (**S** wrath), 484; *home*, s. (**S** hame), 908, 1040; *royse*, pt. (**S** royse), 1114; etc.

2. OE. *a*, *ea* before *-ld* has given *o* to a percentage which seems to be slightly higher than in **S**, e. g. : *vnsold* : wold : hold : cald (**S** wald : vnsald : hold : cald), 733; *bold* : cald : hold : told (**S** bald : cald : hald : told), 1051; *told* : olde (**S** tald : ald), 1311; etc. Within the line we find e. g. : *old* (**S** ald), 643; *holden* (*S* haldyn), 700; *hold* (**S** hald), 780; etc.

3. Although there is not a single instance of *o* < OE. *a* before lengthening nasal *sound*-groups in apparent *a*-rimes in **L**, we find that this *o* occurs in a few words within the line, e. g. *sonde*, s. 'messenger' (**S**. sa(y)nd), 731, 1211, 1309, 1351, etc.; *long* (**S** *lang*), 737; *among* (**S** *amang*), 829, etc.; *husbond* (**S** *husband*), 1309.

4. OE. *a* before *n* has generally given *a* in MS. **L**, e. g. *any*, 186, etc.; *kan*, 169; *many*, 134, 204, etc. The only form with *o* in this position is *mony*, which occurs in a few cases, e. g. 196/7, 197/3, 277/12, etc.

5. OE. *hēah* appears as *high*, e. g. 380/8, 409/6, 640/5, etc. The typically Northern form *he(gh)* is never found in **L.**

6. OE. *ēow* has in most cases become *ew* or *ow*, e. g. *trowed*, 181/6; *fourt*, 'fourth', 831/12, etc. Rarely we meet with the diphthong *au*, e. g. *travth*; 179/9, *trauth*, 180/9.

7. ME. *ẹu* (written *ew* or *eu*) > *ü* (written *u* or *w*) : *trwe*, a., 947; *perswed*, pt. (**S** persewed), 1471; *sute*, s. (**S** sewt), 795; *dwly*, adv. (*S*. dewly), 1285; *truly*, adv., 947. This sound-change is characteristic of West Midland and the old Saxon districts; but this *ü* is often met with also in the incipient standard language. Cf. Luick, HGE § 399 : 2.

8. The early ME. *e* in an unstressed syllable is generally written *e*, seldom *i*. We never find *u* in this position.

9. Instances of the sound-change OE.*-ng*>*-n* are not altogether lacking in **L**, although they are rarer than in **S**. We find e. g. *fyghten*, fighting', 772/3, where **S**. has the form *feyghyng*.

10. As in **S**, so in **L** early ME. final *s* has occasionally become *ʃ*,

written *sh*, e. g. *wysh*, inf. 'show', 381/5. As regards the spreading of this sound-change, see above p. CLXII.

11. There are no instances in **L** of the loss of the spirant *χ* before *t* in the OE. sound-combination *χt*. This seems to intimate that MS. **L** is somewhat earlier than MS. **S**.

12. The OE. explosive *t* is in a few isolated cases dropped after the guttural *χ*, e. g. *nogh*, 'not', 977/1. Conversely *-t* has been added to the same guttural, e. g. *sloght*, pt. : *ploght*, s., 280.

13. The OE. palatalized *ʒ* in the verb *ʒiefan*, whose initial consonant has been replaced in the original by the explosive *g* owing to OScand. influence, has sometimes been preserved in **L** and is then written *y*, e. g. *yeve*, inf., 426/11; *yeven*, p. p., 445/1, etc. These forms beginning with a palatal should no doubt be assigned to a scribe under the influence of the Midland or the London language.

14. For OE. palatalized *c* **L** has nearly always *ch: which* (**S** qwylk(e)), 173, 1090; *muche*, 184, *mych*, 401, *mich*, 1177 (**S** mekyll); *such*, pron., 1187, 1377; *besech*, inf. (**S** beseke), 296; *sech*, inf. (**S** seke) 873; *ych* (*S.* ylk), 989; etc., etc.

15. OE. *hw* represented by *qu*, *qw* in the original is always written *wh* in *L*. In a few cases we find this *wh* used for original *qu*, derived not from OE. *hw*, but from OE. *cw*, e.g . *whernis*, s. 'quern', 365/5, etc.

16. As regards the spelling a few facts should be noticed. To the long vowels are not infrequently, but by no means so often as *y* in **S**, an *i* added, e. g.: *laith*, 'loath', 1030; *deid* s. 'death' 278; etc.

ME. long open *o* is now and then written *oa*, e. g. *hoale*, a., 1144, 1217, 1499, etc.

ME. long close *o* is generally spelt *oo*, e. g. : *stoode: goode*, 1504, rarely *u*, e. g. *tuke*, pt. 'took', 448/5; *suth*, s. 'truth', 1529/1, etc.

17. The personal pronoun of the feminine singular is always *she*, which has thus completely ousted the original Northern *scho*. The 3rd plural of the personal pronoun is mostly *they*, *theym*, occasionally interchanging with *thay*, *thaim*. There are no plural forms beginning in *h*.

18. The plural of the demonstrative pronoun *þis* is mostly *thes*, corresponding to the Northern forms *þire*, *þyr*, etc. in **S**.

19. The original personal endings of the pres. ind. are on the whole far better preserved in **L** than in **S**. It is very seldom that we come across other than Northern forms, e. g. *reherseth*, 3 sg. 237/2.

20. The present participle has generally the ending *-and*. In a

number of cases slightly greater than that in **S**, it ends in *-ing*, e. g. *cunnyng*, 129; *accordyng*, 509; *mornyng*, 246; *swaloyng*, 323; *wyrkyng*, 335; *makyng*, 601; *praing*, 1409; *groving*, 1418; *sighing*, *weping*, 1406, etc.

21. The dialectal peculiarities of the vocabulary in **L** has been pointed out on several occasions before. Especially striking is the wholesale substitution of typically Southumbrian words and word-forms for the corresponding Northern ones. To the full account of this important feature and the numerous illustrative quotations on p. XXVI seq. may here be added a few more words and instances.

The chiefly Northern forms *ma*, inf., 'make', *mas*, 3 sg. pr. 'makes', *asse*, 3 pl. pr. 'ask', *ta*, inf. 'take', *tas*, 3 sg. pr. 'takes', *tane*, *tone*, p. p. 'taken', and the almost exclusively Northern *foun*, p. p. 'found', etc. have generally been replaced in **L** by the corresponding Midland and Standard English forms. Instances are found in the stanzas 403, 405, 429, 727, 801, 1133, 1172, etc.

For the original Northern and North-Midland forms *wore*, *ware*, pt., *þore*, *þare*, adv., *whore*, adv., we generally find *there*, *were*, *where* in **L**, e. g. in stanzas 595, 759, 868 etc.

Beside these two groups just given there occur a great many isolated cases of word-substitution in **L**. Considerations of space prevent us from quoting the whole material; we have to content ourselves with some words not yet dealt with and submit them in a list below, containing side by side the corresponding original form, sometimes occurring in MS. **S**.

S. or **O.**	**L.**
Are, adv.	before, 1108/12.
hore, hare, s., 'hair'	here, 308/2, 361/1.
þis lare, s., 'lesson'	that I the lere, 361/5.
hend, 'hands',	hand, 219/1.
marke, a., 'dark'	darknes, 149/6.
bus, pr.	must, 1510/7.
thar,	nedes, pr. 970/1.
stade, p. p.	stede, 180/10.
ydder: hydder, advs.	thedre: hidre. 1302
warre, comp.	wers, 1236.
etc.	

MS. **L** presents a strange mixture of Northern and Midland forms. The original Northern peculiarities are clearly discernible, especially in the case of the accidence, which shows but little foreign influence, the pronouns excepted. Far more subjected to dialectal influence has been the Phonology. In **L** the percentage of purely Midland sounds is very much greater than in **S**, and the former is not altogether lacking in phonological features met with in South-Midland districts. Finally the Vocabulary has, as has been pointed out several times before, been submitted to a thorough recasting on Midland models. It is therefore evident that **L** has gone through the hands of a Midland scribe whose intention it was to remove all typically Northern peculiarities and make the paraphrase readable to people living to the south of the Humber. But the dialectal peculiarities are hardly of such a nature as to enable us to state more definitely to which part of the Midland this scribe belonged. It is scarcely likely that he came from a county not far from the north of the Thames, since the pres. pple. ending *-and(e)* has been retained.

CHAPTER VII

NOTES ON THE METRE

The poem is written in twelve-lined stanzas, each consisting of 8 four-foot and 4 three-foot verses, riming in the following way: ababababcdcd. The last four verses form the cauda of the stanza. The rising iambic rhythm comes out quite clearly in the line, and the equality of beats is perceptible, although the equality of the numbers of syllables in the verses is not so strictly observed. Examples of regular lines with eight, resp. six syllables are e. g. the following:

þus wíth the kýng wonnánd he wás;
full wéll he lúfed with ówtyn wéne, 501/1—2.
none wýst he wás anóynt, 501/9.
I wýst yt wás his áwn desýre;
to béyre hym thrúgh I wás full bównne, 613/1—2.
So cóme a mán mornánd hym týll,
þat Cósyn wás and héyght Cusý, 716/7—8.

In a very few and, easily numbered, cases the verse is either too short, or too long by one stressed syllable. As is clear from the sister MS. we are in that case concerned with apparent corruptions. Instances of such irregular lines are e. g.

of knýghtes in ármys clére, 458/8.

MS. **L** has the correct reading with four stressed syllables:

of knýghtes kéne in ármes clére.

full món for hým was mént, 472/2.

The original had 'mekyl' before 'mon', as is proved by the corresponding line in **L**:

'for mych moon for hym was ment'

and thus contained the regular four stressed syllables.

Lines differing from the ordinary rythmic scheme of the stanza are met with in the whole of the cauda of stanza 299, as has already been indicated in a preceding chapter (p. xv). They are too long by one foot. This incongruity has above been explained as due to a scribe.

of a MS. which was the source common to both **S** and **L.** There is, however, another possibility of accounting for this anomaly. The material of words with which the poet wished to express his thought and fill the metrical scheme of the cauda proved to be too large to be condensed into four lines of three stresses, so the poet went on using four-beat lines in the cauda and thus expressed his thoughts in one stanza instead of distributing the coherent matter in two stanzas.

It is very doubtful if the following verse is corrupted, although the use of four stressed syllables certainly is here anomalous:

qwát for scáth and qwátt for scórne, 271/10. **L** reads: whát for skáth, whát for scórne, also with four accents.

Deviations from the ordinary iambic rhythm which partly disturb the agreement of the number of accented and unaccented syllables in a line, are more frequent in Middle English than in Modern English poetry. They are well represented in our poem. The first unstressed syllable, the anacrusis, has been suppressed in many lines, e. g.

wýf and chýld down wíth þem féll, 187/6
bótt and brént þem bóne and lýre, 199/4.
súld be hént from hándes of déde, 210/4
só sayd ón þat had mékyll séne, 325/6
ín þe témpyll hys máyster nére, 397/4
etc.

In a strictly accentual metre like that used by the poet the syntactical accent and the word-accent very often clash with the metrical one. Then either of the two former is subordinated to the latter, and level stress or hovering accent is resorted to, i. e. the stress is changed over from its natural place to another word or syllable. The vacillation in the stressing of the French loan-words has already been dealt with. (Cf. p. CXXI seq.). We can therefore here confine ourselves to the hovering accent of the native nouns and adjectives, leaving out the compound verbs which generally do not allow any change of accent in favour of the metre.

In stressing the native words, the poet generally follows the Germanic accentual principles. Level stress is, however, very often made use of, especially of course in the rimes. It affects both compound nouns and derivatives. The following lines may be given by way of illustration.

1. *In rime:*

slepánd Abówtt *mydnýght*, 76/10
and cónquerd sére *kyngdóme*, 202/10
To cáche þe ówt of þí *kyngrýke*, 685/3
That stéwerd wýf for hís *fayrhéd*, 104/3
þat súld not pásse bot bé *presthéd*, 460/6
and páynems *féleschépe*, 268/12.
in ýnglysch *lýʒt beyrér*, 5/12.
And líke to our áwn *liknés*, 11/11.
Then wás ly[á] by hým *ligánd*, 79/7.
The trówth and the *bégynnýng*, 46/11
[trewlý] war bórn of hýr *bodý*, 83/4, etc.

2. *Within the line:*

In grét *thraldóm* them fórto brýng, 121/8
of whát *kynréd* kyng súld be tóne, 429/8.
And wán *wrschépe* for áy, 442/11
and mý *blessýng* be fór I dý, 69/8
and béyr *wytnése* to óld and ʒýng, 139/8
mad grétt *semblýng* on ýlka sýde, 401/2, etc.

Another metrical licence, which is not rare in our poem, is *the absence of a thesis* in the interior of a line. As not doubtful examples may be adduced:

to fýght with hým hánd for hánd 504/6.
Sém, chám, Jaféth in fére, 23/6
wýtt, wýn and oýle, all thré, 75/4
hórs, schéld and spére, 177/11, etc.

Other instances are doubtful, since the poet may have meant an unstressed final *e* to be pronounced, e. g.:

by cáwse þóu gart kýll þi knýʒt, 684/1.
scho sáyd, ser kýng, with crówn[e] clére, 707/6
and lýg in wáyt[e] ýntyll mórn, 525/4.

As is well-known, the rhythmical effect of *the inversion of the metre* has some resemblance to the suppression of the anacrusis, and it is sometimes very difficult to distinguish one from the other. In our opinion, the verses given below as instances contain inversion:

Áll þat myʒt wéppyns wéld, 169/12
thónour and léfnyng down dyscénd, 190/2;
sadlý þei sóyʒt on sýdes sére, 264/c.

hé þat myȝt féll all fólke be fórn,
nów is he fást with féturs fést, 365/1—2.

As has been said before, the number of the syllables varies a little, especially in the case of the unstressed ones. The rhythm is not always strictly iambic, but this does not surprise us since we know that in ME. great irregularity prevailed in the even-beat measures built on French models. Schipper, Englische Metrik I, p. 79 seq. says about this, »Diese Taktgleichheit ist Gesetz für die moderne, wie auch für die mittelalterliche, accentuierende, antiken Metren nachgebildete Rhythmik. Doch unterscheidet sich die letztere von der ersteren wesentlich dadurch, dass der Gebrauch, die einzelnen Takte aus einer regelmässigen Aufeinanderfolge von Hebungen und Senkungen bestehen zu lassen, in ihr weniger strenge beobachtet wird. Während in der neuenglischen Metrik die Ausfüllung eines zweisilbigen Taktes entweder durch eine einzige Hebung oder umgekehrt durch eine Hebung und zwei oder mehrere Senkungen als eine nur aus bestimmten Gründen zulässige poetische Licenz anzusehen ist, ist das Vorkommen solcher Takte in der altenglischen Verskunst, namentlich in der ersten Epoche eine häufig zu beobachtende, aber nur selten aus bestimmten dichterischen Motiven zu erklärende Erscheinung.«

The poet sometimes makes use of two or even three unaccented syllables to form a regular thesis of a verse, e. g.

Bot ó thyng Í yow of wárne, 233/9
þat hé suld be kýng Ebréws amáng, 422/8
ne his gráue cowd nó man fýnd ne féle, 222/8
ffor Ágar thát was wóntt hyr to scórn, 54/7.
And óf sum párt he hym práyd 67/12
and láyd hym bý the see sýd, 123/12 etc.

Already in a preceding chapter the author's treatment of *the stressless e* has been dealt with at some length, so it is not necessary to take this question up again, since there the metrical point of view also had to be taken into consideration. We can therefore content ourselves with referring to this account.

Synizesis, i. e. the consonantic pronunciation of *i* or *u* chiefly in French formative endings beginning in these vowels, now and then occurs in the poem, e. g.:

Of hýr condícions nóyȝt he knéw, 352/3.
Amáng þem fórto máke maryáge, 380/6

to súm maryág þat hé of méllys, 381/8.

Thrugh médiacý of máry chást, 1/7, etc.

To adjust the number of syllables to the requirements of the metre, the poet makes frequent use of *elision*, e. g.:

I sáll dystróy them éuery ylkón, 25/3

he práyd god fór to abýd and blýn, 49/3.

Neither in Middle English nor in Mod. English poetry was *hiatus* ever prohibited. In our poem a final vowel not infrequently appears before an initial one without being suppressed, whereas suppression would spoil the metre, e. g.:

vntó a pláce of grétt plenté, 142/4

My mýȝt is hály ín my hàre, 361/1, etc.

Synklisis (in reality the same phenomenon as *synzesis*) not rarely takes place in our poem when a final *y* comes into contact with the initial vowel of a following word, e. g.

Thei múltiplýd, with móny an héyre, 29/8

with mékyll mýrth full móny a ȝére, 36/2

and gát hym wándes móny and éuyn, 81/4

for théi had móbles móny A fó[ther], 86/6.

And fór he wás so wórthy a wýght, 130/3 etc.

Verschleifung (Eng. slurring) is a kind of moderate syncope or apocope, the vowel reduced, not disappearing altogether. As to examples see pp. CXVIII and CXX.

As regards the end-rime, there is no occasion to dwell on it at any length. We have seen above that the poet is on the whole a very good rimer. The unsatisfactory rimes, consisting either in difference as to the vowel-quantity or vowel-quality or else in difference in consonants, are surprisingly few in number, considering the great length of the poem. A few noteworthy features may be mentioned in passing. The poet combines in the following feminine rimes two words with one. And sometimes the rime extends over the stressed syllable and includes the preceding one, e. g.:

lyghtys two: nyghtys fro, 9:— forthi: worthy, 30:— veneson: beneson, 69, etc.

Already HEUSER (op. cit. p. 1) has drawn the attention to the very elaborate *alliteration* between pairs of lines, which is so characteristic of our poem, and which no doubt links it up with other alliterative

poems of the 14th and 15th centuries in the North and North-West of England. A detailed examination of the alliterative phrases in our poem is beyond the scope of the present notes on the metre. For our purpose, which is to give a general idea of the alliteration in our poem, it is quite sufficient to quote a number of alliterative phrases drawn from different parts of the poem and classified according to a few simple principles.

In many instances words of etymological affinity alliterate:

And þei wer *t*old be *t*ale, 170/9
The *t*en þen can þer *t*ales *t*ell, 177/1
bot sone þei suld be *b*on in *b*and, 201/6
for *tr*ew in *tr*owth was his en*t*ent, 223/4
was ordand to *st*and in his *st*ed, 224/4
þis sall þou *tr*ow and *tr*ewly *tr*ayst, 486/6, etc.

In other instances the poet often alliterates words of semantic affinity with one another. In this case the alliterative words are generally co-ordinated in the sentence, e. g.:

with *s*yte and *s*orow *s*ere, 495/10.
and neuer be *sch*amed ne *sch*ent, 496/12.
By cawse he saw hym *m*eke and *m*yld
— — — — — — — — —
ffor when þe fend was *w*oyd and *w*yld, 500/3—5.
He was more *gr*ete and *gr*ym, 504/9
Bot þe chyld had no *m*yȝt ne *m*ayn, 508/5
and *r*eydyd þem to *r*yn and *r*yde, 511/5,
of god *m*aners and *m*yȝt, 514/10; etc.

As a rule, however, the alliterative words present neither etymological nor semantic affinity. Instances are abundant:

for by his *w*rytt þei *w*ıoyȝt all*w*ay, 444/2.
ffor what tyme ȝe *b*reke his *b*edyng,
your *b*lyse mun with *b*ale be *b*lend, 451/1—2.
And *sm*ithes *sm*ertly þei *s*logh, 452/9.
with *s*wylke a *str*engh forto *str*yfe, 455/12.
he *w*ated þe *w*arlow *w*ith a *w*ryng
and made hym *w*ode owt of hys *w*ytt, 510/5—6.
and *st*yfly *st*ud in mony a *st*owre, 516/2.
Scho had no *b*eld at *b*owre ne *b*ed, 518/7.
withowtyn *sp*ech he *sp*ens a *sp*ere, 524/6; etc.

Finally we have to turn to *the form of the stanza* in the poem. About this HEUSER says (op. cit. p. 3), »Es geht daraus auch hervor, dass die eigenart der strophe, die sich sonst im Me. kaum wiederfindet, durch das ganze werk geht, nämlich der umstand, dass in der zwölfzeiligen strophe mit der beliebten, ja im 14. sæc. — abgesehen von den refraingedichten — herrschenden reimordnung abababababcdcd die verse des aufgesangs (ab) viertaktig, die des abgesangs aber dreitaktig sind. Nur das Ev. Nicodemi hat etwas ähnliches, doch sind dort auch die b-verse des aufgesangs dreitaktig, die langverse desselben also septenare. Vielleicht ist dies die ursprüngliche form, jedenfalls verdienen die beziehungen der beiden sichtlich nah verwandten denkmäler die sorgfältigste beachtung.» Wells (op. cit. p. 398) is of the same opinion; he says, »The strophes are abababababcdcd, the first eight lines of four, the last four of three, stressses each. As it stands, this strophe appears to be unique in Middle English.» Both of them are right in judging the structure of the stanza, so that on this point their views agree with those given in this chapter. But with regard to the uniqueness of the stanza, it is surprising to see that two well-known English scholars should have made such a mistake as to maintain that 'nur das Ev. Nicodemi hat etwas ähnliches». Instead of being unique, this stanza is not infrequent, especially in the York Plays, with several of which our poem certainly has relation, and by which it has been influenced. In her Sketch-Analysis of Metres used in the York Plays (p. li), Lucy Toulmin Smith states that no less than twelve plays, viz. X, XI, XII, XV, XVII, XX, XXIII, XXIV, XXVII, XXXV, XXXVII, XLIV are written in a twelve-lined stanza, with 8 lines of 4 accents, 4 lines of 3 accents, and with the rimes abababababcdcd. Add to this the fact that in the York Plays, too, words and lines alliterate, and it is very difficult to realize why the stanza of our poem should be called unique, and why the Gospel of Nicodemus should be so closely related with our paraphrase as to deserve a very careful examination. On the contrary, the Gospel of Nicodemus and our poem differ so much in metre, style, and contents that any connexion between the two poems is out of the question. On the other hand, a careful comparison of the York Plays and the Biblical Paraphrase will justify the conclusion we have come to in the following chapter, viz. that some of the York Plays constitute one of the sources of our poem.

CHAPTER VIII

SOME REMARKS ON THE LITERARY RELATIONS

From the beginning of the 14th cent. until the appearance of Chaucer at the end of that century the northern counties were the centre of the literary movement in England. Already during the last few decades of the 13th century we see the North bestirring itself and showing signs of that literary form, religious-didactic poetry, which was so characteristic of its literature, and which was to reach its height during the first half of the 14th century. The so called *Surtees Psalter*, a translation of 150 Psalms from the Vulgate, appeared before 1300, and some twenty years later the greatest religious work of this century, the *Cursor Mundi*, written as a counterbalance to the French romances and their English followers, was compiled. It is a vast store-house of religious knowledge in great variety — from Bible stories down to legends from many different sources — and it enjoyed an immense popularity and played an important part in the following literary development. About the same time, or perhaps a little later, the strophic version of the *Gospel of Nicodemus* was also written in the North. The same tendency towards the production of cyclopædic works which caused the compilation of the Cursor Mundi, led to the production of a homily cycle also in the North, the *Northern Cycle;* to this was later added a legendary one. It has been the task of recent investigations to show how very largely the three last poetical works have influenced the *York Plays*, which for reasons of style, metre, language, and tendency must be regarded as belonging to the same religious didactic movement as the former. In this connection must also be mentioned one of the most considerable figures in the religious history of the 14th c. in England, *Richard Rolle of Hampole*, who by birth — he was born in Yorkshire — is a Northcountry man. His comprehensive religious poem *Pricke of Conscience*, written in the Northern dialect, belongs to the general class of the *Handlyng Synne* and the

Ayenbite of Inwyt. The former may be classed among the Northerly writings of the 14th century.

One of the chief characteristics of this literary movement is the easy fluent form and the clever, pleasant, nay, even elegant style, which is conspicuous and plays a more important part than sentiment and depth of feeling. A polished and well rounded means of expression is aimed at, and we see how the authors, instead of the heavy septenary, adopt the short riming-couplet, which fits the thought better and makes for greater fluency. We see also how they do not even shrink back from more complicated and artistic strophes, as e. g. in the *Gospel of Nicodemus* and the *York Plays*.

It is evident that the *Metrical Paraphrase of the Old Testament* is a late exponent of the same religious-didactic movement; the language, style, metre, and the purpose of the poem tell us so.

The author, of whom unfortunately nothing is known with certainty — from his acquaintance with the religious literature of his day we may reasonably conclude that he was a clerk — already in the very first stanzas of his poem states the purpose of his poem. He says:

> This buke is of grett degree,
> Os all wettys that ben wyse,
> ffor of the bybyll sall yt be
> the poyntes that ar mad most in price, etc. 2/1—4.

He thus wants to give an abridged — 'the poyntes that ar mad most in price' — poetical exposition of the Bible, although he never fulfilled his intention, but contented himself with the greater part of the Old Testament. He wants to give an account of the history of God's people before the coming of Christ, to teach them God's Law, and how they should follow it in order that their souls might be saved. His chief interest seems to have been epic. He selects and dwells on stories, incidents and even legends which must have appealed to an audience used to the very popular romances of his day, leaving out such dull and tedious things as e. g. the laws and regulations contained in Leviticus. But the story is not lacking in the didactic element; now and then we recognize the teacher's lessons, e. g.

> Here may we fynd be figure fare
> ensaumple shewed vnto oure sight
> That noo man shuld be in dispare
> of goddes mercy, ne of his might 1091/1—4 (MS. **L**).

A little later we find a whole stanza purely didactic: it runs:

vs ow to honour ylke degre
of holy kyrke þat kept is clene
And noyȝt to wene our self þat we
be worthy swylk maters to mene.
Bot als þei deme in dew degre
to drese our dedes on days be dene,
god graunt vs well to werke
and so to lyfe and end
In trowt of holy chyrche
þat we to welth may wend. 1174/3—12.

Another instance occurs in the following stanza:

For in þis werld werkes none so wele
þat wott wheder his werke be wroyȝt
vnto his sorow or to his sele.
for when þe soth is all vp soyght,
of gud werke god dose ylk a dele;
bot he yt werke, þe werke is noyȝt. 1220/1—6.

In one of the strophes, towards the end of the poem, the author asks for God's blessing in undertaking to teach the lewd: he prays:

god graunt hym hele þat hath turned yt
in ynglysch lawd men forto lere.
In sampyll may men here se
to be trew in trowyng.
god graunt vs so to be
and to his blyse to bryng. 1479/7—12.

Heuser (op. cit. p. 1) has valued the poem very highly from an æsthetic point of view; he seems inclined to place it on a level with the very best productions of Middle English poetry and says, »Sein werk steht wie eine oase in der wüste der theologischen massenliteratur des 14. jahrhunderts, selbst über den Cursor Mundi und Prick of Conscience dichterisch weit herausragend, durch stoff wie behandlung alleinstehend und vielleicht am meisten verwandtschaft zu kunstvollen einzelbehandlungen wie das nordengl. evangelium Nicodemi oder das evangelium von der kindheit Christi zeigend, die ebenfalls in zwölfzeiligen strophen auftreten im gegensatz zu den typischen kurzen reimpaaren der gelehrten me. literatur und den überlebten langzeilen der südlichen legenden.» Wells (op. cit. p. 398) is more moder-

ate in his opinion and says, »The general quality of the pieces is excellent». — No doubt the poem is a very important piece of work in English Literature and compares very favourably with many of its mediæval productions, but it is difficult to agree with HEUSER in placing it far above the Cursor Mundi and the Prick of Conscience. A careful study of the poem shows us that it is only very rarely that the author rises above the level of a well-informed, able, conscientious and careful rimer; on the whole, the poem is very tame and colourless, and its monotony bears witness to the great labour the author had in putting the vast material into verse. It is only at the end of the paraphrase, in the *De matre cum* VII *filijs* and *De Anthioco* that we meet with a more poetical treatment of the subjects and a livelier tone, which sometimes achieves dramatic vividness.

In the second stanza we can see how the poet states the sources from which he chiefly has obtained his material. He mentions there the Bible, 'the maysters of dyuinite and on, the maystur of storyse'. The ultimate source of the paraphrase is the Vulgate, which, however, the author follows far from closely. As in other similar narratives, e. g. the Northern Passion, the transposition of events, the omission of parts of the Old Testament, and the introduction of legendary incidents are quite frequent. Thus we find that the Bible Books are placed in an order quite different from that to which we are used in the Vulgate of the present day, viz.: Genesis, Exodus, Leuiticus, Numeri, Deuteronomij, Josue, Iudicum, Ruth, Libri I—IV Regum, Job, Thobie, Hester, Iudyth, De matre cum VII filiis and De Anthioco. The same order of the Bible Books is used in *Cassiodore's* Bible, secundum beatum Augustinum, and it is not at all unlikely that the poet drew on this Bible when compiling his work, although it must also be admitted that the order may be merely accidental, since, as BERGER points out in his thesis »Histoire de la Vulgate» p. 301, La Vulgate n'est pas précisément un livre, c'est plutôt un recueil de traductions partielles, dont l'ordre et le groupement peuvent varier à l'infini.»

As regards the extent and division of the various books and the transposition of incidents within the Books, we find the following divergencies from the ordinary Vulgate.

We are not surprised to find that the whole of Leviticus is left out, as the contents of this book would have answered very badly

to the author's purposes. It is interesting to see that this is also the case in an Old-French Biblical Paraphrase, which BONNARD describes in his work »Les Traductions de la Bible en vers français au Moyen Age» p. 93 seq. (cependant tous les règlements sont laissés de côté.)

In the Paraphrase the poet ends the Book of Numbers by relating the story of the rebellion of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram, which corresponds to Numbers, chapt. XII of the ordinary Vulgate.

The Bible narrative of the Levite and his concubine, contained in Judges, chapters XIX and XX, has been placed before the story of Samson in the poem, which is another deviation from the Vulgate.

Incidents told in the stanzas 543/553, corresponding to I Samuel, chapt. XXIII, follow the occurrences given in stanzas 554—560, which have their parallel in I Samuel, chapt. XXII.

The II. Book of Kings of our poem is concluded by the relation of the death of King David, which is told in the III. Book of Kings, chapt. II, l. 10. This is also the case in the Old French poem referred to above. »Le poète termine le second livre des Rois à la mort de David» (BONNARD, p. 101).

The siege of Samary is related after the death of Naboth in our poem, exactly as in the Traduction anonyme de l'ancien testament: »Le siège de Samarie par Benhadad est placé après la mort de Naboth, contrairement à l'indication de la Bible» (BONNARD, p. 102).

The stanzas 1153—1167 deal with the story of Jonas and follow the deeds of King Jeroboam II. The same sequence is maintained in the Old French paraphrase. Bonnard says (op. cit. p. 102), »Après le récit des faits du roi Joas, l'auteur intercale l'histoire de Jonas à propos de Jéroboam II, fils de Joas, auquel Jonas adresse des reproches:

Ore vous dirai, si me suffrez ici,
De cest Jonas tant cum jeo ai oi (F° 214 r.°)
Il reprend ensuite le livre des Rois où il l'avait laissé».

It would have been very interesting to make a further comparison between the two poems, which have so many points in common, in order to see whether these similarities are to be accounted for by assuming a source common to both, or whether we are to reckon with an Old French influence on our Middle English poem, but this cannot be done here.

As we have seen above, the next source beside the Bible which the author himself mentions is »the maystur of storyse», under which title allusion is of course made to *Peter Comestor*, »magister histo-

riarum». His well-known work, Historia Scholastica, written between 1169 and 1175, was drawn on by all religious authors in the late Middle Ages, e. g. the authors of Genesis & Exodus, Cursor Mundi, York Plays, The Northern Cycle, etc. He has also set his definite mark on our paraphrase, and most of the legendary incidents have been taken from his Historia Scholastica. In the following we intend to indicate the most important passages, in which this work is the ultimate source.

After having related the creation of the heavens and the earth, the poet goes on to say that God »þer in (i. e. Heaven) made angels bryght to serue hym self euermoyr to pay», 5/5—6. Later on he continues:

The tend ordyr of angell
Thurgh prid, os kend our clerkes,
Vnto fowle fendes fell.
þer wer ther fyrst day werkes. 6/9—12.

The whole story of the fall of the angels, which is also found in the Cursor Mundi and the York Plays in somewhat similar terms to those of the Paraphrase, has been thoroughly investigated by scholars several times. It should apparently be ascribed to Augustinus and Gregorius. H. Ungemach, who has studied this question in detail, says[1]), »Die ganze Darstellung vom Sturze der Engel, wie sie sich in der epischen Literatur der alt- und mittelenglischen Zeit sowie in den mittelenglischen Mysterien findet, spricht dafür, dass nicht jene einzelnen Bibelstellen, sondern vielmehr die ausführlicheren und leichter verständlichen Erklärungen eines Augustin und Gregor zur dichterischen Behandlung dieses Stoffes geführt haben».

In stanza 20 Cain is said to have slain his brother Abel with the jaw-bone of an ass. The origin of this story, also told in the Old French poem — »L'auteur nous apprend tout d'abord que Caïn tua son frère avec une mâchoire d'âne:

De la joue de un asne espandi son cervel (Bonnard, p. 97)

— is not found in Hist. Schol.

The following lines in the poem:

Then bare scho suns and doyghters sere,
The story says sexty and moe;
Then ylke on oþer toke
and lyfyd be law of kynd. 21/7—10,

[1]) Die Quellen der fünf ersten Chester Plays, p. 27.

correspond to Hist. Schol., Gen. ch. XXIX, col. 1080: »Legitur Adam triginta habuisse filios, et totidem filias præter Cain et Abel».

In stanza 23 four streams are mentioned:

Bot faur fludes of a well
that went from paradyce.

They have their parallel in Hist. Schol., Gen., ch. XIV, col. 1068: »Qui fons dividitur in quatuor flumina».

When the waters subsided the Ark of Noah was found to stand in Armenia, in agreement with Hist. Schol., Gen. ch. XXXIV col. 1085: »Post dies centum quinquaginta coeperunt aquae minui mense septimo, ita quod die vigesima septima mensis requievit arca super montes Armeniae». The same fact is mentioned in the Cursor Mundi, l. 1869: »On armeni þar gan it stand» and in the York Plays, IX/263—64:

I see here certainely
þe hillis of hermonye.

Before Esau and Jacob were born, there was strife between them in their mother's womb, thus described in the poem:

ffor at þer byrth was grett debat
whedder of them suld go forth be fore. 66/3—4.

This incident is referred to in Hist. Schol. Gen. ch. LXVI, col. 1109: »Et concepit mulier, habens duos in utero. Sed cum vicina esset partui, collidebantur in utero ejus parvuli; septuaginta Interpretes posuerunt, ludebant, vel calcitrabant». In the Cursor Mundi also the same story occurs:

þan wex þe fight more þan beforn
Queþer of þaim suld first be born.

In stanza 123 the names of Moses' parents Amryn and Iacabell are given. They are not found in the Bible, but in Hist. Schol., Exod., ch. v. col. 1143: »Egressus est post haec vir levita (Exod. 11), nomine Aram, vel Amram, qui accepit uxorem contribulem nomine Jocabeth». In the Old French paraphrase these two persons are called Amaramis and Iorabel.

Amaramis fu apelé soun pere
E *Iorabel* avoit a noun sa mere (BONNARD, p. 98).

The Egyptian king's daughter, who took care of Moses, is mentioned in agreement with Hist. Schol. Exod. ch. v., col. 1143: »Ecce autem descendit Terimith filia Pharaonis, ut lavaretur in flumine. . .» This has been paraphrased in the poem in the following way:

The kyng had [then] a doyghtur dere,
Tremouth scho heght, os I herd say. 124/1—2.

Also the French poem gives her name »Il dit aussi le nom de la fille de Pharaon, *Teremuth*, qui sauva Moïse des eaux.» (BONNARD, p. 98).

The following lines:

Scho sent to lades on ylka syd
the chyld to norysch and furth fede.
Bot the barn wold not with them abyd,
ne towch þer pape[s] for nokyns nede. 125/5—8.

correspond to Hist. Schol., Exod. v, col. 1143: »Et cum Aegyptiae plures ei admovissent ubera ad lactandum, faciem avertebat».

The description of Moses in Hist., Schol. Exod. v, col. 1144: »Tantae vero pulchritudinis fuit, ut ait Josephus, ut nullus adeo severus esset,» the poet has paraphrased thus:

he was so fayr of hyd and hew:
all men had lyst on hym to loke. 128/5—6.

The stanzas 129—132 relate how Moses, when he was still a child, was brought before Pharaoh and being crowned by the king, threw the crown down on the floor. By his councillors' advice, Pharaoh was about to kill him, but he was saved by a wise man, who said that Moses should be tried by being given burning coals, which he put in his mouth. The original of this story is in Hist. Schol., Exod. v, col. 1144. It is interesting to find the same incident related in the French poem:

»La corone il prent de meintenant,
Il la ruat par grant fierté a tere
Com si il la voleit tolir a lui par gere,
Desouz ces piez la defoule vilement
Veaunt le roi devaunt tote sa gent. (F° 21 r°.)

Les sages conseillent au roi de faire mourir cet enfant, qui le dépouillera de sa couronne; mais la fille du roi survient et enlève hardiment son protégé à la barbe des assistant:

Ore fust Moyses occis devant le roy
Quant Theremuth vint, si ad seisi vers soy,
A force l'enportet en sa reale maison.» (BONNARD p. 98.)

The stanza 165, in which the poet describes how the beards of those who were guilty and drank of the water, into which Moses had strewn the powder of the burnt golden calf, became golden wire, has

its parallel in Hist. Schol., Exod. ch. LXXIII, col. 1190: »vel forte videns sibi indicatos a Deo sceleris auctores per pulverem bibitum, qui in barbis eorum miraculose apparuit, stans in porta castrorum, et advocans levitas ait.» Cf. also Cursor Mundi, ll. 6615—6626.

In the description of the punishment of Korah, given in the stanzas 187—190, the poet closely follows Hist. Schol., Num. ch. XX, col. 1230 instead of the corresponding account in the Vulgate.

In order to destroy Moses and his people, Balam gave king Balak the following advice:

Gar damesellys be gayle grayde
To be soght in cites, nyen or ten,
And when they er rychely arayde,
vnto the Ebrews sent theym then.
Grete myrth there shal they make
To yong men, even and morne,
And make theym god forsake;
So shal they soone be lorne. 211/5—12 (MS. **L**)

For these lines the poet has drawn on Hist. Schol., Num. XXXIV, col. 1239: Cumque finibus Madian valediceret Balac, et suis, consilium dedit eis, ut virgines, quarum specie illudi posset castitas, circa tentoria Israel cum exeniis venalibus mitterent, quae juvenes ad se declinantes, iterum sibi allicere laborarent, ut eos transgredi leges patrias facerent, et deos colerent alienos, ut sic.»

Jabyn, king of Dasor, is stated to have brought with him a great and well-equipped army:

Thre hunderyth chariotes has he dyght
for vytale and tentes with to telde
ffoure hunderyth thovsand folke to fyght. 252/3—5 (MS. **L**).

Cf. Hist. Schol., Jos. X, col. 1267: »Egressique sunt viginti quatuor reges, cum turmis suis, habentes secum trecenta millia armatorum, et duo millia curruum . .»

The origin of the lines in stanza 266:

Bot in Ebron fast have they soght
vnto mountanes where giauntes dweld. (MS. **L**)

is found in Hist. Schol., Jud. ch. II, col. 1273: »Ascendit et Caleb in Hebron terram, scilicet gigantum, et percussis hostibus, plenius possedit eam.»

In stanza 394 the poet tells us that Samuel prophesied already at the age of twelfe:

And be twelfe yeres war passed to end
he couth enugh of nurturs new.
The goste of god in hym descend
wherby he covth tell tales trew
How thynges shuld both begyn and end
by prophecy full wele he knew. (MS. **L**)

This statement is taken from Hist. Schol., I. Reg. ch. IV, col. 1298: »Rediit Elcana in domum suam, et Samuel ministrabat ante Heli, et dicit eum Josephus anno duodecimo pleno prophetasse.»

For the contents of the lines:
grett myse groyved owt of sand
an vgly syȝt to se.
þei ette þo folke, both flesch and blod;
þei had no fors þem to dyffend. 405/11—12 & 406/1—2.
the poet has made use of Hist. Schol., I. Reg. ch. VIII, col. 1301: »Quod Josephus dicit factum ex crudeli passione dysenteriae, ita ut putrefacta egererent intestina, et mures ebullientes de agris corrodebant extales eorum.»

As in Hist. Schol., I. Reg. ch. XVI, col. 1310, the author makes Saul send for physicians and other wise men, who tell him to listen to music to be cheerful and get rid of his evil spirit.

When David had contrived the murder of Uriah, and when God had told him what his punishment would be, David, in the poem, is said to have composed the psalm, »*Miserere mei deus*». This fact is not mentioned in the Bible or Hist. Schol. at this place. But in the Old French paraphrase we find it. BONNARD says (op. cit. p. 101): »L'auteur pense
que David composa le psaume *Miserere* à cette occasion:
»Pur ceost qu'il fist encuntre lois
Miserere mei Deus trova David li rois. (F° 125 v°.)»

In some cases the author's figures do not agree with those given in the Bible or Hist. Schol. In stanza 727, e. g. the poet says: »Take me ten thousand men of myȝt» which number corresponds to twelve thousand in the works mentioned. But the poet of the Old French paraphrase writes:
»Vn autre cunseil dist il *dis millers* de gent
De bones armes garniz e de hardement».
Further, in stanza 772 the figure 50000 is given:

of the kynd of Iudæ myȝt be þen
fyfty milia rekynd ryȝt,

corresponding to 500.000 in the Vulgate and Hist. Schol. The French poet says:

»De la ligne iuda que fud par sei
cinquante millers a la bosoigne le rei».

And thus we see that also in minor details there are similarities between the Metrical Paraphrase of the Old Testament and Traduction anonyme de l'ancien testament.

The origin of the following stanza:

In þe same place ose clerkes haue kend
made Abraham fyrst his sacrafyce.
— — — — — — — — — —
And sythyn in þat same stede,
as boke wytnese þerby
was iesus done to dede
and cald þe mownt of caluery. 777.

is partly found in Hist. Schol., II. Reg. ch. XXIII, col. 1346: »Hic est mons Moria, ut aiunt Hebraei in quo Abraham voluit offerre filium, et obtulit arietem pro eo». Mount Calvary is also referred to in the French Passion, ll. 803—814. Cf. FOSTER's edition of this work, Vol. II, p. 64. She has not been able to find the source of this passage.

When Salomon had married Pharaoh's daughter and brought her to Jerusalem, he is said, in the poem, to have gone to Hebron. On this point the poet is in agreement with Hist. Schol., III Reg. ch. V, col. 1351: »Josephus enim dicit eum ascendisse in Hebron . . .»

Asmodeus, who is not mentioned in the Bible, occurs in stanza 1315:

And clarkes declarys yt þus:
þat fend þat foles so fels
ys named asmodyus;
— — — — — — —
of swylke maters he mels.

The poet has taken this name from Hist. Schol., Tob. ch. I, col. 1433: »Fuit enim tradita septem viris, et daemonium nomine Asmodeus occidebat eos, mox ut ingressi sunt ad eam».

As has already been pointed out above (p. CLXXVII), there are great similarities in metre and language between the York Plays and the

Metrical Paraphrase of the Old Testament. In the following we shall see that the connection between these works was not restricted to these points alone; we shall be able, in the following, to establish a close literary relation between certain parts of the two works, extensive borrowings having been made on the part of the author of the Paraphrase. The Mystery Plays were naturally very popular, and it is not at all surprising that an author, not very original in ideas and in the poetical treatment of them and writing on the same Biblical subjects, should remember them and make use of them when convenient. The borrowings are mostly a couple of lines, though in a few cases more extensive, and are made from different plays dealing with Old Testament stories. We shall quote all passages which show a close resemblance.

The line 10/2 of the paraphrase:

»dyuerse fysches to flett with fyn» is practically identical with the following, York Plays II, 65:

»And othir fysch to flet with fyne».

When describing the creation, the author says that God made beasts:

And wormis on the wome to wende, 11/4

This line is apparently the echo of York Plays II/78:

And wormis vp-on þaire wombis sall wende.

Mankind is cursed in much the same words. Cf. the line »wyn þou thy foyd with swynke and swett» (19/8) with York Plays V/161: »In erthe þan shalle ye swete and swynke . .»

The most remarkable of the borrowings is stanza 43, running:

Abraham was all merueld then
That euer hys sede suld sogattes ȝelde
By cause that his wyfe was baran,
And thei wer both in grett eld.
The wyf wroyȝt ose a gud woman
To geyt a barne to be þer beld;
hyr seruant preuely scho wan
tyl abraham at hys wyll to weld.
þerfor so yt be fell:
scho beldyd by hym all nyȝt
And consauyd ysmaell,
that afterward was full wyght.

It is copied, nearly word by word, from the York Plays X/3:

But Sara was vncertan thanne
That euere oure seede shulde sagates ȝelde,
Be-cause hir-selfe sho was barrane,
And we wer bothe gone in grete eelde.
But scho wroght as a wyse woman,
To haue a barne vs for to beelde;
Hir seruand prevely scho wan
Vn-to my bede my wille to welde.
Sone aftir þan be-felle
When god oure dede wolde dight,
She broght forthe Esmaell,
A sone semely to sight.

The same play has been the origin of several other passages in the Paraphrase. God promises to bless Abraham and his seed thus:

Ose grauell in the se is multyplyd
So sall I multiplye thi sede. 42/7—8

The same words occur in York Plays X/15—16:

He saide my seede shulde multyplye
Lyke to þe gravell of þe see.

A few stanzas later in the Paraphrase, 45/3—8, Abraham is told of the birth of Isaac:

— — — — — — — — — —

And in that tyme god to hym told
Wher he wonnyd in his hows at hame,
»To haue A son þou sall be bold,
And ysac sall be his name;
he sall haue frutt full mony fold».

This is quite an extensive appropriation of the York Plays, X/44—48:

— — — — — — — — — —

Wher we wer in oure house at hame,
Tille haue a sone we shulde be balde,
And Isaak shulde be his name,
And his seede shulde springe many falde.

After God's promise to Abraham to send him an heir, the poet says:

The trowth and the begynnyng
of our fayth þer begane. . . . 46/11—12.

There is a close correspondence between these lines and the York Plays, X/51—53:

The grounde and þe begynnyng
Of trowthe þat tyme be-ganne.»

The description of Rebekah and her relations in stanza 62/9—12 is given thus:

Rebecca, A damisell —
hyr fa[yr]er is not fon —
The doyghtur of batuell;
Nacor is his brothur son.

has its equivalent in the York Plays, X/365—368:

»Rabek þat damysell,
Hir fayrer is none fone,
The doughter of Batwell,
That was my brothir sone.»

The third plague God sent on Pharaoh and the Egyptians in order to make him let the Israelites depart from Egypt consisted of swarms of lice, which are mentioned in stanza 145/5—6 thus:

Then the thryd god send þem s[y]ne:
grett myse that made þem mor myschefe.

These lines seem to be a reminiscence of the York Plays, XI/273:

Lorde, grete myses bothe morn and none
Bytis vs full bittirlye.

It is also worth noticing that this is the only certain instance of *myse* = »lice» given in N. E. D., which undoubtedly confirms our supposition.

In stanza 151/1—4 it is stated that the number of the Israelites increased from 70 to 300.000:

Sexti and ten in yowth and eld
wer told when þei enturd þat land.
Now wer þei that myȝt wepyn weld
to reckynd thre C thowssand.

These two figures are not mentioned in the Vulgate nor in Hist. Schol., but a parallel to them is found in the York Plays XI/51—56:

Thay were talde but sexty and ten
Whan þei enterd in to þis lande.
Sithen haue they soionerd here in Jessen
Foure houndereth ȝere, þis we warande,

Now are they noumbered of myghty men,
Wele more þan thre hundereth thowsande. . .»

There is yet another Middle English poem by which the poet of the Paraphrase seems at least to have been influenced, viz: *Pety Iob* or *Parce Mihi Domini*, edited by HORSTMANN in *Yorkshire Writers*, Vol. II, p. 380 seq. WELLS describes it thus op. cit. 399: »It consists of 684 irregular four-stress verses abababababcbc, the stanza being headed with its Latin theme and ended with 'Parce mihi domine'. The whole is divided into nine parts or 'lessons', each a series of expanded paraphrases of a portion of the laments of Iob.» In that part of the Paraphrase which deals with the story of Iob we find in a few stanzas much the same treatment of the subject as in *Pety Iob:* the first lines of each of these stanzas contain the same Latin theme as the headings of the corresponding strophes of *Pety Iob*, and the rest of the stanza has nearly the same contents in both the poems. Below I make a comparison between these stanzas:

	The Paraphrase.	*Pety Iob*, ll. 289—90.
1244/1—4	*homo natus de muliere*,	Homo, natus de muliere,
	he says »a man of A woman born»	breui vivens tempore
	hic breui viuens tempore	repletur multis miseriis.
	»in lytyll tym his lyf is for lorn»	A man þat ys off womane bore, But lytelle whyle he lyueth here.

Borrowing is, of course, out of the question, and the influence can only be a very slight one, perhaps a reminiscence on the part of our poet of *Pety Iob* and its Latin headings. It is, however, noteworthy that this is the only part of the poem where Latin quotations are made.

	The Paraphrase.	*Pety Iob*, ll. 157—59
1248/1—4	*Memento queso domine*	Memento, queso, quod sicut lutum feceris me, & in puluerem reduces me.
	»wmthynke þe lord þat last sall ay»,	
	Quod sicit lutum feceris me	Haue mynde therffore, I the pray,
	»þat þou mad (me) of erth and slay».	O thow god almyghty kynge, Thynke thow madest me off clay.

The last instance is the following:

	The Paraphrase.	*Pety Iob*, ll. 660—661.

1262/1—4 *Dimitte ergo me, Domine vt ego plangam paululum,*	Dimitte ergo me domine, ut plangam paululum dolorem meum, etc.
'A lytyll whyle lord suffer þat lang hath bene both def and dum.'	Therffore, lorde suffre thow me a lytyll what that whyle I may.

As a point of curiosity, it may be stated that the Catholicon is mentioned once:

For ylke talent of þo,
forto tell by trew payse,
weye IX L and two;
catholicom yt so says. 1278/9—12.

Which of the various vocabularies is meant, is difficult to say; at any rate, the word in question does not occur in *Catholicon Anglicum* of 1483.

Apart from prophecies of the coming of Christ, there are only two more New Testament incidents mentioned in the Paraphrase, viz. the story of the rich man and Lazarus and of the evil-doer, who was crucified with Jesus. The former is referred to twice thus:

To þis may men In-sampyll tell
and lyghtly lere, yf yt be late,
Of þe ryche man how yt fell
and of A laȝar þat lay at his ȝate. 1227/1—4.
»lord, lazar þat lay low os led
doluen as þe ded suld be dyȝt
Full (four) days stynkand in þat sted
and lokyn fro all erthly lyȝt,
þou raysed hym vp to lyf fro ded
and mad hym man in erthly myght. 1249/1—6.

As in the case of the rich man and Lazarus, the evil-doer on the cross is also introduced by Iob, who asks for the same mercy as was granted to the malefactor. The poet lets Iob lament:

»And þe thefe þat on þe crose hang,
þat in lust had led all his lyfe
And manys murtherung mad oft amang
and styrd men vnto mekyll stryfe,
þou gaf hym grace with þe to gang
in paradyse with ryotes ryfe.» 1250/1—6.

In the following cases we have not been able to find the sources.

1. In stanza 183 God is at first unwilling to pardon the Israelites, who had murmered at the news of the land of Canaan, but He changed His mind and granted them light and fresh water, food and clothing. This latter fact is not mentioned in the Vulgate, Hist. Schol. or aṅy other work we know of.

2. When the evil spirit was on Saul, David was sent to play before the King and refresh him. One day, when David was playing, Saul suddenly seized his spear and aimed at David, but

> þen Mycol kest a cry,
> and Dauid turned hym soyne.
> Fast home he can hym hye;
> god wold noyȝth yt were doyne (524/9—12).

We have found it nowhere stated that Michal saved her future husband.

3. King Ahab, who was besieged in Samaria by Benhadad, is said to have killed 5000 Syrians, whereupon the rest were glad to flee. Whence this figure was obtained is unknown to us.

Corrigenda et Addenda

(The text.)

Stanza	5/9	On angels *read* o[f] angels.
»	10/10	That thei ne myrth suld myse *read* That they n[o] myrth suld myse.
»	16/4	full fayr and clere *read* full fayr and [free].
»	53/6	*Delete comma after* hyr.
»	83/1	lyi *read* ly[a].
»	83/3	thei *read* th[a].
»	106/4	folde *read* f[lo]de.
»	132/1	wysman *read* wys man.
»	150/4	þe[s] *read* þer, the MS. form = »these».
»	206/2	Amonyse *read* Amo[r]yse.
»	235/2	charege *read* charegd.
Page	87	foot-notes l. 2 from top *insert* quartus in bottom margin *after* cancelled.
»	87	foot-notes l. 1 from bottom *delete* quartus in bottom margin.
Stanza	288/10—11	*Substitute comma for semicolon after* lede *in line 10 and insert comma after* salmana *in line 11.*
»	349/6	postrons *read* post[es], cf. p. XVIII.
»	351/5	In secrett *read* In soreth, cf. p. XVIII.
»	351/9	*Delete comma after* gyle.
»	364/7	And sone both his eyn putt þei owt *read* And both his eyn sone putt þei owt, cf. p. XVII.
»	388/12	bot þoo þat furth frutt broyȝt *read* bot þoo þat frutt furth broyȝt, cf. p. XVII.
»	399/3—4	*Insert semicolon after* name *in line 3.*
Page	148	foot-notes l. 1 from top Jabas *read* Jabase.
Stanza	439/5	thre Cetys *read* [sere] Cetys, cf. p. XIX.
»	487/11	þen þe kyng was well esed *read* þen was þe kyng well esed, cf. p. XVII.
»	498/1	The sprett þat I of spake are *read* The sprett þat I spake of are, cf. p. XVII.

A Middle English Metrical Paraphrase of the Old Testament

Editorial principles

In printing the text (MS. **S.**) all MS. abbreviations have been expanded into italics. Alterations in the MS. reading or additions to the lines have been set in brackets. Words given in the MS. but cancelled in the text will be found in the foot-notes. Parts of compound words which are written separately in the MS. have not been joined in the printed text by hyphens. In this category such words, too, have been included where the first member of the compound is a prefix. On the other hand, where the MS. runs separate words together, these have been separated in the printed text but with comment in the foot-notes. The stanzaic division has often been indicated already in the MS. As to the use of capitals the MS. has been strictly followed. But the punctuation, which is entirely neglected in the MS., has been given by the editor. Cf. EETS. e. s. 158.

Concerning emendations of the wording the following principles have been adopted: 1) Obvious errors corrected, including, if possible, gaps in the context. 2) Incongruous rime-words, unless dialectal variants, have been altered. 3) Alterations on metrical grounds have generally been made, especially when the lines contain too many or too few feet, provided only the metrical deficiency cannot be ascribed to the use of a collateral form of the word or the inflectional form required, such as *sythyn* for *syn*, *kynradyn* for *kynred*, *Canaan* for *Canan*, *erthe*, with the final *e* pronounced, for *erth*, *vnto* or *forto* for *to*, *befall* for *fall*, *wordes*, plur., for *word*, plur., *commanded*, pret., for *command*, pret., etc. or vice versa. On the whole, however, the present work has adopted the view that the metrical criterion should be handled with great prudence, so that a metrical incongruity should be left alone in preference to giving an emendation savouring too much of guesswork or of trust in the metrical infallibility of the original. — Otherwise the wording of the MS. has been strictly adhered to even in such cases where, most likely, it was not that of the author.

As to MS. **L.** all deviations from MS. **S.** have been adduced except those which regard a difference in the occurrence of abbreviations (contraction signs).

(MS. Selden Supra 52.)

fol. 2 a. 1 God fad*er* i*n* heuy*n* of myghtes most
That mad this mold *and* all man kynd,
The sun þ*at* send*es* vs throwth to tast
wesdom *and* welth *and* wytt at wyn,
The g*ra*ce of the holy gast
In whom all gudnes behoues to be gyn
Thrugh mediacy of mary chast
That help*es* to safe v*us* of o*ur* syn,
Swylke myȝt vnto me send
thys boke ryȝt to aray,
Begy*nny*ng, mydd*es*, *and* end,
that yt be to godd*es* pay.

Invocation to the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, through the Virgin Mary, for help in writing the poem.

2 This buke is of grett degre,
Os all wettys that ben wyse,
ffor of the bybyll sall yt be
the poynt*es* that ar mad most in p*ri*ce,
Als maysters of dyuinite
and on, the mayst*ur* of storyse,
ffor sympyll men soyn forto se,
sett*es* yt þ*us* in this schort assyse;
And in moyr schort man*er*
is my mynd forto make yt,
That men may lyghtly leyre
to tell *and* vnder take yt.

Its sources are the Bible, the Fathers of the Church and especially the »Master of Stories«; while its purpose is to teach in an easier and shorter way.

---

1. *In upper margin:* Genesis. Samuel Purchas *in black ink* (*late hand*). *Heuser reads* Parckar (Anglia XXXI p. 3). *In right corner: 2 | 7* r *of* mary *above the line* | — **2.** 8 *MS.* schortes.

The Bible and all connected with it should be regarded as Holy Writ. All patriarchs and prophets fortold the coming of Christ, whose commands we must know in order to be saved.

3 This boke that is the bybyll cald,
and all that owtt of yt is drawn,
ffor holy wrytt we sall yt hald
and hono*ur* yt eu*er* os *our* awn;
All ꝑa*tri*ark*es and* proph*ettes* yt told,
so [e]u*er* ꝑ*er* sayng*es* sekerly ar knawn,
And all wer fygurs fayr to fald
how coy*m*my*n*g of crist myȝt be kawn.
God graunt vs crist to knaw
All *our* form faders crauyd
And so to lere is law
that *our* sawlis may be sauyd.

The Book of Genesis tells how God made Heaven and Earth and all that therein is. The Earth was void, and the Spirit moved on the waters.

4 In this begy*n*ny*n*g god v*us* wysch
well for werke *with* wyll *and* toyȝt.
In this boke that [is] cald genesis
ther may men see the soth vnsogh
how god, that belde*s* in endlese blyse,
all only *with* hys word hath wrogh
heuy*n* on heght for hy*m and* hys,
this erth *and* all that eu*er* is oght.
This erth was wyde *and* wast
and no gud on yt grouyd;
On the heght the holi gast
Abown the waters mouyd.

God made Heaven and Hell, one bright as day, and the other dark as night. In Heaven He created the Angels, among whom was the chief Lucifer, the «Light-Bearer».

5 hell he mad marke thrugh hys myȝt
So that no medcyn mend yt may;
God bad that in the heuyns on hyght
Suld be mad lyght for [euer and] ay,
And ꝑ*er* in mad he angels bryght
to se*r*ue hy*m* self eu*er*moyr to pay.
The merknes namyd he to be nyȝt,
And the lyghtnes to be day.
fol. 2 b.
On angels on was schefe,
And hys name lucyfer,
Vnto his lord most lefe,
in ynglysch »lyȝt beyrer».

3. 6 *MS.* ouer; *Heuser reads* on (Anglia XXXI p. 4) / 7 *Heuser reads* wor / 8 *Heuser suggests* k[n]awn *but* kawn *is evidently p. p. of OE.* cēowan *in the ME. sense of* »*meditate on*». / — **4.** 3 *Heuser inserts* [is] *after* cald / 4 *the second* e *of* see *above the line* / — **5.** 9 de casu lucifer *in upper margin (faint). Also* Genesis *in upper margin.*

6 And for he was so fayr that tyd,
Angels in hest [sone can] he hent,
And sayd he suld be glorefyd
lyke to hym that hys lyfe had lent.
Then in this blyse myȝt he not byd
bott hastely to hell he wentt,
ffor syn in heuyn is non hyde.
All dyd the same of hys assent;
The tend ordyr of angell
Thurgh prid, os kend our clerkes,
Vnto fowle fendes fell.
þer wer the fyrst day werkes.

He wanted to be like God, and in consequence fell to Hell, bringing with him the Tenth Order of the Angels. This ends the work of the first day.

7 When god that semly syȝt con see,
hym toyȝt yt well withoutyn were.
A firmament then bad he be
To part the waters in sonder seyre.
The watur a bown þan ordand he
To wend abowt with wyndes clere,
That oþer by neth in law degre
To moyst the erth in his manere.
The firmament namyd he heuyn,
To lend lastand for ay.
Ther ys no moyr to neuyn.
So sessyd the secund day.

Then God created the Firmament, which divided the waters. This was the work of the second day.

8 The waters that wer on erth ordand
god hath them geddyrd all in a sted,
And the sted that thei suld in stand
ys callyd the se by ryghwyse rede;
And the dry erth namyd he the land,
he bad that yt suld spryng *and* sprede
herbys *and* treyse with wod *and* wand
And sed to saw when thei wer dede,
So that new suld vp spryng
There sted for to restoyre
And flours *and* frutt furth bryng.
The thryd endyd þore.

Then He gathered the waters into one place, and bade the earth bring forth herbs and trees, grass and fruit.

6. 10 *MS.* kendes; clerkes *cancelled before* kendes | 12 *MS.* ther fyrst / — **7.** 2 *last* e *of* wer *above the line.* — **8.** 11 *MS.* forto furth bryng.

On the fourth day He made the two lights, the sun and the moon, to be the signs of the days and years; and He made the stars also.

9 God ordand then grett lyghtys two
T[o] moy[u] apon the firmament
To parte the days the nyghtys fro,
and ȝer fro ȝer be sesons sent,
The moyr be for the day to go
And the lesse to the nyȝt at attent.
The sun *and* the moyn namyd he them,
By them on erthe the lyȝt is lent.
Sternys on heuyn he sett
with bemys schynand for bryght
By certan mesurs mett.
Thus was the faurt day dyght.

On the two following days He made fish and fowl, beasts of the earth, and every creeping thing. And then He created man in His own image. To be a help meet for him He made the woman out of Man's ribs.

10 God bad that in the see suld brede
dyuerse fysches to flett with fyn,
And of them selfe thei sall haue sede
All way to wax waters with in;
And fowls he ordand fayr forto fede
with wynges *and* wynd ther way to wynd,
By erth *and* ayer þer lyfes to lede
And same won withoutyn fynd.
he blessyd þos werkes fayr
That thei ne myrth suld myse,
Bot fyll both watur *and* ayer.
The fyft day werke was this.

11 Then bad god þer suld bestes bee
on dyuerse kynd os thei ar kend
On ylka syd in seyre cuntre,
And wormes on the wome to wende.
Then sayd he to hym self, »make we
A man that may bestes mys Amend,
ffor haue power *and* pauste
on bestes *and* fowls withoutyn end.
And that man wyll we geyse
Aftur *our* awn ymage ay
And like to *our* awn liknes.»
So was don the sext day.

fol. 3 a

9. 1 *MS.* The moyn / 3 *MS.* days and the nyghtys. / — **10.** 5 Genesis *in upper margin* / 8 *MS.* wons.

12 God toght the *con*sell was not clere
A man alon hys lyf to led;
Som o*þer* suld be vnto hy*m* nere
hy*m* forto helpe yf he had nede.
Owt of hys syde hee sonderd seyre
A crokyd rybe, os clerke*s* can rede,
And *þer* of formyd he hy*m* a fere,
A female, frutt furth to bred.
he gafe them power playn
Abuf All erthly thynge,
with all gudes that my*ȝ*t gayn
Tyll thei breke hys bydyng.

13 God gaf man fre wyll tó be wyse,
And i*n* cer*t*an he sett hys name;
Then plantyd he erthly *par*adyse
And [in] that place he putt Adam.
he fyilyd yt full of all delyce
And made hy*m* suferan of the same,
wyls he wold wone *with*outy*n* vyce,
þer forto byd *with*outy*n* blame.
Ther wer all erbys *and* tress
with flours *and* frutt gud woyn;
God bad Adam go chese,
and ette of all bot on.

Adam was made Lord of Paradise, where he could eat of all the fruits with one exception.

14 In myddes of *par*adyse yt stud
with frut [so] fayr to fede *and* fyll;
Who of that frutt my*ȝ*t fang *þer* fude
suld clerly knaw both gud *and* yll.
*Þer*for god wernyd hy*m* for hys gud,
And bad hy*m* lett that frutt be styll,
»yf *þ*ou yt ethe, *with* wordes wode
Soyn [*þ*]o[u] be wast owt of thy wyll.«
Of all o*þer* that ther wer
he gaf hy*m* largely lefe,
That bad he hy*m* for beyr
ffor dowt of moyr myschefe.

In the midst of this garden stood the Tree of Knowledge, the fruit of which God had forbidden him to eat; disobedience would mean ruin.

13. 9 *MS.* tresses / — **14.** 3 fand *cancelled before* fang / 8 *MS.* to / 11 bad *above the line.*

Then our Fallen Foe saw that Mankind was going to occupy his former place. Envy seized him, and he tried to find some subtle plan whereby he could bring disaster on them.

15 Bot then the fend, *our* fellyst foe, fol. 3 b
That fallyn was not fer þe fore,
ffor that werkyng he was full wo
That þo wyghys so worthy were;
*with*in hy*m* selfe *per*sauyd he soe
That thei the same sted suld restore
That he *and* hys felows fell fro;
That mad hy*m* mornyng mekyll more.
he toyght so suld not be,
*per*for in schort qwylle
he soyght vp sotelte
them both for to gyle.

The Serpent came with a woman's face to tempt Eve.

16 he wyst full well w*ith*outy*n* wene
how god had demyd in all degre.
As a *ser*pent soyn was he sen,
with woma*n* face full fayr *and* clere.
To Eue he sayd, »what may yt meyn
That ȝe tent noyȝt to this tree?«
Scho sayd, »that wold turne vs te tene;
God bad that we suld lett yt be«.
The fend sayd, »foyles the more,
by that skyll scornyd ar ȝe;
God wold not that ȝe wer
Alway so wyse os he«.

Eve ate of the Tree of Knowledge, and tempted Adam to do the same, and then they saw they were naked.

17 »This frutt may gyf wysdom *and* wytt,
Als god*es* so sall ȝe both be gyn«.
Scho saw that frutt so fayr *and* fytt,
And eth *þer* of this welth to wyn.
Scho bad Ada*m* to ette of yt,
To bytt *þer*on he wold noȝt blyne.
hys boldnes *and* that balfull bytt
Cast hym *in* care *and* all hys kynd.
When thei this frutt had takyd,
qwerfor thei wer both blamyd,
Thei saw then thei wer nakyd,
ffull yll thei wer a schamyd.

---

15. 1 Genes*is in upper margin* / 9 yt so /— **16.** 3 *MS.* sent.

Adam and Eve hid themselves from God, who asked them what they had done. They confessed their sin, and Eve said the Serpent beguiled her.

18 *With* lefys *þer priuates* can thei hyd,
And playnly durst thei not apeyre.
God callyd on Ada*m* in that tyd,
And he sayd, »lord, I hyd me heyre,
I hath so doyn, I der not byd.»
God askyd why *and* in what manere.
»lord, yf I *wer* yll ocupyd
yt was thrugh fandyng of my fere».
God askyd why that schoe went
That forbeyd frutt for to fele.
Scho sayd, »lord, the *ser*pent
gart me do ylka deyle.»

God cursed the Worm, and foretold to Adam and Eve their future sorrows.

19 God told then vnto all thre
what thei suld feyle for *þer* forfeytt.
To the worme he sayd, »waryd *þou* be,
wend on thy wome ay erth forto eytte;
And, woma*n*, frutt that co*m*ys on the
Sall be broy*ȝ*t furth *with* paynys grett;
And, Ada*m*, for *þou* trowd not me,
wyn *þou* thy foyd *with* swynke *and* swett;
So sall all thyn of spryng
vnto the vttmast ende».
To ma*n*ys kynd com this thyng
Thrugh falssyng of the fend.

Adam and Eve were driven from the Garden for ever. Cain was born, accursed because he slew his brother Abel with the jaw-bone of an ass.

fol. 4 a 20 fro *par*adyse thei wer exilyd
*with*outy*n gra*ce agayn to passe.
So went thei both os beste*s* wyld,
Thei cowd no louyng. bot alase,
Soyn Eue *con*sauyd *and* bare a chyld,
Cayn, that sythyn so *cur*syd was
Be cause of Abell meke *and* myld
That he slow *with* a cheke of a nase;
ffor the offerand of abell
was accepte in godde*s* sy*ȝ*t,
And Caymys went down to hell
and to god gaf noe ly*ȝ*t.

---

18. 10 forso *cancelled before* forbeyd. /— **19.** 4 erth *above the line.* /— 20 2 genesis *in upper margin.*

Adam grieved for the loss of Abel, but he had about sixty more children by Eve.

21 When Adam wyst *with*outyn wer
This wekyd werk, he was full wo;
he morned eu*er and* mad yll cher
ffor meke Abell was murtherd so.
Bot aft*ur* that full mony A ȝer,
Whe*n* he tyll Eue agan can go,
Then bare scho suns *and* doyghters sere,
The story says sexty *and* moe;
Then ylke on oþ*er* toke
and lyfyd be law of kynd,
Als who so lik*es* to loke
may seke And forther fynd.

Of Cain came Tubalcain, the master of every work in metal, and his brother Iubal, the father of music. Adam's third son was Seth, the chronicler of all the deeds that took place after the Flood.

22 Of caymys kynd come Tubulcan,
of metall mellyd he amang,
And diu*er*se thyng*es* to helpe of man
ordand he both schort *and* lang.
hys brothyr Iuball he began
musyke, ose mynstralsy *and* sang.
The harpe by hy*m* was ordand then
And oþ*er* myrth qwer men suld gang.
Of Ada*m* suns the thryd
hyght Seth, man myld of mode.
he wrott what ded*es* thei dyd
That last aft*ur* the flode.

Of Seth came Methusalah, who lived to be 969 years old, and he begat Lamech, who had a son, Noah. This last had three sons, Shem, Ham and Japheth. The world was now 3000 years old and without rain, except that from Paradise came four streams, which watered it.

23 Of seth then com Matussile,
lyfyd he ix C sexty *and* ix ȝere,
Of hy*m* com lameth, of hy*m* noe
that vnto god wer gud *and* dere.
And Noe had suns fully thre,
Sem, cham, Jafeth in fere.
Then was the werld gone *in* degree
Thre Thowssand [ȝere] for neue*n* by nere.
No rayn on erth then fell
to gayr the gresse vp ryse,
Bot faur fludes of a well
that went from pa*r*adyce.

---

21. 11 k *cancelled before* loke. /— **22.** 12 MS. lastur *by anticipation of the abbreviation for* 'ur' *in* aftur / — **23.** *Four illegible words in left margin. The words* Matussile lameth Noe *written under each other to the right of the page — surrounded by a line — paler ink and another hand* / 8 in *cancelled before* by.

The whole world, except Noah and his children, indulged in wickedness, and so lost all their mirth.

24 Then was no lernyng of no law;
Thei lyfyd in lust euyn at þer lyst.
þer creatur thei cowde noyȝt knaw,
The wenyd that non ther werkes wyst.
fforto greyfe god thei had non aw,
þerfor all myrthes son thei myst.
God spake to noye *and* sayd this saw,
»þou *and* thy chylder sall [be] blest;
All folke so fowll I fynd
coruppyd *and* soyllyd with syn;
Me rewthes I made man kynd
To wond thys werld with in.

God told Noah that he was determined to destroy every living creature, except the family of Noah.

25 »And sen I se them so myse gone
And in hert ha[ue] no mynd of me,
I sall dystroy them euery ylkon.
Ouer all this werld sall wax A see
So that on lyue sall lefe ryȝt none
Bot þou, þi wyf, thi suns thre,
And þair thre wyfes, ȝe aght alon
In land to lyf sall leuyd be.
Bestes *and* fowles in flygh
Non beys for ruth refusyd,
Or all to ded be dyght
ffor syn ȝe folke hath vsyd.»

God told Noah how to build the Ark, and ordered him to include in it a pair of every animal, male and female.

26 »To make an erke of tymber strang
þou *and* þi meneȝe into abyd,
Thre hunderth cubbettes loke yt be lang,
And fyfty cubbeyttes it sall be wyd,
And thryty cubbeyttes the heght sall gang;
And sett a wyndow in the syde,
And cloyse yt well, elles dows þou wrang,
To turne the watur in ylka tyde.
And stages grett plenty
bus the make, mony *and* fayre,
Wher bestes *and* fowles may be,
of ylka kynd a payre.»

---

24. 5 aw *written above* nai *cancelled* / 8 fluuius (*very faint*) *on right of page* /— **25.** 2 *MS.* in hert hath / 5 Noye *in upper margin* / 10 Arca noe *on right, surrounded by line* (*faint*) / – **26.** 2 *MS.* into / 12 *MS.* mony of ylka / kynd a *above the line.*

It rained for forty days and forty nights, and the water rose up to fifty cubits above the highest hill. It increased and decreased during ten months, and after that the Ark rested in Arminia.

27 When all was wroygh in hys kynd wyse,
yt ray*n*nyd, als the*n* was godd*es* wyll,
ffaurty days be full asysse
And faurty nyghtys to tell þ*er* tyll.
The wat*ur* ou*er* the werld can ryse,
ffyfty cubbeytt*es* ou*er* the heghest hyll;
yt drownyd the pepyll in all p*ar*tyse
Bot VIII that in the arch w*er* styll.
Then monethes yt encressyd,
And in armynie that tyd,
When the wat*ur* sessyd,
the arch be gan to abyd.

Noah sent forth a raven and a dove, and the dove alone returned with an olive-branch. And soon after Noah saw the land, and they hastened to disembark.

28 And þ*er*by Noe can vnd*er*stand
That thei wer sett apon som playn.
A rayuen he sent furth to seke the land,
Bot that fowlle com not a gayn.
Then to A dowfe he hath co*m*mawnd
To seke hy*m* sum thyng for c*er*tan.
An olyue branche full soyn he fand
and broyȝt to schep, — then w*er* thei fayn.
Soyne thei saw then drye
apeyr in dyu*er*se place.
To land thei hast in hye
And louyd god on hys g*r*ace.

Everything came forth out of the Ark. Noah's sons sowed and planted and produced good crops. God gave the rainbow as a token that he would never destroy the world again by flood.

29 The best*es* in ther kynd*es* knew
Vnto what p*ar*ty thei suld repayre
To hold them hole of hyd *and* hew,
And fowles flow furth i*n* the Ayre.
And noye suns then satt *and* sew,
And soyn the broyȝt furth frutt full fayre,
And so the werld then wex all new;
Thei m*u*ltiplyd w*ith* mony an heyre.
God gafe a sygne to noye
Of the raynbow ryȝt þore,
That he suld neu*er* dystroye
the we[rl]d w*ith* wat*ur* moyre.

27. 2 wy *cancelled under* wyll / 9 ne *of* monethes *above the line* / — **29.** 12 *MS.* welrd.

30 Noye was the fyrst that vynes sett
wyhc bare of grap*es* full grett plente.
Of them so sadly can he eytt
That of the wyn dronkyn was he;
he fell on slepe down on hys flett;
Caym com *and* scornyd hys p*reuyty*,
his brethyr duly dyde þ*er* dette
And hyd hym Agayn in god degree.
fol 5 a. When Noye his werkyng wyst
he werryd hy*m* for thi;
his brethyr both wer blest
Als þ*er* werke was worthy.

Noah planted a vineyard, and drank of the wine, and was drunk and naked. Cain, when he saw his nakedness, poured scorn on him, but his two brethren covered him. Noah cursed Cain and blessed the others.

31 The pepyll fast then multiplied
Tho thowssandes moe, or VI, or VII.
Thei fand a feld was lang *and* wyde,
And þor in hand thei ordand euyn
And began A grett towr in that tyd
wych thei sayd suld rech vnto heue*n*.
Whe*n* god saw them sett so *in* p*rid*,
he kast forto dystroy þ*er* steue*n*.
Noyne wyst what o þ*er* wald,
Bot euy*n* ose foylles thei foyn,
Wherfor that place is callyd
This day bablion.

The people multiplied and began to build the Tower of Babel, but they were scattered abroad by God, not knowing one another's language.

32 Sythyn Noe p*er*sauyd by knawyng clere
That day was co*m*yn that hy*m* bod dy;
The*n* had he lyfyd in land*es* here
ix C wynters *and* als fyfty.
yf we suld say hys suns all sere
And then dep*art* þ*er* pr*o*genite
[þ]att lesson wer full long to leere.
þerfor we lefe them mor lyghtly
And neue*n* bot that ned*es*,
and euyn vnto vnd*er*stand,
And þat most lely led*es*
to lere *our* law in land.

Noah died at the age of 950. To relate all his descendants would be too long, so only the most important are given.

---

30. 6 k *cancelled before* Caym / 9 Genes*is and* Turris babilonis *in upper margin* / ff *cancelled before* When /— **31.** 10 -d *after* foyn *cancelled* /— **32.** 2 bod dy *above the line* / 7 *MS.* latt lesson.

The genealogy of Shem. Abraham married Sarai, and Nahor Milcah. These two women were sisters.

33 Of seme come phaloge forþ*er* þan,
And of phaloge come thare,
Abraham, Nacor, *and* Aran;
Thare suns w*er* all thos thre.
Of Aran com loth, þ*at* lele man,
That honerd god in gud degree.
Vnto this pepyll god began
To m*u*ltiplye *and* make them free.
Then wer þ*er* systers Tway,
abra*m* toke saray,
And Nacor toke melkala,
Thei wer ther wyfes worth*a*y.

Terah lived in Ur, where Haran's youngest son, the father of Lot, died. And Abraham was Lot's uncle. At the age of 200 years Terah died.

34 Ther was ay wunt to wun
In vrry, whar caldeis wo*n*nand were.
Ther dyed Aran ȝongest son,
was loth fad*er*, os we herd here.
And loth w*ith* abraha*m* furth was fun
as w*ith* hys eme *and* man most nere.
Then thare so w*ith* yll was bown,
To lyf he myȝt not langer here.
he died whe*n* he was old
Twa hunderth ȝer, men wott.
Then is her no ferther*m*er told
Bot of Abram *and* loth.

God commanded Abraham to depart with his wife and Lot into another country, the land of Canaan, where he would make him father of a great nation.

35 God spake to abraha*m* for his sped,
»On this fold may þou not be fune,
Bot take thy wyfe *and* w*ith* the lede,
I sall the wysch wher þou sall wune
To haue enogh *and* neu*er* nede,
w*ith* loth also thi brothyr sune.
þor sall I multiplye thi sed
And helpe the os I hath be gune.»
To the land of Canan
so sent he furth þos thre.
God sayd to abraham then, fol. 5 b
»This land gyf i to the.»

33. 12 -a- *in* worthay *above the line* /— **34.** 2 -n *of* In *above the line* / — **35.** 2 sure *cancelled before* fune. / 11 Genesis *in upper margin.*

36 Abraham *and* loth can same dwell
*wit*h mekyll myrth full mony a ȝere;
Thei wex so rych that þ*er* catell
Couerd the cuntre fer *and* nere.
Then mad thei counand them a mell
That the suld make ther wo*n*ny*n*g sere,
ffor grett debatt that oft fell
Amang them that ther hyrdmen were.
Abraha*m* wo*n*nyd styll at home
wher god had byddyn hy*m* come,
And loth wentt to sodome,
A cyte be syd the flume.

Abraham and Lot became very rich. Later on they separated owing to strife between their two herdsmen. Abraham remained in the land, but Lot went to Sodom, a city beside the river.

37 Sodome was A grett cety,
gommer an oþ*er* nere ther by,
And next them was þ*er* oþ*er* thre,
The wych wer fyllyd *wit*h syn fouly.
Thei drede not god in no degre,
Bot lyfyd in lust *and* lechere —
And þat thei schewyd in syȝt to see —
And agay*n*st kynd most on cu*m*ly.
ffoule is to declare
how þ*er* werkyns was.
No syb ne spoussyd þai spare,
ne nowther lad ne las.

The wickedness of Sodom and Gomorrah and three other cities near by.

38 long aft*ur* that this grett warre con spry*n*g
Amang kynge*s* of that cuntre.
ffor god sayd thei sall sese for no thyng,
Or tho V cytes *con*querd be.
Baram was of sodam kyng,
And gomer also gouernd he.
When he herd tell of this tythyng,
he semyld pepyll full grett plente,
Agayns his enmys to go
*wit*h schott, scheld, *and* spere;
And loth was on of þo,
A full wysman of were.

The inhabitants of these cities, among whom Lot was living, were attacked by their neighbours.

---

36. 10 hy*m* *above the line* / — **37.** 2 *letter cancelled before* nere / — **38.** 8 fer *cancelled before* full.

The Sodomites were defeated, and Lot was taken captive. Abraham went at once to rescue him.

39 Sone wer þai semyld ylkon
And bett on fast *with* burnyscht brand*es*.
The sodomites wer soyn sloyn;
The myȝt not flee, thei lefyd þ*er* land*es*.
And in that batell loth was tane
And holdyn in hys enmys hand*es*.
Abraham, hys eme, was wyll of wone
whe*n* he herd tell [of] þos tythand*es*.
he wold not byd ne blyne,
Bott went *with* power playne,
And rescuyd hys cosyn,
And broyȝt hy*m* home agayn.

Melchizedek gave bread and wine to Abraham as a thank-offering. He was a priest and loved by God.

40 Thus sauyd he all thies folkes in fere
That p*re*sond war *and* putt to pyn.
Melchesedeke whe*n* he can here
how abraha*m* had sauyd hys cosyn,
Agayns hym wentt he *with* gud chere,
And p*re*sent hy*m* *with* bred *and* wyne.
he sayd, »I wott *with*outyn were
God is thy frend full fast *and* fyne.«
he was both p*re*st *and* kyng,
And keper of the lay;
he wyst well that this thyng
was gretly god to pay.

God thanked Abraham and promised him wealth. But Abraham could not be happy without an heir.

41 The thryd day abraha*m* was co*m*yn hame fol. 6 a
To se his se*r*ua*n*d*es* old *and* yonge.
God come to hym *and* callyd by name
Abraha*m*, »I thanke the of this thyng;
Als I desyrre, þou doys the same;
þ*er*for thi frutt sall spred *and* spryng.
þou sall haue welth of wyld *and* tame
And myght *with*out more mo*u*rny*n*g.«
he sayd, »what myrt emong
[haue I] of tame *and* wyld,
fforto lyfe her þus lang
And dye *with*outyn chyld?«

39. 6 Abram *on right side* /— **40.** 2 payn *altered to* pyn / 10 law *cancelled before* lay /— **41.** 1 Genes*is and* Abram *in upper margin* / 9 emong *added later in a different hand* / 10 *MS.* I haue.

God showed him the land which his descendants should hold. His seed should multiply, and be as numerous as the stars in the heavens.

42 God kend hy*m* comforth in that tyd;
ffurth of hys hows he can hy*m* lede,
And bad hy*m* see on ylka syde
Ou*er* all the land in lengh *and* brede.
»All sall be thyne *and* w*i*th the abyd
And to thyn heyrs ay furth to fede.
Ose g*ra*uell in the se is multyplyd,
So sall I m*u*ltiplye thi sede.
Who so may tell be tale
the stern Apo*n* heuy*n*,
Als essely thei sall
thi sed nowmer *and* neuyn.»

Abraham wondered at this, as his wife was barren. But he had a son Ishmael by her handmaid.

43 Abraham was all m*e*rueld then
That eu*er* hys sede suld sogatt*es* ȝelde
By cause that his wyfe was baran,
And thei wer both i*n* grett eld.
The wyf wroyȝt ose a gud woma*n*
To geyt a barne to be þ*er* beld;
hyr *se*ru*a*nt p*r*euely scho wan
tyl abraham at hys wyll to weld.
þ*er*for so yt be fell:
scho beldyd by hy*m* all nyȝt
And *con*sauyd ysmaell,
that afterward was full wyght.

Hagar despised her mistress, but Sara acted wisely and took care of the mother and child. She prayed to God for a child of her own.

44 When Agar wyst scho was w*i*th chyld,
hyr hert i*n* p*r*ide be gane to ryse;
hyr maystrys that was meke *and* myld
In all hyr ded*es* scho can dyspyse.
Then sarai wyst scho was be gylyd,
Bot eu*er* scho wrogh os woman wyse.
hyr *and* hyr barn both can scho bylde,
And p*r*ayd eu*er* god for bett*ur* gyse
To send them sum ryȝt ayre
That myȝt ther welthes weld.
Bot scho was in dyspayr
any barn to beyre for eld.

42. 10 *MS.* heue*n*yn /— **43.** 10 *MS.* beldyld.

When Abraham was 100 years old, God promised him an heir, Isaac, and instituted circumcision.

45 Aft*ur* qwe*n* abraha*m* was old
A C wynters, then wex he tame,
And in that tyme god to hy*m* told
Wher he wo*n*nyd in his hows at hame,
»To haue A son þou sall be bold,
And ysac sall be his name;
he sall haue frutt full mony fold.»
Abraha*m* toke tent *and* trowd that same.
God co*m*maund in þat tyd
that abraha*m* *and* all his
Suld all be circu*m*cisyd,
so to amend þer mys.

Their names were changed after this to Abraham and Sarah. Because he believed God, he became the Father of the chosen race.

46 So dyd thei sone *and* hyght in hy
The law of god hertly to hold.
ffor abraha*m* it is sayd schortly
That abraha*m* then he suld be cald,
And hys wyf, that hygh sarai, fol. 6 b
ffull sare suld hyr name be tald.
Ther kynredyn *and* þer cu*m*pany
wer circu*m*sysed so ȝong *and* old.
ffor Abraha*m* trowd þat thyng,
ose clerk*es* declare it can;
The trowth *and* the begy*n*ny*n*g
of o*ur* fayth þer be gane.

One day three young men came to Abraham, and they stayed with him for the night. He asked then what journey they were taking.

47 ffell aft*ur* long apon a day
Abraha*m* was tyllyd vnder A tre
In hy seson hy*m* to play
By syd A hyll that heght Ma*m*bre.
Thre chylder com þor in the way
als co*m*ly ose eu*er* men myȝt see,
[And] cled in honest wed wer þai,
All semand on eld to be.
ffor thei wer fayr to syȝt;
he helsyd them os hende,
And herberd them all nyȝt,
And askyd whedd*er* þei wende.

---

46. 3 it *written over* yrtt *cancelled* / 4 he *above the line* / 5 Genesis *in upper margin* / 8 circumsysed *written over* cursyd *cancelled*. **47.** 3 *MS.* In hy*m* seson 7 *MS.* In cled.

48 Vnto hym answerd on of þai
And sayd, »we ar goddes messynger;
I am sent [vn]to sara,
Scho sall haue A son this same ȝere,
And to morn wendes my felows twa
To do goddes bedyng, both in fere;
To sodom *and* Gomor þei go
To synke them down for syns sere.»
Tokyn of the trinite
to abraham þer was tone.
All yf he saw ther thre,
All he honerde os one.

They told him they were God's messengers, and had come to promise Sarah a son. They then journeyed on to Sodom and Gomorrah to punish these cities for their sins. A token of the trinity was thus given to Abraham he saw three people but honoured them as one.

49 Abraham had care then for hys kyne
And for hys frendes þat ill suld fare.
he prayd god for to abyd *and* blyn
And gud folke for the yll to spare.
God sayd þer was non gud þer in
Bot loth *and* þo that with hym ware;
And fro that wo well suld thei wyn.
So was he comforth of his care.
Tway chylder wentt at morn
to sodom the gaynyst gate.
Thei fand loth them be forne
When thei enterd the ȝatte.

Abraham asked God to spare the good in Sodom and Gomorrah, and this was promised; thus Lot and his people were saved through the agency of two young men.

50 Vnto hys hows with them he hyed
And ordand mett for them *and* mo.
Hys ennemys com on ylka syd
And bad furth þo chylder two.
Hys doyghturs proferd he that tyd,
Bot thei sayd nay, thei wold non of þo.
Then vnto god he cald *and* cryde
þos byttur folkes to scheld hym fro.
God mad them blynd to be
So that thei toke no tent,
Tyll loth with hys meneȝe
And þo chylder wer went.

He refused to give up the two young men when they were demanded by the inhabitants, but offered his two daughters instead. The people were not satisfied. Then God struck the inhabitants with blindness. Lot and his family escaped.

48. 2 signum trinitatis *on right side of page* 3 *MS.* forto 8 n *of* down *above the line* 12 b *cancelled before* one. **50.** 8 byttur *above* bett *cancelled.*

God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah; and Lot's wife, because she broke God's special command and looked back, became a pillar of salt.

51 When loth was passyd the Cyte playn
with hys wyfe *and* two doght*urs* dere,
God bad thei suld not go agayn, fol. 7 a
ne of that fayr forther inquere.
þos cytes sa*n*ke þ*er* c*er*tan,
And the sownd was herd, a hydwyse bere,
The wyf the*n* wyst hyr frende*s* wer slayn
And lokyd agayn w*ith* sy*m*pyll chere.
ffor scho dyd that owtrage
That god bad dame do neuer,
Scho wurthyd to an ymag
of salt *and* sall be euere.

Lot went and dwelled in a mountain outside Zoar. His daughters, in order to preserve their race, gave their father wine and made him sleep.

52 When loth saw how scho was dyȝt
þer styll to stand i*n* a salt stone.
To a hyll syd, that sogor hyȝt,
hys way full wysly he hath tane.
þor dwellyd thei fere from all men syȝt,
ffor cyty neyr them was none.
The wemen wenyd no werly wyȝt
wer leuyd on lyfe bot them allon.
þ*er*for, or eu*er* the syne
þe werld to fulfyll,
Thei gafe ther fadyr wyne
and made hy*m* slepe full styll.

The elder had a son by him called Moab; the younger had a son also.

53 The eldyr syst*ur* by hy*m* lay,
The werld to maynten at hyr myȝt.
he delt w*ith* hyr or yt was day,
And gatt A son that sythyn moab hyght.
The ȝonger syst*ur* then wold asay
To fob hyr, fad*er* a noder nyght.
Scho *con*sauyd by þ*er* pr*e*uay play
A man that semly was to syȝt.
loth leue we her at home
In wast*es* that wer wyld
And tell of abraham
and of ysaac that was hys chyld.

---

51. 3 Genes*is* *in upper margin* | 7 wyf *inserted above the line* | 12 be *inserted above the line* **53.** 9 *MS.* at home wonnand | 11 *MS.* of abraham and sara | 12 Abraham Sara ysac *on right side enclosed by a line.*

Abraham and Sarah rejoiced in the son born to them. Sarah drove out Hagar, who had mocked her, and her son Ishmaell.

54 Thei wentt wher thei had wo*n*nyd be forne,
And i*n* grett lykkyng can the lend.
Sara was mery euyn *and* morne,
fforto be co*m*ford well scho kend.
Bott aft*ur*, when hyr sone was borne,
The*n* was hyr myrth mekyll amend.
ffor Agar that was wontt hyr to scorn
þan had no fors hyr to defend.
Sara, þat worthy wyue,
when ysac myȝt oght mell,
Agar owt can scho dryfe
wi*th* hyr sun ysmaell.

Hagar fled and lived in the wilderness; an angel made her return, and Abraham reconciled the two women. They lived happily together after this.

55 To flee then was scho ferly fayn;
wi*th* saray durst scho not be sene.
In wylde*r*nes scho wo*n*nyd wi*th* payn,
Cared from all comforth clene.
An angell gart hyr turn agayn,
And bad that scho suld bowsom bene.
And abraha*m* dyd all hys mayn
And mad Acord them two be twene.
To gedde*r* then thei dwell
In feleschep full fayre;
Grett myrth thei mad them a mell
ffor ysaac theyr ayre.

God wanted to try Abraham, and commanded him to build an altar and sacrifice his son. Abraham obeyed these commands.

fol. 7 b 56 Sythyn god hys se*r*uand wold asay
yf he to hy*m* bowsom wold be.
hee spake to abraha*m* on A day
and sayd, »thi sadnes wyll I se;
Take thi sun that þou lufe*s* well ay
and make hy*m* sacr*a*fyce to mee.
In wylde*r*nes by syde the way
A ce*r*tan hyll schew sall I the.
An awter þe*r* on þou rays
and offer hy*m* me vntyll.»
Abraha*m* heyrs how he says
and gra*u*ntt yt wi*th* full gud wyll.

---

54. 2 lend *above the line* / — **55.** 6 suld *above the line* / 8 A- *in* Acord *above the line.* / — **56.** 1 Genesis *in upper margin* / 2 he *cancelled before* yf / 8 imolacio de ysac *on right side* / 9 or *before* þer *cancelled* / 10 tyll *cancelled before* me.

Abraham was sorrowful at having to perform this duty. He saddled his ass and went to the appointed place.

57 Abraham vnto hys son beheld,
A bold man both in bone *and* lyre.
he wenyd that he suld haue beyn hys beld
when he was old *and* weke o swyre;
Bot vnto god he can hym ȝeld,
ay redy to do hys desyre.
hys asse he fand furth in the feld
And chargeyd hym with wud *and* fyre.
— — — — — — —
— — — — — — — —
So went thei furth in fere,
qwer god bad thei suld goe.

Isaac asked the meaning of the sword in his father's hand. Abraham replied that he was going to make a sacrifice to God, who would provide the fire and the beast. And so they fulfilled God's wishes.

58 ysaac saw in hys fader hand
a sword *and* askyd hym what yt ment.
he sayd,» sun, we sall make offerand
To god; so hath hym selfe a sent.»
»ffader», he says,» fyr soyne we fand,
bott wher ar bestes that suld be brentt?»
he says, »sun, þat god hath ordand,
ffor to hys frendes ay takes he tent.»
So wentt þei furth þer ways;
— — — — — — —
— — — — — — —
Os god wold deme þei dyd.

Abraham and Isaac built up the altar for the sacrifice.

59 when abbraham was werre of the hyll,
qwych god to hym had told be fore,
The wud he tok hys sun vntyll
And bad hym beyre to thei come þore
hys fader forwerd to fulfyll.
— — — — — — —
— — — — — — —
was he wyse, os god wold yt were.
Apon that hyll on heght,
os god hym self had sayd,
An Auter þer on thei dyght
and wud *and* fyre on layd.

57. 4 *MS.* oswyre 11 *MS.* infere — **58.** 8 *MS.* fferto do hys.

60 Whe*n* the fyre was bry*nn*a*n*d bry3t,
þan Abraha*m* vnto god con see,
And to hys sun thus sayd he ry3t,
»Sun, I sall make offerand of the.«
Ysaac sayd *with* semland lyght,
»ffade*r*, os god wyll, be houeyse yt to be.
what hest to hy*m* that 3e hath heght
leffe yt no3t for luf of me.«
hys sword in hand he hent
So forto make offerand.
Bot god his angell sent
ffrom heuy*n* *and* held his hand.

When Abraham was about to slay his son, a willing sacrifice, an angel called to stop him.

61 hys sun he suld ha[ve] sacrifysyd,
Bot then he wyst god wold yt not.
fol. 8 a A wedde*r* he saw hy*m* be syd
That god had sent hy*m* all vnsoght.
þe*r*of he made offerand that tyd,
And whe*n* thei had þe*r* wrschyp wroyght,
hom agayn hely thei hyed
And thanke*s* god *with* wyll *and* toyght.
Soyne aft*ur* sara was dede
and put vnto sepulcur*e*.
Abraha*m* toke in hyr sted
A wyf that heght Sethure.

Abraham sacrificed a ram in the place of his son, and they both returned home. Soon afterwards Sarah died and was buried; then Abraham married Keturah.

62 Scho was woma*n* wynsom to weld,
Non heynder haldy*n* vnde*r* heuy*n*,
And wyls scho bode vnde*r* hys beld,
scho bayr hy*m* sonys seuy*n*.
Aft*ur* whe*n* ysac wex on eld.
A stalworthy man of state *and* steuy*n*,
hys fade*r*, for hys sed suld 3eld,
A gu[d] wyfe to hy*m* can he neuy*n*:
Rebecca, A damisell —
hyr fa[yr]*er* is not fon —
The doyght*ur* of batuell;
Nacor is his brothur son.

She was fair to look upon and bore him seven sons. Rebekah was chosen for Isaac's wife; she was the daughter of Bethuel.

---

60. 11 h *cancelled before* god / — **61.** 1 *MS.* hath / 3 Genesis *in upper margin* / 5 tyd *inserted above the line* / 12 De IIda vxore Abree *on right side.* / — **62.** 8 *MS.* guf / 10 De vxore ysac *on right side* / fader *instead of* fayrer. Cf. *York Plays* X/336, *where the same line occurs.*

Abraham sent his chief servant to arrange the marriage; Rebekah was found at a well, and brought home and married to Isaac.

63 ffull sun he sent his chefe *seruant*
ffor this mareyg to make yt clere.
he wentt hy*m* furth, *and* soyn he fand
The maydyn at a well þor nere.
hee told hyr fad*er* of this tythand
ffro Abraha*m*, his eme full dere,
how his son suld be hyr husband.
þ*er*for þei wer full fayn *in* fere;
wyghtly þei wer acord.
the *seruand* soyn hyr lede
vnto abraha*m*, hys lord,
and ysac *with* wyne hyr forto wede.

Abraham died at the age of 165 years and will always be remembered because he lived according to God's law.

64 what worthed, qwen þei wedded were,
soyn aft*ur* sall be told *vus* tyll.
Bot of abraha*m* now lefe *we* heyre,
And all his story steke we styll.
Whe*n* he had lyfyd A hunderth ȝere
and sexty *and* fyue to fulfyll,
Then dyed hee soyn *with* seknes sere
And went full well *with* godd*es* wyll.
Ay whyls he lyfyd in lede,
eue*r* trew was his entent,
And þ*er*for his word *and* dede
mu*n* eue*r* moyr [be] on ment.

Rebekah conceived two sons, who struggled while yet within her womb. And God said the meaning of this was that they represented two nations, of which the older should serve the younger.

65 ysaac lelly led his lyue
in the law of god *with* gud entent.
And rebecca, his worthy wyfe,
*con*sauyd two suns so god hir sent.
Be twyx them two be gan grett stryfe
with in hyr wo*m*, or þei furth we*nt*,
qwer for hyr care was kene os knyfe.
scho askyd of god what yt ment.
he sayd, »þou sall furth bryng
two mane*rs* of pepyl exp*resse*,
And the more in all thyng
sall *se*rue vnto [the] lesse.»

64. 7 w *cancelled before* Then.

66 And so yt was, os clerk*es* wott,
The lesse was mayst*er* of the more:
fol. 8 b ffor at þer byrth was grett debat
whedd*er* of them suld go furth be fore.
Bot esau was mor strang of state,
And the fyrst sted he cane restore;
And Jacob þan wentt aftyr latt;
þer moyd*er* was all marryd þore.
Esau, the alder chyld,
was all ou*er* hyllyd *with* here;
And Jacob was mor myld
and soft on body *and* bayre.

Esau, the elder, was stronger than his brother Jacob.

67 Isaac had both by est *and* west
mo catell then men myȝt neuy*n* by name.
his luf on Esaw he kast
And mad hy*m* hyrd of wyld *and* tame.
he sett his hert on hy*m* to rest,
for he suld be heyr of the same.
Bot rebecca lufyd Iacob best,
for he wo*n*nyd ay at hame.
Als he satt vnder hir beld,
hys dyn*er* was well grayd.
his brothyr com from the feld,
And of sum p*ar*t he hy*m* prayd.

Isaac loved Esau, but Rebekah, Jacob. One day Esau, when returning from the field, sold his birthright to Jacob for food.

68 Bot Iacob sayd he suld haue none,
oles then he wold to hy*m* sell
hys heritage *and* thynge*s* ylkon
that aft*ur* hys fad*er* vnto hy*m* fell.
Then Esau wyst no bett*ur* wone
but grauntt this co*n*nand þem a mell.
with honger so he was ou*er*gone,
he tent non o*þ*er tales to tell.
When ysaac was on eld
A hunderth ȝere, we fynd,
Then wex hee all vnweld,
and both his Eyne wer blynd.

When Isaac was 100 years old, he became enfeebled and blind.

66. 2 ii. b *in bottom margin* . — **67.** 9 hir *written over* hys *cancelled*.

Isaac sent Esau to the field for venison so that he might eat, and bless him. But Rebekah planned to prevent this.

69 H[e] callyd Esau. hys elder son,
and sayd, »I wold þou went in hye
Vnto the wud, os þou was wun,
and take *with* the thyn archerye
And fand to geytt me veneson,
for wyld flesch ette wold I.
Then sall þou haue my beneson
and my blessyng be for I dy.
»ffad*er*», he sayd, »full fayn».
þ*er* *with* he went his way.
The moyd*er* *with* all hyr mayn
wyll mar hy*m* *and* scho may.

His mother bade him bring two fat kids, and attire himself in Esau's garments, and obtain the blessing. But Jacob protested, saying that he was a smooth man, while his brother was a hairy man.

70 ffor Iacob that was hyr yonger son
hath scho soght a sotell gyn:
»Thy brothyr is furth for venyson,
his fad*er* blessyng forto wyn.
Go to the feld; ther sall þou f[on]
two fatt kydd*es*; bryng the*m* or þou blyn,
And In hys wed*es* þou sall be wonn,
And so be blessyd or he com in.»
»Mod*er*», he sayd, »nay mare
þus to tell in this tyd.
My brothyr is hyllyd w*ith* hayre,
And I am soft of hyd.

To make Jacob like Esau, she put kid-skin on his hands and sent him to Isaac with broth.

71 All yf my fad*er* be blynd in bed, fol. 9 a
he wyll feyle that I be noȝt trew.
»Deyre son,» scho sayd, »be not Adrede;
my self þ*er*for sall schape *and* sew.»
In kydd*es* skyns hys hand*es* scho hy*m* cled
and mad a broth full gud *and* new.
»Goe fast at thy fad*er* wer fede
and say þ*at* þou is esau!»
he dyde als scho hy*m* bad.
vnto ysaac hee wentt.
»ffad*er*, be ȝe glad;
heyr is mett þat ȝe of ment.»

69. 1 *MS.* The / 3 *MS.* wunt — **70.** 5 *MS.* fynd / — **71.** 1 Genes*is* Iacob et Rebecca *in upper margin* / 5 hym *above the line.*

72 »A, sun,» he sayd, »well hath þou wroyȝt:
þi wysdom now hath þou wun.»
Bot by the voce ay well hym toght
yt was Iacob, his ȝonger sun.
he gropyd hym fast bot all for noyȝt,
be felyn was the falshed fun.
he ette of all that he had broȝt:
to blese hym then was he be gun.
he mad hym ouer all oþer
lord, both lowd *and* styll.
þus begylyd he his brothyr,
bot all was godd*es* wyll.

Isaac felt Jacob, as he recognized the voice of his younger son, but was unable to discover the deception. He blessed him and made him Lord over all. This was God's will.

73 Esau veneson hath tone
and broyȝt his fad*er* for his beld.
»Who is þou?» he askyd on one.
»*ser*, Esau, *your* eldyst chyld.»
»A, son», he sayd, »her hath ben on
and brogh me flesch, full fayr *and* wyld.
I hath hym blest, *and* he is gone.»
the[n] wyst he well he was be gyld.
»Myn heritage he hath
and power ouer all oyder.
Now wott I well yt was
Iacob, thy ȝonger brothyr.»

Esau returned, only to discover that he had been supplanted by his brother Jacob.

74 Esau then *with* sore syghyng sayd.
»that ȝe ar blynd, I by *with* wo.
ffor now is the secund brayd
that he hath me dyssauyd so.
ffyrst for mett whe*n* I hym prayd,
myn heritage he toke me fro,
And now this tym hath me be trayd,
wyls ȝe bad me *your* arand go.
well was he namyd for thy
Iacob, for so he hyght
That wyll geytt *with* gyllery
that hee geytt*es* not *with* ryȝt.»

Esau was grieved, because he had been deceived for the second time. The name »Jacob« signifies one who obtains by subtlety what he cannot obtain by right.

74. 1 then *above the line* 6 n *of* myn *above the line*.

Isaac promises Esau the dew of Heaven and the fatness of the earth.

75 »bot fad*er*,» he sayd, »I pray [now yow]
yf any blessyng be laft for me.»
»Son, I hath gyfyn to hys be hofe
wytt, wyn *and* oyle, all thre.
And in all maters that may moue
ou*er* all my howsha[l]d hed is he.
bot in the dew of heuy*n* Aboue
and in erth sall thi blessyng be.»
The fad*er* fulfyllyd his toyȝt;
the son was fayn þ*er*for.
Thus all this werld was wroght,
euyn os god wold yt wer.

Esau, because he had lost his heritage, was envious of Jacob. Therefore Rebekah sent Jacob to Haran, the home of her people. On his journey he had a wonderful dream.

76 When Esau wyst this wytt*er*ly
how he hys heritag had lorne,
Vnto hys brothyr he had enuy fol. 9 b
and grett malyce myde day *and* morn.
Rebecca send Iacob for thy
Into Aran, wher scho was borne,
And als scho wold, hee wentt in hye.
bot seyre ferlys he fand be forne.
Als he lay on a land,
slepand Abowtt mydnyght,
A stegh he saw vp stand
from erthe to heuyn on hyght.

In his dream he saw a ladder set up from earth to heaven, on which angels were ascending and descending. God foretold him that he should marry two wives, and his descendants should cover the earth.

77 That stegh began euuy*n*ly at his crown;
Vnto his syght yt semyd so
Als Angels wentt euy*n* vp *and* down
full mony tym both to *and* fro.
God told to hy*m* in that seson
how that he suld wede wyf*es* two,
And how his gene*r*acion
ou*er* all the werld suld grathly go.
hee sayd, »for abraha*m* sake
that was thi fad*er* free,
whedd*er* þou slepe or wake,
thy beld ay sall I be.»

75. 1 *MS.* yow now — **76.** 3 *In upper margin:* Genesis. de dormicione iacob *et* scala d*omi*ni ' 4 *MS.* and with grett 12 hyght *above* ryght *cancelled* / - **77.** 3 al *cancelled before* Angels.

78 Than Iacob of þer maters mels
and says he saw god in gud astate.
And i*n* his tale þis furth he tels
and says, »by this werke well I watt
That i*n* this sted is no thyng els
bot godd*es* awn howse *and* heuy*n* ȝate
And dredfull to them that heyr dwels,
bot yf þei flee fro all debate.»
A stone lay at his hede;
that rayssyd hee vp on end.
In a tokynyng yt leuyd
how god hys myrth þore mend.

He raised a stone to commemorate the place where God had appeared to him, and which he considered to be God's own house and the gate of Heaven.

79 So went he furth, *and* sone he fand
laban *and* his two doght*urs* dere.
ffor rachell was then his co*n*nand
forto be se*r*uand VII ȝere.
And at the end, to vnd*er*stand,
when rachell suld haue neghyd nere,
Then was lya by hy*m* ligand;
no wounder yf he schawyd [no] chere.
Iacob was full euyll payd,
for he had noygh his awne.
Bot laban to hy*m* sayd,
this custom þor was knawne:

Jacob came to Laban's household and made an agreement to serve seven years for Rachel, but, on account of the custom of the country, he was given Leah, the elder sister.

80 The eld*er* syst*ur* to sett be fore
in wrschype that to wem*en* fell.
A new forward the festyd þore:
oyd*er* VII ȝere that he suld dwell
To be most mayst*ur* of þ*er* store,
And the*n* he suld resaue rachell.
And forto make hy*m* myȝt more,
this co*n*nand mad thei a mell:
To haue yf þ*er* fell any
best*es* of colours sere.
Swylke mad Iacob mony.
how, that ȝe sall heyre.

He served another seven years for Rachel, and made another covenant with Laban: he was to own the spotted and ringstroked cattle.

78. 3 *in above the line.* / — **79.** 8 *MS.* schawnyd chere / *before* elder / 11 *MS.* mad full soyn Iacob þerof. **80.** 1 ell *cancelled*

When it was belling time, Jacob went to a wood to procure rods. He peeled the rind off the rods and placed them before the flocks, who, looking on them, conceived and brought forth ringstroked, speckled and spotted cattle.

81 Whe*n* bellyng tym of best*es* be gane, fol. 10 a
os men by course of kynd may neuy*n*,
Vnto the wud he wend*es* then
and gat hy*m* wand*es* mony *and* euyn.
The barke warly a way he wan
in sonder place*s*, VI of seue*n*,
And sett them wher the best*es* rane,
and so thrugh *g*race of god of heue*n*,
On the wand*es* ose thei lokyd
and toke to them reward,
Som bar blake *and* som brokyd,
sum skellyd *and* sum garde.

By the fourth year Jacob was rich in cattle, and he returned to his own country with his whole household. Twelve children had been born to him by his wives and their servants.

82 By the faurt ȝere were fully gone,
Iacob had cạtell grett plente.
he toke his wyf*es* *and* welth, gud on,
and karyd vnto his awn cuntre.
hys wyf*es* had *s*eruand*es*, ayther on,
that *s*eruyd them in seyre degree.
Iacob for spoushed sparyd none,
bot [made] them all berand to be,
So that he had hy*m* self,
to rekyn old *and* ȝonge,
Of suns full semly XII:
of them grett sede myȝt spryng.

Leah bore Judah, Simeon, Levi, Issachar Zebulun, Reuben and a daughter Dinah. By the two handmaids of his wives, Jacob had Dan, Naphtali, Gad and Asher. Joseph and Beniamin were the sons of his wife Rachel.

83 Sex of þe suns com of lyi:
Iudas, semeon *and* leui,
Iȝachar, ȝabulon, ruben, all thei
[trewly] war born of hyr body
W*ith* a doght*ur* that heght dyna.
then this two *s*eruand*es* had in hy
Dan, neptalyn, gad, asser, no ma;
so wer þei X to tell schortly.
Whe*n* rachell can be gyn,
then bayr þat worthy wyfe
Ioseph *and* by*n*iamyn;
w*ith* hym scho lyfyd hyr lyfe.

81. 1 Genes*is* *in upper margin* . **82.** 6 *MS.* on that seruyd 7 go *cancelled before* Iacob **83.** 7 *MS.* noma 10 *MS.* bayr scho ij þat þat *above the line.*

84 Iacob was noyed on a nyȝt
in his way os he wentt:
hee wrestyld *with* an angell brygh
that his on schank was all to schent.
þat angell com from heuy*n* on heght
and told vnto hy*m* godd*es* entent.
I[s]raell was his name be ryght,
And Iacob suld no moyr be ment.
Wher for þ*us* forther fell:
all his lyneyg lese *and* moyre
wer na*m*yd chylde*r* of isr*ael*
in werld heyr whyls thei woyre.

One night Jacob wrestled with an angel sent from Heaven, who announced that henceforth his name should be called Israel, and his lineage the children of Israel.

85 Now in this p*ro*cesse or we passe,
is gud the ded*es* forto dyscrye
Of the eldyst brothyr that hyght Iudas;
for on hy*m* iones the genology.
his brothyr rewll he refusyd [has]
And karyd into chana[ny]
And [in] that land wed he was
with mekyll welth, os was worthy.
his wyf was fayr *and* free
and bayre of hyr body
Thre suns semly to see;
ther names heyr say sall I.

The eldest son, Judah, refused to submit to his brother's rule and journeyed to Canaan, where he married a woman fair to look upon: she bore him three sons.

fol. 10 b 86 The fyrst hyght her, os I herd tell,
and onam was the name of an o*þ*er.
Thei wer both fayr of flesch *and* fell.
and sela men callyd the to*þ*er.
ffull mekyll myrth was them a mell,
for thei had mobles mony A fo[ther].
And forther mer so yt be fell
that wedd was the eldyst brothyr.
he was eldyst *and* heyre.
ther weddyd thei were,
he *and* a woman full fayr,
hyr nam[e] was thamar.

They were called Er, Onan, and Shelah, and grew up to be rich men. The eldest took a beautiful woman, Tamar, for his wife.

---

84. 4 schent *above the line* | — **85.** 2 *MS.* ther dedes 6 *MS.* chanaan - - **86.** 1 Genes*is in upper margin* 6 *MS.* Afore | 11 Iudas *in left margin* | 12 MS. naman was.

Tamar was a good woman, but Er was wicked in the sight of the Lord, and the Lord slew him.

87 Moyr semly woman myght none see,
yf thei suld sech on yche syde.
Bot he was euyll in his degree;
þerfor he myȝt no langer abyd.
ffor wekydly then wastyd hee
the sed that suld be multiplyd.
þerfor god ordand hym to be
funden ded in that same tyde;
ffor he rewllyd hym not ryȝt,
als course of kynd wyll tell.
The fend on the fyrst nyȝt
had forse hym forto fell.

Then Judah gave Tamar as wife to his second son Onan, so that he might raise up seed to his brother. But he displeased the Lord, and the Lord slew him. Judah in his anger was unwilling that Tamar should marry his third son.

88 Then of this dole had Iudas dred
And sayd vnto his secund sun,
»Go þou, rayse vp thi broþer sed
ose men then in this werld was wun!«
Bot hee vnethly dyd his dett
euyn os his brothyr had be gun;
wherfor he seruyd the same mede.
Or yt was day, ded was he fun.
Then Iudas was full wrath
when this tene was be tyde,
And toght yt was grett wath
to wed hyr with the thryde.

He sent her to her father's house, and bade her remain a widow; in process of time Judah's wife died, and he was left alone, rich in asses, cows and sheep.

89 And he was yong to tell þat tyd;
þerfor he hath consell tone:
he send hyr home — [yt is] nott to hyd —
to hyr fader, that scho was fro gone,
And bad that scho suld þor abyd
In wedohede with welth gud one.
And Iudas wyfe in þos days dyed;
the[n] was he wedow leuyd alone.
Seruandes semly to se
had his katell forto kepe,
ffor he had grett plente
of asses, nawtt and schepe.

87. 3 Thamar *in left margin* — **89.** 3 is yt.

90 When thamar herd thies tyghynge*s* tell
that Iudas wyf was ded hy*m* fra,
wi*th* hy*m* then wer scho leuer to dwell
then wi*th* hys yongest sun sela.
Of this mate*r* meuyd scho a mell
And watyd hyr tyme for to ta.
And forthermer yt so be fell
that wi*th* his se*r*uand suld he ga
In clowes to clype his schepe,
Als custom was þen þore.
Than thamar tuke gud kepe
And ordand fast þe*r*for.

And when it was told to Tamar that Judah's wife was dead, she desired to live with him. One day Judah went into the fields with his servants to shear sheep, and Tamar seized the opportunity.

91 Hyr wedow wede*s* scho layd away,
and [gart] hi[r] face to schyn os glasse,
[and cl]ed hyr in full rych a ray;
ffor so scho trows to rape Iudas.
fol. 11 a Scho sett hyr on A some*r*day
In the way wher he suld passe.
whe*n* he hyr say, soyn can he say,
»ffayr woma*n*, all my hert þou hasse«.
his se*r*uande*s* gart he go
be for furth on þe*r* way,
And allon leuyd bot them two
to make them myrth *and* play.

On a summer day she laid aside her widow's clothes, and having attired herself in rich raiment, sat down by the way-side to await Judah. When he saw her, he told her that he desired her with all his heart and bade the servants go away.

92 Then his entent he hyr told vntyll;
That yt was thamar trowd he noyȝt.
»Woma*n*, *and* þou wyll wyrke my wyll,
then sall I send the sone vnsoght
A fayr kyd lame to kepe or kyll.«
the woman answerd ose scho toght,
»Syr, I wyll haue, as yt is skyll,
A wede to byd tyll yt be broght.«
he sayd, »þat sall þou haue.«
he toke the be all of his herme
And also his walkyng stafe;
he kast both in hi[r] berme.

He did not recognise Tamar, and promised to send her a kid, if she consented to his will. As a pledge of good faith, he gave her his ring and staff.

---

90. 3 r *of* leuer *above the line* /— **91.** 2 *MS.* and his / 3 *corner torn off the page* / — **92.** 1 hyr *inserted above the line* / 10 *MS.* beall / 12 *MS.* in his berme.

Tamar consented to his desire and conceived two children. Judah sent the promised kid, but it was brought back, as the woman had gone away.

93 Then was scho bown what he wold byd,
ffor scho kepyd to haue helpe þerby.
And in that tyme so yt be tyd:
tway chylder bred in hyr body.
Then Iudas went *and* deuly dyd
hys schepe clyppyng withoutyn cry.
And scho wentt home *and* helyd *and* hyd
all this processe preuely.
Iudas a kyd then sent,
as he had heght certayn.
Bot the woman was went,
and the kyd broyȝt agayn.

At the end of three months her condition became known to the people, and she was accused of sinning against God's law. Some said she ought to be hanged or tortured.

94 Then Iudas was grettly agayst
And wroth, for his wedd was a way.
— — — — — — — —
— — — — — — — — —
When thre mo[neth]yse wer playnly past,
Then thamar feld full fell a fray:
hyr wome so wex that folke full fast
demyd of dede ylke day.
Sum sayd that scho was gylty
to god agayns þer law,
And sum sayd scho wer worthy
þerfor to hang *and* draw.

Judah was very wrath when he heard this, and sent for Tamar to be judged according to the law of the land.

95 When Iudas herd how all þis wentt,
he was full wroth, we may warrand.
he bad scho suld be aftur sentt,
for all the dome hang in hys hand.
— — — — — — —
— — — — — — — —
To tell the sothe or take iugment
aftur the law of the land.
Than thamar was furth broyȝt,
as the law was then vsyd,
Bot so wysly scho wrogh
that scho was well excusyd.

---

93. 2 scho *above a letter cancelled* / 8 *MS.* and all / pro *cancelled before* preuely / — **94.** 5 *MS.* mothneyse wer / — **95.** 9 r *cancelled before* was.

96 Iudas then spake *with* word bold
And sayd, »the suth sall no*n* ma*n* spare.
Thamar, the trewth bus heyr be told.
who is defawt of all þis fare?»
Then schewde scho furth his bee of gold,
and hys stafe had scho redy þer.
— — — — — — —
— — — — — — —
Then Iudas knew all dele,
and þus he sayd in hye,
»by This werke now wott I uell
That scho is wyser then I,»

Judah bade her speak the truth and expose the guilty man. Tamar then held forth his gold-ring and staff. He recognised them and realised that to her belonged the greater wisdom.

97 »And hyr ow for to beyr no blame.»
so was scho sauyd from scath *and* scorne.
And *with* wrschyp scho wund at hame
tyll tym hyr chylder suld be borne.
The meydwyf wyst *and* sayd the same
that scho suld haue twa me*n* at morn.
The fyrst scho gafe Phares to name
by cause that come furth be forne;
The secund son furth ȝede
so like vnto his bro*þer*
At the mydwyfe fest A thred
to knaw on fro the to*þer*.

Thus Tamar was spared from contempt and scorn and lived happily at home. She bore two children, so much alike that the midwife fastened a scarlet thread upon the hand of the younger son, in order to know him from his brother.

98 When the secund past from his place,
thei na*m*yd hy*m* ȝaram, that þor werre.
The moyder, que*n* hyr was ou*er* past,
was ferly fayn that thei well farr*e*.
Then holy wrytt schews how yt was
in genology of this charre,
And says þus, »Iudas gendyrd has
Phares *and* ȝamar of thamar.»
Then gatt þer Phares esrom.
thes p*ro*cesse leue we playne,
And tell how Iacob come
to his cuntre agayn.

The names of the children were Pharez and Zarah, at whose births the mother rejoiced. Later to Pharez was born Esrom.

---

96. 5 god *cancelled before* gold / 6 þer *inserted above the line* / 11 *MS.* Now by / Now by *and* well *inserted above the line* / 12 and *cancelled before* That / — **98.** 10 Reuersus *est* Iacob *on right side.*

Jacob went to his own country, where he learned of the death of his mother and the illness of his blind father. He sent ten of his sons to watch over his cattle, but kept Joseph and Benjamin at home. They all gave honour and worship to God.

99 When Iacob com to his cuntre,
of hys moyder dede herd he tell.
Ysac, his fad*er*, myȝt no see;
for febylnes son seke he fell.
Ten of his suns then ordand hee
to kepe his catell þam omell,
And Ioseph *and* by*n*iamyn to be
ay styll at hom w*ith* hy*m* to dwell.
An Aut*er* þer þei rayse
to make sac*ra*fyce,
And hon*er*d god all ways
w*ith* wrschyp on þ*er* wyse.

Joseph had a dream about the sheaves of corn, and the sun, the moon, and the stars.

100 Then Ioseph dremyd w*ith* godd*es* wyll
and says his brethyr how he beheld,
how thei *and* he vnd*er* A hyll
geyddyrd scheff*es* fayr in the feld.
he sayd that hys schefe stod vp styll,
And XI vnto his can held.
his brethyr toke gud entent þ*er* tyll
and toght that he wold wrschep weld.
he sayd, »sone *and* the mone
and oþ*er* sternys eleuyn
war bown both morn *and* noyne
to hono*ur* [me] full euyn.»

When Joseph's brethren heard of his dreams, they hated him and feared that they might become subject to him. But Isaac quieted them and prayed God to work his will.

101 The eleuyn had full grett hethyng
And sayd to hy*m*, »be lyue, lett se:
What wold þou dreme of this dremyng?
hoppe*s* þou to gufe*r*ne grett degree,
Or þat þou sall ou*er* vs be kyng,
And we all suggett*es* vnto the?»
þan hatreyd in þ*er* hert*es* thei hyng
And toght þat bargan suld not be.
Isac in hert can hyd
þ*er* steuyns *and* held þem styll.
And what so suld be tyde,
he p*ra*yd god to wyrke his wyll.

---

99. 12 De so*mpn*io josephi *on right side* / — **100.** 1 *MS.* dremyd then with / 5 *Letter cancelled before* schefe / 6 can *above the line.*

fol. 12 a 102 Bott well he trowd in his entent
that dreme suld men of myghtes more.
hys brethyr of grett malys ment
And sayd that suld hym son ryȝt sore.
Sythyn on a day was Ioseph sent
to se hys brethyr *and* als þer store.
þai saw *and* sayd he suld be schentt
for talys that he had told be fore.
Bot his brothir ruben
held hym owt of þer handes
And sold hym to strang men,
And forto led into fer landes.

He thought the dream meant marvellous things, but the brethren feared it, and thought it foretold harm to them. One day, when Joseph was sent to them, they wanted to harm him. but Reuben protected his brother and sold him to strange men.

103 Then all þo ten hath tane to red
to feyn a falshed for þat fude,
To say he was etyn in A sted
with wyld bestes, os þei vnderstud.
And this to maynten with holhed
thei wett his coyte with kyddes blud.
When Iacob herd his sun was ded,
no wounder was þof he wer wude.
Of hym *and* all þat hepe
now lett we leue in hand,
And tell furth how Ioseph
was ledd furth into egype land.

The ten sent a message to their father Jacob, saying that Joeph had been devoured by wild beasts. Jacob grieved bitterly.

104 Puthefar he can hym lede
to pharo, that þer was kyng.
That stewerd wyf for his fayrhed
can waytte Ioseph in bowr to bryng.
And for he wold not do in dede,
In downgyn depe scho dyd hym thryng.
And to hyr lord scho spake gud sped
that he suld hast hym for hyng.
Bot when he presond was,
two felows þer he fand
That wer for þer trespasse
haldyn full herd in band.

In Egypt Joseph was tempted by Potifar's wife, falsely accused, and thrown into a deep dungeon. Here he found two men, the king's butler and baker.

---

102. 1 Genesis *in upper margin* / 2 more *above the line* / — **103.** 4 *MS.* wyldes bestes / 6 thei *inserted above the line* / 12 egype *over* farr *cancelled.*

One night they both dreamed dreams, which Joseph interpreted. And every thing happened as he had foretold.

105 The kyng was w*ith* ther werk*es* wrath;
butler *and* baker þ*er* nam*ys* [þei] call.
A pon a nyght þei dremyd bath
And told yt furth to grett *and* small.
And Ioseph rede ther dremys full rath
and sayd what son suld aft*ur* fall:
The butler forto scape [all scathe],
and the baker to by for all.
So was the butler ryght
resauyd the kyng be forne;
The bakster, als he heght,
was hangyd at morne.

Then the king dreamed a dream, and his spirit was troubled. None of the wise men were able to interpret it.

106 Sythyn dremyd the kyng An oþ*er* ny3t,
that mad hy*m* mer*u*ell i*n* his mode.
hy*m* toght he saw A selcoth syght:
seuyn best*es* [fatt com] from the folde,
And aft*ur* them saw he ryght
seuyn best*es* leyne for fawt of fude.
Bot the leyn ware moyr of my3t
And stroyd the fatt euy*n* os thei stud.
his dreme he told [the clerkes]
to *con*stru by clergy,
Bott non cowd wytt what werk*es*
that syght suld sygnyfye.

The butler remembered Joseph, who was accordingly brought out of prison. He told the king that God would send seven winters of plenty and then seven winters of famine.

107 The butler spake then for his sped, fol. 12 b
»lord, in yo*ur* pre*s*on lyg*es* in [b]end
A lele man of the ebrew lede;
Of this mat*er* can he make end.»
Then was Ioseph tan forto rede
this *con*sell, ose the butler kend.
he bad the kyng tent *and* take hede
how god suld in seuyn wy*ntur* send
Of catell, corne plente,
all men to weld at wyll;
And oþ*er* seuy*n*, sayd hee,
men suld for hu[n]gur spyll.

105. 5 d *of* And *above the line* / — **106.** 4 *MS.* com fatt / 8 stud *above the line* / — **107.** 1 Genes*is in upper margin* / 2 *MS.* lend.

108 And when the kyng can vnderstand
þat swylke defawt suld afturr fall,
he mad hym stewerd of his land,
all men to come at his call.
Then in fyrst seuyn ȝere he ordand
And geydderd corne of grett *and* small,
Wher with the folke ther fud he fand
Whyls hungur was in werld ouer all.
hys kyn in canaan
for hungur was nere lorne.
his fader herd tell then
that in egyp was corne.

The king made Joseph steward over the land. And Joseph gathered up all the corn during the seven years of plenty. In the years of famine his brethren in Canaan nearly perished, when Jacob heard that there was corn in Egypt.

109 Ten of hys suns sent he [þer] þen
for corn yf þei þerby myȝt wyn.
To wen þei were full mere men,
Non leuyd at home bot byngemyn.
when Ioseph saw his brethyr ten,
he knew all comyn of a kyne.
Bot none of them cowd hym kene,
for hegh a state þat he was in.
he askyd them when þai come.
Ruben *and* noe noþer,
he sayd, »ser, we haue at home
our fader *and* our yongest brothyr.«

The ten brethren came down to Egypt, but Benjamin remained at home. Joseph recognised his brothers, but they did not know him. Reuben was the spokesman.

110 »That we were twelfe cownt we cane,
bot on was dede, drownd in a dale,
with wyld bestes in chanaan;
for hym our fader hath mekyll bale.«
When Ioseph herd, he wyst well þan
how that his fader in hele was hale.
In werld was not A myryer man;
»bott ferther,« he toght, »asay I sall.«
he toght to geddyr them, bryng
Beniamyn hym be forne,
ffor þai twa was most yong
And both of Rachell borne.

They related to Joseph the story of their young brother's death. He rejoiced to hear that his father was still alive, and was eager to see Benjamin.

---

109. 2 *MS.* corn þer þen yf / 6 *MS.* all ware comyn; *cf. Curs. M. 6715.*

He promised to fill their sacks with corn, but to test them he bade them bring Benjamin to him. Simeon was to remain in prison as a pledge.

111 he sayd, »for soth, I sall you spyll
bot yf ȝe be to my bedyng bayn.
ffyrst yo*ur* sekk*es* sall I do fyll
of corne to make yo*ur* fader fayn.
Bryngys þan Beniamyn me vntyll;
That yong boy wyll I se *cer*tayn.
And symeon, he sall heyr byd styll
In *pre*son tyll ȝe come agayn.«
þus sayd he to asay
yf þer luf war fyne
Vnto þ*er* fad*er* all way,
and to that barne Beniamyn.

The brethren returned and told Jacob of Joseph's command. Jacob was unwilling to part with Benjamin, but sent his son back, when he beheld the silver in the sacks.

112 Thei wentt furth, os he can them warn; fol. 13 a
þ*er* was no *con*sell forto craue.
þai told þ*er* fad*er* how þai had farn,
And symeon laft, þem all to sayue;
And them bad bryng the yongest barne,
his helpe or hele yf þei wold haue.
The fad*er* toght loth hy*m* to tharn;
ffor rowth he remyd als he wold raue.
Ther sylu*er*, that þei noyȝt wyst,
was in þ*er* sekk*es* *cer*tayn.
That made hy*m* haue moyr trest
to send them saue agayn.

Joseph rejoiced to see his brethren return with Benjamin, and asked them how it was with their father.

113 A gayn þei wentt full fayr in fere
hertly to hold os þei had heght.
Then Iacob satt w*ith* sympyll chere,
full drery both day *and* nyght.
Tyll egypt son þei neghyd nere,
And to Ioseph þei went full wyght.
Of be*n*iamyn his brothyr dere
had he grett hast to haue a syght.
Bot þat he was þ*er* brothyr
wold not he lett be herd,
Bot askyd eu*er* on *and* oþ*er*
how þ*er* fad*er* ferd.

---

112. 1 Genes*is* *in upper margin* / 6 haue *below the line* /— **113.** 1 he *cancelled before* þei.

114 þer sekes he dyd to fyll that tyd
and bad them wend þer way with wyn
with symeon, that was be syd.
bot hastely þer blys can blyn.
A cupe of gold gart he then hyd
with In the seke of beniamyn
So with that gawd to garre hym byd,
ffor he toght þei twa suld not twyn.
In þer way as þei wentt
And trowd of nokyns trayne,
Sun armyd men war sentt
And broyȝt then beniamyn agayn.

Joseph placed a gold cup in Benjamin's sack, and as they journeyed homewards, sent armed men to bring back Benjamin.

115 To Ioseph fell þei down be dene,
and he lett os he lufyd þem noyȝt.
Vnto þem carpyd he wordes kene
and sayd, »fals thefes, what was your toght;
yow forto beld bown haue I bene,
and wekydly heyr haue ȝe wroght,
And of your selfe yt sall be sene.»
als he dyd þer sekkes be soght,
his cowpe was fun with schame
in the yongest brothir seke.
Ioseph sayd he þat såme
suld hyng hegh by the neke.

When the gold cup was found in Benjamin's sack, they were all accused of theft, and Joseph threatened to hang the culprit.

116 Iudas sayd, »mercy lord, lett be;
lett vs not lose that lytyll knaue.
Our fader toke hym vnto me;
I hyght hym sothly hym for to sayue,
And sertes bott yf he sound hym see,
ffull sune sall he be grathyd *in* graue.
lett hym go home, *and* dwell wyll we
In hold, wher so ȝe wyll vs haue.
When Ioseph wyst þer wyll
And saw them wepe so soyre:
»Brethyr,» he sayd, »be styll
and mowne ȝe yow no more.»

Judah prayed for mercy and offered to go to prison with his brothers in the place of Benjamin. Joseph, hearing these things, wept and told them to mourn no more.

---

114. 12 i *of* beniamyn *above the line* / —› **115**. 6 e *of* wekydly *indistinct*.

Then Joseph made himself known to them, and there was great joy among all the brethren.

117 This tokyn to them he told, fol. 13 b
»when my fad*er* to feld me sent,
I am the same man ȝe sold
for XX pe*n*nys of payme*n*t.«
Then all þ*er* hert*es* be gan to cald;
ffull well þei hopyd to haue ben schent.
Bot Ioseph say[d] þen, »brethyr, be bold;
I forgyf yow w*ith* gud entent.«
þei kyssyd *and* for ioy grett;
myrth was them a mange.
And þ*us* þis meneȝe mett
that mekyll spech of sprange.

Jacob came to Egypt with all his household; they lived in Goshen. Jacob was 147 years old at his death, and was buried in Canaan.

118 Then Ioseph sent his brethir ten
to foche his fad*er*, wher þei hy*m* fand,
And all þ*er* kyn þat þei cowd ken
gart he bryng into egyp land.
And in on yle that hyght Iessen,
þor was þ*er* wuny*n*g well ordand.
his dreme was fayr fulfyllyd þen,
for all þei heldyd to his hand.
Whe*n* Iacob das war weryd
vnto a C XL *and* [VII],
he dyed *and* was ente*r*d
in chanan, wher he had bene.

Joseph grew wealthy and rich in gold and silver. He died at the age of 110. His brother soon followed him to the grave.

119 Then had Ioseph welth in weld
of gold *and* sylu*er and* gud store.
his brethyr gudly can hy*m* be held
w*ith* men *and* wyf*es* þat w*ith* them were.
And aft*ur* whe[n] he was of eld,
A hunderth ȝer [*and* X], no more,
his saule to god then can he ȝeld,
Als all his helders had don be fore.
his brethyr ylkon
w*ith* In schort tym war dede;
Bott folke war full gud one
that com of þer kynred .

118. 10 *MS.* xiiii /— **119**. 1 *MS.* werld / 6 *MS.* X *and.*

120 And þo þat aft*ur* them can dwell,
þei myltyplyd ay mo *and* moe,
And wer na*m*yd chylde*r* of isra*e*l,
for Iacob name was schon[ge]d so.
þei mad grett morny*n*g them a mell,
for Ioseph was so fer them fro,
ffor aft*ur* werd, os men may tell,
þer welth was turn to wer *and* wo.
þis buke then ende we þ*us*,
that is namyd genesis.
To be gyn Exod*us*
god wit*h* his wyll vs wysch.

Jacob's heirs multiplied exceedingly, and were called the children of Israel. Their good fortune was later changed to misery. Thus ends the Book of Genesis.

120. 4 *MS.* schonegd.

Exod*us* incepit.[1])

After the death of Joseph and his brethren, a new king arose in Egypt, who oppressed the Israelites.

121 When Ioseph *and* hys brethyr ylkon wer ded, then com þ*er* A new kyng. fol. 14 a
Of Ioseph wyst he ryȝt none,
ne noyȝt wold knaw of his co*m*yng.
Bot he leuyd, *and* þai myȝt allone,
þ*er* kynred suld ou*er*come all thyng.
þ*er*for he hath the *con*sell tone
In gre[t] thraldom them forto bryng.
he gart them beyre *and* draw
And do both dyke *and* delue,
So forto hald the law
And lose ther lyneg twelfe.

They served in bondage for 400 years. But God loved them and made them to prosper. The birth of their avenger was foretold to the king.

122 Now wer thei sett in sorow sere;
þei fand neu*er* of defawt be forne.
And so thei fayr IIII C ȝere
w*i*th grett myschefe mydday *and* morne.
Bot vnto god ay war thei dere,
All that of þat blud was borne:
hee multiplyed in all maner
them selfe, þ*er* catell *and* þ*er* corne.
The kyng was kend by clerk*es*
A chyld of them suld spryng
To wast hy*m* *and* his werk*es*
and vnto bale hy*m* bryng.

The king ordered all the male children to be destroyed. To Amram and his wife Jochebed was born a son, whom they hid for three months by the sea-side.

123 To lett this harme then ordand hee
All man kynd in þ*er* byrth to qwell
That of the isra*e*l borne suld be,
[bot] All woman kynd to dwell.
A man wo*n*nyd in that same Cyte;
heght [am]ryn *and* his wyfe Iacabell.
Scho bare a sun semly to see,
by qwom seyr farlys aft*ur* fell.
Thre monethes thei hy*m* hyd,
and leng*ur* thei durst not abyd
Bott in a case hy[m] dyd
and layd hy*m* by the see syd.

S 121. 1 Exod*us* *in upper margin* / — **122.** 2 fore *cancelled before* forne / 3 *A letter cancelled before* ȝere / — **123.** 6 maryn / 10 *A letter cancelled before* thei *and before* durst / 11 hyd / 12 Inuencio moysen *in right margin.*

L 123. 9 fol. 119 a. Exodus *in upper margin* / theym hym / 10 lenger they / noght abyde /11 Bot / hym did /12 him / syde.

---

[1]) *Written in bottom margin on fol. 13 b.*

The child was found by Tremouth, the king's daughter. She adopted him and called his name Moses.

124 The kyng had [then] a doyght*ur* dere,
Tremouth scho heght, os I herd say.
*wi*th hyr maydyns fayr in fere
In that place wentt scho to play.
Thei saw the case in wat*ur* clere
In poynt to falle *and* flett a way.
At hyr byddyng thei broyȝt yt nere;
A full fayr chyld þ*er* in fand þei.
ffor hyr sun scho yt chese
and was full mery in mode
And gart nam[e] yt moyses
als funleng of the flud.

The child would not be nursed by the women, who tended him.

125 The lady trowd full well that tyd
that yt was on of ebre*us* lede,
And at þei sent yt so to hyd
And durst no noþ*er* do for dred.
Scho sent to lad*es* on ylka syd
the chyld to norysch *and* furth fede.
Bot the barn wold not wi*th* them abyd,
ne towch þ*er* pape[s] for nokyns nede.
Then had the lady kare;
that syȝt full sore hyr rewys.
Scho bad them seke yt ay whare
A noryse of Ebreus.

His sister, who dwelt with the king's daughter, made her mother take the child to nurse.

fol. 14 b 126 This chyld*es* syst*ur*, A damsell,
then wi*th* that lady was dwelland.
Scho herd how all this ferly be fell,
And socur sone þ*er*for scho fand.
Scho mad hyr mod*er* Iacabell
that chyld to warysch *and* warrand.
The lady dy[d] hy*m* wi*th* hyr dwell
And payd hyr hyre in hyr hand.
The chyld wi*th* all his mayn
fell to the pappe full nere.
Then was that lady fayn;
so wer all foure in fere.

S 124. 11 namyd /— **126.** 4 socurd / 7 dyr.

L 124. 1 had then / doghtre /2 Tremuth she / as /3 With hire madens full faire /4 in / went she forto /5 They / that case / watere / 6 in / to fayle / flete /7 hir bidyng they broght it /8 faire child therin / they / 9 hire sonne she it ches / 10 moode / 11 name hym Moyses / 12 as taken fro / floode /— **125.** 1 trowed / wele / tyde / 2 he was / on *wanting* / the Ebreus /3 at *wanting* / they / it / hyde /4 noon othere wyse doo / drede /5 She / ladys / ych a syde / 6 child /foster and / Lengere they *in right margin, very faint* / 7 theym byde /8 negh theire pappes / no kyns /9 had that / care /10 that thynge / hire rewes /11 She / theym / seke yt *wanting* / allwhere /12 a noryssh / the Ebrews /— **126.** 1 childes sist*er* a damesell /3 She / this fare befell / 4 soc*ur* / therfor she /5 She made hi*re* modre Iocabell / 6 child to noryssh / warand /7 did / hire to /8 and / hi*re* hyre / wele in hire /9 child / mayne / 11 was the / fayne / 12 were / infere.

They were thus all contented. When the boy could walk, his mother took him to court.

127 ffor he to sowke so had be gun,
The lady bad no bett*ur* ȝele.
The chyld was fayn whe*n* he had fown
the mod*er* pappe fully to fele.
The syst*ur* wyst how þei had wonn
hyr brothyr lyfe, that lykyd hyr well.
Bot the mod*er* was most fayn of hyr sun,
that scho we*n*t had been drownd ylk dele.
Scho fosterd hy*m* full fayre
tyll he cowd styr *and* stand.
To court then can scho care,
als the lady had hyr cu*n*nand.

Tremouth regarded him as her true son. He was so handsome that sad men, looking at him, became glad and merry-hearted.

128 ffor all þ*er* *con*sell well scho knew;
Vnto the lady scho hy*m* toke.
And Tremowth toke hy*m* for hyr trew
and for hyr sun hy*m* neue*r* for suke.
he was so fayr of hyd *and* hew:
all men had lyst on hy*m* to loke.
Be for his tyme was neue*r* Iew
so fayr to syȝt, so says the boke.
And yf men myȝt hy*m* see,
that were sory of[t] sy[the].
Trugh blyse of his bewty
thei suld be glade *and* blythe.

One day the boy was shewn to the king and his attendants, who were pleased with him. The king took his hand and kissed him courteously.

129 So yt be fell a pon a day:
the kyng *and* the lordes that [with] hy*m* wore
Sat in the palys them to play,
and cu*n*nand clerke*s* was *with* them þore.
A damsell in rych a ray
broght the chyld them furth be fore.
And [of] that fayr full fayn war thei,
for all men lufyd hy*m*, lese *and* more.
The kyng can on hy*m* loke
and was ryght glad for þi.
In hand sone he hy*m* toke
and kyssyd hy*m* curtasly.

S 127. 8 ylk dele *inserted below the line* /— **128.** 10 syght.

L 127. 1 For / souke / begonne / 2 the / desyred noo bett*er* dele /3 child / fonne / 4 modre pap /5 suste*r* / they / wonne /6 hire brodre live / liked here wele / 7 modre / fayne / hire sonne / 8 she wened / ben droned ych /9 She norysshed / faire /10 to / couth styre /11 courte / gun she caire /12 as / hire connand / — **128.** 1 For / theire counsell wele she / 2 she / betoke / 3 Tremuth / hire / 4 hire sonne / forsoke / 5 He /faire / hide / 7 Before / 8 faire / syght / 9 if / myght / 10 ofte sythe / 11 Thurgh blys / beaute / 12 they shuld / glad /— **129.** 1 it befell vpon / 2 and lordes that with / 3 palace theym / 4 cunnyng / were / theym thore / 5 And a damesell / ryche aray / 6 furth theym before / 7 of hym then / were they / 8 lufed / les / 9 kyng *inserted above the line* / gun / 10 forthy / 12 kyssed / curtesly.

130 Be twyx hys schankes he sett hym ryȝt
and lappyd hym to hym for grett lufe.
And for he was so worthy a wyght,
hys pertenes he toght forto proue.
his crown of gold, full fayr *and* bryght,
that barne hed sett he a boue.
And sone was schewyd in þer syȝt
A wonder case forto *con*troue:
That chyld full lyghtly lete,
the crown kast he downe
And fylyd yt *with* his fete
forto breke yt full bowne.

He placed his crown on the boy's head, but the boy threw it down and soiled it with his feet.

131 So qwen thies clerkes this syȝt can see,
Vnto the kyng thei [said] full sone,
ol. 15 a »Syr, wott þou not we wernyd the
with on Ebrew to be vn downe?
Se this sygne, that same is hee;
þerfor be wyse *with* wordes fone.
hys bane belyu bot yf þou be,
thynke þor to abyd n[o] bettur bone.
The case sen þou knavs,
rewle the by ryghwyse rede.»
The kyng sees by þer sawys
that barne behouys to be ded.

The attendants, on seeing this, warned the king against the boy, and advised him to put the boy to death.

132 Then a wysman of þer law
Sayd the chyld suld not be schent.
This dede that he hath done þis day,
yt [ys] not doyn be yll entent;
That sall be seyn sone on a say.
hott colys he gart bryn[g] *in* present
And proferd the chyld [with] forto play.
And in his mowth he soyn þem hentt.
he kyd well he was yong,
And no man wold hym marre;
The coylys brynt so his tong
that he spake euer the warre.

But a wise man was opposed to this; he put hot coals into the child's mouth, so that his tongue was burnt, and he spoke badly.

S 130. 8 Awonder / — **131.** 1 e *of* thies *above the line* / 2 fand / 3 Exodus *in upper margin* / 6 that *cancelled before* þerfor / with wordes fone *written above* that same is hee *cancelled* / 8 nebettur — **132.** 5 seyn *inserted above the line* 8 hee hent.

L 130. 1 Betwyx his shankes / ryght / 2 lapped / grete love / 4 his pertnes hoght he / prove / 5 His crovne / faire / 6 barn heued set / abcve / **7** shewed t here in that syght / 8 and Woundre / move / 9 child / 10 corone cast / down t 11 fuld it / 12 it / bown /— **131.** 1 when the / syght gun / 2 said / 3 Sere wot /hou noght / warned / 4 With an / fordone / b 1 *in right bottom corner (very faint)* / 5 fol. 119 b. / here the signe / he / 6 therfore / foone / 7 His / belyve / if thou r 8 thou / abyde noo better boone / 9 nowe sithen thou knawes / 10 revle / yghtwys / 11 The kyng sayd / their sawes / 12 thy child behoved / to *wanting* / deid / — **132.** 1 And then / theire lay / 2 sayd / child shuld / shent / 3 has doone this / 4 yt *wanting* / is / doone by noon evell / 5 shal we sone see / assay / 6 hote coles / gert bryng / 7 profered / child with to / 8 and / movth / he *wanting* / soone theym hent / 9 He shewed wele / bot yong / 10 noo / 11 So the coles brent / so *wanting* / 12 euer.

Then Tremouth, becoming anxious about the child, carried him away to her apartments.

133 This mater sone was mouyd *and* ment
In chamb*er* emang this madyns all.
Tremuth toke þ*er*to full gud tent,
And fast scho hyed into the hall.
The chyld in ermys sone hath scho hent
ffor no defawt to hy*m* suld fall.
loe, how sone gọd hath soc*ur* sent;
that he wyll saue, be sauyd thei sall.
To chamber scho hy*m* bare;
Then was he owt of drede.
All that the clerk*es* sayd ayre
was aft*ur* done in dede.

He remained with her until he grew up a handsome and strong man. One day he saw an Egyptian strike an Israelite.

134 Scho was full fayn to be his belde,
And in hyr boure scho cane hy*m* hyde,
Tyll he was waxin well of eld.
was none so semly i*n* no syde;
All folke had hele that hy*m* be held;
so was he fayr of hew *and* hyde.
And sythyn whe*n* he myȝt wepy*n*s weld,
he mustyrd manhed mony a tyde.
And on a day yt be tyd
he hard *and* was nerhand
how on of egypt chyd
wi*th* a chyld of his land.

Moses killed the Egyptian. The king doomed him to death for this deed, so he fled to Jethro in the land of Midian.

135 Then moyses meud hym þem omell
both for his kyn *and* his cuntre.
The man of egypt can he qwell
And hyde hy*m* that none suld see.
ffull soyne the kyng þ*er*of herd tell
And demed that moyses ded suld be.
And þ*er* he durst no langer dwell,
bot fast to mạdian hastyd hee,
A Cyte sett be fore
vnder oreb hyll to be.
Getro was byschope þore
and gou*er*ynd grett degre.

L 133. 1 meved / 2 in chaumbre among the madens / 3 therto / good / 4 and / she / 5 child / armes soone has she / 6 for noon defaute / shuld / 7 Loo / soone / has socure / 8 woll save / saved it shall / 9 chaumbre she / 10 then / oute / 11 are / 12 Was after doone /— **134.** 1 She / bayne / 2 and / hire / so gun he byde / 3 To / waxen wele / 4 Was noon / semely / noo / 5 folk / behelde / 6 faire / 7 sithyn / myght wepens welde / 8 mustered / many / 9 yt *wanting* betyd / 10 herd / nerehand / 11 oon / Egypt / 12 child /— **135.** 1 meved / theym / 3 Then man / Egypt gun / quell / 4 and hym hyd / noon shuld hym se / 5 sone / therof / 6 and / Moyses deid shuld / 7 then / lenger / 8 Madian hasted he / 9 set before / 10 Vndir Oreb hill / 11 Getron / byshop thore / 12 gouerned grete.

136 hys doyghtyrs [keped] his fee in feld,
os custom was þa[n] cum[on]ly.
fol. 15 b The wemen myȝt no wat*ur* weld
for hyrdmen that ware moyr myghty.
Then moyses stud *and* them beheld
And helpyd the wemen *with* maystry.
þei told þer fad*er* vnd*er* teld,
And [he] bad bryng hym home in hye.
Sythyn Getro gafe hy*m* to
hys doght*ur*, heght Cephoram.
Scho bare hy*m* chylder two,
Eliaȝar *and* gersam.

At the wish of his daughters, whom Moses had helped, Jethro brought Moses to his home. He gave him his daughter Zipporah, who bore Moses two children Eleazar and Gershom.

137 *with* hym laft moyses for his lay
to be hys hyrd, yt is not to hyd,
Als his doghturs wer wontt all way.
ffor wrschyp was [yt] cald þat tyde.
with his schepe wentt he on a day
Vnd*er* the monte of Synay syde.
þ*er* fand he farlys hym to flay;
Abayst he was þ*er* for to abyde.
A buske he saw vp stand
with floures *and* leues grene,
And that buske was byrnand,
bo[t] sulpyng was none sene.

Moses dwelt with Jethro. One day on Mount Sinai, he saw a bush, burning, yet not consumed.

138 Of m*er*uyll myȝt no ma*n* hy*m* blame;
swyl[k] ferlis ner be fore hy*m* fell.
God carpyd to hym *and* cald by name
with In a buske wher he can dwell,
»Moyses, I am god the same
Of Abraham, ysac *and* isra*el*;
ffor the chylder that suffers schame
all myn entent I sall the tell.
I wyll mustyr my myȝt
and owt of bale them bryng,
Als I be fore hath heyght
to them *and* þere ofspryng.«

God appeared to him out of the midst of the bush, and promised to bring the children of Israel out of their affliction.

S 136. 2 þam / 7 vnd*er*teld /— **137.** 8 was þ*er*for /— **138.** 2 swyll / 5 am *above the line.*

L 136. 1 His doght*er*s keped / felde / 2 as costome / then comonly / 3 women myght noo wat*er* welde / 4 hirdmen / were more / 5 Moyses stoode / theym behelde / 6 and helped / women / mastry / 7 They / theyre fadre vndre telde / 8 and he / hy / 9 Sythen / gave / vnto / 10 his doght*er* that hight / 11 She / childre twoo / 12 Gersam / — **137.** 1 With / left / 2 is hird / yt *wanting* / at hide / 3 Ca. iii. *in left margin* / As doght*er*s / wount allway / 4 for worship / it told that / 5 shepe went / 6 Vndyr / mount / of *wanting* / 7 Ther / farles / 8 abayste / there to / 10 leves / 11 birnand / 12 noo wastyng was sene /— **138.** 1 m*er*vell myght noo / 2 such ferles neu*er* before / 3 spake / 4 within that busk / gun / 6 of / ysaac / Israell / 7 theire childre / suffres shame / 8 shal / 9 wolle mustre / myght / 10 oute / theym / 11 As / before have hyght / 12 theym / theire.

God said that he was to be his messenger to Pharaoh. Aaron was to be the witness of God's command to Moses.

139 »My messynger I wyll make the
to pharo of egypt kyng:
To byd hym lett my folke go free
owt of his land at þer lykyng,
To make þer sacrafyce to me
In wyldernese of werldly thyng.
Thy brothyr Aron sall with the be
and beyr wytnese to old *and* ȝyng
how þou spekkes with me here,
and yf þei trow the noght,
Sygnes, sore *and* sere,
sall I send soyne vn soght.»

Because Moses was unwilling to perform this work, God shewed him two signs; Moses' rod became a serpent, and his hand leprous.

140 Then sayd moyses, »lord, vnderstand
this; I wold sum oþer wentt.
þei lufe me noyȝt in egypt land,
vnto my talys þei wyll not tent.»
he bad hym then cast down his wand,
And sone yt semyd os a serpent.
And mesyll lyke yt made his hand
to apeyre in the kynges present.
»yf þei aske the of whom
þou had þ[e]ir segnes *and* whore,
Say, 'I am that am';
that is my name euer moyre.»

Moses, following God's command, went to Egypt and met with Aaron, who brought him the good tidings of the death of all his enemies.

141 Moyses says, »it sall be done fol. 16 a
in this case, ose þou hath commawnd.»
he toke his leue at Getron
and held the way to egypt land.
Als god hym heyght, his brothir Aron
euyn in the way be for hym he fand.
Of his fader *and* his kyn ylkon
he told to hym full gud tythand,
And how all his enmys
wer dede *and* done a way.
And he told on what wyse
god sent hym for say.

S 140. 10 þoir /— **141.** 1 Pharo *and* Leuiticus *in upper margin.*

L 139. fol. 120 a / Exodi. *in upper margin* / 1 wolle / 2 Pharao / Egypt / 3 let / goo / 4 oute / theire likyng / 5 And make theyre sacrifyce / 6 in weldirnes / wordly / 7 brother / shal be with the / 8 bere wytnes / ying / 9 How thou spekes / 10 if they / 11 Signes full / 12 shall / full soone vnsoght / — **140.** 1 said Moyses lorde / 2 this *wanting* / for me I wold / othre went / Ca. iiii. *in right margin* / 3 They luf / not / Egypt / 4 tales they wolle / 5 He / 6 and soone it semed as / 7 mesell like he / 8 Appere in / 9 If they / whome / 10 thou / theire signes / where / 11 that I / 12 euermore /— **141.** 1 said lord it shal / doone / 2 wyse as thou has commaud / 3 he *wanting* / Toke / leve / 4 Egypt / 5 As / heght / brothre Aaron / 6 even / before / hym *wanting* / 7 fadre / of his / ychoone / 8 goode tithand / 10 deid / doone away / 11 wys / 12 vnto hym for to say.

142 his fad*er and* all hys frend*es* wer fayn
of his cu*m*myng to that cuntre.
he sayd he suld them bryng from payn
vnto a place of grett plente.
And to fulfyll the p*ur*pase playn
to pharo went aron *and* hee,
And schewyd to hy*m* the segnes c*er*tayn
wylke god bad þei suld lett hy*m* see.
»ffor the schylder of isra*el*,«
þei [say], »god sentt vs hase.«
Bot for oght þei cowd tell,
he sayd þei suld not pase.

Moses' father and friends rejoiced at his return. He and Aaron showed God's signs to Pharaoh, but he would not let the children of Israel go.

143 Moyses þen cast down his wand,
And soyne it semyd os a s*er*pent.
he toke the tayle vp *in* his hand,
and ase a wand agayn yt went.
As mesyll furth his fyngurs stand,
And hole a gayn [sone] he þem hentt.
The kyng sayd he hade clerk*es* co*n*nand
cowd do the same by exp*er*iment.
he sett þ*er* segnes at noyȝt
And sayd þ*er* folke þ*er*fore
Suld be in bondon broyȝt
wele wers þen eu*er* thei were.

Pharaoh despised the signs and said his magicians could do likewise. The burdens of the Israelites were increased.

144 God sent vnto the*m* ve*n*ia*n*ce ten
[so forto make theym turne their*e* moode.] —
all the waters of egypt then
In feld *and* towne were turnd into blude
So that it myght [noght] helpe to men,
Ne vnto best*es*, ne fowles fode.
Bot swylke faw[t] fell not in Jessen,
Wher þei wonyd that to god wer gud.
The secund soyne can fall
to greue [þem] als god wyld:
Both feld, hows *and* hall
w*ith* tayd*es and* froskes wer fyllyd.

God avenged his people; the rivers of Egypt were turned into blood, and toads and frogs covered the land.

S 143. 4 al *cancelled before* ase /— **144.** 2 wele wers then eu*er* þei were / blode *cancelled after* were / 4 blude *above the line.*

L 142. 1 His fadre / all *wanting* / his / fayne / 2 cumyng / 3 He / shuld theym / fro payne / 4 of all plente / 5 that purpose playne / 6 Pharao / Aron / he / Ca. v. *in right margin* / 7 shewed / thos signes c*er*tayne / 8 which / they shuld let / se / 9 childre / 10 they say / sent / has / 11 they couth / 12 they shuld / pas / — **143.** 1 then / 2 and soone / semed as / Ca. vi. *in right margin* / 3 He / 4 as / it / 5 mesell / fyngers / 6 and hoel agayn sooen he theym hent / 7 had / cunnand / 8 couth doo / exp*er*yment / 9 He set their signes / noght / 10 and / theyr folk therfore / 11 Shuld / bondage broght / 12 then / they wore / — **144.** 1 to theym then vengeance / 2 = *text above* / 3 All / Egipte / 4 in / town wer turn to bloode / 5 noght help / 6 ne / foode / 7 suche faute / 8 where they wonnd / were goode / 9 soone gun / 10 greve theym that was so wyld / Ca. viii. *in right margin* / 11 and hous / 12 todes / wex fyld.

Although all things were poisoned with vermin, Pharaoh's heart remained hardened. God sent the third plague, great lice, but he still refused to let the people go.

All was venomd *with* the *ver*myne
that suld oght reche þ*er* releue.
Bot pharo þ*er*for wold not fyne,
bot godd*es* folke more then can he greue.
Then the thryd god send þem s[y]ne:
grett myse that made þem mor myschefe.
þei stroyd *and* corum*p*yd both corn *and* wyne.
No man myȝt for þer malice meue.
No thyng myȝt [byd þer byte]
yf þei safe aft*ur* suld be.
Bot pharo wold not ȝett
þ*er*for lett this folke go free.

The fourth plague, swarms of flies, was sent to torture the Egyptians; but Pharaoh's heart was hardened.

he sayd he suld them bynd in band; fol. 16 b
god send the faurt ve*niance* for thye:
grett fleand lopp*es* ou*er* all the land,
batte men *and* best*es* full bytt*ur*ly.
Wher so þei fell on fott or hand,
ffull hedos herm had þei in hye.
Bott godd*es* folke non swylke fawt*es* fand;
þei wo*n*nyd in well, as was worthy.
Kyng pharo was frowerd
and eu*er* of wekyd wyll.
his hert was mad so herd:
godd*es* folke ay hald*es* he styll.

Therefore God sent two more plagues: the murrain of beasts, and the plague of boils and blains, caused by fine dust.

þ*er*for the fyft co[me] aft*ur* fa[st],
þat well wers then any oþ*er* was.
Moran was ou*er* þ*er* catell kast,
on schepe, swyn, oxe *and* asse
So that in lyfe þ*er* myȝt none last.
the kyng þ*er*of most herme has,
Bot wh*en* this p*er*ell was ou*er*past,
he wold not lett the pepyll pase.
þ*er*for the sext was sene:
when moyses mouyd his wand,
A powder yll *and* vnclene
was cast ou*er* all the land.

S 145. 5 soyne / 9 byte þerof — **147.** 1 con *above the line* / con aft*ur* fall / 2 was well.

L 145. 1 venomed with that / 2 shuld / their releve / 3 pharao therfor / 4 godes folk / then *wanting* / gun / greve / 5 Therfore the third / sent theym syne / 6 grete / did theym / myscheve / 7 They / corrumpt / both *missing* / corne / 8 no m*a*n myght / theire / meve / 9 Nothyng myght byde theire byt / 10 that save shuld aft*er* be / 11 Pharao / yitt / 12 therfor let the / goo fre /— **146.** 1 He said / shuld theym / 2 sent / fourt *inserted above the line* / vengeaunce forthy / Ca. ix. *in right margin* / 3 Grete flyand / 4 boote / bitterly / 5 Where / they / foote / 6 full hidous harme they had therby / 7 Bot goodes folk suche faute noon / 8 they woned / wele / b 2 *in right bottom corner* / 9 fol. 120 b. / Pharao / full frowarde / 10 wykked / 11 made full harde / 12 godes / heldes / — **147.** Ca. ix. *in left margin.* / 1 Therfore / come aft*er* fast / 2 that mych wars / that othre / 3 on theire / cast / 4 shepe and swyne / ox / ass / 5 So in that lyve there myght noone / 6 therof / harmes / 7 peryll / 8 let / people pas / 9 Therfore / 10 Moyses meved / 11 povdre evell.

148 That powder blew ouer all by lyue;
wher so yt blew, [sone] wex a [blayne].
yt mad like messels man *and* wyfe
þat ware not to goddes bedyng bayn.
Both nyȝt *and* day swylke dust can dryue.
than was the seuynt of frost [and rayn]
with hale stons that dyd them str[yv]e;
wher so þei bett, þei brast þer brayn.
Swylk thonour *and* lefynyng
in all that land was wroght
[That herbes and all maner of thyng
was waist and broght to noght.]

The dust made men and women as lepers. The seventh plague was hailstorms, with thunder and lightening, which destroyed everything.

149 The aght was yll wormes fleand;
þei couerd ouer all þat cuntre.
Agayns the storme myȝt no thyng stand:
þei left no fruttes, ne leuys on tre.
The IX [then] fell neyr at hand:
so marke that none myȝt oþer see;
No lyȝt was leuyd in all þat land,
And that enduryd by days thre.
The tent was sodan ded
of all folke, fo *and* frend.
Then toke the kyng to red
to lett the pepyll wend.

After the plagues of locusts, of darkness and of sudden death, Pharaoh consented to the departure of the people.

150 The kyng gafe leue vnto moysen
and Aron to wend os þei [wold].
On mold wer non more meri men
fro tym [þei herd] þe[s] talys bee [told].
þei hyghed þem fast vnto Jessen,
wher the Jewes wonnyd both ȝing *and* old,
And sett þem certan tyms *and* when
to wend, *and* bad þei suld be bold
To borow *and* *with* þem beyre
All guds þat þei myȝt gette.
And so ordand thei here
full smartly small *and* grette.

Moses and Aaron hastened to the people, and bade them prepare for their journey, and take with them both their own possessions and the things they were able to borrow.

S 148. 1 ouer *above* or *cancelled* / 2 blake rayn / 7 *and* with hale / stroye / 11—12 *omitted* / — **149.** 4 tre *above the line* / — **150.** 2 wer told / 4 þer talys bee / 6 old *above the line.*

L 148. 1 povdre / belive / 2 wherso it bote soone wax a blayne / 3 It made lik messells both / wyve / 4 that wer / godes byddyngys bayne / 5 nyght / suche / gun dryve / 6 then / the *wanting* / sevent / froste / rayne / 7 With / hale stoones / did theym stryve / 8 Wherso they lyght they / the brayne / 9 Such / leuynyng / 11—12 = *text above.* — **149.** 1 eght / evell / flyand / 2 that couerd / that cuntre / 3 that storme myght no thing / 4 they / noo frute / leves / 5 Ca. x. *in left margin* / neynt then neghed nere / 6 suche darknes / noon myght othre se / 7 Noo lyght / left / that / 8 and / endured / dayes / 9 Ca. xi. *in left margin* / dede / 10 folk foo / frende / 11 rede / 12 let / people wende / — **150.** 1 gave leve / 2 Aaron / as they wold / 3 Ca. xii. *in left margin* / were noone / meriar / 4 tyme they herd thes tales told / 5 They hyed theym faste / 6 where / Jews wonned / yong / 7 set theym certayn tyme / 8 they shuld / 9 theym bere / 10 all goodes that they myght gete / 11 they were / 12 smertly / grete.

Since the entry into Egypt the Israelites had increased from 70 to 300,000. God fed and guided them on their journey.

151 Sexti *and* ten *in* yowth *and* eld fol. 17 a
wer told whe*n* þei enturd þat land.
Now wer þei that myȝt wepyn weld
to reckynd thre C thowssand,
Owttakyn wemen *and* hyrdes in feld 1805
and chylder that in [n]a stoure myȝt stand.
þei prayd all god to be þer beld,
And furth þei went, as was ordand.
On days at þer desyre
with all fudes wer þei fede; 1810
On nyghtys with flawme of fyre
in lyghtnes ware þei lede.

Pharaoh pursued after them with chariots and mules as far as the Red Sea.

152 When pharo wyst that þei wendyd ware,
moyses *and* aron *and* ilka iew,
he commawndyd all men, both lesse *and* mare, 1815
aftur þat pepyll forto persew
with chares *and* mules *and* mekyll store.
to the greke se he gart remew.
ffull well he hopyd to haue þem þore,
for kyndly course no ferre he knew. 1820
he sayd, »forsoth, we sall
bynd them full soyre in bandes.«
Bot god that gouerans all,
he sauys ay his seruandes.

When the Israelites saw Pharaoh and his host, they were sore afraid and regretted their departure, but Moses comforted them.

153 when þei herd, yt is not to hyd, 1825
the kyng was command on swylke a wyse,
þei saw the see on þat on syde
and on þat oþer all þer enmys,
ffor ferd full fast þen can þei chyde
and sayd, »oure lyuys not lang l[yse]; 1830
Bettur had vs ben forto byde
and [haue] bene sauyd in the kyng seruyce.
þei wend moyses had wyst
and tylyd þem furth with trayne.
hee sayd, »be ȝe of gud trest; 1835
god sall vs saue certayn.«

S 151. 1 leuiticus *in the upper margin* / — **152.** 6 gt *cancelled before* gart /— **153.** 6 lastes.

L 151. 1 Sexty / youthe / elde / 2 they entred that / 3 were they / myght wepens / 4 reken mony a thowsand / 5 Oute taken wommen / hirdes / 6 childre / noo store myght / 7 Ca. xiii. *in left margin* / They / theire / 8 and / they / 9 theire desire / 10 with / foodes / they fed / 11 nyghtes / flamme / fire / 12 lightnes were they led / — **152.** 1 Ca. xiiii. *in left margin* / Pharao / that *wanting* / they wendyng wore / 2 and *wanting* / Moyses Aaron / ich a lew / 3 He commaund / les / more / 4 aftire theym / pursew / 5 mych store / 6 rede see / 7 ffor wele / hoped / have theym thore / 8 curse noo far / 9 for sothe / shall / 10 theym / sore / 11 gouernes / 12 saves /— **153.** 1 When they herd tell is noght at hyde / 2 comeand in such wys / 3 They / that oon / 4 that othir / theire / 5 then gun they chide / 6 lives noo lenger lyse / 7 Better / to haue byd / 8 saved / kynges / seruys / 9 They wened / 10 tylled theym / 11 He / ye / goode trust / 12 shall / save / certayne.

154 To god he bad þem crye *and* call,
and to the see wyghtly he wentt.
hys wand he lete in the wat*ur* fall
and prayd to god w*ith* gud entent.
The wat*ur* stud vpe ose a walle:
swylke *grace* god to þem þor sentt.
Thurght owt þe see so wentt þei all
þat nowdyr chyld ne wyf *wer* schent.
Pharo con aft*ur* fownd
and trowd well þem to haue tane.
he *and* his mene3e wer drownyd;
on lyfe þ*er* lafte not one.

The waters of the Red Sea were divided, so that the Israelites crossed over on dry land; but Pharaoh and his host were drowned.

155 When Moyses *and* all hys mene3e
stud on land *and* lokyd agayn
And saw how þei ware past the see,
and all þ*er* enmys sleghly slayn,
To call on god þen co*m*mawnd hee,
and this songe sayd he c*er*tayn:
»Canteme*us* do*m*ino glori*o*se,
loue we god *and* his pow*er* playne,
fol. 17 b That sauys vs on this wyse
owt of all wo to wende,
And hath stroyd our enmys
that soght vs forto schend.«

Moses and the children of Israel sang a song of praise to the Lord, who had saved them and destroyed their enemies.

156 Moyses þ*us* *and* hys folke in fere
mad joy to god, both moyre *and* lesse.
So wentt þei furth *and* neghed nere
A forest that was fayr to gese.
þore fand þei wellys, fayr *and* clere,
w*ith* wat*ur* semand fayr *and* fresche.
Bot to asay on sydes sere,
yt was all blend w*ith* bytt*ur*nese.
þat gart þem be grochand
and m*ur*merand in þ*er* mode.
Then moyses w*ith* hys wand
thrugh godd*es* *grace* made yt gude.

The people murmured at the bitterness of the water in the wilderness. Moses made it sweet with his staff.

S 154. 6 to *cancelled before* god / þor *above the line* /— **155.** 5 Canteme*us* *in right margin*.

L 154. 1 theym cry / 2 wightly / went / 3 His / wat*er* / 4 goode / 5 fol. 121 a / Exodi *in upper margin* / wat*er* stoode vp as / wall / 6 such / there god / theym sent / 7 Thurgh oute the / went they / 8 that noone of theym therin was shent / 9 Pharao gun aft*er* found / 10 theym to haue slayne ychoone / 11 men were dround / 12 lyve there was left noone /— **155.** 1 all *wanting* / his me*n*ye / 2 stoode on the / loked agayne / 3 they were / 4 theire enmes / slayne / 5 then comaund he / 6 sang then / certayne / 8 love / his *wanting* / powere / Ca. xv. *in right margin* / 9 saves / 10 Oute / woo / 11 has / oure / 12 shende /— **156.** 1 thus / thoo folke / 2 made ioye / more / les / 3 went they / 4 a fforest / faire / ges / 5 There / thei *inserted above the line* / welles faire / 6 wat*er* / faire / fresh / 7 assay / 8 it / menged / bitt*er*nes / 9 That made theym / 10 mourned / theyre moode / 11 his / 12 thurgh godes / it goode.

The children of Israel, having rested, journeyed to the forest of Sin. As they suffered from lack of bread, God rained manna from Heaven.

157 þus louyd þei god of all his *grace*
[þat for þem] wroght swylke werk*es* grett.
þei [soiourned] þore a *cer*tayn space
tyll þei were rest *and* well refette.
Sythyn past þei vnto a noþ*er* place,
A forest of syne, was fere to gette,
And þore thei[m] fell a febyll case,
defawtt of fude, both drynke *and* mette.
Bot god herd moyses steuy*n*,
and Aron helpe he wold.
he send þem foyde fro heuy*n*,
flour that ma*n*na was cald.

They did eat manna forty years, until they came to the forest of Rephidim.

158 þore fell be fore þem foulys sere,
aft*ur* þ*er* lyst *and* lykyng was.
And so þei were fede XL ȝere,
ay qwyls þei wonnyd in wyld*er*nese;
þer cloghyng was eu*er* in lyke clere,
And eu*er* þ*er* fude was fayr *and* fresche.
So wer þ[e] folke fede fayre in fere;
þ*er* beste*s* lyue[d] w*ith* grouand gresse.
þen past þei furth fro Syn,
a forest fayr *and* wyde,
To the forest of raphadyn,
and þore þei buskyd to abyde.

Moses struck the rock, and water came out of it for man and beast.

159 Wat*ur* be for þem [fand þei non]
in ryu*er*, ne in dyke to stande.
þ*er*for þei mournyd *and* mad grett mone.
To moyses ware þei all grochand.
God spake to moyses *and* aron
and bad that he suld w*ith* his wand
Before the folke stryke on the ston,
and wat*ur* suld he haue at hande.
Moyses sayd, »men take tent
to me, both most *and* lest.«
he stroke, *and* wat*ur* went
owt both to man *and* beste.

S 157. 2 þerfor þei / 3 suffern /— **158.** 7 þei / — **159.** 1 non þei fand; non *above the line.*

L 157. 1 Thus loved they / 2 that for theym / such / grete / 3 They soiourned there / 4 they / rested / wele refete / 5 Sithen / they to an othre / 6 of *wanting* / Syn / fare / gete / Ca. xvi. *in right margin* / 7 And *wanting* / Ther theym befell / feble / 8 defaute / foode / mete / 9 god *inserted above the line* / Moyses / steven / 10 Aaron / 11 sent theym foode / heven / 12 floure / — **158.** 1 Ther / before theym fovlles / 2 after theire lust / likyng / was *wanting* / 3 thei / fed fourty yere / 4 ay whilst they dwelt / wyldirnes / 5 Theire clethyng / like / 6 and / theire foode / faire / fresh / 7 So were the / faire fed / 8 their / lived / grov- and gyrs / 9 They passed they / 10 A/ faire / 11 Raphadyn / 12 and there they purposed / — **159.** 1 Wat*er* before theym fand they noone / 2 reuer / stang to stand / xvii. *in right margin* / 3 Therfore they mourned / gret moone / 4 to Moyses were they / 5 spak / to Aaron / 6 sayd that / shuld / 7 folk / stoone / 8 wat*er* shuld / hand / 9 said / 10 leste / 11 He / wat*er* oute / 12 owt *wanting* / vnto.

160 ffor moyses sayd, »to me take hede,»
1910 And mad no mynd of godd*es* myght,
God spake vnto hy*m* þ*er* gud sped
and reckynd to hym this reson ryȝt,
»ffor þ*at* þou demyd not of this dede
þ*at* yt be me was done *and* dyght,
1915 fol. 18 a my folke, I say, þou sall not lede
Into the land that [I]þem heght.»
Then word of them sprang
in Cytys on ylka syde.
þai say, »yf thei last lang,
1920 our remys þei sall ou*er* ryde.»

Because Moses took the honour of this upon himself, he was denied an entry into the promised land. The neighbouring peoples feared the Israelites.

161 ffaure kyng*es* hath horss*us* *and* harnes hent,
Amalec *and* oþ*er* thre.
þei say, »this ebrews sall be schentt,
bot yf thei sped þem fast to flee.»
1925 Bot moyses sone hys men hath sentt
and made þ*er* cheftan Josue.
he pr*a*yd at home w*i*th gud entent
so that the vyctory hade hee.
Whyls moyses held hys hende
1930 vp vnto heuyn on hyghte,
þ*er* myȝt non enmys lend
agaynys hys folke to fyght.

The children of Israel under Joshua prevailed against Amalek and three other kings, when Moses held up his hands to Heaven.

162 Iosue ou*er*com all þos enmyse,
and full grett welth he wan þ*er*by
1935 Of catell *and* of cloghes of pr*i*ce,
And home agayn fast can þei hye.
Moyses gart make grett sac*ra*fyce,
ffor god had ȝ[y]fyn þem the victory,
And ordand pr*i*stys *and* princis wyse
1940 forto kepe furth þ*er* cu*m*pany.
Getro of madian,
þat moyses founded fro,
he soght vnto hy*m* þen
w*i*th wyf *and* chyld*er* also.

Moses made a sacrifice of thanksgiving. Jethro of Madian brought to him his wife and children.

S 160. 7 *in upper margin* leuitic*us* and Amalett / satt not / — **162.** 6 ȝfyn / 7 wyse*s* *instead of* wyse.

L 160. 1 For Moyses said ' takes ' 2 and / godes / 3 ther goode spede 4 rekened / to *wanting* / the reason ryght ' 5 that thou demed noght / 6 that it by ' / doon / 7 My / thou shall / 8 into / I theym hyght / 9 worde / theym fast / 10 cuntres / ych a / 11 They / if they / 12 oure Reaumes they shal / — **161.** 1 Foure / has hors / 2 othre / 3 They / the Ebrews shall / shent / 4 if they spede they*m* tle 5 soone his has sent / 6 mad theire chevetan / 7 He / goode / 8 victorie had he / 9 Whilst / his hend / 10 heven / hyght / 11 Ther myght noon enemys / 12 agayns his folk / *in right bottom corner* b. 3 (*late hand*) / — **162.** 1 fol. 121 b. / ouercome / theire enmys / 2 And / grete / therby / 3 clothes / 4 and / agayne / gun they hy / 5 grete sacrifice / 6 for / yeven theym / the *wanting* / Victory / 7 prestes / princes wyse / 8 kep / that company / 9 xviii *in left margin* / Getro / 10 that Moyses / went froo / 11 He then / 12 wyve / childre twoo.

The ten commandments were given to Moses on mount Sinai. Meanwhile the people fell into idolatry.

163 Aft*ur* that tyme þei toke the ways
wher the montt of synay was nere,
wher moyses for the pepyll pr*ays*,
and god vnto hy*m* þor can apeyre.
he fastyd full faurty days,
the law of god for he wold lere.
Then co*m*mawndme*nt*e*s*, os clerke*s* says,
war to hy*m* takyn *in* tables sere.
Bot whyls he þor can dwell
to lere godde*s* laws lely,
hys folke full fowll fell
and made þem mawme*n*try.

The people made a golden calf and worshipped it. God bade Moses return to them from the mountain.

164 A calf of gold þei gart vp stand
and hone*r*d yt wi*th* all þe*r* mayne.
»þis broyȝt vs owt of egyp land
and sall vs saue», þei say, »ce*r*tayn.»
þen god vnto moyses co*m*mawnd,
»wend down vnto þi pepyll agayn,
ffor þei haue synnyd *and* tone on hand
a werke that wyll wurth to payn.»
Moyses þen from god past
and hyed hy*m* to þat halfe.
he fand his folke full fast
kneland be for þat calfe.

Moses broke up the golden calf, burnt it, and threw the ashes into the water. Those who drank of it grew gilded beards like golden wire.

165 þat mawme*n*try þat þei of me*n*t
was hedows thyng [to] hy*m* at here.
he brake þe*r* calfe *and* sone yt brent
and kest the powder i*n* wat*ur* clere.
þei dra*n*ke þe*r* of eue*r* os þei went,
for oþe*r* wat*ur* was non so nere.
[On] þos þat to þat syn assent
the venia*n*ce of god cane apere,
ffor he wald haue þem spylt fol. 18 b
aft*ur* þe*r* awne desyre.
The berde*s* of þem wer gylt
like vnto the gold wyre.

S 163. 12 *Lines* 7—8 *repeated here and cancelled* |— **164.** 3 egypland | **165.** 2 at hy*m* | 7 And. | 8 *'tertius'* | *in bottom margin.*

L 163. 1 Afte*r* | they | 2 vnto the mount of Synai | was nere *missing* | 3 Where Moysses | people | 4 to | there gun appere | 5 xix *in left margin* | He fasted fully fourty | 7 Ten commaundmente*s* as | 8 were | gyven | 9 xxxii *in left margin* | whilst | there gun | 10 godes law lelely | 11 his folk | fowl | 12 theyn | maumentry | — **164.** 1 they made | 2 honored it | theire | 3 This broght | oute | Egypt | 4 shal | save they | ce*r*tayne | 5 Then | to | comm*a*und | 6 thy people agayne | 7—8 *missing* | 9 then fro | 10 hy*m wanting* | that alfe | 11 He | ful | 12 before the |— **165.** 1 The mavmentry that they | 2 hidous | thyng *missing* | to hym | 3 He | theire calf | sithen it | 4 kast | poudre | wate*r* | 5 They drank therof | as they | 6 othre wate*r* | noone they*m* nere | 7 On all that to that | 8 the vengeaunce | gode gun appere | 9 wold | theym | 10 afte*r* theire awn desire | 11 theym | 12 vnto rede gold.

166 when moyses *and* his broþer Aron
saw sygne of god in þat sted,
Oþer wyttenese nede þem none
bot at þer here was waxin rede.
of þem that was [with] tresone tone
and bold to breke that moyses bede,
ware XXIII m*ilia* sloyne;
þen wer the remland wyll of rede.
To fete þei can þe[m] fal[d].
and moyses gatte [þem] *grace*,
And þen to þem he told
how god spake in þat space.

Of those who had sinned, twenty-three thousand fell by the sword. Moses made an atonement for the people and gave unto them God's commandments.

167 A[n] arke, he sayd, þei suld do make,
þer in to hold þat holy store:
The tables þat god can to hym take,
with manna *and with* mekyll more.
All þer sac*ra*fyce for godd*es* sake
and all þat offerd suld be þore.
And þer *with* suld none wune ne wake
bot folke þat were ordand þerfor.
This arke þei made in hye
of gold *and* presci*us* stone.
The lynege of leuy
to tent þerto was tone.

At God's word, they made an ark of gold and precious stones, which was put into the care of the sons of Levi.

168 Aron was ordand byschop to be
forto resaue the sac*ra*fyce,
And p*r*est*es and* dekyns in þer degree
at ser*u*e to hym in sere ser*u*yce.
And ryght so the duke Josue
was chosyn os a prince *and* most *in* price,
wher so þei come in ylke cuntre
to sett the batels in asyce.
A tab*er*nakyll þei toke
to kepe god*es* arke ay clene.
So end*es* the secund boke,
þat of moyses wyll mene.

Aaron and his sons were ordained as priests, and Joshua was made a prince to lead the people in battle. Thus ends the second book of Moses.

S 166. 4 wax *cancelled before* was / 9 þen fall / —**167.** 1 And / 10 *and cancelled before* of.

L 166. 1 When / brothre Aaron / 2 signe / that stede / 3 Othre wittnes nedyd theym noone / 4 by theire / waxen / 5 Of them / wer *with* treson taken / 6 brek / bad / 7 Were thre and twenty thovsand slayne / 8 then / remelant / 9 To the erth thei gun theym fold / 10 gate theym / 11 then / theym / 12 that /— **167.** 1 xxvi *in left margin* / In arke / they shuld doo / 2 therin / theire holy / 3 that / gun / to *wanting* / 4 mych / 5 theire sacryfice / godys / 6 theire offeryng shuld / thore / 7 there with shuld noon won / 8 folk that / therfore / 9 Arke they made truly / 10 precius stoone / 11 lynage / 12 therto were chosen / — **168.** 1 xxviii *in left margin* / Aaron / byshop / 2 receyve theire sacrifice / 3 Prestes / Dekens / theire degre / 4 serve hym / ser*u*ice / 5 Duke / 6 chosen as Prynce / 7 Wher so they / ych / 8 theire batells / assyse / 9 Tabernacle they / 11 booke / 12 that / Moyses Wyll.

Numeri.

The children of Israel journeyed to the forest of Faran, where God bade Moses number the people.

169 When moyses þus had ordand all
full cunnandly os he well can
Vnto goddes seruyce what suld fall,
and what to werres that wrschyp wan,
Then remeuyd þei both grett *and* small
to A forest þat heght faran.
þer tabernakyll þer can þei stall;
with the arke of god þus þei be gane.
god bad moyses, [hys jew],
suld fayre on the feld
And nowmer his men all new,
All þat myȝt weppyns weld.

There were 603,000 horsemen over 20 years of age, and 605,000 foot-soldiers. The priests of Levi numbered 30,000 men.

170 þen moyses dyd os god commaund:
he toke all þat past XX ȝere
VI C *and* III milia
Acowntyd of knyghtes in armys clere,
And fyghand folke on fote he fand fol. 19 a
sex hunderth *and* V milia in fere,
with outyn clerkes þat were ordand
to serue god on sydes sere.
And [þei] wer told be tale,
of the lynage of leuy,
To XXX milia hale:
þat was a fayr cumpany.

Aaron and his sister Miriam grew envious of Moses, and complained that he had lead them out to suffer cold and hunger.

171 Sone aftur þen begane debate:
Aron *and* his systur mary
Moyses, þer broþer, can þei hate
and had to hym full grett enuy.
þei say it falys not for his astate,
and als þat he was not worthy
To gouerand þem *and* gyd all gatte
or forto make ouer þem maystry.
þei sayd he was to bold
at bryng þem from þer blyse
To suffer hungur *and* cald,
and all þer myrth to mysse.

S 169. 6 g *in* heght *inserted above the line* / 9 that hys jews / **170.** 5 Numeri *in upper margin* / 11 *Two letters cancelled before* To.

L 169. 1 fol. 122 a. Liber Numeri *on top of page* / thus / 2 worthyly as / wele kan / 3 godes seruice / shuld befall / 4 werris / worship / 5 remeved they gret / 6 a / that hight ffaran / 7 Theire tabernacle there gun they / 8 ark / thus thei began / 9 God / Moyses his Jew / 10 he shuld fare / Ca. i. *in right margin* / 11 And *wanting* / Nombre / 12 all that myght wepens /— **170.** 1 Then / did as / 2 told / that passed twenty yere / 3 Sex hunderyth / thre thovsand / 4 acount / armes / 5 fyghthand / foote / 6 sex hunderyth / fyve thovsand / 7 Withouten / that / 8 serve / sides / 9 they were / by / 10 linage / 11 To *missing* / Thirty thovsand withouten fale / 12 this / faire company /— **171.** 1 Soone after then began / 2 Aaron / suster / Ca. xii. *underlined, in right margin* / 3 theire brothre gun they / 4 grete envy / 5 They / fallys / 6 as / þat *wanting* / noght / 7 gouerne theym / guyd / gate / 8 mak ouer theym maistry / 9 They said he was to blame / 10 to / theym fro theire blysse / 11 soffre hungre / shame / 12 their / *Two(?) illegible words (another hand), in right margin; also* : D.

172 ffor þis defawt gret *veniance* fell,
os god hy*m* se[l]f vowched saue to send:
Mary all sone was fowl mesell,
and þat endured VIII days to ende.
Whe*n* Aron saw þis *and* herd tell,
hy[s] awn defawt well [he] kend;
To moyses fette fast dow[n] he fell
and pra*y*d to god his myse to amend.
Then moyses for hy*m* pra*y*d
And for his syst*ur* also.
lep*ur* þat on hyr was layde
full tytt was tane hyr fro.

In anger God caused Miriam to become a leper, but she was healed at the prayer of Moses.

173 Then made þei myrth eu*e*rylka man
and toke þ*er* tent*es* in þat tyde
And flytted furth fro faran
vnto a forest fast be syde.
And fude enogh þ*er* fand þei þan;
þei beld þem þor a whyle to abyde.
þer myȝt þei se to canan,
qwylke god had heyȝt þem not to hyde.
Bot þei fand fandy*ng*
or tyme þat þei come þore.
þen moyses mad gedd*e*ryng
of all folke hy*m* before.

The people journeyed onwards and were able to see Canaan in the distance. Moses gathered the people together.

174 And sayd, »s*er*s, ȝe sall vnd*er*stand
how god hath sent yow solace sere,
þat led yow owt of Egypt land
fro pharo *and* his folke *in* fere
And broyȝt yow sou[nd]ly ou*er* the sand,
whe*n* all drowned þat yo*ur* enmys were.
And for yo*ur* hele he hath ordand,
and for yo*ur* fode, þis fawrte ȝere.
And thynk als on þis thyng
how yo*ur* elders and ȝe
hath groned *and* made gruchyng
both vnto god *and* me.«

He spoke of the great things God had done for the Israelites.

fol. 19 b

S 172. 3 *Lines* 4 *and* 6 *transposed* / 6 hyr / scho / — **174.** 5 soudan*d*ly.

L 172. 1 For this defaute grete vengeaunce / 2 as god hym self did send / 3 Mari was a foule / 4 that / 5 Aaron / this / 6 his / defaute full wele he / D *in right margin* / 7 fete / fast *wanting* / downe / 8 mys / to *missing* / 10 and / suster / 11 Lepre that / hir / layd / 12 full soone / taken hire froo / — **173.** 1 they / euerych / 2 their / vp in that / Ca. xiii. *underlined, in right margin* / 3 flitted / then fro / 4 besyde / 5 foode enugh the fand they then / 6 they / theym there / 7 Ther myght they / Canaan / 8 which / promyst is not / 9 they hade grete besynes / 10 that they / there / 11 Then moyses both more *and* les / 12 of all *missing* / his peple gedred he to gedere / — **174.** 1 said serys ye shal vndirstand / 2 how / has / you / 3 That / you oute / 4 Pharao / folk / infere / 5 broght you savely / 6 When / was drouned that / enmes / 7 heale / has / 8 foode this fourty yere / 9 thinkes Also / this / 10 ye / 11 has greved / grochyng.

He exhorted them to be grateful. Twelve men, among whom were Joshua and Caleb, were chosen to spy out the land of Canaan.

175 »þerfor all myse forto amend
honers hym euer with all your myȝt
And kepe his law ose I hath kend
in word *and* dede both day *and* nyȝt.
And certan men I rede we send
to serche the land that he hath heyȝt,
And se how the folke may þem dyffend
and aftur þer rede rewle vs ryȝt.»
Josue toke he þen
and Calafe to wende ydder.
The folke toke oþer ten
and send furth all to geydder.

The twelve men set out, and after 40 days ten returned.

176 In canan þer cowrse þei cast
and soyȝt the land in lengh *and* brede.
By fawrty days war fully past,
had þei notyd all þat was nede.
The ten com fyrst, [þat] went furth last,
and to moyses þei spake gud spede.
The folke þen floked abowt þem fast
All forto herkyn *and* take hede;
And frayned how þei had faryn
owt in the vncuth land,
And yf þei suld yt tharne,
or haue yt in þer hand.

They reported that there was no country to compare with this land. It was rich in wine and water, wheat and oil. But it was inhabited by mighty warriors.

177 The ten þen can þer tales teli,
þat stound þem gretly in þer steuyn.
þei sayd þer was not in to dwell
a bettur land vnder heuyn,
ffor þor was wyn *and* watur of well,
whett *and* oyle all ordand euyn,
Bot at the folke ware ferse *and* fell,
and Nowmer of þem myȝt no man neuyn.
»þei ar wytty of were
and well of armys kend;
hors, scheld *and* spere
haue þei redy at hend.

S 176. 5 *and* /— **177.** 8 neuyn *under the line.*

L 175. 1 Therfor / mys / 2 honores / euer *wanting* / myght / 3 kepes / / as / haue / 4 nyght / 5 certane / 6 has hyght / 7 folk / theym defend / 8 after theire / revle / ryght / 9 then / 10 Caleb / wend thidre / 11 othre / 12 sent / to gedre /— **176.** 1 Canaan theire course theire caste / 2 behelde / lenght / 3 Be fourty / war *missing* / 4 they had wele / that / 5 come first that went / 6 and *missing* / they / goode / 7 And the / then gederyd aboute theym / 8 all for to / *in right bottom corner* b 4 (*very faint*; *late hand*) / 9 fol. 122 b / asked howe they / fairen / 10 owt *wanting* / that vncouth lande / 11 if they myght it come to / tharne *omitted* / 12 and have it / theire hande /— **177.** 1 Thoo / þen *wanting* / gun theire / 2 that stondes theym / theire steven / 3 They / there / 4 better / vndre heven / 5 there / wyne / water / 6 whete / even / 7 Bot that the folk was fers / 8 noumbre / theym myght noman tell / 9 They / werre / 10 wele in armes / 11 Hors and shelde / 12 they have / to defend.

Their cities also were strongly fortified, so that there was little hope of conquering it. The people murmured at the news and blamed Moses.

178 þei ar so grett on grone to gang;
we seme bo[t] barns to þer bodes.
And þer Cetes ar sett so strong;
þei cownt no cumyng of enmys.
yt is no tyme to tary lang
to loke wher no releue lyse.»
þen wax þor murmur þ[em] a mang,
as rebels þei be gan to ryse.
And to moyses þei [say],
»how durst þou do this thyng,
þus traturly [be tray]
vs all *and* our of spryng?»

They said that they might have lived happily in Egypt, whereas now they would perish in dire distress; but Caleb and Joshua on their return held out hope. The land would be conquered by trust in God.

179 »We myȝt haue lyued in egypt land
and gouernd vs in gud degre.
fol. 20 a Now hath þou stald vs heyr to stand
to dye in payn *and* pouerte.»
To kyll hym haue þei made connande.
so come Calafe *and* Josue.
þei toke vnto [þem] new tythand
and bade abayst þei suld not be.
»Yf ȝe in trewth be ryȝt
and to god call *and* craue,
The land that he hath heyȝt,
þat hette we you to haue.»

The inhabitants of the land were idolaters. God would not fail the Israelites, if they believed in Him.

180 »ffor all the ways os we can wend,
we fand fell folke full of enuy
And grett, bot god is not þer frend,
for þei lyfe all in mawmentry.
þer Cetys sone [we] sall do schend
and stroye þer borows by *and* by.
ffor þei ar folke full of þe fende,
and in god sall we fast afy,
Sen þat he fayled vs neuer,
In stowre when we war stede;
he wyll be with vs euer.»
þen war the rebels rade.

S 178. 3 se *cancelled before* Cetes / 6 is *cancelled before* lyse / 7 þor *over* m *cancelled* / þan / 9 sayd / 11 be trayde /— **179.** 7 hym /—**180.** 2 fell *above three letters cancelled.*

L 178. 1 They / grete / grounde / gange / 2 bot barnes / theire bodys / 3 theire Cites / strange / 4 They drede noo comyng / 5 It / noo / tarry / 6 where noo relevyng lies / 7 Then / there / theym amang / 8 rebelles they began / 9 Ca. xiiii. *underlined, in left margin.* / Moyses they sayde / 10 thou doo 11 Thus Traturfully betrayde / 12 oure ofspryng / — **179.** 1 myght / lived / Egypt / 2 gouerne / goode / 3 has thou stall / here / 4 die / payne / 5 have they mad conneand / 6 Caleb / 7 They told / theym / 8 sayd abaste they shuld / 9 If ye / travth / ryght / 10 crave / 11 has hyght / 12 that hete / yov / have /— **180.** 1 For / as / gun wende / 2 many folke / envy / 3 And grett *wanting* / Bot / theire frende / 4 they live / on maumentry / 5 Theire Cites soone we shal shende / 6 there boures / 7 they are / the / 8 shal / faste affy 9 Sith that / failed / 10 in stoure / were / 11 He / 12 then / rebells glade.

Moses prayed God to have mercy on the discontented, but the Promised Land was forbidden to them.

181 To moyses fette þei fell in hye
and mad grett sorow i*n* godd*es* syȝt.
Then moyses pr*a*yd god all*myght*y
forto haue pety of þ*er* plyȝt.
God answerd to hy*m* opy*n*ly
and sayd, »for þ*at* þou trawd not ryȝt,
þer sall none of þat cu*m*pany
cume i*n* the land, qwylk I haue heyȝt.
þoo ten þat told tythand
my folke so to greue,
þei sall lend in this land
w*ith* mornyng *and* myscheue.»

Only Joshua and Caleb and their descendants were to dwell in that land.

182 »And all þat trowde vnto þ*er* tale
to tene moyses, my ser*u*ant dere,
here sall þei abyd *and* be in bale.
all þat ar past ou*er* thryty ȝere,
þ*er* chylde*r* *and* þ*er* heyrys all,
sall fyll that land both ferr *and* nere.
Josue *and* Calafe þei tway sall
be souerans in all sydes sere;
ffor þei went wysly þore
and told yow trew thythand;
þei *and* þ*er* heyrys eu*er* more
sall be lordes of þat land.»

God did not relent at the prayers of the people. But He granted them light and fresh water, food and clothing.

183 Then all þo rebels þem repent
and pr*a*yd to god for bett*ur* bone.
Bot to þ*er* tales toke he no tent;
als he had demed, so most yt be [done].
And neu*er* the lesse lyȝt he þem lent
a bowt mydnyȝt w*ith* owtyn moyne,
And fresche wat*ur* wher so þei went, fol. 20 b
and fode, yf þat þei wer fele or fone,
Euy*n* at þ*er* awn likyng
aft*ur* þer tonges wold tast,
And keped ay þ*er* cloghyng
w*ith*owtyn wem or wast.

S 182. 4 thryrty '— **183.** 6 moyne *below the line.*

L 181. 1 Moyses fete they / hy / 2 made grete / in theire moode / 3 almyghty / 4 for to have pite of that bloode / 5 answeryd / 6 that they trowed noght ryght / 7 There shall not / that company / 8 come / which / hyght / 9 Tho / that / tithand / 10 folk / forto greve / 11 They shal / 12 myscheve /— **182.** 1 that trowed / their / 2 Moyses / servant / 3 Here shall they byde / 4 that / ar *omitted* / passed / thirty yere / xx *over* thirty / 5 Theire childre / theire heiers / 6 shall / far / 7 Caleb they to sale / 8 ben souerans on / 9 they / thore / 10 you / tythand / 11 They/ theire heirs euermore / 12 shal / that /— **183.** 1 the rebells theym / 2 better boone / 3 theire / noo / 4 as / has demyd behoves be doone / 5 neuertheles light / theym / 6 aboute mydnyght withouten moone / 7 fresh water / they / 8 foode wher they were / fele or fone *missing* / 9 Even / theire / awn *omitted* / 10 after their / taste / 11 theire clethyng / 12 with outen / waste.

Korah, Dathan, and Abiram rose up against Moses.

184 ffor þis debate be gan to be
grett murmur all þos men amang.
A crewell man þat heyȝt Core
agayn moyses moued mekyll wrang.
ffull rych he was of gold *and* fee;
þerfor he toyȝt hym self more strang
And mekyll more worthy þen hee
to gouarn folke *and* for þe[m] gang.
he gatte of hys assent
Datan *and* abyron,
And told þem his entent,
and gart þem fondly fon.

They gathered together 250 men and went up to the Tabernacle to sacrifice. Korah was to be high priest, with Abiram and Dathan as priests.

185 Tway hunderth rebels gart he ryse
and fyfty at þer steuyn to stand.
To þe tabernakyll, as wreches vn wyse,
went þei furth to make offerand.
þei senssed þor *and* dyd seruyce,
as byschoppes had be fore ordand,
And sayd aron was not of price
swylk werkkes to take on hand,
Bot Core suld be þen
þer hed, os hym well aw,
And abyron *and* datan
byschoppes to led [þer] law.

Moses and Aaron bade the rebellious leaders come the following morning, when they would learn who was God's chosen.

186 God was not of þat purpasse payd;
þerfor yt turned þem vnto tene.
Moyses *and* aron to þem sayd,
»sers, ȝe wot well with owtyn wene
Thrugh grace of god we two war grayd
to be in state as we haue bene.
yf any oþer be bettur arayd,
to morn þen sall the soth be sene.»
To come þen haue þei hyȝt
on the morn, both lest *and* mast.
Bot god ordand þat nyȝt
that all þat werke was wast.

S 184. 1 ffro *converted into* ffor / 8 þen /— **185.** 12 te.

L 184. Ca. xvi. *in left margin* 1 For this began / 2 there was gret / all þos men *wanting* / theym amang / 3 cruell / that heght / 4 agaynes Moyses meved muche / 5 fol. 123 a. / Numeri *in upper margin* / ryche / golde / fe / 6 therfore hym thoght he was more / 7 mych / than he / 8 gouerne / theym / 9 He had of his / 10 Abyron / 11 theym / 12 made theym fowly / — **185.** 1 Twoo hunderyth rebelles / they ryse / 2 theire steven / 3 the tabernacle / vnwyse / 4 they forto mak / 5 They sensed there / did / 6 byshopes / before / 7 Aaron / pryce / 8 such highnes forto / 9 shuld / then / 10 their hede as / wele owe / 11 Abyron / Datan / 12 byschopes / lede theyre lawe /— **186.** 1 that purpose payde / 2 therfor it / theym / 3 Aaron / theym sayde / 4 seris ye / wele withouten / 5 Thorow / twoo were grayde / 6 have / 7 If / othre / better arayde / 8 morne then shal / sothe / 9 then have they hight / 10 morne / leste / moste / 11 that nyght / 12 theire warke / waste.

God's vengeance fell upon Dathan and Abiram, and the earth swallowed them up. Only Korah went to meet Moses.

187 God send his veniance sone certan
wher Datan *and* abyron can dwell.
The erth opynd, yt is not to layn,
And sodanly þei sanke to hell
And all þat of þer fayr ware fayn,
wyf *and* chyld down with þem fell.
The erthe sone was closed agayn;
þer was no tokyn of to tell.
Bot Core come on the morne
with fe[le] folke on fotte,
As connand was be forne,
agayns moyses to mote.

It was agreed that Korah and Aaron should see by some sign who was the worthier to be high priest.

188 Moyses spake þen vnto Core
and to two hunderth *and* fyfty,
»Gose, both my broþer aron *and* ȝe,
and gyfe sense vnto god allmighty,
And by sume seyn þen sall we se
qwylke man of all þis cumpany
ys best worthy byschop to be!»
to this asent þei sayd in hy.
Vnto the tabernakyll
full tytt þei toke the way.
God send full sone merakyll
þos fals folke to afflay.

When Korah went up to the altar to sacrifice, fire from heaven consumed him with his 250 followers.

189 As Core to the Auter went
for to gyfe [sense] as sufferan syre,
A sodan fyre from heuyn was sent
and brent þem vp both bone *and* lyre.
Two hunderth *and* fyfty war schent
with oþer þat dyd þer desyre.
ȝet ware þei mo þat malyce ment
agayns moyses with grett yre.
To be soueran, þei sayd,
he had ouer grett gylt,
ffor he had þor betrayd
þer folke *and* fowle spylt.

fol. 21 a

S 187. 10 few / — **188.** 10 þei toke þei / way *written twice, the first cancelled.*
L 187. 1 sent / vengeaunce soone sertayne / 2 where / Abyron gun/ 3 opened as noght had bene / 4 and / they sank / 5 that / that faire was fayne / 6 child / / theym / 7 creuys soone / agayne / 8 there / noo tokenyng / of *wanting* / 9 come *wanting* / the *wanting* / 10 come with fell / foote / 11 connaunt / beforne / 12 aganes / moote — **188.** 1 then / 2 vnto twoo hunderyth / 3 Goos / brothre Aaron / ye / 4 gyves encens to / almyghty / 5 sum signe then shal / / see / 6 which / all *wanting* / this / 7 Is / beshop / 8 assent they / sayd *wanting* / soone / 9 Tabernacle / 10 tyte they took / 11 sent / soone myracle / 12 that / folk forto flay / — **189.** 1 altare / 2 forto gyve encence / a soueran / 3 fire fro heven / 4 burned theym /boone / 5 Twoo hunderyth / shent / 6 othre that did theire / 7 Yitt were there moo that malice / 8 aganes Moyses / grete ire / 9 soueravn they sayde / 10 gretly / 11 there betrayde / 12 theire / fovly.

190 her for full hyddos herme þei haue:
thonour *and* lefnyng down dyscend
And stroyd þem vp, both knyȝt and knaue.
þen moyses all mys [to] amend
Gart kepe the sensurs, who so wold craue,
in the arke of god to be kene
how god wyll euer his seruant saue
and fro þer face ay þem dyffend.
And þus this story twyns
þat is cald Numeri,
And a new boke be gynnys
þat is named Dewtronomij.

And the rest of the evil-doers, both high and low, were destroyed by thunder and lightning. Thus ends the story Numeri.

Devtronomij.

191 þoo folke fulfylled with felony
þat god fed XL ȝer before.
To moyses had þei euer enuy
and vnto aron mekyll more.
Thei sayd all he was vnworthy
to be þer sufferan byschop þore.
Then moyses had ordand in hye
to wytt of god qwylke worthy ware.
»lordyns», he sayd, »take tent
to stynt this stryuyng strang;
fol. 21 b ffro god sall grace be sentt
who dos well, *and* who wrang.»

The children of Israel murmured against Moses, and still more against Aaron, whom they accused of being unworthy of the office of high priest. Therefore God was to decide between the two factions.

192 »To morne I byd þer be ordand,
of all the kynrendys of aleuyn
A man to take þer cawse on hand
In all þat nedfull is to neuyn,
And ylkon of þem bryng a wand
Into the arke of god of heuyn.
Aron, my broþer, his sall stand
als for the twelft; þen ar þei euyn.
ylk man, þat þei not myse,
sall wrytt his kynraden name,
And Aron sall wrytt on hys
leuy *and* lay þat same.»

One man from each tribe was to bring a rod, inscribed with the name of tribe, to the ark. Aaron's rod was to be the twelfth.

S 190. 2 thonour *above* tharne *cancelled* / 11 w *of* new *above the line* /— **192.** 8 th *cancelled before* twelft.

L 190. 1 Therfore / hiddous harme they have / 2 thoner / levynnyng god down send / 3 stroed theym / knyght / knave / 4 then Moyses / to Amend / 5 Made / encensures / crave / 6 Ark / forto / kend / 7 How / wolle / *seruantes* save / 8 their foos / theym defend / 9-12 *omitted* /— **191.** 1 Thoo folk fullfylled / 2 that / fourty yere / Ca. xvii *in right margin* / 3 they / envy / 4 Aaron myche / 5 They / vnworthy / 6 their soueran byshop there / 7 Moyses has ordand wysly / 8 Wytt / Which / Were / 9 Lordyngys / says takes / 10 styrryng / 11 shall / sent / 12 Whoo so doos wele / whoo doos Wrang /— **192.** 1 At / there / 2 in / kyndreds / elleven / 3 theire cause / 4 in / nedefull / neven / *In right bottom corner:* b 5. *(late hand)* / 5 fol. 123 b. / ych of theym / 6 into / Ark / heven / / 7 Aaron / brothre / shal / 8 as / then / they even / 9 Ych / that they noght mys / 10 shal wryte / kyndred / 11 Aaron shal wryte / his / 12 leui / have that.

These men gathered together on the following morning, gave in their rods, and prayed God to show them who was to be high priest.

193 So on the morn þei mett on ond,
the XI *p*rincese mekyll of *p*rice.
And ylkon wrott *with* in his wand,
And Aron wand for leuy lese.
þen vnto moyses war þei tane
as formost wytte *and* most wyse.
In the arke of god he layd ylkon
And closed yt at þ*er* a[wn] deuyse.
þei *p*rade *with* hert *and* hend,
ylkon in þ*er* degree,
þat god sume seyn suld send
who suld þ*er* byschope be.

Then they found that Aaron's rod alone blossomed, whereby they knew that God loved the children of Levi. This rod was kept in the tabernacle.

194 ffull sone on the morne þei co*m* clene
þat specialte to spyre *and* spye.
The aleuyn p*r*inces all be dene
fand all þ*er* wand*es* ded *and* dr*y*e.
Bot Aron wand bayr leues grene
and flowrs fayr to syȝt semly.
þ*er*by þei wyst w*ith*owtyn wene
god lufed the lyneg of leuy.
þat wand was done to tent
in the arke of the tab*er*nakyll,
ffor yt suld be on ment
how god dyd þ*er* m*er*akyll.

Thus the strife was ended, and Aaron remained high priest. The Israelites came to Kadesh, where Moses ended the people's murmurings by bringing forth water out of the rock.

195 þen sessed þ*er* stryue, yf yt ware late,
Agayns Aron, þat ay was clene,
And he stud styll in his astate,
byschop os he had eyr bene.
To Cades þen þei toke the gatte,
A soyle þat was full seldom sene.
And þ*er* began A new debate
for wat*ur* wantyng, os I wene.
Then moyses, os god wold,
owt of the roche full ryfe
Broyȝt wat*ur*, qwylke was cald
All way the wat*ur* of stryfe.

S 193. 8 all / — **194.** 3 a leuyn.
L 193. 1 they met anoone / 2 the elleven prynces mych / pryce / 3 ychoone fro whethyn he was goone / 4 and / lis / 5 Then / were they taken / 6 wytty / 7 the *missing* / theym ychoone / 8 and / it / theire awn devyse / 9 They prayd / 10 ychoone / theire / 11 That / sum signe wold / 12 whoo shuld theire byshop / — **194.** 1 ffull *wanting* / Soone / they / com *wanting* / full clene / 2 that / spy / 3 elleven / 4 theire / deid / dry / 5 Aaron / bare leves / 6 floures faire / syght semely / 7 Therby they / withouten / 8 god loued / lynage / 9 That / doon / 10 ark / Tabernacle / 11 it shuld / 12 did there myracle / — **195.** 1 Then cessed theire stryfe if it were / 2 aganes Aaron that / 3 stoode / 4 beshop as / before had / 5 Ca. xx. *in left margin* / then they / gate / 6 a cuntre that / seldome / 7 there / a / 8 for water / as / 9 Moyses as / 10 oute / 11 Broght furth water which / 12 allway / water.

Moses' sister Miriam and Aaron died. Eleazar, his son, was chosen in his place.

196 Be cawse of stryuyng in þat stede
a gayns moyses *with* yll entent,
þor moyses syst*ur* Mary was dede;
for hyr mekyll mone was ment.
And aron sone wex wyll of rede
ffor eld *and* seknes þat was sentt.
he dyed *with* mony bowsom bede;
we hope his sawle to welth is we*nt*.
his soyne Eleaser
to byschope þen chase þei.
And how þei forthermer fare,
ȝett sume dele sall we say.

Herrott, the king of the Cananews, was overcome by Moses.

197 herrott, the kyng of cananews,
whe*n* he herd tell the new tythand
how moyses come *with* mony jewes
and wold *with* strengh dystroy his land,
With þem wold he take no trewse,
b[ot] sone his ost he had ordand.
And moyses furth his men remeuys
tyll þei þoo folke on felde*s* fand.
Sone ware þei in prese,
and full smertly can smytte.
The oue*r*hand had moyses,
and the kyng was dyscu*m*fete.

The Israelites came into a barren country. Moses relieved their need of food and thereby incurred God's vengeance.

198 þor gatte þei gude*s* full grett plente,
and for þat welth þei wold not fyne,
Bot furthe þei sewed more forto se,
and þat suyng þei [r]owed syne.
ffor þei come in a wast cuntre,
wher þei fand no*þer* bred ne wyne.
þe*r*for be gane debate to be
þat moyses wold þai war putt to pyne.
Bot he sone them re[leu]ed
and me*n*d þe*r* myschawnce.
þen was god *with* þem greuede,
and sone he sent venia*n*ce.

S 196. 2 y *of* moyses *above the line* / 8 mony welth / — **197.** 6 be / — **198.** 2 fyne *above the line* / 4 sowed / 9 rewled.

L 196. 1 Because / stryvyng / that / 2 aganes / evyll / 3 There sist*er* / deid / 4 hir*e* full mych moone / 5 Aaron soone waxed / reid / 6 for elde / sekenes that / sent / 7 He deid / a buxome dede / 8 saul / 9 His sonne Elyazare / 10 be byshope then chesed they / 11 they then did fare / 12 yitt sumdele shal / — **197.** 1 Arad / Cananews / 2 this new tithand / 3 Ca. xxi. *in left margin* / How / Jews / 4 strenth distroye / 5 theym / noo trews / 6 bot soone / oste / has / 7 Moyses / remeves / 8 to they the / 9 Soone Were they put / pres / 10 gun smyte / 11 Moyses / 12 dyscomfyte / — **198.** 1 There gat they goodes / grete / 2 that / they / 3 furth they sued / for to / 4 that / they rewed / 5 they / waste / 6 where they / navthre brede / 7 Therfore began / 8 that Moyses / they / war *omitted* / put / 9 soone theym releved / 10 mended their myschaunce / 11 Then / theym greved / 12 soone / vengeaunce.

The people were plagued by fiery serpents. Moses prayed to God on their behalf, and was ordered to make a serpent of brass.

199 Wyld wormes wex þem a mang,
full mekyll of fors *and* fell os fyre,
Qwylke sume *with* toth, *and* sume *with* tang,
bott *and* brent þem bone *and* lyre.
To moyses fast þen can þei gang
for soc*ur* os to þ*er* soueran syre.
And all yf þei had wryed hy*m* wr*ang*,
his wyll was to do þ*er* desyre.
he p*ray*d god þem to amend
and for gyf þ*er* trespasse.
And þor god hath hy*m* kend
to cast a worme of brasse

It was raised on a pole and all who looked on it were healed. The people journeyed to the river Arnon, by which dwelt Sihon, king of the Amorites.

200 And als a seyn hy*m* forto rayse.
and þ*us* þen told he in his tayle:
»Als sone os þei yt sees», he says,
»of all hurt*es* þei sall be hole.»
And so was done by dyu*er*se days,
wher so þei went be down or dale.
To Arnon fluyd þei toke the ways,
þat lyged þen low in a vayle.
A Suthervn syre Seon
was kyng of Amaryce;
Abowt þat flud Arnon
was he man mekyll *in* price.

Sihon refused the Israelites a passage through his border. Moses defeated him, and the children of Israel dwelt in Heshbon.

201 And for moyses hys men wold saue fol. 22 b
and hald þem sownd by se *and* sand,
he send to Seon leue to c*ra*ue
to lede his folkè thrugh owt his land.
Bot Seon sayd he suld not haue,
bot sone þei suld be bon in band.
Seon was strekyn w*ith* his awn staue;
Moyses dystroyed all þat wold stand.
þer wan þei welth gud on,
more þen men myȝt of tell.
In a Cyte cald Esmon,
þor drest þei þem to dwell.

S 200. 9 was kyng Seon / — **201.** 4 to *above 'and' cancelled* / 8 at *of* þat *above the line* / 10 of *above the line.*

L 199. 1 was there theym amang / 2 full venomeus and fell as / 3 Which sum / tothe / sum / 4 bote / brynt theym boone / 5 then gun they / 6 socoure as / theire soueran / 7 thogh they / wreyd / 8 his / doo their / 9 theym / 10 forgyve their tryspas / 11 there / has / 12 to make / bras / — **200.** 1 fol. 124 a. / *In upper margin* Numeri. / as / signe it / rays / 2 thus then / tale / 3 As soone as they se it / 4 of / they shal / hoell / 5 doone / dyuers / 6 where / they / hill / or / 7 floode then toke they ways / 8 and loged theym low there in a vale / 9 soueran syre Seon / 10 Amoryse / 11 Aboute that flood / 12 man mych / pryce / — **201.** 1 And *wanting* / For Moyses his / save / 2 hold theym sound / see / 3 He sent / leve / crave / 4 folk throghout / 5 shuld noon have / 6 soone they shuld / boun / 7 Soone he, *inserted above the line* / stryken / stave / 8 distroyed / that / 9 There / they / grete woone / 10 then / myght / 11 Cite Esbon / 12 there dressed they theym.

Og, the king of Bashan was delivered into the hands of the Israelites. They conquered several kingdoms before they came to the river.

202 whyls þei soiornde in þat Cyte,
A land was nere þat heyȝt basan,
And Og was kyng of þat cuntre.
of Ebrews herd he tythand þen.
he ordand hym þer bayn to be,
bot god þat all gud *con*sell can
Ordand þat ouercomyn was he,
and Ebrews all þat wrschepe wan.
þus logyd þei in sere land*es*
*and con*querd sere kyngdome
And held þem in þer hand*es*,
or þei come to the flome.

Balak, king of the Moabites, feared the Israelites and asked advice of his council.

203 ȝett wonned on, ose þer way lyse,
heyȝt balake, a kyng full cruell,
And he was mayster of moabyse,
A folke þat was full fers *and* fell.
how Ebrew ouer all þen wan the price,
be dyuerse tythynges herd he tell.
And for þei ware of were so wyse,
he drede [hym] more with þem to mell.
he cald to hys co*n*se[ll]
to se what ware to do,
To take trewse or batell,
and þus þei told hym to,

He sent for Balaam, the prophet, to curse the children of Israel in order that God might withhold His help from them.

204 »The Ebrews ar men full myȝty
and mony [mo þan] we may bryng.
[to fyght] with þem ware grett foly;
þer god is with them in all thyng.
Bot balam, the prophett, wones herby,
þat god wyll graunt all his askyng.
Make hym go curse þat cumpany
and wary þem both old *and* yong.
þen sall þer god with draw
his helpe, wher in þei treyste.
So sall þei lyg full low
and lyfe euyn as vs lyst.»

S 203. 8 þem /— **204.** 5 balam *inserted in another ink above* abram *cancelled.*
L 202. 1 Whilst they soiourned / that Cite / 2 that heght Basan / 3 Ogg / that / 4 ebrews / tithynges than / 5 theire bayne / 6 that / goode counsell / 7 that ouercomen / 8 the worship / 9 Thus luged they / 10 conquered / kyndome / 11 theym / their / 12 they / flume /— **203.** 1 Yitt / there oon as theire / 2 heght Balaac / Ca. xxii *in right margin* / 3 lord of the Moabyse / 4 a folk that / both fers / 5 How Ebrews / þen *wanting* / pryce / 6 dyuers tithynges / 7 thei were so wyse / 8 dred hym more / theym / 9 He / hym his counsale / 10 wer / doo / 11 trews / 12 thus they / too /— **204.** 1 myghty / 2 many moo than / 3 To fyght with theym were grete / 4 there is god / theym / 5 Balaam / prophet dwelles here by / 6 there god / 7 goo curs that / 8 werry theym / olde / ying / 9 Then / their / withdrawe / 10 help in whome they trust / 11 they lyk / lowe / 12 doo even / lust.

Balaam, at the king's command, set out on his ass. The ass turned aside, saying that an angel was in the way. Balaam was frightened and tried to return.

The kyng in hast, ys no at hyde,
hath send his *seruant*, os þei ordand,
And balam wold no langer byd,
he com furth as the kyng cu*m*[m]and.
his ase stud styll wh*en* he suld ryde, fol. 23 a
And balame bett hy*m* *with* a wand.
The best spake *and* told in þat tyde
how þat he saw an angell stand
The way hy*m* for to lett.
then was the *pro*phett flayde,
hamward his hede he sett,
bot sone the angell sayd,

The angel bade him go and bless the people near the river Jordan.

»hald furth þi gatt, os þ*ou* be gan,
vnto the kyng of Amonyse.
Wh*en* þou comys to flom iordan
and sees wher the chylde*r* of isr*a*el lyys,
God byde*s* the þat þou þem not ban
bot blesse þem all on the best[e] wy[s]e.
And he sall be *with* þe þor þen
And saue þe from all yll enmyse.»
Then past the *pro*phett playn,
euyn os the angell hy*m* lede.
The kyng was þen full fayn,
for he wened well haue spede.

The king wished Balaam to curse the Jews. Instead of doing this, he went to the highest hill overlooking the camp of the Israelites, and blessed them.

All his entent he told hym tyll
þat he suld wary the jews all way.
he sayd, »*ser*, haue vs vnto an hyll
wher we may se all þ*er* aray.»
Th*en* was he fayn [þat] to fulfyll,
vnto the heghtest hyll hasted þei.
And þ*er* the *pro*phet stod full styll,
and þ*us* to þem cane he say,
»[ȝ]e chylde*r* of isr*a*el,
þat myrth full lang hath myst,
Tythynge*s* to yow I tell:
god byddes that ȝe be blest»

S 205. 3 balam *inserted over* abram *cancelled* / 4 cu*m*nand *or* cu*n*nand / 6 balame *inserted over* abram *cancelled* / — **206.** 6 best awyce / 7 he *above the line* / — **207.** 2 suld *inserted above the line* / 3 *sers* / 9 The.

L 205. 1 haste it not to / 2 has sent / sond as they / 3 and Balaam / noo leng*er* abyde / 4 come / furth *missing* / as / command / 5 His ass stoode / shuld / 6 Balaam bet / 7 beste / that / 8 that / 9 Way / forto let / 10 *pro*phet / 11 Homeward / hed / 12 soone / aungell sayde /— **206.** 1 Hold / thy gate as thou begane / 2 Vnto / Amoryse / 3 thou comes to the flume Jordane / 4 sese wher*e* / the *wanting* / childe*r* / lyse / 5 byddes / that thou theym / 6 blys theym / thy best wyse / 7 shal / there with the then / 8 and save the fro / yll *wanting* / 9 passed / *pro*phet playne / 10 euyn *wanting* / as / Aungell / led / 11 then fulfayne / 12 wele / sped /— **207.** 1 vntyll / 2 shuld werry / iews allway / Ca. xxiii. *in right margin* / 3 He said / to / 4 where / see / theire array / 5 That was the kyng fayn to fulfyll / 6 an high hill / they / 7 there / stoode / 8 thus / theym gun / *In right bottom corner:* b. 6 *(late hand).* / 9 fol. 124 b / Þe childre / that / 10 long has myst / 11 you / 12 ye / blyst.

Balaam foretold that they would conquer all Canaan. The king was grieved at this and blamed the prophet.

208 »*wit*h all gudnese, ase he be gane
to abraha*m* yo*ur* fader free,
To ysac *and* to jacob þen,
of whos kynradyn all comyn ar ȝe.
ȝe sall *con*quer all chanan
and haue yt in yo*ur* pawste.»
Then was the kyng a carefull man,
whe*n* þat he herd yt so suld be.
ffull sore he was a schamed,
for he þat fyght had soyȝt,
And balaam fast he blamed,
for þat he band þem noyȝt.

Balaam blessed the people three times and prophesied the coming of Christ, the Star of Jacob, and the Sceptre that should rise out of Israel.

209 he pr*a*yd to wary þem on all wyse
so þat he myȝt þem bett *and* bynd.
Agayns hys boyde he blyst þem thryse,
and als he sayd, so suld þei fynd.
Then balac, kyng of moabyse,
went a way as wroth os wynd.
fol. 23 b And balam þ*er* mad pr*o*phecy[se]
þat crist suld come amang þ*er* kynd.
he sayd a sterne suld ryse
of jacob begy*nn*ny*n*g,
And a wand of mekyll p*r*ice
of isr*a*el owt suld spryng,

The Sceptre would conquer the Moabites and the sons of Seth. The Star may be likened to Christ, and the Sceptre to the Virgin Mary. Before departing, Balaam devised a wicked plan.

210 Qwylke suld *con*quere kyng *and* cuntre
of moabyse in mony a sted.
And suns of seth, also sayd he,
suld be hent from hand*es* of dede.
The stern to crist may lykynd be
to lyȝt þem þat lay low os led,
The wand, Mary his moyd*er* fre,
þat suld com of the jew kynred.
Thes word*es* was fro god sent.
kyng balake cursed þat qwylle,
Bot balaam, or eu*er* he went,
he wroyȝt a weked wyle.

S 208. 8 he *above the line.*

L 208. 1 goodnes / beganne / 2 Abraham youre fadre fre / 3 ysaac / Jacob then / 4 whoos kyndred / comen / ye / 5 ye shal conquere / Canaan 6 it / youre awn liberte / 8 that / it shuld so / 9 was shamed / 10 for that thyng was so wroght / 11 Balaam faste / 12 that / warryd theym noght /— **209.** 1 Ca. xxiiii *in left margin* / He / werry theym / 2 that / myght theym bet / 3 Aganes his byddyng / blissed theym / 4 as / shuld they / 5 Balac / Moabyse / 6 as *omitted* / wroth as the / 7 Balaam there made prophecyse / 8 that cryst shuld / among theire / 9 He / stern shuld / 10 Jacob / 11 mych of prise / 12 of Israel shuld vp / — **210.** 1 Which shuld / 2 many / stede / 3 sonnes / Seth / sayde / 4 shuld / sent fro the / deth / 5 sterne / likened / 6 light theym that low lay as lede / 7 Wand mary / modre / 8 that shuld come / Jews kyndrede / 9 were / 10 Balac / that whyle / 11 Balam / 12 he *wanting* / wroght a full wyked.

He advised Balak to send fair women in rich attire to tempt the young men of Israel to forsake God.

211 he saw the kyng was not well payd,
þerfor sum *com*forth wold he kene.
»*ser*, I sall þe lere,» he sayd,
»to stroye moyses *and* all his men.
gayr damsels be gayly gratt
to seke in Cytes, neyn or ten,
And whe*n* þei ar ryȝtly arayde,
vnto the Ebrews send þem þen.
Grett myrth þ*er* sall þei make
to ȝong me*n* euy*n* *and* morne
And gayr þem god forsake.
so sall þei sone be lorne.»

The king did this, and the young Ebrews fell into temptation.

212 The kyng hath sent, os he can say,
[For] ffayrest wome*n* þat men fand.
[He did theym cloth in rych array
and thus to theym he co*m*mand],
»loke wysly þat ȝe wend yo*ur* way
to *our* enmyse of vncowth land,
And fow*n*des to gayr þem leyf þ*er* lay.
lett belfagor be þ*er* warrand.»
þo wome*n* werly soyȝt
þis falshed to fulfyll.
The Ebrews grochednoyȝt
forto werke all þ*er* wyll.

They became idolaters. God bade Moses punish them. 20,000 men were slain. Phinehas killed the chief sinners.

213 þei leued the law þat moyses lent
and vnto mawme*n*tre mad þ*er* mene.
And for þei so to syn assent,
god was greued vnto þ*em* ylkon.
To moyses told he his ente*n*t
and bad tyte ve*n*ia*n*ce suld be tone.
w*ith* wo so XX m*ilia* went,
and wemen war full wyll of wone.
ffynnes, a full fell man,
Eleaȝar son was hee,
Sloght þ*er* mayste*rs* þan; fol. 24 a
the remnand fast can flee.

S 211. 10 ȝongme*n* ' — **212.** 2 cowd fand / 5 way *above the line* / 6 d *cancelled after* to — **213.** 12 flere *cancelled before* flee.

L 211. 1 He sawe / noght wele payde / 2 therfor / comforth / 3 Syr / shal the / sayde / 4 dystroye Moyses / all *omitted* / 5 Gar damesellys / gayle grayde / 6 to be soght / cites nyen / 7 they er rychely / 8 sent theym then / 9 Grete / there shal they / 10 yong / even / 11 make theym / 12 shal they soone /— **212.** 1 has / as / he *omitted* / gun / 2 for fairest wommen that / 3—4 = *text above* / 5 Loke wysely that ye Wend youre / 6 oure enmyes / vncouth / 7 And make theym leve theire law / 8 let Belphagor / theire Warrant / 9 Thoo Wommen besely soght / 10 this falsed / 11 noght / 12 Wyrk / theire Wyll — **213.** 1 Ca. xxv. *in left margin* / Thei left / that Moyses / 2 mavmentes made theire moone / 3 they / 4 greved to theym ychoone / 5 Moyses / 6 vengeaunce shuld / taken / 7 With woo / twenty thovsand / 8 Women Were / woone / 9 ffynees / 10 Elyazare sonne Was he / 11 Slogh theire maistres then / 12 remanant / gun fle.

214 And for þi þat þis ffyneys
dystroyed þem þat ware godd*es* enmyse,
fforto be byschop god hy*m* chese
aft*ur* his fad*er* for his s*er*uys.
And for his sake he grawnt peyse
vnto all Ebrews þat ware wyse,
And sayd he suld þ*er* kynd encresse
vnto grett reue*r*ence forto ryse.
w*i*th moyses then was none
þat he lede oue*r* the se,
Bot þei ware ded ylkon
bot Calaphe *and* josue.

For this deed, he was given high office in the priesthood; and for his sake the wise Ebrews were spared. Caleb and Joshua were the only men whom Moses led over the sea.

215 þen co*m*mawnd god vnto moysen,
for he suld fayn his fo[e]s to fere,
þat he suld reckyn the remna*n*d þen
of all þo þat myȝt armys bere.
he fand thre hunderth thowssand men
þat myȝty were to wend i*n* were
w*i*thowty*n* prest*es* *and* clerk*es* to ken,
qwylke XXIII m*i*l*ia* ware.
god bad moyses be wyse
and þat his h[o]st ware grayde
To stroye the moabyse,
that had þem þor be trayd.

The Israelites then numbered 300,000 men who could bear arms and 23,000 priests and scribes. God bade Moses destroy the Moabites.

216 Moyses w*i*thowtyn more abayd,
XII m*i*l*ia* toke he þem amang;
þ*er* leder fyneys he made
þem forto gyd wher þei suld gang.
To moabyse full ryȝt þei rode
and stroyde þem all w*i*th strok*es* strang.
ffyue hethyn kyng*es* w*i*th cuntreys brayd
in few days to ded þei dang.
Balam þei haue not leued,
þat fyrst *con*seld the kyng:
ffynyes stroke of his hed
for his fals consellyng.

Moses sent Phinehas with 12,000 men to war against the Moabites. He killed five kings and laid waste their countries. Balaam was not spared, because of his false counsel.

S 214. 12 Car *cancelled before* Caliphe /— **215.** 2 fors / 10 hest / 12 þen had.

L 214. 1 forthy that this ffinees / 2 distroed theym that were godes enmyes / 3 bysshop / 4 after / fadre / 5 graunted peace / 6 that Were Wyse / 7 shuld theire folke encrese / 8 grete Worshyp / 9 With Moyses then left noone / 10 that / led / see / 11 they were deyd euerychoone / 12 Caleb / Josue / — **215.** 1 Ca. xxvi. *in left margin* / Then comand / Moysen / 2 that he shud faire / fooes / 3 That / shuld rekyn / remenaunt then / 4 thoo that myght armes / 5 fol. 125 a. / He / hunderith thovsand / 6 that myghty Were / 7 Withouten Prestes / 8 which thre and twenty thowsand were / 9 God / Moyses / Wyse / 10 þat *wanting* / his Oste wele arrayde / Ca. xxxi. *in right margin* / 11 dystroye / Moabyse / 12 that theym had there betrayde /— **216.** 1 Moyses his people beheld / 2 twelf thovsand / he *omitted* / theym / 3 Theire ledere ffynees / 4 theym / gouerne wherso they gang / 5 To the / rygth they roode / 6 distroyed theym / all *wanting* / straung / 7 ffyve hathen / cuntres broode / 8 vnto deth they / 9 Balaam they have / leved / 10 that first counsailled / 11 ffynees strooke / heved / 12 counsellyng.

The men returned, rich in plunder. The tribes of Gad and Reuben wished to remain in that place.

217 All batels þus þei broyȝt to end;
þen past þei home with mekyll pride.
No tong in erth myȝt tell the tend
Of welth þat þei haue in þat tyde.
Ryȝt to the flome all folke was frend;
to do þem dere durst non abyd.
Two of þer lyneg þer wold lend,
by cawse the land was large *and* wyd;
þat was gad *and* ruben.
the kynrendes toke to rede
And asked leue of moysen
to dwell styll in þat stede.

It was promised to them, when they had helped to conquer Canaan and win Jericho. Moses built ten cities while he sojourned in that place.

218 þus prayde þei throly, all *and* sume, fol. 24 b
bot moyses made þis connand þen
That þei suld passe ouer the flome
And helpe to conquere canan.
And when þei gerico had wun
into þer boundom, best *and* man,
Vnto þat cuntre suld þei come
and be þer styll, os þei be gane.
Ten cytes made moyses,
in tyme þei soiournd þore,
To þem þat cuntre chese
to haue *and* hald euer moyre.

Moses, feeling his end to be at hand, exhorted the people to keep the commandments. Eleazar was to be high priest, and Joshua the captain.

219 Then moyses both with hert *and* hand
loued his god of grett powere,
ffor he wyst that he suld from þem wend.
he told the folke his consell clere;
he sayd, »sers, I sall sun make end,
for canan come [I] not nere.
kepes commawnmentes, os I haue kend,
and oþer law loke ȝe non lere.
Elyaȝar sall byschop be
to stand in Aron stede,
And ȝe sall hald Josue
your Duke, when I am dede.«

S 217. 3 inerth /— **218.** 1 throly *above the line* / 5 g *cancelled after* þei.

L 217. 1 batells thus they broght / ende / 2 then passed they / mych pryde / 3 Noo / on / myght / tende / 4 of / that thay had Wonne that / 5 Right vnto / flume / ffrend / 6 doo theym / noone abyde / 7 Twoo / thaire linage there / lende / 8 because / wyde / Ca. xxxii. *in right margin* / 9 That / Gad / Ruben / 10 kyndredys / halfe þe *tribe* off manessyn *in right margin* / 11 And asken leve / Moysen / 12 that / — **218.** 1 Thus prayd they besyly / sum / 2 this couant then / 3 they shuld / furth ouer / flume / 4 and help / Canaan / 5 And *omitted* / When they of Jerico herd tell / 6 in to theire bondome beste / 7 that / shuld they / 8 there / as they began / 9 Cites / Moyses / / 10 in *wanting* / that tyme they soiourned thore / 11 theym that / gun they chese / 12 have / hold euermore / — **219.** Liber deutronomij *in right margin* / 1 When Moyses / 2 loved / his *omitted* / his grete powere / 3 that *omitted* / shuld fro theym wende / 4 folk / counsell /I. Ca. *in right margin* / 5 He / seris / shal soone / ende / 6 Canaan com I noght / 7 comaundementes as / haue *omitted* / 8 othre / ye noone / 9 Eliazar shal besshop / 10 aaron / 11 ye shal have / 12 youre.

220 »þat on may mekyll [you] a[v]ayle
þat god yow here gyf mynd *and* myȝt;
þat oþer sall wend in batell
and ffell your foys with fors in fyȝt.
þerfor in fayth loke ȝe not fayle,
bot euer in trowth be trew *and* ryȝt.
þen nawder enmyse, [ne] yll consell
sall do yow dere be day or nyȝt.
haue mynd hou god hath wrogh
for yow *and* your of spryng.
loke ȝe for geyt hym noyȝt,
bot thanke hym ouer all thyng.»

Have in remembrance the mighty things God has wrought for you. Forget Him not, but thank Him always.

221 »Sone sall ȝe passe flom iordan
to the land þat yow leuest wore.
And when ȝe come to canan
and hath all þat god heyȝt yow þore,
loke ȝe dystroy all mawmentes þen
of fendes þat ȝe fynd ȝow be fore,
And part the land as ȝe well can
after your lynage, lesse *and* more.
who so hath most meneȝe,
born all of a blode,
þem nedes the most cunire
to fynd ther bestes fode.»

When ye pass over to Canaan, destroy all idols, and portion out the land according to the number of each tribe.

222 As moyses þus his consell kend
to can the law *and* kepe yt well,
A whyt clowde down fro heuyn dyscend
and couerd hym ouer ylka dele.
he was a way when þei lest wend,
bot wheder ward wyst þei not well.
Ne more þei herd of his end,
ne his graue cowd no man fynd ne fele.
þei soyȝt *and* sayd alas
with mornyng þem amang,
Os yt no wonder was.
for he had led þem lang.

Moses was taken up in a cloud to heaven.

fol. 25 a

S 220. 1 abayle / 7 þen / — **222.** 6 well *below the line*.

L 220. 1 That oon to pray may mych avale / 2 that god here gyve you / myght / 3 That othre / sall *omitted* / 4 fell youre fooes / force / fyght / 5 Therfore / that ye / fale / 6 trevth / treve / ryght / 7 Then navthre enmys ne evell consale / 8 shal doo harme by day ne nyght / 9 Has / how / has wroght / 10 you / youre ofspryng / 11 Lokes ye forgett / noght / 12 bot loves hym ouer / — **221.** 1 Soone shal ye / flume Jordan / 2 that yov levest were / Ca. ix. *in right margin* / 3 ye / into Canaan / 4 have / that / hight yov there / 5 Loke ye distroy / mavmentes then / 6 that ye / you before / 7 parte / ye wele *with last* e *written over a second* l / 8 after the / les or / 9 Who / haves moste menye / 10 borne / bloode / 11 Theym / moste / 12 theire / foode / — **222.** 1 thus / 2 kun theire / it wele / xxxiiii. Ca. *in right margin* / 3 whyte clowd / heven descend / 4 coueryd / ouer ych a / 5 He / they / 6 bot whethre noght wyst they wele / 7 they / noght of / ende / 8 grave couth noone fynd / 9 They soght / allas / 10 With / theym / 11 As it noo wondre / 12 theym / b 7 *in right bottom corner.*

Thus ends the book concerning Moses.

223 Moyses mad end in þis manɐr.
full mekyll mone was for hym ment.
To god his dedɐs war euɐr dere,
for trew in trowth was his entent.
ffull leue he was goddɐs law to lere,
os long os he on lyfe was lent,
wherfor we wott withowtyn were
his sawle vnto heuyn is hent.
This boke þus end wyll we
þat made is of moysen,
And tell furth of Josue.
god grawnt vs myrth. Amen.

Josue

Then Joshua and Eleazar ruled the people. They draw near to the river, so that Canaan can be seen in the distance.

224 moyr of the store may men se
what was done aftur moyses dede.
A nobyll duke, heyȝt Josue,
was ordand to stand in his sted;
Elyaȝar, byschope was he
the pepyll forto rewle *and* rede.
þen neght þei nere þat [cuntre]
god þem heyȝt of his godhede,
So þat yt myȝt be sene,
the land of canan;
Noyȝt bot the flome be twen.
and þus þei ordand þan.

Two men were sent to spy out the city of Jericho.

225 Be cawse the Cyte of gerico
was next the flome *and* fast þerby,
Josue had ordand two
most cunnand of þat cumpany
Vnto þat Cyte forto go
and bad þat þei suld spyre *and* spye
The wardes *and* the wals also
and all þat passage preuely,
how þei myȝt tytyst take
þat Cyty be on asent.
This message forto make
two wyght men furth þer went.

L 223. fol. 125 b. / 1 made ende / this manere / 2 mych moane / 3 was / 4 trovth / 5 leeve hym / godes / 6 as lang as hym the lyve / 7 Wherfore / wote with outen / 8 that his saul to heven / 9 Thus / thus ende wolle / 10 that / Moysen / 12 God graunt /— **224.** 1 Liber Josue *in right margin* / More / this story / 2 doone after / deide / 3 noble Duke hight / 4 stede / 5 Elyazare bysshop / 6 people / revle / 7 Then were they / that cuntre / 8 which god theym promyst / 9 that it myght / seen / 10 Canaan / 11 Noght / flume betwene / 12 thus they / than /— **225.** 1 Because / Citee / Jerico / 2 flume / therby / 3 Ca. ii. *in left margin* / has / twoo / 4 wyse / his cumpany / 5 that Cite / goo / 6 that they shuld spir / spy / 7 walles / 8 the passage pryvaly / 9 How that mygth titest / 10 that Cite by oon assent / 12 twoo / furth ar went.

226 To Jerico þei toke the way,
A Cety semly vnto syȝt.
þei spyrd full ryȝt all þer aray,
both ways be neth *and* wals on heyȝt.
So dyd þei dewly all þat day
to tyme þat neght nere þe nyȝt;
þer þar loygyng in a place toke þei
with A woman þat raab hyȝt.
Scho had fayr rent in hand,
laft of hyr elders be forn;
Bot scho was commyn kend
as hostler euyn *and* morn.

After they had viewed the city, they lodged with an harlot, named Rahab.

227 Whyls þei the Cyte þus aspyd,
all yf þei ware wytty *and* wyse,
To the wardyns þei wer ascryde
þat Raab herberd swylk to spyse.
The bayles went in the euyn tyde
to foche þem furth be for þe justyce.
Bot preuely scho can þem hyde
and hold from handes of þer enmyse.
Scho lett þem lang or day
ouer the wals of þat Cyte
And teched þem the redy way
from all enmyse to flee.

When they were discovered, Rahab was asked to bring them forth. But she hid them and in the night lowered them over the city walls.

228 Bot fyrst scho festend þis connand
or euer scho wan þem ouer þe wall:
»when ȝe sall entur into þis land
and gouer[n] þis Cyte, grett *and* small,
Me *and* myn, loke ȝe warrand
þat no defawt vnto vs fall.«
herto þei both held vp þer hand
and sayd, »this cunnand kepe we sall.
þou *and* þi meneȝe both
sall well be sayued,« þei say.
þei went withowtyn wothe
ouer the flome the euyn way.

Before the two men departed, they made a covenant with Rahab, and promised to spare her and her people at the capture of the city.

S 226. 4 be ways /— **228.** 4 gouerd.

L 226. 1 they / 2 a Cite semely / syght / 3 They espyed / ryght their array / 4 beneth / walles / hyght / 5 did they / that / 6 tyme it drew nere the nyght / 7 Theire Ines / they / 8 a / that Raab hyght / 9 She / faire / 10 left / hyr *omitted* / beforne / 10 she common was knawn / 12 Ostlere even / morne /— **227.** 1 Whilst they this Cite thus aspyed / 2 allthogh they were / 3 wardeyns they were ascryed / 4 that / herbered twoo such spyes / 5 baleyes Went / evyn / 6 fetch theym furth byfore iustyse / 7 Bot privaly she gun theym / 8 held theym fro / their enmys / 9 So lete theym / 10 walles / that Cite / 11 theym / the *omitted* / 12 fro / enmys forto fle / — **228.** 1 first she made this counaunt / 2 she / theym / the / 3 When ye shal entre / this lande / 4 and have this both grete / 5 myne / ye warrande / 6 that noo defaute / 7 Therto they / their / 8 counaunt / shall / 9 Thou / thy menye booth / 10 shal wele / saved they / 11 They / withouten wooth / 12 flume redy way.

The men returned to Joshua and told him what had befallen them.

229 Vnto Josue þei reckynd ryȝt
of Jerico all poynt*es* playn,
And wher þei suld muster þ*er* myȝt
to wyn yt well w*ith* owtyn payn;
And how þei [had to] Raab heyȝ
so þat scho suld be saued c*er*tayn,
By cawse scho sayued þem in the nyȝt,
wh*en* bayles suld þem haue slayn.
þei loued god w*ith* gud wyll
þat þo ȝong men so ȝemed,
And hete*s* yt to fulfyll
and do euyn os þei demed.

The waters of the river were divided. The sons of Levi passed over first, followed by the women and children.

230 Josue bad the pepyll pray
and honer god w*ith* mayn *and* mode,
And ordan þat on the thryd day
suld þei passe furth ou*er* the flud.
The suns of leuy, be for went þai
berand the arke of god full gud.
Thei fand þ*er* wath *and* redy way,
wher neu*er* folke be fortym ȝode.
Wemen *and* chylde*r* ȝyng
then next þem fowled fast.
The flud sessyd of fluyng
whyls all the pepyll past.

When they all had passed over Eleazar bade certain men take twelve stones and raise an altar to the honour of God. Then they celebrated the feast of the Passover.

231 When þei war past, both best *and* man,
the stremys wex agayn full strang.
þei loyge þem in canaꝑ, fol. 26 a
þat land þat þei had coyuet lang.
Elyaȝar has ordand þen
þat c*er*tan men sone suld gang
ffor twelf stones to the flome Jordan
and make an Aute*r* þem amang.
þei purueyd sone a place
wher god honerd suld be.
Ther held þei fest of pasce
w*ith* grett solem*p*nite.

S 229. 8 slayn *above the line* /— **230.** 3 ordans *with* s *cancelled* /— **231.** 2 full strang *below the line*.

L 229. 1 Unto / thei rekend ryght / 2 playne / 3 they shuld mustre theyr myght / 4 it wele withouten payne / 5 they had to / hyght / 6 so *omitted* / that she shuld / saved certayne / 7 Bycause she saved theym / nyght / 8 citiȝens wold theym haue slayne / 9 They looved / goode / 10 that thoo yonge / scapyd / 11 promysse / yt *omitted* / fullfyll / 12 doo as they /— **230.** Ca. iii. *in left margin* / 1 people / 2 honou*r* / mayne / moode / 3 ordand that / third /4 shuld they pass furth / floode / 5 sonnes / befor / they / 6 ark / goode / 7 They fand and had ther redy way / 8 where / befor tyme yoode / 9 fol. 126 a. / Iosue *in upper margin* / Wommen / childre ying / 10 theym / 11 floode cessed / 12 wilst / all *omitted* / people / Ca. iiii. *in right margin* / — **231.** 1 they wer / beste / 2 stremes waxed agane ful / 3 They luged theym / Canaan / 4 the / that theym was promest / 5 Eliazar had / then / 6 that certane / full soone shuld / 7 twelve / vnto / flume Jordan / 8 altare theym / 9 They purved soone / 10 shuld honored / 11 they / Pasch / 12 With grete solennyte.

Joshua assembled his host, and with the priests and deacons in the front, led them towards Jericho.

232 And [when] the solempne day was done
And all the folke refreyshed were,
Josue semled hys host full sone
of lysty men, both lesse *and* mayre;
Pristes *and* dekyns gart he gone
and beyr goddes arke vp þem be forne.
To Jerico þei went ylkon
and hastely, when þei come þore,
A day Jornay abowt
be strengh þei haue dystroyde.
þen þei with In had dowtt
full sone forto be noyde.

The priests were commanded to bear the ark round the city, singing sacred songs. The walls would then fall down, and none should be spared but Rahab and her house.

233 Then Josue bad the clargy gang
with all the lynage of leuy
And beyr the arke vp þem amang
abowt the town to ylk party,
And at þei suld syng solemp song
and make all maner of mynstralsy.
And yf the wals war neuer so strang,
so suld god send þem þe vyctory.
»Bot o thyng I yow of warne:
when ȝe entur with in,
Sparse no manys wyfe ne barne
bot Raab *and* hyr kyn.»

Everything was to be destroyed; the gold only was to be carried to the tabernacle.

234 »ffor scho our messyngers con sayue
when we þem sent ouer the flude.»
And also he commawnd knyt *and* knaue
and comyns þat with hym ȝode
þat þei suld nawder hyde ne haue
to þem selfe syluer ne oþer gud,
Bot stryke þem down with sword *and* staue
and stroy all þat be for þem stud.
gold to þat tabernakyll
he bad þat þei suld beyre,
To god þat dyd þat merakyll
to þem in all þer were.

S 233. 3 arke *above the line in different ink* / 9 othyng.

L 232. 1 when that solenne / doone / 2 and / folke wele **wary**st / Ca. vi. *in right margin* / 3 sembled his oste / soone / 4 lusty / les / more / 5 Prestes / dekens made / goo / 6 bere godes / theym before / 7 they / ychoone / 8 they / there / 9 iourney aboute / 10 by strenth they / distroyed / 11 Then they within / dovte / 12 soone / noyed / — **233.** 1 clerge / 2 linage / 3 ber / Arke / theym / 4 aboute / towne / ych / 5 that they shuld / solenne sang / 6 mynstrelcy / 7 thogh / walles were / 8 shuld / theym / þe *wanting* / victory / 9 of oon / yov warn / 10 ye entre within / 11 Spares noo man wyve / barn / 12 hir / — **234.** 1 For she / messengers gun saue / 2 theym / floode / 3 comanded knyght / knave / 4 comons all that / yoode / 5 þat *omitted* / They shuld navthir / have / 6 theym self / other goode / 7 theym / swerd / stave / 8 stroy theym all that befor theym stoode / 9 Gold / the tabernacle / 10 þat *omitted* / they shuld bere / 11 ffor god that did ther myracle / 12 theym / theire.

The people obeyed his commands, and on the seventh day the walls fell down.

235 þat þei suld kepe þis co*m*maw[n]me*n*t
he charege þe ost, both old *and* ȝong,
And sayd forsothe þei suld be schent
þat to þem self toke any thyng.
Abowt the Cety þen þei we*n*t
full sole*m*ply [and] sange*s* can syng.
And on the seuynt day hath god sent fol. 26 b
entre [e]wyn at þe*r* awn lyky*n*g
Wher the arke of god [can] dwell,
the folke abydyn styll.
The wals fayled *and* down fell,
and þei enturd at wyll.

The people kept Joshua's commandments; only Achan, the son of Carmi, took a garment for himself. For this sin, he and his house were severely punished.

236 So whe*n* þei had þis Cyte wun,
þei slow *and* brent both best *and* man.
Bo[t] raab, os þei had begun,
and hyr kyn þei keped as þei cane.
On Achor, þat was caryn son,
A full rych mantyll fand he þen;
he hyd yt whe*n* he had yt fun;
þat boldnes aft*ur* myȝt he ban.
he brake godde*s* co*m*mawnme*n*t,
þat Josue for bede.
þe*r*for fele folke war schent,
and he had dulfull dede.

The Israelites were smitten at the city of Ai.

237 Bot how þat care be gan to co*m*,
the story furth reherse*s* ryȝt.
þor stud a fferrom, ner the flome,
A rych Cyte þat Adan hyȝt.
Josue semled all *and* sum
his knyȝte*s* þat ware wyse *and* wyȝt.
And XXX thowssand on a thrum
sent he wi*th* þo folke to fyȝt.
Bot þei þat ware wi*th* in
so boldly batell bede,
þe Ebrews, moyre *and* myn,
war sum slayn, *and* sum fled.

S 236. 8 bold nes.

L 235. 1 That they shuld / this cumaundment / 2 charged theym both olde / ying / 3 for soth they shuld / shent / 4 that / theym / takes / 5 Aboute / Cite then they / 6 solennly and / did / 7 sevent / has / 8 entree even / their / 9 Where / gun dwell / 10 abydyng / 11 walles failed / 12 they entred / — **236.** 1 they / that Cite wonne / 2 they sloy / beste / 3 Bot Raab as they / begonne / 4 hir kyn kepe they as they can / 5 Oone Achan that was karyn sonne / 6 a / ryche mantyll / than / Ca. vii. *in right margin* / 7 He hid it / hade it fonne / 8 that / after myght / 9 He / godes commaundment / 10 that / theym forbed / 11 Therfore many / wer shent / 12 dolefull deid /— **237.** 1 that / began / come / 2 reherseth ryght / 3 Ther stoode fast by the flume / 4 a / Cite that / hyght / hay *in right margin* / 5 sembled / 6 knyghtes that wer wyse / wyght / 7 thirty thovsand / thrvm / 8 that folk / fyght / 9 they that wer within / 10 so *wanting* / full boldly / bed / 11 The / more / 12 were / slayne.

Achan was discovered by lot to be the cause of God's anger. Whereupon he was stoned to death.

238 when Josue herd þis folke to flayd,
no *mer*uell yf he war yll meued.
»Sum of *our* self has synd,« he sayd,
»wher for *our* god is to vs greued.«
lott*es* a m*a*ng them sone þei layd
so forto se the soth, þei beleued.
þei fand how Achor þem be trayd,
and how þe m*a*ntyll had þem myscheued.
To ded sone was he staned,
as his werke was worthy.
And Josue fast wold fownd
forto venge þ[i]s velany.

Joshua sent 30,000 men to lie in ambush on a mountain, and with the rest he attacked the city.

239 To Adan [he] ys w*e*ntt agayn
w*i*th XXX m*i*l*i*a *and* well moe,
And wh*e*n he come nere on a playn,
he p*ar*ted hys pepell euy*n* *i*n two:
The on half to a mowntan
pr*e*uely bad he þem go.
To tyme þe saw his syng c*er*tan,
the Cety suld þei ent*ur* so.
þei past furth pr*e*uely
In buschem*e*nt so forto be.
fol. 27 a he *and* hys c*o*mpany
A sawted þat Cety.

The men of the city went out against Joshua, who pretended to flee away. Then those in ambush rose up and entered the city and set it on fire.

240 w*i*th In thei ware full sterne *and* stowte,
for þem had falyn so fayr be for.
Thei opynd the ȝattes *and* wentt owt,
all men of Armes, lesse *and* more.
Then Josue feyned to fle for dowt
to þei far*e* fro the Cyte wore;
Then to the mowntane he made a schowt
and set his syng to þem þore.
To the Cety þen þei w*e*ntt
and fand full euyn entre.
ffull fast þei schott *and* brentt
þat folke myȝt farre see.

S 238. 8 -ued *below the line* / — **240.** 5 -d *cancelled after* for / 7 to *above the line*.

L 238. 1 When / his folk so flayde / 2 m*er*vell thogh / were evell meved / 3 our*e* / synned / sayde / 4 wherfore our*e* / greved / *In right bottom corner* b. 8. / 5 fol. 126 b. / Lottes among theym soone they layde / 6 see / thei leved / 7 They / Achan theym had betrayde / 8 the mantell / theym myscheved / 9 deth soone / stooned / 10 werk / 11 wold fownd *wanting* / gun hꝛe / 12 to venge this vylony /— **239.** 1 Ca. viii. *in left margin* / he is went agayne / and *cancelled after* agayne / 2 thirty thovsand / wele moo / 3 on *wanting* / playne / 4 his people even / twoo / 5 That oon alf vndre a mountayne / 6 prevely theym bad he goo / 7 the tyme they sawe / signe certayne / 8 Cite shud they entre soo / 9 They / prively / 10 in bushment / so *omitted* / 11 He / his / 12 assavted that Cite /— **240.** 1 They with in was stern / stoute / 2 theym / fallen so faire before / 3 oppenyd yates / went oute / 4 armes les / 5 flee for doute / 6 tyll they fer / theire Cite were / 7 mount / shoute / 8 made / signe / theym there / 9 Cite then they Went / 10 fre entree / 11 thei slogh / brent / 12 all folke that they myght see.

Joshua and his men turned again and fell upon their enemies.

241 when Josue agayn [can] loke
vnto the Cyte styfe of stone,
he saw þor fyre *and* full grett smoke
and sparke*s* flea*n*d full gud [w]one.
To his men þen he vnd*er*toke
þat þat Cyte to þem was tone.
he bad þem wett wele ylka noke
þat þ*er* enmys scaped none.
All that be hynd oght dwelt
belyue ware dongyn down,
þat wentt be fore ware feld
wit*h* þem þat toke the town.

The Israelites passed into the city and utterly destroyed the inhabitants.

242 Ther ware the panyms put to payn;
þei had no bod*es* þem to beld.
And the Ebrews ware farly fayn
to se þ*er* Enmys feld in feld.
Thrugh owt the Cyte past þei playn
and spared none in yowth ne eld.
þei gatt þ*er* gold þat myȝt þem gayn
and oþ*er* welth at wyll to weld.
So went þei, old *and* ȝong,
to þ*er* awn cu*m*pany
And mad full grett offeryng
to god, os was worthy.

The children of Israel became renowned in war. The Gibeanites were in doubt whether to fight or sue for peace.

243 Whe*n* þei had wonn þis grett renown,
grett word of þem be gan to ryse,
how Jacob suns wold dyng al down
and in were how þei wan þe p*r*ise.
So was A cuntre heyȝt gabown,
and the pepyll heyȝ gabonyse.
þei sembled in þat same seson
and toke þ*er* cownsell on þis wyse:
To putt þem furth in p*r*esse
þ*er* land forto dyffend,
Or elles p*er*sew for peyse,
and þ*us* þer consell kend.

S 242. 1 putto /— **243.** 3 dyngaldown.

L 241. 1 agayne gun / 2 that Cite styf / stoone / 3 He sawe there / grete / 4 flyand / goode woone / 5 then / Vndirtoke / 6 that the Cite / theym / taken / 7 He / theym wayte wele ych noke / 8 that theire / s *cancelled before* escaped noone / 9 behynd there dweld / 10 belyve then were dongen downe / 11 That went before were / 12 theym that / towne / — **242.** 1 There were / paynyms / payne / 2 that / noo bodyes theym / belde / 3 wer frely fayne / 4 see their enmys / felde / 5 Thorow oute / Cite / they playne / 6 noone / youth / elde / 7 They gate there / that myght theym gayne / 8 othre / welde / 9 they / ying / 10 their / company / 11 made / grete / 12 as / — **243.** 1 they / wonne this grete renowne / 2 grete / theym began / 3 sonnes / all downe / 4 werre / they / the pryse / 5 Ca. ix. *in left margin* / There was a / heght Gabaon / 6 people hight Gabonyse / 7 They / that same season / 8 tuke theyr counsale in this / 9 theym / preace / 10 theire landes / defende / 11 elles *wanting* / pursewe / peace / 12 thus theyre counsale kende.

Twelve of them came to Joshua, saying they had journeyed from a far country. By these means they obtained a league.

244 þei toke twelfe of þat same Cete,
qwylke þat þei for most cunnand knew,
fol. 27 b And sent þem vnto Josue
2920 for sympyll peyse forto persew.
þei sayd, »we cum fro far cuntre
with ye, ser, forto take peyse *and* trew;
B[y] our cloghys þat may þou se;
when we went furth, þen ware þei new.
2925 Or we wyn hom agayn,
wyl be full mony a day.«
þei toke trewse by þis trayn,
and fast þei went þer way.

Joshua was soon undeceived, but the peace could not be broken.

245 when Josue þus þer peyse had sworn,
2930 he trowed þem folke of full far land.
Bot hym was told sone on the morn
þat þei ware neghbours nere at hand
Of canan—þis toyȝt hym scorne—
Not III days jornay þens dwelland.
2935 Bot for sewrty was fest be forn,
he sayd þe peyse suld stably stand,
So þat þei suld not fáll,
þat land whyls þei wonned in,
To bere wode *and* fuell
2940 þer sacurfyce to be gyne.

At this news the king of Jerusalem prepared war against the Gibeonites.

246 kyng of ierusalem herd tell
of bayle þat in þat land be gan,
how þat the chylder of israel
ware comyn fare ouer flom iordan,
2945 And how þei hade wun þem o mell
fyrst Jerico *and* sythyn Adan
And gabonyse with þem to dwell.
þat mad hym a full mornand man.
hee sayd hys men to ryse
2950 *and* prestly to persew
To stroy the gabonyse,
for þei had takyn trew.

S 244. 2 knew *below the line* / 7 Bot / 8 ff *cancelled before* when / new *above the line* / 10 wylbe /— **245.** 7 -t *of* Bot *above the line in different ink.*

L 244. 1 They tuke twelf / that / Citee / 2 which that they / most wyse knew / 3 theym / 4 fynyall peace / pursew / 5 They / ar comen / fare cuntree / 6 of the ser to haue peace and to the be trew / 7 By oure clothes that men may see / 8 then were they / 9 wynne home agayne / 10 wolle / many / 11 They tooke trews / this trayne / 12 they their / — **245.** 1 When thus their peace / sworne / 2 troved theym folk / 3 soone / morne / 4 that they were neghtburs / 5 Canaan this thoght / 6 noght thre iorney fro hym dwelland / 7 suerty / promyst beforne / 8 theire peace shuld stabley / 9 that / þei *omitted* / shuld / fayle / 10 that / whylst they dwelt yn / 11 wod / fuayle / 12 theire sacrifyce to bryn / The kyng *in lower margin as catchwords* /— **246.** 1 fol. 127 a. Josue *in upper margin* / The kyng / Jerusalem / 2 bale that / that / began / Ca. x. *in right margin.* / 3 How that / childre / Israell / 4 were comen / the flome Jordan / 5 they had wonne theym among / 6 first / sithen / 7 Gabonyse / theym / 8 that made / full *wanting* / mornyng / 9 And made his / 10 prestely / pursew / 11 distroye / Gabonyse / 12 they to the Ebrews were sworn trew.

With four kings, he went forth to destroy the Gibeonites, who however were saved by Joshua.

247 ffor IIII kynge*s* sone had he send,
qwylk well he wyst [wold] wi*th* hy*m* [l]ast.
To gabonyse wyghtly þei wend
þem *and* þer Cytes down to cast.
Bot Josue wold þem dyffend,
ffor þei in fayth war festynd fast.
wi*th* his mene3e þem to amend
to paynyms planly ys he past.
he tokyd [þem] in þat tyme
so þat þer fled bot fone,
ffro on hȯwr aft*ur* prime
to fowr howrs aft*ur* none.

The sun stood still, while Joshua avenged himself upon his enemies. Such grace of God was never seen before.

248 hy*m* toy3t the day went hastely;
þer*for* he pra*y*d god for his gra*ce*,
And god of hys gud curtasay
lenghed þat day II days space:
he made the sone to stand for þi
and passe not furth his kyndly pase,
Tyll Iosue had the vyctory
and ouer*com*yng of all hys foyse.
Sqwylke gra*ce* os god dyd þore
Agayns the cowrse of kynd
was neue*r* seyne be fore,
als fere ȯs men may mynd.

The five kings, who had hidden in a cave, were brought forth and scornfully used.

249 The paynyms os in parke war pynd,
to byd þem batell was not to abyd.
The fyue kynge*s* held þem be hynd,
and [in] a hole þei haue þem hyde.
Bot Josue furth can þe[m] fynd.
þat he was kyng þore well he kyd.
þar hande*s* to þer bakke*s* gart he bynd,
and on this wyse wi*th* þem he dyd:
he gart þem lyg on lang
apon the grownd þor grayd
And Ebrews on þem gang,
and þus to þem he sayd,

S 247. 2 was / fast / 9 hy*m* /— **249.** 4 made / 5 þen.

L 247. 1 For foure / has / sent / 2 which wele / wyst wold / last / 3 Gabonys / they went / 4 theym / their Cete downe / 5 Josue theym soone did defend / 6 for they / faith were / 7 With / menye theym / 8 agaynes the paymyns playnly is / 9 He told theym / that / 10 that there flede / foone / 11 ffor an houre after pryme / 12 foure houres after noone /— **248.** 1 Hym thoght / 2 there fore / of his /3 his goode curtesy / 4 lenght that / too / 5 He / soon / forthy / 6 pace / 7 To the tyme Josue hade / victory / 8 his fooes / 9 Such / as god did there / 10 agaynes / course / 11 noght seen sithen ne / 12 as far as men has mynd /— **249.** 1 as / was /2 bede theym bale nede not to byd / 3 fyve / theym behynd / 4 in an hoell they / theym hyd / 5 gun theym / 6 that / there wele / 7 Their / theire bakes made / 8 theym / did / 9 He / theym / 10 opond / there grayde / 11 theym to / 12 thus / theym / sayde.

250 »Als ȝe fare *with* kynge*s* fyue
þat sulse þem heyr vnde*r* yo*ur* fette,
So sall ȝe be lorde*s* in yo*ur* lyue
of paynyms kynge*s*, her I yow hett,
And haue maystry of man *and* wyfe
þat wyll no to yow make þe*m* mett.
þe*r* sall none stand *with* yow to stryfe,
whyls ȝe [yo*ur* god *with* gud wyll] grett.»
þen gart he hang þos kynge*s*,
als o þe*r* had bene be fore,
And sythyn of o þe*r* thynge*s*
sone made he mayst*ur* more.

The five kings were hanged, and Joshua said that all their foes should be treated in the same way.

251 Sex Cytes wan þei þat same day
and on the morn als o þe*r* mo.
To galgala þen toke þei way
vnto þe*r* frende*s* þat þei wentt fro.
Of all þis fayre full fayn ware þei
and thanked god wher so þei go.
þen made þei m[y]rth *and* mekyll play;
þei wyst of non to werke þem wo.
Bot sone aft*ur* þei war
noyd of new mane*r*:
Kyng Jabyn of Dasore
geydderd full grett power

The children of Israel conquered six cities on this same day, and returned to Gilgal.

252 Of kynge*s* *and* duke*s* *and* mony a knyȝt,
þat wysly cowd the wepyns weld;
Thre hunderth chareotte*s* hath he dyȝt
of vetell *and* tente*s* *with* to teld,
ffowr hunderth thowssand folke to fyȝt
ffull well at hors *with* spere *and* scheld.
To see þat was a semly syȝt
when þat þei fared furth on the feld.
When Ebrews con þem se,
þei ware adred sum dele,
fol. 28 b Bot god sayd vnto Josue
he suld ouercom þem well.

King Jabin of Hazor gathered together his forces, 400,000 men and many chariots, to go up against the Israelites.

S 250. 8 wyll yo*ur* god *with* gud /— **251.** 8 r *of* werke *above the line* / 10 noyd *above* new *cancelled*.

L 250. 1 As ye thes kynges fyve / 2 that suls theym here vndre / fete / 3 shal ye / youre lyve / 4 panym / here I you hete / 5 have maistry / wyve / 6 that to you wolle not / theym mete / 7 Ther shal / you / stryve / 8 whilst ye yo*ur* / goode wyll grete / 9 Then made / he *inserted above the line* / hyng the / 10 as othre / ben before / 11 sythen / othre / 12 soone / maistres /— **251.** 1 Syx Cites / they that / 2 morne also othre moo / 3 Galgala then / they / 4 their / that they went / 5 this fare / fayne were they / 6 where / they goo / 7 Then / they myrth / mych / 8 they knowe noone / wyrk theym woo / 9 after they were / 10 noyed on / 11 Dasor / 12 gedered / grete powere / — **252.** 1 Deukes / knyght / 2 that wysely myght wepens welde / Ca. xi. *in right margin* / 3 hunderyth Chariotes has / dyght / 4 for vytale / telde / ffoure hunderyth thovsand / fyght / 6 full wele / shelde / 7 that / semely syght / 8 that they were gedered on the felde / 9 gun theym see / 10 they were a dred sumdele / '*quartus*' *in bottom margin* / 11 to / 12 shuld ouercome theym wele.

The heathen peoples had no strength to stand against the Hebrews. Only a few of the 400,000 men escaped.

253 Duke Josue *and* fynyes
wold take no tyme to tary lang;
þei putt þem furth full fast in p*re*sse
agayns þ*er* enmys forto gang.
þ*er* was no poynttyng vnto peyse
bot ylk man his fere to fang.
The Ebrews con eu*er* incresse,
bot p[a]lynyms toyȝt the stoure full strang:
þei had no strengh to stand
a gayns godd*es* folke to stryfe.
Of IIII hunderth thowssand
þ*er* leued bot few on lyfe.

When they had destroyed every thing and taken the spoils, the Israelites returned to Gilgal.

254 þ*er* chareys was fest on fyr ylkon
w*ith* vessell *and* w*ith* mony a tent.
þei spoled *and* spylt *and* spared non,
tyll all was wast *and* schamly schent.
Bot treso*ur* to þem haue þei tone;
Cytes *and* burghes haue þei brent.
Wh*en* þei had wonn so welth gud wone,
to galgala a gay*n* þei went.
þen was none leued in land,
kyng ne p*ri*nce w*ith* pryde,
þat þem durst more gayn stand,
ne in batell þem abyd.

Josue made war a long time with the thirty kings of the land. At the end of the war he made a great sacrifice to God.

255 Ne forto fle war leued bot fone;
þei *con*querd all þos cuntreys clene.
Thyrty kynges to ded was done
w*ith* owty*n* Dukes *and* knyghte*s* kene.
Bott all þis werke was not wroght sone;
þei toke full mony tym be twene.
Then forto noye þem fand þei none,
bot all on myrth þei wold mene.
þei made grett sac*ur*fyce
vnto god all*migh*ty
wyt wrschepe on this wyse,
als yt was well worthy.

S 254. 2 atent /— **255.** 6 twene *below the line.*

L 253. 1 ffynees / 2 noo / tarry / 3 They put theym / prece / 4 agaynes theire / 5 Ther / noo poyntyng / pece / 6 ych a man / forto / 7 gun / encrece / 8 panyms thoght that stour / 9 fol. 127 b. / They / noo strenght / 10 agayns godes folk / stryve / 11 foure hunderyth thovsand / 12 ther left / lyve /— **254.** 1 Their Chayres were / fyre ychoone / 2 vesell / 3 They spoyled / noone / 4 to / shamely shent / 5 tresoure / theym have they taken / 6 Cetes / Burghes haue they / 7 they / won / goode woone / 8 Galgala agayne they / 9 Then / noon left / 10 prynce / 11 That theym / gayne / 12 theym abyde /— **255.** 1 flee were left / foone / 2 they conquered / the contres / 3 Thirty / deid were doone / 4 withouten / 5 Bot / this warke / noght / soone / 6 there was many tymes betwene / 7 theym / they noone / 8 on *wanting* / all myrth that wold on mene / 9 They maked grete sacrifice / 10 almyghty / 11 With worship / their / 12 as it / wele.

Josue assembled the people at Silo, and exhorted them to worship God, who had fulfilled the promises made to Abraham and Isaac.

256 Duke Josue þen folke [a]rayse
on sylo, þat was A sole*m*pne syȝt.
And all þ*us* to þem he says,
»heuys vp yo*ur* hert*es* to god on myght
And wrschep hy*m* w*ith* wyll all ways
þat now hath fulfylled þat he heyȝt
In abraham *and* in ysac days,
þat þei suld haue þis remes be ryȝt
To þem *and* þ*er* of spryng
and weld yt w*ith* honowrs;
ffor now is all þat hetyng
fulfylled in vs and ours.»

Canaan was divided into twelve parts, and the tribes cast lots for their share.

257 »The grownd þ*er* of in þem be gane
and past furth to þ*er* progenyte.
3075 fol. 29 a yow menys how moyses co*m*mawnd þen
to vs *and* to all o*ur* cu*m*pany,
'qwen ȝe haue *con*qwerde Canan
and hath yt at yo*ur* awn maystry,
Dep*ar*t yt als wele os ȝe cane
to the twelf kynradyns co*m*mu*n*ly'.
þus was his bydy*n*g last,
and so p*ar*t yt we sall.
Sythyn sall we lott*es* cast
qwylke p*ar*t to qwylke sall fall.»

The land was measured out by Joshua and Eleazar, and the tribes entered into their possessions.

258 Ten of the wysest furth can fayre
and [m]ett the land in lengh *and* bred.
when þei had done þat charge and charre,
agayn then hastely can þei sped.
Then Josue, *and* Eleȝaar
to ylke a kynradyn toke gud hede
And gafe ylkon aft*ur* þei wayre
mony or few þ*er* on to fede.
So wentt þei all *and* sum
aft*ur* þer cowrse was cast.
And þei be ȝond the flome
vnto þ*er* p*ar*t*es* past.

S 256. 4 he / 6 heyȝt *below the line* / 12 *first* -l- *in* fulfylled *above the line* / d *in* and *above the line* — **258.**1 can þei fayre / 2 wett.

L 256. 1 then / folke *omitted* / arays / 2 the folke in sylk whych was a solenne syght / 3 all *omitted* / thus / theym / 4 lyft / youre / of myght / 5 worship / wyll and ways / 6 that has / that hyght / 7 ysaac / 8 that they shuld have this reaume beryght / 9 theym / theire ofspryng / 10 it / honours / 11 that behestyng / 12 fullfylled — **257.** 1 Ca. xiii. *in left margin* / therof / theym began / 2 furthe / theire progeny 3 Ye knawe howe Moyses / commawnd *omitted* / then / 4 comaunded vs and all oure compayny / 5 When ye haue conquered Canaan / 6 haves it in youre awne maistry / 7 Departe it as / as ye kan / 8 twelve kyndred comonly / 9 Thus / 10 parte ytt / shall / 11 Sythen we shall lotes / 12 which parte / which shal /— **258.** 1 gun fare / 2 and beheld / lenght / brede / 3 When they / doone that charch / chare / 4 agayne they spede theym full good spede / 5 Eliazare / 6 yche a kyndred / goode / 7 gave ychoone after they ware / 8 many / theron / 9 went they / sume / 10 aftir their course / 11 Ca. xxii. *in left margin* / they beyonde / flume / 12 their.

Twenty years after Joshua had passed over the river Jordan, he felt his end to be near. He gathered the people together and spoke to them.

259 Qwe*n* XX ȝere*s* war full spend
fro tyme þei past flome iordayn,
þen Josue full clere kend
þat he most passe by kynd of man.
Aft*ur* the Ebrews hath he sent,
and to þem þ*us* sayd he þan,
»Syrs, I may no langer lend
to gouerne yow, ose I be gan.
My tyme neghys nere
þat me behouys fownd yow fro.
My *con*sell sall ȝe heyre
and take*s* gud tent þ*er* to.»

Joshua's exhortation and death.

260 »honowrs god eue*r*, old *and* ȝyng,
and kyndly kepe*s* hys co*m*mawndme*n*t.
And coueytte*s* now non oþ*er* kyng,
bot trows in hy*m* *with* trew ente*n*t.
whyls ȝe do so, all erthly thyng
þat nedfull is [is] to yow sent.
And what tyme ȝe breke þis bydyng,
full sodanly ȝe sall be schent.
hath mynd, both more and lesse,
what dede*s* he for yow dyde
And of seyre grett kyndnese
he to yo*ur* kyndradyn kyde.»

261 »he lede þem fayr fro fayran
and mad þ*er* way thrugh waters clere
and drowned þ*er* enmys ylkon
þat none *with* noye myȝt neghe þem nere,
And sythyn in wylde*r*nes [gud wone]
sent þem [of] foyde full XL ȝere.
This land to þ*er* lynag alon
he heyȝt, *and* now ȝe haue yt here.
þ*er*for for geytte*s* hy*m* noyȝt
b[ot] neuyn hy*m* in yo*ur* nede.
whyls ȝe of hy*m* hath toyȝt,
all way ȝe sall well spede.»

fol. 29 b.

S 260. 12 dede *cancelled before* kyde / — **261.** 5 whe*n* þei can wun / 10 be.

L 259. 1 When twenty yeres were fully spende / 2 they / the flume Jordan / 3 Then / clerely / 4 that hym behoved pas / 5 Ca. xxiii. *in left margin* / After / did he send / 6 vnto theym thus / then / 7 Sirys / noo leng*er* lende / 8 yov as I began / 9 nowe drawes / 10 that / behoves pas you / 11 counsall shal ye here / 12 goode / therto / — **261.** 1 Honoures gode both old / ying / 2 his co*m*andment / 3 covates / noon othre / 4 trow / 5 Whilst ye doo / 6 that nedefull is be to you / 7 ye / this / 8 ye shal / shent / 9 Ca. xxv. *in left margin* / Haue mynde / les / 10 you dyd / 11 grete sere kyndnes / 12 youre kyndred kyd — / **261.** 1 He led theym fere / Pharaon / 2 made theire / thorov wat*er* / 3 And drovnned theire / euerychoone 4 that noon / myght come they*m* nere / 5 fol. 128 a. / Iosue *in right margin* / sithen / wyldirnes goode woone / 6 theym of foode / fourty yere / 7 theire linages all oone / 8 hyght / nowe ye haue it / 9 Therfor forgetes / noght / 10 bot call on / 11 Whylst ye / has thoght / 12 ye shall wele.

262 »I warn yow all so *and* all Ebrews
þat ar of Jacob kynradyn knawn
þat ȝe co*m*yn not wi*th* Ca[na]news,
nor wi*th* non nacon bot [your awn];
ffor yf ȝe mell yow wi*th* swylke sch[r]ews,
in donger sone sall ȝe be [drawn].
And whyls ȝe vse all honest thews,
full sauely sa[ll] yo*ur* sede be sawn.»
þ*us* lerned he lest *and* most
to eschew all yll thyng.
And then he gafe his gost
to godd*es* awn gou*er*yng.

263 þ*us* qwe*n* þis nobyll Duke was Ded,
the folke made doyle wi*th*owty*n* drede.
And whyls þei wroyȝt aft*ur* his rede,
þei had lordschep of ylke led.
Eleȝaar, ther sufferan hed,
the same way sone aft*ur* ȝode.
And hys sun fynyes in his sted
was ordand furth þos folke to led.
This boke ys of Josue
sen tyme þei past the flome,
And oþ*er* new say sall we,
þat is called Iudicu*m*.

Eleazar died soon after Joshua. Phinehas was ordained in his stead. Thus ends the book of Joshua.

Judic*um*

264 when Josue, þat ge*n*tyll knyȝt,
was hent to heuy*n*, ose men may here,
The Ebrews, men of grett myȝt,
þen leued in myrth full mony A ȝere.
And forto wyn þat was þ*er* ryȝt
sadly þei soyȝt on sydes sere,
And fynys for þem to fyȝt
ferd wi*th* the folke both farre *and* nere.
þe Cyte of salem
in þe sort of byniamyn,
Sythen cald ie*rusa*lem,
þat went þei forto wyn.

The Israelites went forth far and wide to conquer other peoples. They tried to capture Salem, afterwards called Jerusalem.

S 262. 4 n- *of* nacon *above the line* / yf ȝe be ou*er* drawn / 8 sad / 10 thynge*s* /— **263.** 11 þ*er* new / 12 Iudicium *with last* i *cancelled* /— **264.** 1 Iudicium *with last* i *cancelled*.

L 262. 1 you also / 2 that / kyndred / 3 That ye common noght / Canenews / 4 ne with noon nacion bot yo*ur* awn / 5 if ye / you / suche shrews / 6 davnge*r* soone ye shal be drawn / 7 whilst ye / 8 savely shal / 9 Thus lere / moste / 10 eshew / evyll / 11 gave / goste / 12 godes / gou*er*nyng / — **263.** 1 Thus when this noble / deide / 2 dole wi*th*outen / 3 Ay whilst thei wroght aft*er* / reide / 4 they / lordeship / ych a lede / 5 Elyaȝare theire sou*er*an heide / 6 sone *wanting* / aft*er* yede / 7 his sone finees / stede / 8 the folke / 9 booke is / 10 sithen the tyme they passed / flume / 11 And *wanting* / An othre now say shal / 12 that /— **264.** 1 Liber Judicu*m* *written with capital letters in right margin* / When / that / knyght / 2 heven as / 3 were men / grete myght / 4 and lyved / full *wanting* / many a yere / 5 that / their ryght / 6 thay soght / sides / Ca.i. *in right margin* / 7 ffynees / theym / fyght / 8 yoode the folke / far / 9 The Citee / Salem / 10 the / Beniamin / 11 Sithen called Jerusalem / 12 þat *wanting* / they.

Although it was strongly fortified, it was at last conquered.

265 The Cyte was both lang *and* wyde,
warded *and* walled full well for were.
þei segede yt on ylka syde
with men of ermys *and* oþ*er* geyre.
The cananews war bold to byde,
þei dowtede non to do þem dere.
Bot at the last layd was þ*er* pride;
þei fand full fe[w] folke þem to fere.
had þei lufed god lely,
no man myȝt þem haue noyde;
þei lyu*e*d *in* mawme*n*try,
þat dyde þem be dystroyde.

Then Hebron, where giants dwell in the mountains, was taken. The land was given to the priests.

266 The Ebrews enturd as þei toyȝt,
and all þ*er* enmys fast þei feld.
þei spoled *and* spylt *and* spared noyȝt
bo[t] tres*our* þat þei toke vnt[eld].
And whe*n* þei hade þ*er* werk*es* wroyȝt,
at home no langer þei þem held,
Bot in Ebron fast haue soyȝt
vnto Mowntans wher gyantes dweld.
Whe*n* fynyes þem fand,
he stroyde þem in a thrawe
And delyu*e*r*d* all þ*er* land
to clerk*es* þat keped þe law.

It was decided that Salem should be given to the tribe of Beniamin.

267 þei *con*qwerd marches, lesse *and* more,
and welth enogh so can þei wyne.
Bot Salem, os I sayd be fore,
fell in þe sort of Byngemyn,
And þ*er*for þ*us* was ordand þore
þat þei *and* þers suld dwell þ*er* in.
þat Cyte sone can þei restore
in grett *com*forth to all þ*er* kyn.
þei p*ar*tyde þem amang
thres*our* by chaunse to chesse,
And so all can þei gang
vnto þ*er* awn Cetyse.

S 265. 7 layd *above the line* / 8 fell /— **266.** 4 vntyll / 11 landes /— **267.** 5 þ*er* *cancelled before* þore.

L 265. 1 That Cite / long / 2 wele / 3 Thei seged it / yche a / 4 armes / othre gere / 5 Cananews were / abyde / 6 they dovted noon / doo theym / 7 theyr pryde / 8 they fand bot few folk theym / 9 they loved / lelely / 10 noman myght theym have noyed / 11 They lived / mavmentry / 12 that mayd theym / dystroyed / — **266.** 1 entred as theym thoght / 2 their / they / 3 The spoyled / noght / 4 bot / that they tuke vnteld / 5 they had there warkes wroght / 6 noo leng*er* they they*m* / 7 have they soght / 8 mountanes where giauntes / 9 ffynees theym / 10 dystroyd theym / thraw / 11 delyu*e*red / theire / 12 that kept the / — **267.** 1 They conquered / les / 2 enugh / gun they wyn / 3 as / before / 4 the / Beniamin / 5 therfor thus / thore / 6 that they / theirs shuld / therin / 7 That Cete / they gun / 8 grete / their / 9 They parted theym / 10 tres*our* / chaunce / chese / 11 gun they / 12 their / Citees.

At first the Hebrews worshipped God alone, but later the Benjamites began to do evil in the sight of the Lord.

268 þus ware þe Ebrews ylkon
logyde in þe land of canan.
þei had no lord bot [god] all on
forto do sewtt ne seruyce þan.
Ne forto noye þem fand þei none,
the commawnmentes kepe why[l]s þei cane.
Bot hastely þei hath mysgone,
And byniamyns folke fyrst be gane.
Both moyses *and* Iosue
bad þat þei suld þem kepe
ffro folke of þat cuntre
and paynems feleschepe.

The remaining Israelites followed them, so that very few kept the commandments.

269 The lordes of byniamyn lynage
to breke þis bedyng hath be gune;
when þei sufferd for certan stage,
the hethyn men a mang þem wun.
And towns lett þei for tripage,
wher in philystyyns was fun.
And paynyms, both man *and* page,
to be þer seruandes hath þei bun.
And euyn os þei began,
all oþer soyne assent
þat vnethes on man
toke [kepe to] þe commawndment.

They lived in lust and lewdness. The Benjamites were the worst.

270 In hertes þei war so sterne *and* stowt
for weltes of gud *and* grett maystri.
The law þem lyst not leue ne lawt
bot lyued in lust *and* lechery.
By cawse þei had no werre withowt,
amang þem wex full grett enuy.
And the byniamyns was most abowt
to groche *and* greue god allmighty.
þat was schewed in schort tyd
at the Cyte of gabaon,
next salen nere be syde,
how fowle þer þei fon.

S 269. 12 toke to kepe /— **270.** 7 beniam *cancelled after* the / 11 þ *cancelled before* nere.

L 268. 1 Thus was the / euerychoone / 2 luged / the / Canaan / 3 They / / noo lorde bot god alloone / 4 doo svte / seruice then / 5 Ne / noy theym / they noone / 6 comaundmentes / whilst they can / 7 they have mysgoone / 8 and Beniamins folk first began / 9 Bot Moyses / 10 that they shuld theym / 11 that / 12 Panyms ffelyship /— **269.** 1 fol. 128 b. / Beniamin / 2 this byddyng haue begun / 3 When they soffred / certayn / 4 hathen / among theym wonne / 5 townes they let fro trevage / 6 Wher in Philistyens were fonne / 7 of Panyms / 8 their seruantes have they bonne / 9 even as they / 10 othre sone / 11 And vnethes any / 12 toke kepe to the comandment / — **270.** 1 they were / stern / stovte / 2 welth / goode / grete maistry / 3 theym / lere / lovte / 4 lived / lichery / 5 Because they / were withoute / 6 theym / grete envy / 7 Beniamins wer most aboute / 8 greve / almyghty / 9 That / schewed *missing* / short tyde / 10 shewyd at / Citee / Gabaon / 11 Salem / besyde / 12 fouly they did.

They slew the wife of an Hebrew outside the gates of the city.

271 þer yt be fell apon a day
prowd beniamyns *with* þer meneȝe
wentt in a place þem forto play
be for the ȝattes of þat Cete.
An Ebrew com þer in the way
with his wyfe, full fayre *and* fre.
Amang þem self þen can þei say,
»yond woman þis nyȝt weld wyll we».
þer curstnes so þe kyd,
qwat for scath *and* qwatt for scorne.
ffor dedes þei to hyr dyde,
scho was fun dede at morn.

The husband incited his countrymen to go to Gaba, to take revenge, but they were beaten by the Benjamites.

272 hyr husband þen had mekyll care;
No wonder was þof he were wo.
The body he toke *and with* hym bare
to his cuntre, wher he com froo.
he sent to Cetys lesse *and* more
to gabaon be lyfe at goo
þor forto venge þat fellows fare,
and hastely þei hafe done so.
Bott þei þat wroght þis woghe
with in ware sterne *and* stowt;
Ten thowsand sone þe sloghe
of þem þat ware *with* owt.

Then Phinehas interfered, gathered together his host and slew 20,000 men; he would make no truce with the rebels. Whole households were burnt to death.

273 Then ware þe Ebrews put to payn,
ffor þat asawt full sore þem rews.
ffor fynyes þen was not fayn
of the feyghyng, for all ware jews.
his host he sembled sone agayn,
and to þe rebels he remews.
XX *milia* sone ware slayn,
for *with* þem wold he take no trews.
Both wyf, chyld *and* page fol. 31 a
þei byrttynd sone *and* brent.
So was all þat lynage
for þer sy[n] schamly schent.

S 271. 8 we *above the line* /— **2**;**3.** 1 putto / 2 -s *of* rews *below* ed *cancelled* / 12 sym.

L 271. 1 There it befell / vpon / 2 proude beniamins / their menye / 3 Went / / theym / 4 before / yates / that Cite / 5 come there / 6 faire / 7 theym self so gun they / 8 yonde / this nyght welde / 9 Their cursydnes / they / 10 what / skath / and *wanting* / what / 11 they / hir did / 12 she / fonne deid or morne /— **272.** 1 Hire / then / mych / 2 noon wondre / if hym were woo / 3 he toke the body and / 4 where / come / 5 Citees les / 6 Gabaon belyve to goo 7 There / that felous / 8 they haue doone soo / 9 Bot they that / this woo / 10 within were stern / stoute / 11 thovsand / they did sloo / 12 theym that were withoute /— **273.** 1 were the / payne / 2 for that assaute / theym / 3 ffor *missing* / ffynees then / fayne / 4 that fyghtyng / were Jews / 5 oste / sembles / agayne / 6 tho rebells / remws / 7 Twenty thovsand / wer slayne / 8 theym / noo / 9 Bot wyfe and childe / 10 they smote in sundre and / 11 that / 12 their syn shamely shent.

274 By cawse þei toke þe trew manys wyfe,
þat progenyte was put to p[y]n
Bot sex hunderth þat fled on lyue.
þer lyued no mo of all þat lyne,
Qwylke aftur, qwen þei toyȝt to th[ryue],
with oþer Ebrews acordy[d] syne.
And stylly so with owtyn stryfe
þei saued þe sort of beniamyne.
All þer possessions playn
to þem þei con restore
And so ordand agayn
XII, os þei ware be fore.

Only 600 of them escaped with their lives, and so saved the tribe of Benjamin.

275 In gabaon þei con þem sese
with oþer cytes large *and* lang.
þen leued þe Ebrews all at ese;
wold non with greue agayn þem gange.
Als lang os þei wold god plese,
was non in ward to wyrke þem wrang.
And when þei melled oþer ways,
sone mengyd myschef þem among.
[When they left moyses law
and to mavmentres theym mende],
So Cananews couth knaw
þat god was not þer frend.

As long as the children of Israelites pleased God, no one could wrong them. But soon evil arose amongst them.

276 Then fynyes dede aftur tytt
þat þem to maynte[n]euer h[ym]melled.
þei folowd all þer flesch delytt,
and god his helpyng from þem held.
þen Cananews with owt respett
dang þem down qwer so þei dweld:
þus scaped þei not vndyscumfeytt;
fylysteyns in feldes þei felled.
þus aboyde þei sorows sere,
and no wrschepe þei wan.
þis lastyd XX ȝere,
and þus fell aftur þen.

After the death of Phinehas, the Israelites followed after wickedness. The Philistines attacked them and overcame them on the field of battle. This state of things lasted for 20 years.

S 274. 2 putto payn ' 5 thyrn / 6 acordyng /— **276.** 2 mayntem / he.

L 274. 1 Because they / the trewman wyve / 2 that progeny / pyne / 3 sex thovsand that / lyve / 4 they lyved noon man / that / 5 Which after when they thoght to thryve / 6 the othre / acorded / 7 withouten stryve / 8 they saved the / Beniamin / 9 their / playne / 10 theym they gun / 11 agayne / 12 twelve as they were before /— **275.** 1 Ca. ij. *in left margin* / Gabaon then gun they sease / 2 othre Cites / 3 Then lyved the / ease / 4 wold there noon / greve / theym gang / 5 As lang as they god wold please / 6 noon / warld wold wyrk theym / 7 they / with other mease / 8 menged / theym / 9—10 = *text above* / 12 that / their frende /— **276.** 1 ffynees died after tyte / 2 that theym / mayntene / hym meld / 3 They folowed / their fleshly delite / 4 help fro theym / 5 Then / withoute respyte / 6 theym / where / they / 7 þus *omitted* / They scaped noght vndyscomfyte / 8 Philistyens / theym feld / 9 fol. 129 a. Judicum *in upper margin* / Thus hade they / 10 noo worship they / Ca. iii. *in right margin* / 11 This lasted twenty yere / 12 thus it befell after then.

Cenys at last routed the Philistines and ruled the Israelites for 40 years. Then came King Eglon of the Moabites.

277 A semly man, þat Cenys hyȝt,
of Iudas gen*er*acion,
he p*ro*ferd hy*m* for þem to fyȝt
and vnto batell mad hy*m* bown.
Phylysteyns he putt to þe flyȝt
and feld þ*er* foys in feld *and* town.
Sythyn XL ȝere he rewled þem ryȝt
and dyed sone aft*ur* þat seson.
þen sone the folke can fon
and wroyȝt as wryches vnwyse.
So come to þe kyng Eglon
w*ith* full mony moabyse.

He oppressed the children of Israel and took the city of Jericho. He was deceived by a Hebrew attendant, Ehud.

278 he *con*querde cu*n*tres to *and* fro
and greued þem w*ith* full grett owtrag:
Sum to byrn *and* sum to slo
and sum þei sett in sere s*er*uage.
he toke þe Cyte of Ierico
and putt the pepyll to pay trypage.
hyt was his ded, for he dyed so;
his lordschep last bot a lytill stage.
An Ebrew, þat hyȝt howade,
þat well cowd plese *and* playn,
Made kyng Eglon oft glade
w*ith* fals talyes þat he cowd feyne.

Ehud murdered the king; and when the Moabites heard this, they fled, pursued by the Israelites,

279 ffell on a day þe kyng *and* he
ware in a chamber þem alone.
he slogh þe kyng in p*re*uyte
and laft hy*m* ded styll ose a stone.
And he wentt in the same Cete
and warned þe Ebrews ylkon
And bade þei suld son arayd be;
þ*er* enmys suld als tytt be tone.
Wh*en* moabyse wyst þ*er* kyng
was so dede, sone þei remeued
And fled both old *and* ȝyng,
and Ebrews fast p*er*sewed.

fol. 31 b

L 277. 1 semely / that Cenyȝ hight / 3 profered / theym / fyght / 4 made / bowne / 5 Philistiens / put to flyght / 6 theire fooes / felde / towne / 7 Sithen fourty yere / theym right / 8 died / after that season / 9 Then / gun fon / 10 wroght / wreches / 11 to *missing before* the / 12 Moabyse /— **278.** 1 He conquered contres / 2 greved theym / grete outrage / 3 byrne / 4 they set / 5 the Cite / 6 made the people / trevage / 7 That / deid / did soo / 8 lordship endured bot litle stage / 9 that hyght hoad / 10 that wele couth please / pleyne / 12 tales / couth /— **279.** 1 It befell vpon / the / 2 were / chaumbre theym alloone / 3 slow the / pryvete / 4 left / deid / as / stoone / 5 went / that same Cite / 6 And / the / ychoone / 7 bad they shuld sone armed / 8 theire / shuld as tyte be taken / 9 theire / 10 was *missing* / so deid / they remeved / 11 ying / 12 purseved.

280 In þat *per*sewy*n*g hade þei payn:
þ*er* wold no cety þem soco*ur*.
X m*ilia* of þem was slayn,
so ware þei stound in þat stoure.
The Ebrews can [þen ordand]
howade to be þ*er* gou*er*nowre.
To XVIII ȝer*es* was past playn,
full s[u]rely saued he þer hono*ur*.
Then re[gn]ed Senagar,
þat VI C ons sloght
Of panyms, þat prowd ware,
w*ith* a soke of a ploght.

who killed 10,000 men. Ehud became their governor. Senagar ruled after him and killed 600 heathens with a ploughshare.

281 Sythyn Ebrews assent to syn
and cowd not kepe þ*er* laws clene,
þen com on þem kyng Iabyn
w*ith* cananews þat ware full kene.
he wold no sesse to slo *and* byrn,
bot sone aft*ur* hade he tene.
Two Ebrews, comyn of ge*n*tyll kyn,
In batell to hy*m* þem betwene.
Barrett *and* Debora
þus ware þei named þore,
And well gou*er*and þei two
full XL ȝere *and* more.

The Israelites again did evil in God's sight; king Jabin of Canaan attacked them, but was met by Barak, urged on by Deborah, who governed Israel for 40 years and more.

282 Whe*n* XL ȝer*es* was fully past,
for þei to god ware eu*er* grochand,
In grett dyscu*m*forth war þei cast
for hungar þat fell *in* þat land.
And VII wynters, so lang yt last,
to sy*m*pyll folke no fode þei fand.
þen vnto god þei cryed full fast
and prayd his help w*ith* hert *and* hand.
ffor als þei fayled mett,
ȝett had þei mo enmys
þat dyde þem greua*n*ce grett,
madyans *and* malachys.

There was a famine in the land for seven years, and the poor could find no food. The Israelites were also oppressed by the Midianites and the Malakites.

S 280. 5 ordand þen / 8 serely / 9 remeued / — **281.** 8 to *for* toke; *cf. Curs. M.* (*Cott.*) 16454.

L 280. 1 that pursewyng had they payne / 2 there / noo Cite theym socoure / 3 Ten thovsandes / theym sone wer slayne / 4 were they stonyd / that / 5 then gun ordayne / 6 hoad / their gouernoure / 7 aght yeres were passed playne / 8 surely saved / theire honoure / 9 reigned Sanygar / 10 that sex thovsand oons / 11 Panyms which provde were / 12 share of / — **281.** 1 Sithen the Ebrews assented / 2 couth / theire / 3 Then come kyng Iabyn / 4 Cananews that were / 5 He / not cesse bo sloo / bryn / 6 after betyd hym tene / 7 Twoo / comen / 8 in / toke / theym / 9 Barath / Delbora / 10 thus were they / there / 11 wele gouerned they / two *missing* / 12 fourty / ȝere *omitted* /— **282.** 1 fourty yere were / 2 they / were / Ca. v. *in right margin* / 3 grete discomforth were they / 4 hungre that / that / 5 seven wyntyrs / long it / 6 symple / noo foode then fand / 7 And vnto god they cried / 8 helpe / 9 as theym failed mete / 10 yitt / they moo Enmys / 11 That did theym greuaunce grete / 12 Madyans / malichise. / Ca. vi. *in right margin.*

When they repented, God sent Gideon for their deliverance.

283 when þei to god þer kayrs knew
how þ[ei] a gayns hy[s] wyll were went,
On gedion, a gentyll Jew,
of þer awn lynage, hath he lent.
And for he in his trowth was trew,
god hath his angell to hym sent,
like vnto A man in hyd *and* hew,
and told hym how his maker ment
fforto aray hym ryȝt,
both hert, hed *and* hend,
And þen wend furth to fyȝt,
goddes folke forto dyffend.

An angel appeared to him, when he was out at work.

284 Gedeon was þat same morne
purueyd in a preue stede
To clepe his schepe *and* thresch his corne
so forto ordand cloghes *and* brede.
The angell þat com hym be forne
and broyȝt bodword os god hym bede,
he wened full well yt had ben scorne.
þerfor he was full wyll of rede
And toyȝt he suld asay
by some experiment
Whedder yt ware trew or nay
þat god his seruant had hym sent.

He doubted the angel, but believed in him when he received from God the sign he desired

285 A flesse he sprede be for his fette
on þe erthe *and* all nyȝt lett yt ly.
he sayd, »yf þis flese be wett
to morn at morn *and* þe moldes dry,
þen wyll I trow *and* hertly hette
þis message is of god all*migh*ty.«
On the morn full drye was all the strett,
and þe flese wett, þat was ferly.
þen þe contrary
he ordand at euyn latte:
At þe morne the flese was dry
and all the ways full waytte.

S 283. 2 þat *instead of* þei /— **285.** 8 þatwas / 9 vnto *cancelled after* þen / cuntre *cancelled after* þe.

L 283. 1 When they / theire cares / 2 they / agayns his wyll had doone / 3 Oon Gedeon / 4 theire / has / 5 trewth were / 6 has aungell / 7 Lyke to a / hide / 8 is makere / 9 array / ryght / 10 hede / 11 then / fyght / 12 godes folk / defend / — **284.** 1 that / 2 besye in a prevey / 3 clip / shepe / thresh / 4 cloth / 5 fol. 129. b. / aungell that come / beforne / 6 brodworde broght as / did bede / 7 He / wele it / be scorne / 8 therfor / full *missing* / 9 thoght / shuld assay / 10 sum / 11 Whethir it were / 12 that god this sond / hym *missing* /— **285.** 1 flese / before / fete / 2 the erth / nyght let it / 3 If that this flese he sayd be wete / 4 morow / morne / the / 5 Then wolle / trowe / hertly hete / 6 this / almygthy / 7 morne / dry / strete / 8 the / wete that / 9 Then to the / 10 even late / 11 At morn / 12 wete.

Gideon gathered together 9,000 men. God commanded him to take them to the river and make them drink.

286 Gedion þen trowed *with* trew ente*nt*
þat þies tokyns was trew *and* ryȝt.
he told þe folke godd*es* co*m*mawndme*nt*
how he suld þem dyffend *in* fyȝt.
he samed sone by on assent
IX m*ilia* to beyre armys bryȝt.
And god hy*m* wysched, or eu*er* he went,
forto a say þem in his syȝt.
he sayd, »wende to the flome
with all þi folke in fere
And make þem all *and* sum
to drynke of þat wat*er* clere.»

Those who drank out of their hands would harm their foes, but those who lapped up the water like beasts must remain at home. 300 men only drank out of their hands.

287 »All þoo þat on þ*er* fette vp stand*es*
and fenys not for scheld ne spere
Bot take*s* þe wat*ur* vp *with* þ*er* hand*es*
to drynke, þo sall do enmys dere.
And þo þat lyg*es* low on the sand*es*
to drynke os a mule or a mere
ledde þem no ferther to oþ*er* land*es*;
þei ar not worth to w*end* *in* were.»
Wh*en* þei com to þe flude,
ylkon heldyd down his hede.
Of þo þat euy*n* vp stude
ware bot thre hunderth leued.

With these 300 men he overcame the Midianites and slew Oreb and Zeab, Zebah and Zalmunna.

288 When gedion saw þat y[t] was so,
his hert be gan to hou*er* *and* hone:
he wyst pa[n]yms wer mony moe,
for of his folke wer left bot fone.
Bot **g**od bad he suld boldly go
and mell *with* þem both morn *and* none.
»ffor sone», he sayd, »þou sall þem slo»,
and als he demed, so was yt done.
Oreb *and* ȝebe þei two
þe hethyn folke con lede;
ȝebee *and* salmana
þo IIII dyed at þat dede.

S 288. 1 ys *instead of* yt / 9 þ *cancelled before* ȝebe.

L 286. 1 Gedeon then / 2 that thes tokens were / ryght / 3 He / the / godes comaundment / 4 shuld theym defend / fyght / 5 Ca. vii. *in left margin* / He gedered / oon / 6 nyen thovsand / bere armes bryght / 7 wyshed / 8 assay theym / syght / 9 He / wend vnto / fflume / 10 thy / infere / 11 made theym / 12 the wat*er* /— **287.** 1 tho that / their fete vpstandes / 2 feyns noght / shelde / 3 the wat*er* / theire / 4 drynk tho shal doo the enmys / 5 thoo that lygges / 6 drynk as / 7 Lede theym noo far / othre / 8 they / 9 they come / the floode / 10 ychoon helded / heved / 11 theym that vpstoode / 12 were / hunderyth leved /— **288.** 1 Gedeon / that it / 2 his *written twice* / began / houere / hove / 3 He / paynyms / many moo / 4 folk / foone / / 5 shuld / goo / 6 theym bot morne / noone / 7 you / theym sloo / 8 as / it doone / 9 they twoo / 10 the hathen / gun / Salmana / 12 the foure deid at theire.

Gideon ruled the Israelites for 40 years. He had sixty sons of whom Abimeleck, the eldest, killed his brethren.

289 All ware þei dede *and* dyscum*f*eyt,
þe hethyn [folke] fully in fere.
Bot all þis was not done so tytt;
þat batell was full strang to stere.
Gedion to rewle þem had respeyt
in rest *and* pese full XL ȝere.
he leued lyfand *with* owtyn lyte
sexty fayr suns of wemen ſere.
The eldyst, abymalech,
putt his brethyr to pyn;
he wrogh a wofull cheke,
þat slogh fyfty *and* neyne.

God deprived him of Shechem and took vengeance on him by striking off his arms. The Hebrews then departed from God's law and lived in idolatry.

290 Whe*n* he had so his brethyr sloyn,
of sychym was he soueran syre.
Bot god hath vengia*n*ce on hy*m* tane
þat sone he past fro þat empyre:
hys armys was strekyn of *with* a stone;
he se*r*ued to haue no bett*ur* hyre.
Then ware þe Ebrews left alon;
ylkon myȝt do þ*er* awn desyre.
Of god þei had non aw
for gold *and* grett maystry.
þ*er*for þei left his law
and lyued in mawme*n*try.

God punished them, and they repented. Jephthah became their ruler.

291 þei mad þem godd*es* of gold *and* brasse fol. 33 a
and sayd þo same þ*er* seyle had sent.
þen god full gretly greued was
þat þei so wrang a gayns hy*m* went.
Enmys he putt on þem to passe
þat þem slow *and* þ*er* cetes brynt
To tym̃ þei kneled *and* cryd alas
and turned to god w*ith* gud ente*n*t.
Whe*n* þei þ*er* trespasse knew,
god send þem sone socour,
On [G]epte, a ge*n*tyll Jew,
to be þ*er* gouernowre.

S 289. 10 payn *with* -a- *cancelled* /— **290.** 11 Septe.

L 289. 1 were they deid / discomfyt / 2 the hathen folke / 3 this / noght doon / tyte / 4 that / 3 Ca. viii. *in left margin* / Gedeon / theym / there respyte / 6 reste / peace / fourty yere / 7 Ca. ix. *in left margin* / He leved / with outen / 8 fare sonnes / women / 9 eldest abymalec / 10 brethir / pyne / 11 He wroght / woofull chec / 12 that slow / nyne /— **290.** 1 soo / brethre slayne / 2 Sychem / sire / 3 has vengeaunce / taken / 4 that / that empire / 5 His ernes wer stryken oute / stoone / 6 served / have noo better hire / 7 were the / alloone / 8 ychoone myght doo theire / desire / 9 they / noone / 10 grete maistry / 11 Therfore they / 12 lyved / maumentry /— **291.** 1 They made theym godes / bras / 2 tho / theire cele / 3 Then / greved / 4 that they / agayns / 5 Enmes / theym / pas / 6 that theym / slow *omitted* / their cites brent / 7 Ca. x. *in left margin* / To the tyme they / cried allas / 8 goode / 9 they their trispas / 10 sent theym / socoure / 11 Oon Iepte / 12 theire governoure.

292 [G]epte was a knyght in armys clere;
fro bayle, he sayd, he suld þem bryng.
A fayre lady he hade to fere,
and both þei lyuyd to godd*es* louyng.
he had a doyȝt*ur* þat was hy*m* dere
and no mo chyldd*er*, old ne ȝyng.
To hyr be fell, os men may heyre,
full gret myschefe, A m*er*uel thyng.
he send to Cetys *and* town,
[to] all þat [myȝt] armys beyre
And bad þei suld be bown
to wend w*ith* hy*m* in were.

Jephthah had a daughter, an only child. He bade all the fighting men be ready to follow him to war.

293 þen vnto god hert[l]y he hett
and mad a vowe w*ith* all his mayne:
þat yf he myȝt the maystry geytt,
als sone os he com home agayn,
The fyrst qwyke catell þat he mett
of his for godd*es* sake suld be slayn,
In sac*ra*fyce so forto sett.
þ*us* sayd he suld be done c*er*tayn.
To batell þen þei w*ent*
w*ith* owtyn more respyte.
þer enmys sone was schent,
both slayn *and* dyscu*m*feytt.

He made a sacred vow to sacrifice to the Lord the first person he met on his return. His enemies were soon overcome.

294 þen past þei home w*ith* mekyll p*ride*
be cawse þei wan the vyctory.
his doyȝght*ur* herd, is not to hyde,
hyr fad*er* suld come [home] in hy.
Be lyfe scho went, *and* wold not [b]yd,
agayns hy*m* w*ith* gud mynstr*a*lsy.
Wh*en* he hyr [saw], »alas», he cryed,
»my doyȝght*ur* dere, now sall þou dy!»
To his hors fette he fell;
in sadyll he myȝt [not] sytte.
No tong in erth may tell
what kare his hert had hytt.

On his return from victory, he saw his daughter coming out to meet him; in great grief he fell down from his horse.

S 292. 1 Septe / 8 Am*er*uel /— **293.** 1 herthy /— **294.** 5 hyd.

L 292. 1 fol. 130. a. / Iudicu*m written with capital letters in top margin* / Iepte / armes / 2 bale / shuld theym / Ca. xi. *in right margin* / 3 fare / had / 4 they lived in godes lovyng / 5 He hade / doght*er* that / 6 noo moo childre olde / ying / 7 hire befell / as / ma here / 8 grete myscheve and m*er*vell / 9 He sent / Citees / townes / 10 all to men that myght armes bere / 11 they shuld / 12 with hym to wend /— **293.** 1 Then / hertly / 2 made / vove / 3 That if / myght / maistree gett / 4 as / as eu*er* / come agayne / 5 first whyk / that / 6 godes lufe shuld / slayne / 7 sacrifice / 8 this / shuld / bedoone certayne / 9 then they / 10 withouten / 11 Theire Enmys soone were shent / 12 slayne / discomfyte /— **294.** 1 Then passed they / mych pryde / 2 because they / suche victorye / 3 His doghtre hard / noght / 4 hire fadre shuld come home in hye / 5 Belyve she / noght abyde / 6 gud *omitted* / mynstrelcye / 7 hire saw allas / cryde / 8 doght*er* / shall thou dye / 9 fete / 10 myght not sytt / 11 myght / 12 care / hart.

He told his daughter that she must die; but she comforted him in his trouble.

295 So when he myȝt hym selfe stere, fol. 33 b
he toyȝt in hert how he had heyȝt: 3530
To slo þe fyrst þat suld apeyre
and sacrafyce yt in goddes syȝt.
»Alas», he sayd, »my doyȝghtur dere,
for my doyng þi dede is dyȝt.»
Scho prayd hyr fader to mend his chere 3535
and mad hym myrth all þat scho myȝt.
þe more þat scho mad glee
to *com*forth hym *with* all,
þe more sore hert had he,
for he wyst how yt suld fall. 3540

She besought him to keep his vow, saying, «It is better that I should die than that the great host from the battle perish.»

296 »A, doyȝtur», he sayd, »I made a vowe
to god when I to batell wentt:
yf I of panyms myȝt haue prow,
what so com fyrst in my present,
þat suld be slone; þat same ys þou. 3545
alas for my sake now bees þou schent.»
»ffader», scho sayd, »I beseke yow
be trew *and* tornes not your entent.
ffor bettur is þat I dye,
þat may no thyng a vayle, 3550
þen so fayr cumpany
os ȝe broyȝt from batelle.»

She asked only for two weeks' grace in which to bid farewell to her companions; and this was granted to her.

297 »Sen ȝe heyȝt sacrafyce to make
to god þat gouerans gud *and* yll,
leues it not, [fader], for my sake 3555
bot all your forward fast fulfyll.
Bot graunteys me grace two wekes to wake,
to speke with lades lowd *and* styll
And of maydyns leue to take,
and þen do with me what ȝe wyll.» 3560
he gafe hyre leue to gang
with grefe *and* gretyng sore.
All þat scho come amang
ay menyd hyr more *and* more.

S 296. 6 schent *below the line* /— **297.** 2 gy *cancelled before* gud / 3 leys *cancelled before* leues.

L 295. 1 myght / self / 2 thoght / hyght / 3 sloow the first that shuld appere / 4 sacrifices it / godes syght / 5 Allas / doghtre / 6 dooyng this deid / dyght / 7 So prayd hire fadir / amend / 8 made / that she myght / 9 The / that she made gle / 11 The / 12 yt *omitted* /— **296.** 1 Ay doghtre / vow / 2 went / 3 If / paymyms myght have / 4 come first / 5 That shuld / slayn the same is thow / 6 allas / now *omitted* / bes thou shent / 7 ffadre she / besech 8 turn / youre / 9 better / that / dy / 10 that / noo / avayle / 11 Then / faire company / 12 as ye broght fro batayle /— **297.** 1 Sithen ye hyght sacrifice / 2 that gouernes goode / 3 Leves / noght fadre / 4 forwarde / fullfyll / 5 grauntes / twoo wokes / 6 ladys lovd / 7 madyns my leve / 8 then doo / ye / 9 He gave hire leve / 10 greve / 11 that she / 12 mened hire.

298 So went scho furth to mony a frend,
þat for hyre Syghyng sayd alas.
All weped for wo os scho can wend
when þei wyst how þat it was.
And when þe tyme drogh nere þe end
þat hyr [fadeı] assygned has,
Scho went agayn with wordes hend
and proferd hyr with payn to pas.
þerfor hyr father noyȝt leued;
his sword in hand he hent
And swythly swopped of hyr hede
and bad scho suld be brent.

At the fixed time she offered herself up to her father, who beheaded her.

fol. 34 a. 299 grett sorow yt was þis syȝt to se;
all weped þat wyst of hyr wo.
Bot most sorow in hert had he
þat heddyd hyr and had no mo.
Swylke folys suld men [be] fayn to flee
and be abayst or þei vow so.
ff[o]yle [v]ow is bettur to broken be
þen man or woman sak[l]es slo.
Sex ȝere gouernd Gepte Ebrews
and saued þem from all angers yll
of phylysteyns and cananews,
and þen he dyed os was goddes wyll.

It was a grievous sight, and Jephthah regretted his vow. Such vows ought not to be made, or else they should be broken. Jephthah ruled for six years.

300 Next aftur gepte regned abessan,
os clerkes knawn þat con þeron.
grett wrschep in his tym he wan,
and aftur hym regned Achyron.
Ten ȝere and XX aftur þan
gufernd a gud man, hyȝt Abdon.
And sythyn þei hade no mayster man,
þat mad þem fowly to fone:
þei forsoke goddes seruyce
and to Mawmentes þam ment.
þerfor with sere enmys
sone ware þei schamed and schent.

After him Ibzan, Elon, and Abdon judged the Israelites in succession. Trouble came upon the people on account of their wickedness.

S 298. 1 afrend /— **299.** 4 þat he heddyd / 7 ffeyle bow / 11 Both of / — **300.** 5 XX ȝere / 12 ware *above* whar *cancelled*.

L 298. 1 she / many / frende / 2 that / hire syghed and said allas / 3 woo as she gun wende / 4 when that they / that / 5 the / the ende / 6 that hir fadre assigned / 7 She come agayne / hende / 8 profered hire / payne / 9 Therfore hir fadre noght leved / 10 swerd / 11 swyth swapped / hire heved / 12 she shuld /— **299.** 1 Grete / it / this sight / 2 that / hire woo / 4 that heded hire / noo moo / 5 Suche shuld men enforce to fle / 6 avysed / they / soo / 7 ffowle vow / better broken to / 8 then sakles to sloo / 9 fol. 130 b. / Ca. xii. *in left margin* / yere gouerned Iepte / / 10 saved theym fro / 11 Both of Philisteyns / Cananews / 12 then / deid as / godes / — **300.** 1 aftir Iepte reigned Abethsan /2 as / knawes that can theron / 3 Grete worship / tyme / 4 after / reigned Ailaon / 5 yere / twenty yere after then / 6 gouernyd / goode / hight / 7 sithen they had noo maister / 8 that made theym / fon / 9 They / godes seruice / 10 mavmentes theym / 11 Therfore / Enmys / 12 were they shamed / shent.

God took pity on them and chose Manoah to help them. This man had a wife who sorrowed because she was barren. They prayed to God for a child.

301 To god þei fast con call *and* crye
and dyd grett penance for þer plyght.
And he ordand þen helpe [in] hye.
An nobyll man, þat Many hyȝt,
was haldyn chefe of chewalry
and had to wyfe a worth[y] wyȝt.
Bot chylder bare scho non hym by;
þerfor scho drowped day *and* nyȝt.
Grett mornyng made þat myld
and prayd in town *and* feld
þat god suld send sum chyld
þat myȝt þer welthes weld.

Through an angel, God promised her a son, who was to rule the people.

302 So ose scho prayd with hert *and* hend,
hyr selfe alone in her selere,
An Angell saw scho by hyr lend
in forme of man with face full clere.
»woman», he sayd, »þi mornyng mend;
god takes entent to þi prayer.
A sone he sall to þe send,
þat sall gouerne þo folke in fere.
Of myȝt sall none be more
on mold amang man kynd.
I warne þe þus be fore,
as þou sall forther fynd.»

He was not to cut his hair, in which his strength lay; neither must he have strong drink. At this news Manoah's wife rejoiced.

303 »The Ebrews þat in bayle ar brast fol. 34 b
sall he dyffend with forse in fyȝt.
Cutt not hys hare [of] for no hast,
for þer in sall be most his myȝt.
Ne lycour loke he non tast
to make hym dronkyn day or nyȝt,
ffor þer with may his wyttes be wast
to werke wrang, all yf he be wyȝt.»
When he had told þis tale,
no ferther of hym scho fand.
Scho toyȝt hyr hert was hale
for ioy of þis tythand.

S 301. 3 *and* / 5 chyl *cancelled after* of / 12 Sampson *in right margin* / — **303.** 8 hebe.

L 301. 1 gode they did fast call / cry / 2 did grete penance / theire / 3 theym help in hy / 4 an noble / that manne hight / 5 halden / Chivalry / 6 worthy wyght / 7 childre had she noone / 8 therfore she morned / nyght / 9 Grete sorow / that mylde / 10 towne / felde / 11 That / shuld / chylde / 12 that myght theire / welde /— **302.** 1 as she / 2 hire self alloone / hire solere / 3 aungell / she / hire / 5 Woman / thy / amend / 6 gode / thy prayere / 7 sonne / shal vnto the / 8 that shall / the / infere / 9 myght shal noone / 10 man kynde / 11 the thus before / 12 thou after shal fynd / — **303.** 1 that / bale are braste / 2 shal / defend / force / fyght / 3 his here of for noon haste / 4 therin shal / myght / 5 licoure luke that he noon taste / 6 dronken / ne nyght / 7 therwith / witt / waste / 8 wyrk / thogh / wyght / 9 this / 10 noo fare / she / 11 Hire thoght hire / hole / 12 ioye / this tithand.

304 vnto hyr lord sone can scho tell
of all this case, os scho can kayre:
how scho was werned *with* goddes angell
to beyr a chyld to be *þer* ayre,
And how he suld be ferse *and* fell
and his forse in his fax suld fayre.
The gud man sayd, »no more þou mell;
of swylke dede*s* I am i*n* dyspayre.«
he trowde yt bot a trayn,
and to hy*m* self he sayd,
»Sum foyle to make hyr fayn
hath broyȝt hyr i*n* þis brayde.«

She told the angel's tale to her husband, who did not believe it.

305 þan all þof scho be fore was glade
throgh bodword of þe angell bryȝt,
Sone was scho sore *and* sume dele rade
by cause hyr lord sett yt so lyȝt.
Scho pr*a*yd to god w*ith* semland sade
to send sume tokyn to his syȝt
So þat he myȝt haue, als scho hade,
gud hertyng from heuy*n* on hyȝt.
hym selfe made sac*ra*fyce
and pr*a*yd god of his gr*a*ce
fforto wytt on what wyse
þis pr*o*cess com in place.

She entreated God to send a sign to convince her husband of the truth. The husband himself made a sacrifice and prayed to know how God's promise should be fulfilled.

306 Sone aft*ur* þis þen fell yt so,
as þei pr*a*yd both w*ith* stabyll steuyn,
God send his angell to þem two,
and þat same note he can þem neuyn.
Manne þen toke tent þ*er*to
and loued þe lord of lyȝt *and* leuyn.
ffor whe*n* þe angell ferd þem fro,
þei saw how he was hent to heuyn.
The wyfe sone wex w*ith* chyld
and bare w*ith* owtyn blame
A barne to be þ*er* byld.
Sampson þei cald his name.

They both entreated the Lord, and the woman bore a blameless child and called his name Samson.

S 305. 4 u *in* cause *above the line* / 12 *processer.*

L 304. 1 Vnto hire lorde / gun she / 2 as she gun care / 3 How she / warned / godes aungell / 4 bere / child / theire heire / 5 how *omitted* / shuld / fers / 6 force / shuld fare / 7 goode / said nomor yov / 8 suche / dispare / 9 He trowed it / trayne / 10 sayde / 11 foole / hir fayne / 12 has broght hire / this /— **305.** 1 Then thogh she before / 2 thurgh / the aungell bright / 3 Sithen was she sory / and sume dele rade *omitted* / 4 because hire / it / lyght 5 She / semblaunt sad / 6 sum tokenyng / syght / 7 that / myght / as she had / 8 goode / fro god / hyght / 9 Hym self / sacrifice / 11 Sampson Natus est *in left margin* / witt / 12 this processe come /— **306.** 1 after this befell it soo / 2 they both prayd / mylde steven / 3 sent / aungell / theym twoo / 4 that / gun theym neven / 5 then / therto / 6 loved the lorde / light / leven / 7 the aungell went theym froo / 8 they / heven / 9 wax / childe / 10 withouten / 11 their belde / 12 they called.

The Philistines had the upper hand in the land, but no one was so mighty as Samson, and as long as he believed in God's law and commandments, the Philistines felt his great strength.

307 Phylysteyns had þen maystry,
And Ebrews was *with* owty*n* beld.
This chyld was tent full tend*er*ly;
all wold his hele þat hy*m* be held.
To batell bede he his body,
as sone ose hee myȝt wepyns weld.
On mold was no man so myȝty.
þe phylystyens his felnes feld
Ay whyls he leued godd*es* law
and keped his co*m*mawndme*n*t.
All men of hy*m* had aw
in werld, wher eu*er* he wentt.

Samson's mother allowed his hair to grow long. He grew to love the way of life of the Philistines and associated with them. One day he went down to Timnath.

308 his mod*er* herd þe angell say
how þat hys hore suld not be schorne.
þ*er*for scho dyde yt wex all way;
so wex his myȝt mydday *and* morne.
Phylesteyns oft can he flay
þat was full fers *and* fell be forne,
Tyll ay at the last he lufed þ*er* lay
and went *with* þem þat wold hy*m* scorne
To þ*er* Cyte þat heyȝt
tanna *with* thourys clene.
þor saw he sone a syȝt,
þat sythyn turned hy*m* to tene.

He met with a fair woman and desired her for his wife; he asked her kindred for her, at which the Philistines were very glad.

309 Euyn os he enturd þat Cete,
a semly mady*n* sone he mett,
Of fygur fayre *and* face full free;
with full grett gladschepe scho hy*m* grett.
hym toyȝt her semly on to se;
hys hert at all on hyr was sett,
And to hyr kynradyn carped he
þat hyr to wed wold he not lett.
þen was the phylesteyns fayn
to gare hy*m* luf [þer lay],
ffor þei trowde by sum trayn
sum tyme hy*m* to be tray.

S 308. 7 helufed / 10 -r *cancelled after* tanna /— **309.** 10 þat lady *instead of* þer lay.

L 307. 1 Phylistyens / then maistry / 2 and / were *with*outen belde / 3 childe / tented / tendirly / 4 wald / heale that / behelde / 5 fol. 131 a. / Iudicum *in upper margin* / batells bed / 6 as he myght wepens welde / 7 mold was man noone / myghty / 8 the Philistyens / felde / 9 whilst / he *above the line* / lufed godes / 10 co*m*aundement / 12 warld where / went /— **308.** 1 His modre / the aungell / 2 that his here shuld / shorne / 3 Therfore she did it wax allway / 4 wax his myght / 5 Philistiens / gun / 6 that were / beforne / 7 To at the last / theire law / 8 theym that / 9 theire Citee that Thannatha hight / 10 tanna *omitted* / toures / Ca. xiii. *in right margin* / 11 There / syght / 12 that sithen / /— **309.** 1 Euyn *omitted* / As / entred that Cite / 2 semely maden / 3 figur faire of face / fre / 4 grete gladship she / 5 Hym thoght hire / see / 6 his hert all holl / hir / 7 hire kyndred / 8 that hire / wold he / 9 Then were Philistiens fayne / 10 make / lufe theire law / 11 they trowed / trayne / 12 betray.

Samson's relations did not at first know of his choice. When his mother knew, she grieved about it; Samson returned to his friends in Zorah.

310 he playd hy*m* þor lang os hy*m* lyst
wi*th* mekyll myrth be twen þem twa.
his kynrede of þis werke noyȝt wyst,
for þat Cety was farre þem fro.
his moyd*er* morned, fro scho hy*m* myst.
þen toke he his leue in Tanna
And turned agayn vnto his trest,
his frend*es* þat soiornde in Sarra.
he told þem tales to þe end
of his ded*es* day *and* nyȝt
And of þat maydyn hende,
how [he] hys hert hade heyȝt.

His father was unwilling for him to marry a daughter of the Philistines.

311 his moyd*er* mornyd *and* mony moe
qwe*n* þei herd tell of þis tythyng.
Bot no of þem durst say hy*m* so
to wreth hym, all yf he was [k]yng.
his fad*er* sayd be twen þem two,
»sun, yt is no semly thyng
wi*th* philysteyns vs forto go;
þei hatte vs Ebrews, old *and* ȝynge.
fol. 35 b And moyses in his law
amonyst, als vs menys,
þat we suld eue*r* vs wi*th*draw
fro fals phylysteyns.»

He said that the Israelites should avoid the Philistines, who were idolaters. But Samson would not be turned from his purpose.

312 »vs ow to lufe god all*migh*ty,
as our forme faders dyd be forne.
Phylesteyns mak*es* þem mawme*n*try
and honers þem both euy*n* *and* morn.
þe*r*for, dere sone, sett not þe*r*by.
we haue þe sayued sen þou was borne;
Sayue now þi selfe fro soce*r*ry,
els may þou lyȝtly be for lorne.»
his moyd*er* weped all way
and sayd he suld be schent.
Bot all þat þei cowde say
myȝt not turne his entent.

S 310. 12 hert to hyre hade / — **311.** 4 ȝyng.

L 310. 1 He / there as / as / 2 mych / betwene theym twoo / 3 His kyndred / this werk noght / 4 that Cite / far theym fro / 5 His / modre *above the line* / for she / 6 then / leve / Tannatha / 7 tryst / 8 that soiourned / Saraa / 9 He / theym / the ende / 10 nyght / 11 that madyn / 12 how he his hert had hyght / — **311.** 1 His modre morned / many moo / 2 when they / this tithyng / 3 noon of theym / hym *omitted* / soo / 4 wrath / if / were kyng / 5 fadir / betwene theym twoo / 6 sonne it / noght semely / 7 With Philistiens / goo / 8 thay hate / olde / ying / 10 warned vs as vs menes / 11 That / shuld euer vs draw / 12 Philistiens / — **312.** 1 Us allmyghty / 2 oure fourme fadirs did beforn / 3 Philistiens / þem *omitted* / mavmentry / 4 honours / þem *omitted* / even / 5 Therfor / sonne set noght therby / 6 have the saved sithen thou / born / 7 Save / thy self / Socery / 8 elles / thou lightly / forlorn / 9 His modre / 10 shuld / shent / 11 that they couth / 12 myght noght turn.

His parents finally gave their consent, and they all went down to Timnath.

313 And when þei saw yt myȝt [not] spede
more forto lerne hym lowd ne styll,
Sum dele for luf, sum dele for drede,
þei grawntt hym to haue his wyll.
Sone afturward all same þei ȝode
þis foly forward to fulfyll,
And with fayr wordes þo folke to fede,
throw spech yf þei myȝt yt spyll.
So soyȝt þei fro Sarra
by wuddes *and* wastes wyld
And toke þe way to Tanna
with Sampson, þer semly chyld.

On the way Samson killed a lion and hid it in a ditch.

314 þen of sum torfurs men may tell,
qwylke in þat tyme to hym be tyde.
ffor os þei wentt, swylke ferles fell,
his herdenes may not be hyde.
Be hynd his frendes os he con dwell,
vnder a wud syde what so he dyde,
A lyon come hym fort[o] qwell,
for he saw none with hym abyde.
And the lyon þer he slogh
euyn his twa handes be twen
And tyll a dyke hym drogh,
for he suld not be sene.

None of his friends knew of this deed. When the whole company arrived, a feast was given to Manoah and his wife.

315 when he had doyn þis doyghty dede,
þat non wyst of bot only hee,
Aftur his frendes full fast he ȝede,
os þei raked to þat rych Cete.
þor fand þei folke full fayre to fede,
of phylysteyns full grett plente.
Bot þat þei hethyn lyue can lede,
more plesand pepyll myȝt non be.
To Manne *and* his fere
full grett myrth can þei make
And gaf þem drewres dere
for Sampson þer sun sake.

S 314. 4 herde nes.

L 313. 1 they / it myght not / 2 lere / lovd / 3 Sumdele / lufe / sum lele / 4 hey *gra*unted / 5 aftirward / sam the yede / 6 this foly made forto fulfyll / 7 fairnes the folke / 8 thurgh spekyng if they myght it / 9 soght they / Saraa / 10 wodes / wylde / 11 the / Tannatha / 12 þer *omitted* / semely childe /— **314.** 1 Then / torfers may men / 2 which / that / betyd / 3 as they went suche / 4 hardenes / behyd / 5 as / gun / 6 vndre / wod side / did / 7 forto quell / 8 noon / 9 And *omitted* / That lion there / sloghe/ 10 even / twoo / betwene / hic vis Sampsonis destruxit ora leonis *in right margin* / 11 to / droghe / 12 shuld noght /— **315.** 1 fol. 131 b. / When / doone this doghty / 2 that noon / oonly he / 3 After / yede / 4 as they hied to the faire Cite / 5 There / they / full *omitted* / faire / to *omitted* / fed / 6 Philistiens / grete / 7 that they hathen live led / 8 plesaunt people myght noone / 9 and to his / 10 grete / gun they / 11 gave theym gyftes sere / 12 theire sonne.

fol. 36 a316 To loke his lufe he wold nott lett
for no thyng þat myȝt be tyde.
Be for hyr frend*es* furth was scho sett
with mynstralcy *and* mekyll pryde.
Qwe*n* Manne *and* þat meneȝe mett
and cause of þ*er* co*m*yng dyscryde,
A c*er*tan seson sone was sett
and sewrty layd for ayd*er* syde
þat Sa*m*pson suld hyre wede
be swylke a c*er*tayn day.
his frend*es* was sore adrede,
bot þei durst not say nay.

A certain time was fixed, when Samson was to marry the fair maiden.

317 When all was sett so in c*er*tayn,
þei soiournd þor bot schort seson.
ffull fast þei hyed þem home agayn
to sarra, a Cety of renown.
Sa*m*pson was of þis fayre full fayn;
to batell fast he made hy*m* bown.
he kyd þat he was mekyll of mayn;
phylesteyns oft fast dang he down.
þai þat ware all abufe
and leued ay so to last,
he putt þem to repr*o*ue
in all place wher he past.

Samson and his friends returned to Zorah. He prepared himself for war and often overcame the Philistines.

318 All Ebrews folke he can dyffend
and made fre þat be fore was thrall.
And whe*n* þe tym come nere þe ende
þat was ordand ama*n*g þem all,
hys kynradyn holl þat he kend
bade he to be at his brydall.
And os þei ydd*er*ward can wend,
A farly fare ȝett can fall:
þat place p*er*sayued he
wher he þe lyon slogh,
And the bayns forto se
to the dyke he hy*m* drogh.

When the time for the wedding came, Samson asked his kindred to be present. On their journey they passed the carcase of the lion, which Samson turned aside to see.

S 318. 12 to *above* owt of *cancelled.*

L 316. 1 not / 2 noo tithyng that myght betyde / 3 Before his / she / 4 mynstrelcy / mych 5 When manne / that menye / 6 theire / discryde / 7 certayne season / sone *omitted* / 8 surtee sayd / aythre / 9 That / shuld hir wed / 10 by suche / 11 His / were full adred / 12 they / noght /— **317.** 1 certayne / 2 they soiorned there / shorte seasowne / 3 they hide theym / agayne / 4 Saraa Cite / Renowne / 5 this faire / fayne / 6 batells / bowne / 7 He / that / mych / mayne / 8 Philistiens ofte / fast *omitted* / downe / 9 They that were / above / 10 leved / 11 He put theym / reprove / 12 where /— **318.** 1 he gun defend / 2 free that before / 3 the / the end / 4 that ordand was / theym / 5 His kyndred ychoon all that / 6 bad / 7 And *omitted* / As they thethirward gun / 8 a / faire yitt gun befall / 9 That / perceyved / 10 where / the lion / 11 boones / 12 that dyke.

There were bees in its mouth, and he found a honey-comb in its carcase. He took it out and ate some and gave honey also to his parents and friends.

319 Euyn to þat corse hys cowrse he kest,
and sone he fand the bones dry.
Bees in þe mowth had mad þ*er* nest;
a hony came he fand in hy.
he brake yt owt, so toyȝt hy*m* best.
and menyd to make some bourd þ*er* by.
Then raked he furth w*ith*owtyn rest
tyll he come to his cu*m*pany.
w*ith* the fayrest hony he fede
his fad*er* *and* moyd*er* also,
And sythyn he brake *and* beyd
to oþ*er* frend*es* moo.

The whole company was received with great honour; Samson married the fair woman.

320 And sum dele held he styll in store
forto p*ar*t w*ith* his p*ar*amowre,
ffor of all wemen þat þen [wore] fol. 36 b
of fayrnes myȝt scho beyre þe floure.
And hastely whe*n* þei come þore,
þei ware resayued w*ith* grett honow*ur*.
And [to] fulfyll forward be fore,
assygned þei c*er*tan day *and* howre.
Sa*m*pson wede þat free
w*ith* both þ*er* frend*es* assent
w*ith* all sole*m*pnite
and myrth þat myȝt be ment.

There was a great feast. All feared Samson on account of his great strength. The Philistines therefore brought thirty companions to be with him.

321 þor was solace of se*r*uyce sere;
þei had sene non swylke bot þe same.
Both beyrys *and* bullys *and* baran dere,
þ*er* wanted none, wyld ne tame.
Of t*ur*name*n*t*es* þ*er* men myȝt lere;
who wold not hurle, hald hy*m* at hame.
Bot to Sa*m*pson durst non apeyre:
All dowt his hand þat herd his name.
Be cawse he was so strang,
the phylysteyns for þi
Ordand þem amang
of trefty men thrytty,

S 320. 3 was borne /— **321.** 1 o*ser* *cancelled before* of.

L 319. 1 Even / that place his course / 2 boones / 3 the movth / made theire / 4 an / cam / 5 He / it oute / thoght / 6 mened / sum bourd therby / 7 hied / withouten / 8 company / 9 With / fairest / fed / 10 fadre / modre / alsoo / 11 sithen / bed / 12 othre /— **320.** 1 sumdele / 2 parte to his *par*amoure / 3 wommen that then were / 4 fairnes myght she bere the / 5 they / there / 6 they were receyved / grete honoure / 7 forto fullfyll forwardes before / 8 assigned they *cer*tayn / houre / 9 weded that / 10 by both theire / 11 With / solennytee / 12 that myght /— **321.** 1 There / se*r*uice / 2 they / seen noon such / that same / 3 beres / bulles and othre dere / 4 there / navthre / 5 ther myght men / 6 stire held / home / 7 noon appere / 8 all dovted / that / 9 Because / 10 Philistiens / forthy / 11 Ordan theym / 12 thryfty / thirty.

Samson devised a plan to try their wit, and put forth a riddle about the lion and the honey comb.

322 Qwylke þei well wyst was wyse *and* wyȝt
and stalworthest in stede *and* stall,
fforto be nere hym day *and* nyȝt
for ferd of fare þat myȝt be fall.
And when Sampson persayued þat syȝt
and all þer gawdes, grett *and* small,
A reson he deuysyd *and* dyȝt
forto asay þer wyttes with all.
Of the lyon þat he slogh
and of þe came with hony
he made game gud enoght
forto abavst þem by.

He promised them thirty garments of silk if they could solve the riddle. If they failed, then they were to give him the same.

323 »sers», he sayd, »I sall yow tell
a taylle þat sall our bowrdyng be,
And yf ȝe thrytty yow amell
what [it] suld sygnyfye can see,
Thrytty cloghes of sylke to sell
sall I gyfe ȝow in gud degre,
And yf ȝe fayle how yt be fell,
so mony sall ȝe gyf to me.
Avyse yow in your mode;
the question þis es:
Owt of the herd come fode,
and of the swalowand swettenes.»

The thirty men asked for seven days in which to think the matter over. This was granted, but they found the riddle very difficult.

324 To þem þis reson he arayd
and bad þei suld þat case dyscrye.
Of þe purpas þei ware not payd,
bot his wyll durst þei not denye.
Of VII days respeyt þei hym prayd,
to be a vysed þerfor fully.
»I grawntt your askyng, sers,» he sayd,
and with þo wordes þei went [in hy].
fol. 37 a þei dyde þer besenes
þis ylke lesson to lere.
Bot what þe menyng was
cowd þei not all cum nere.

S 323. 8 mony *above* many *cancelled* / to *above the line* / 10 þis þis *with the second* þis *cancelled* /— **324.** 8 a way.

L 322. 1 Which they wele wyst were wyght / 2 stalworth / 3 nyght / 4 that myght befall / 5 perceyved that syght / 6 their gavdes both grete / 7 deuysed / dyght / 8 assay theire / 9 fol. 132. a / Iudicum *in upper margin* / that / 10 the / 11 He / gam goode enugh / 12 for to / theym /— **323.** 1 Sirys / shal you / a tale / 2 that shal oure bourdyng / 3 if ye thirte with outen fale / yow amell *omitted* / 4 it shuld signyfie gun se / 5 Thirty clothes / 6 shal / gyve you / goode / 7 if ye say not as it befell / 8 many shal ye gyve / to *omitted* / 9 you / youre moode / 10 this is / 11 Oute / hard / foode / 12 swaloyng swetnes /— **324.** 1 theym this / 2 they / this / dyscry / 3 this purpose they were / 4 bot this they durst not deny / 5 seven / respit they / 6 avysed therfore / 7 graunt / seris / 8 tho / they / in hy / 9 They did theire besynes / 10 this ych leson / 11 the / is / 12 they can / come.

They tried for four or five days in vain, when one of them suggested that they should make Samson's wife find out the solution for them.

325 when þei had soyȝt IIII days or V
by consell of þer clergy cle[n]e
And oft reherssed þis lesson ryue,
þei cowde not say what yt suld mene.
þen ware þei stede to strutt *and* stryue.
so sayd on þat had mekyll sene,
»we wytt yt neuer bot yf his wyfe
may geytt yt told þem two be twen.
Sen scho ys of our kyn,
assay hyr sone we sall.
So may we wrschep wyn.»
to þis assentt þei all.

Two of the wise men went to her, and both promised her help and threatened her. She said she would try to tempt her husband.

326 Two wysest of þem to hyre wentt
and sayd, »syster, þi folke to sayue
wytt of þi maystur what it ment,
þe mater þat he wold vs craue.
ffor and þou tell vs his entent,
grett helpyng of vs sall þou haue.
And yf þou suffer vs to be schent,
þe ware os gud be grathed in graue.
Sore vengance sall we take
on þe *and* all þin.»
Scho sayd, »sers, for yowr sake
I sall assay hym syne.»

She kissed and caressed Samson and asked him the meaning of the riddle.

327 Sone afturward, when scho myȝt wyn
alon with hyr lorde to dele,
Scho kyssed hym kyndly cheke *and* chyn
and lett ose hyr luf was full lele.
»A ser», scho sayd, »ȝe sall haue syne,
your hert fro me yf ȝe oght hele.
I wyll forsake both kyth *and* kyn
and wend with yow in wo *and* wele;
My hert ware *com*forth clene,
wole ȝe kyndly me kene
What þat mater may meyne
ȝe told to the thryty mene.»

S 325. 2 clere / — **327.** 12 thryrty.

L 325. 1 When they / soght foure / fyve / 2 counsell / theire / clene / 3 reherced this / ryve / 4 they couth noght / it shuld / 5 Then were they sted / strutt and *omitted* / stryve / 6 oon that mych had / 7 We wit it / if / wyve / 8 get it / theym twoo betwene / 9 Sethen she is / oure / 10 hir / 11 worship / 12 this assent they / — **326.** 1 Twoo of the wysest men to hire went / 2 suster thy selve / save / 3 Wyt / thy maister / 4 the / that / crave / 5 ye / 6 grete / shal ye have / 7 if ye suffre / shent / 8 ye war as goode be in youre grave / 9 vengeaunce / 10 of the and also on / thyne / 11 She / seris / youre / 12 shall / — **327.** 1 aftirward / she myght / 2 alon *omitted* / hir / forto / 3 She / kyndly *omitted* / 4 let as hir lufe were / 5 she / ye shal / syn / 6 youre / if ye / fele / 8 you / wo and *omitted* / 9 Myn / had comforth / 10 wold ye me kyndly ken / 11 that / mene / 12 ye / vnto / thirty men.

328 »gud leue,» he sayd, »lett be þi fayre
to tyme þat þei haue done þer dede.
þat mater wyll I not declare
forto be neuynd for nokyns nede.»
þen sone scho sobed *and* syghyd sare
and feyned hyr febyll by falshede.
Scho rent hyr cloghes and ruged hyr hare,
os scho wold dye *with* owtyn drede.
When Sampson con hyre see
so mowrne *and* make swylke chere,
he sayd, »lemman, lett be;
þe lesson sall þou lere.»

At first he refused to tell her, but when she began to weep and be sorrowful, he promised to tell her the secret.

329 he lered hyr fyrst of þis lyon,
how þat he slogh hym *with* his hand,
And after when þat þei come to town
by the same way os he can wend,
how he in a dyke þer down
fand the bones clene þat he kend,
And how bees þen had made þem bown
in the lyon mowth to loge *and* lend.
»The mowth», he sayd,» þat ette,
and the bownes war hard *and* drye,
And the hony was swett;
this case þei suld dyscrye.»

Samson told her the whole solution of the riddle.

330 »Bot wyfe», he sayd, »þis þat is wroyȝt
lett no man wytt be way ne strette.»
»A ser», scho sayd, »þat wold [I not],
for all þis werld heyre I yow hette.»
Bot in all hast þat euer scho myȝt
scho made hyre *with* þo men to mette.
A blyth bodword to þem scho broyȝt
of all þis fare [fro] hed to fette.
Scho sayd, »þis [is] certayn
and soth, so sall ȝe say.»
þen ware þei ferly fayn
and bold to byde þat day.

He bade her keep the secret, but she defied him and disclosed the secret to the men.

S 328. 1 fader *cancelled before* fayre /— **329.** 5 And how / 8 lyon *above the line* / 12 dr *cancelled after* suld /— **330** 3 not I / 8 to / 10 see *cancelled before* say.

L 328. 1 Goode lefe / let / thy fare / 2 that they have doon their / 3 That / wold / noght / 4 to be neved / noo kyns / 5 Then / she gret / syghed sore / 6 / 6 hire feble / falsede / 7 She / hir clothes / hir here / 8 as she shuld / withouten / 9 gun hir se / 10 morne / suche / 11 He said leman let / 12 the / shall thou /— **329.** 1 He / hire fast / the / 2 that / hend / 3 aftir / þat *omitted* / he come to the towne / 4 that same / os *omitted* / gun he / 5 And how ther downe / 6 boones / that / 7 þen *omitted* / theym bowne / 8 movth / luge / 9 movth / that ete / 10 boones were / dry / 11 swete / 12 cause they shuld dyscry /— **330.** 1 this that / wroght / 2 let noo / wyt / strete / 3 Ay / she / that / I noght / 4 this world here / you hete / 5 fol. 132. b. / haste that / she myght / 6 she / hire / tho / mete / 7 And blyth / she to theym broght / 8 this faire fro hed to fete / 9 She / this is / 10 sothe / shal ye / 11 Then were they / 12 bolde / abyde theire.

Six days passed, and on the seventh day the wise men told Samson the solution of the riddle. Samson realised that this was his wife's doing.

331 Be þis was VI days comyn *and* gone,
þe seuynt day was þ*er* seson sett.
To Sa*m*pson wentt þei ylkon
and sayd, »we come to do our dett.
what ys mor*e* hard þen is the bone
ama*n*g all fude þat furth is fett,
And swett*ur* thyng þen hony is none
in mowth, wh*en* yt is melled *and* mett.»
when Sa*m*pson herd þem say
so euyn vnto his merke,
he wyst full well allway
his wyfe had wroyȝt þat werke.

After this experience Samson became bitter against women.

332 And þen p*er*saued he p*rop*erly
qwy scho so stretly can hy*m* enquere
The question forto com by,
hyr lynage for scho wold yt lere.
þen carped he to þat cu*m*pany
and told be fore þo folke in fere,
»I knaw all yo*ur* *con*fyderacy,
And I answer in þis manere:
what may bett*ur* begyle
A lele man, lowd or styll,
þen weked woman wyle,
wher yt is turned vnto yll.»

Samson showed up the falsehood of the thirty men and then went to Askalone.

333 he wyst well how thrytty wore
ordand for ȝape men hy*m* to ȝeme.
ffor þi, all [i]f his myȝt was more,
þat [tyme] wold he not be breme.
þer falshed schewed he þem be fore
þat þe woman wysched þem well to deme.
þan langer hy*m* lyst not soiorne þore:
he wyst þei ware [fayn] hy*m* to fleme.
he toke his men ylkon,
all þat myȝt armes beyre,
And went to Askalone,
A Cety walled fore were.

fol. 38 a.

S 331. 2 sett *above the line* / 8 mett *below the line* /— **333.** 3 of / 6 well to deme *below the line*.

L 331. 1 this were sex / comen / goon / 2 the sevent / theire season / 3 then went they euerychoon / 4 doo oure / 5 What is / then / a boon / 6 foode that forth / 7 swetter / then / noon / 8 movth / it / is *omitted* / meld / 9 When / theym / 10 even / marke / 11 He / wele / 12 wroght that warke /— **332.** 1 then perceyved / 2 why she / strangly gun / hym *omitted* / 3 come / 4 hire linage / she / it / 5 Then / that company / 6 before the / 7 youre confideracy / 8 and / I *omitted* / answere / this / 9 What / better / 10 a / loud and / 11 Than wyked womans / 12 where it / to / /— **333.** 1 He / wele / how that thirty / 2 yepe / yeme /3 fforthy if his myght were / 4 that tyme he wold noght be to breme / 5 Their falsed shewd / theym before / 6 that the / wysshed theym wele / 7 Then lenger / noght soiourne thore / 8 they were fayn / 9 He / ychoon / 10 that armes myght bere / 11 Askalon / 12 a Cite / for.

334 The Cety fell, so has he fun,
to Ebrews, his helders of old,
And þen in bondeyg ware þei bown.
swylke tales to sampson sone þei told:
Phylysteyns had þe gaudes be gun;
sone ware þei feld os fee in fold.
þat Cety sone so he wun
Ebrews to weld yt, as þei wold.
þen fayrd he furth þem fro,
And so his way he wendes
To soiorne in Sarra
with his fader *and* his frendes.

The city, which was held in bondage, was freed by Samson, who afterwards went to live in Zorah with his father and his friends.

335 þer wuned he with þem mony a weke,
for of his fayre þei war full fayn.
Of sersyns syde none he for soke;
who wold hym ware, sone ware þei slayn
Tyll at the last talent hym toke
to Tanna forto turne agayn
hys wyfe, þat he lufyd, forto loke,
for whor he lufed he cowd not layn.
All yf scho fawted be fore,
ȝett wold he frayst hyr ferr.
And so when he come þore,
he fand hyr werkand werre.

But Samson stil loved his wife, and although she had wronged him, hereturned to Timnath.

336 Sampson was for geyttyn þan,
os vnkouth man þat is vnknawn,
And scho wede with an oþer man,
þat vsed hyr euynly os his awn.
þen sampson bytturly can bane
and sayd scho suld be hanged *and* drawn.
And bettur consell none he cane
bot stroye þe sede þat þei haue sawn.
he was so mased *and* moued,
full mony he dang to dede,
And cautels he controuyd
to harme all þer kynred.

Samson found her married to another man, and in his wrath and bitterness he began to kill the kindred of his former wife.

S 334. 1 hath *changed into* has / 4 told *above the line* / — **335.** 2 fayn *above the line.*

L 334. 1 That Cite / has / fonne / 2 of elders olde / 3 then / bondage were they bonne / 4 such / Sampson / they / 5 Philistiens / þe *omitted* / gavdes begonne sone / 6 sone *omitted* / were they / as fee / 7 That Cite / has he wonne / 8 welde it / they / 9 Then fared / theym / 10 And *omitted* / 11 Soiourne / Saraa / 12 fadre /— **335.** 1 There wonned /theym many a woke / 2 faire they were / fayne / 3 Off Sarceyns / he *above the line* / noon forsoke / 4 whoo that / hym *omitted* / werre / were they slayne / 5 To / 6 Thannatha to / agayne / 7 His / that / lufed for to / 8 where / couth / layne / 9 And if she forfet before / 10 yit / here far / 11 And sone when / thore / 12 hir wyrkyng war / — **336.** 1 Ca. xv. *in left margin* / forgetyn then / 2 as vncouth / that / not knawn / 3 she wedded / othre / 4 that / hire evenly as / 5 Then Sampson bitterly gun ban / 6 she shuld / 7 better counsell noon / can / 8 dystroye the sedes that they have / 9 He / meved / 10 that many / ded / 11 contreved / 12 hire kyndred.

And he burnt the Philistines' corn by means of 300 wolves with firebrands attached to their tails.

337 In þat same tym men suld be gyn
þer cornes into þer howse to kest.
he sembyld be a sutell gyn
thre hunderth wulfes from est *and* west,
And fyre brandes þat well wold byrne
full fast vnto þer taylis he fest;
þat made þem rasydly forto ryne
to all was brent; so toyȝt hym best.
Cornes *and* wynes he dystroyd
þat suld susteyn þer lyue.
Of swylke maner he noyed fol. 38 b
phylysteyns for his wyfe.

In revenge the Philistines threatened to destroy the Israelites, unless Samson, who had returned home, was handed over to them, bound a prisoner.

338 yf he was wroth, none myȝt hym wytt;
he went *and* wund wher he was born.
Phylysteyns had full grett dyspytt,
for he had so dystroyd þer corne.
þei sayd þei suld yt qwykly qwytt,
and þerto haue þei othes sworne.
ffull grett ost geydderd þei full tyte
and sayd all Ebrews suld be lorne
On lese þen þei wold send
Sampson þem vntyll,
Bonden both his hende,
to werke with hym þer wyll.

The Israelites, when they heard this, were very sad, and went and told Samson that he was their only help. He let himself be bound by them.

339 When þat þis soynd to þem was send,
þe Ebrews made full mekyll mone.
þei had no fors þem to dyffend;
þerfor þei ware full wyll of wone.
No consell in þat case þei kend,
bot to sampson þei wentt ylkon
And told hym all þer tale to end,
and helpe bot hym how þei had none.
he bad þei suld hym bynd
be lyue, no langer sese,
Both hys handes hym be hynd
so forto make þem pese.

S 337. 4 fers wulfes / - **338.** 2 was born *above the line* /— **339.** 2 mone *above the line* / 6 *this line written above line 8 cancelled* / 9 bryng *cancelled before* bynd.

L 337. 1 that / tyme / shuld begyn / 2 theire / in to their hows kest / 3 He sembled by / sotell gin / 4 hunderyth wolves / foxys *written above* wolves *in another hand* / fro este / 5 fire / that wele / bryn / 6 theire tales / 7 That / theym rasidly / ryn / 8 brynt / thoght / 9 vynes / distroyed / 10 that shuld sustene their lyve / 11 On suche / 12 Philistiens / wyve /— **338.** 1 fol. 133. a. / Iudicum *in upper margin* / If he wer / noon myght / wyte / 2 wonned where / borne / 3 Philistiens / grete dispyte / 4 distroyed their / 5 They / they suld hym swyftly whyte / 6 therto have they / 7 A grete oste gedered they / tite / 8 sayde / shuld / 9 O less then they / 10 theym / 11 Boundon / hend / 12 wyrke / their /— **339.** 1 that this sonde was to theym / 2 the / mych moon / 3 They hade noo force theym / defend / 4 therfor they were / woon / 5 Noo counsell / that / they / 6 Sampson they went ychoon / 7 the tale to the end / 8 help / they hade noon / 9 He / they shuld / 10 belyve and noo lenger cese / 11 his / behynd / 12 theym.

The Israelites brought him to their rulers, the Philistines, who rejoiced at his capture. But Samson feared no enemies.

340 þen ware þei bold when he þem bade:
4070 þei band his hend with cordes new.
Vnto þe lord[es] þei haue hym lede,
and in þat tyme þei toke a trew.
when he with his enmyse was stede,
þei wer full bown his bale to brew.
4075 Bot of þem was [he] not a dred;
he toyȝt þei suld [þat ryot] rew.
So were Ebrews certayn
þat pese suld stably stand,
And phylysteyns was fayn,
4080 for þei had hym in hand.

He heard that they desired to kill him. He then broke his bonds asunder.

341 hys frendes wer ȝett full wyll of rede,
for þei wyst not what wold be tyde.
his enmys bed no bettur b[e]de
þen vmsett hym on ylka syde.
4085 he herd þem deme he suld be dede,
and when þei war most in þer pride,
he stert vp sternly in þat stede.
to breke his bandes he wold not byd,
Sone ware þe[i] sonder ylkon.
4090 þ[ei] myȝt dere hym no dele,
Bot wepyns had he ryȝt none,
and þei war armed well.

With the jawbone of an ass he killed 1000 of the Philistines. Others were fortunate enough to flee from him.

fol. 39 a 342 Non armowrs ne no helpe he hath,
bot [well he] treste in goddes grace.
4095 And als god wold, ryȝt so yt was:
sone had he comforth in þat case.
he fand a cheke bone of an asse
full sodanly in þat same place.
þerwith of pa[n]yms gart he passe
4100 A thowssand lyues in lytyll space;
All þat hym batell bede
ware skomfett sone *and* slayn.
þei ware full fayn þat flede,
and he leued alon.

S 340. 8 yt /— **341.** 3 bode / 9 þer / 10 þat.

L 340. 1 Then were they / theym bad / 2 they / 3 Vnto the lordes they / led / 4 that / thay / 5 When / enmys stoode / 6 the wened / 7 theym / he noght / 8 thoght they shuld that ryot rew / 10 that peace shuld / 11 Philistiens were / 12 they /— **341.** 1 His / yit were / 2 they / betyde / 3 His enmes bad noo better bede / 4 þen *omitted* / they vmsett / ych a / 5 He / theym / shuld / 6 they wer / theire pryde / 7 He stirt / that / 8 abyde / 9 wer they soundre ychoone / 10 they myght / noo / 11 wepens hade / ryght noone / 12 they were / wele /— **342.** 1 Noone armore / noon / has / 2 wele he trusted / godes / 3 as / wald ryght / it / 4 that / 5 He / cheke boon / as / 6 that / same *omitted* / 7 Therwith / paymyns made / pas / 8 a thovsand lyves / litle / 9 that / bed / 10 were scomfet / 11 They were / fayne that fled / 12 and be left alloon.

He gave thanks to God for the victory. After the fight he was seized with a great thirst, and called on God to send him water, as there was none near.

343 he musterd þat he was myghty
amang [þem] þat ware maysters mast.
þen thanked he god full inwardly
þat hy*m* hade helped so in hast.
ffor feghyng was his flesch so drye
þat bown he was to gyfe þe gast.
And wat*ur* myght he no*n* come by;
in byttur bale so was he brast.
þen pr*a*yd he god in hy,
als he at his awn lyst
had send hy*m* vyctorye,
vochsaue to sleke his threyst.

Then God made water to come out of the jawbone of the ass, and Samson quenched his thirst, for which he praised the Lord.

344 god was ay bown his bale to bete
and vnto beld hy*m* forto bryng.
þe Asse bown lay at his fette,
wher w*ith* he can his enmys dyng.
þer*o*f com wat*ur* cold *and* sweytt,
os yt ware of [a] well spryng.
þat slekyd hys threyst *and* slaked his hette.
he thankyd god eu*er* of all thyng:
ffyrst for the lyon
he gafe hy*m* gr*a*ce to slo
And sythyn in þis seson
hath sayued his lyfe also.

The friends of Samson were glad at his return, and he gained great popularity in Zorah.
Afterwards Samson went to Gaza.

345 þen wex he wygh, os he was are,
by wonder werke þat þ*er* was wroyȝt.
vnto his frend*es* fast can he fare,
þat for hy*m* had full mekyll toyȝt.
All þat for hy*m* be fore had kare,
he made þem myrth all þat he moyght,
And all þo þat þ*er* enmys ware,
vnd*er* þer bondowm hath he broyȝt.
whyls he wund in Sarraa,
all folke he fand his frend,
Bot sythyn to gasa
toke hym talent to wend.

S 343. 4 son *cancelled before* in /— **344.** 1 w *cancelled before* god /— **345.** 6 moyght *above* myȝt *cancelled.*

L 343. 1 He mustyrd that / 2 theym that was maisters moste / 3 Then / 4 that / had helped fro their boste / 5 fyghteng / flesh / dry / 6 that he was bown to yeve the goste / 7 wat*er* / noon / 8 bytt*er* / braste / 9 Then / 10 as / lyste / 11 Hade sent / victory / 12 vochesave / slek / thryste /— **344.** 1 God / sone his bale / 2 belde / 3 The as boone / fete / 4 wherwith his enmys gun he / 5 Therof come wat*er* colde / swete / 6 as it wer of a well spryng / 7 That sleked his thryst / slakeed his hete / 9 ffirst / lion / 10 gave / 11 sithen / this season / 12 hath *omitted* / he saved / lyve /— **345.** 1 Then waxed / wight as / air / 2 m*er*vells that there / wroght / 3 Vnto / gun / faire / 4 that / full *omitted* / myche thoght / 5 that / before / care / 6 theym / that / myght / 7 tho that their / were / 8 vndre theire boundom has / broght / 9 fol. 133. b. / Whilst / wonned / Saraa / 10 folke Was His ffrende / 11 sithen vnto Gaȝa / 12 wende.

In this city, which belonged to the Philistines, he often went in unto a harlot. No one dared to warn him of the danger.

fol. 39 b. 346 This gasa was a grett Cety;
to fals phylesteyns yt fell.
Of panyms wonned þer grett plente
þat made grett maysterys þem a mell.
ydder wentt sampson oft to see
a damsell þat þer can dwell.
None durst hym warne wher he wold be
for talys þat þei of hym herd tell.
he fand defawtes be fore
phylysteyns forto treyst.
Bot sythyn he mett with more
þat made hym more abayst.

The Philistines planned to kill him one night, when he was with this woman.

347 hys lufe he wold not hele ne hyde,
for no man sayng sett he by.
And so betyd yt on a tyde
to gasa past he preuely.
Bot sone phylesteyns hym aspyd,
how he come with no cumpany,
And how he buskyd hym forto abyd
and all nyȝt with his leman ly.
By þer consell þei kest
how þat he suld be tone
And raysed owt of his rest
and so sodanly slone.

They fastened the gates and set a watch upon the walls. But Samson had noticed their preparations and arose at midnight.

348 þei wyll not fayle what so be fall;
þerfor þer ȝattes speyre þei fast
And sett gud wache apon þe wall
with wepyns þat full well wold last.
þei say no syluer sayue hym sall;
his pompe *and* pryd suld sone be past.
Bot Sampson hath persayued all
how þei his ded devysed *and* cast.
when he hopyd no man herd,
at mydnyȝt furth he meued
And fand þe ȝattes all sperred;
þat gart hym be yll greuede.

S 348. 1-t *of* what *above the line.*

L 346. 1 Ca. xvi. *in left margin* / Gaȝa / grete cite / 2 Philistiens it befell / 3 Paynyms wound there grete / 4 that / grete maistres thaym amaȝg / 5 Thedre Went Sampson ofte / 6 Damesell that there gun / 7 Noon / warn / 8 tales they herd folke of hym / 9 He / defautes / before *cancell'd before* before / 10 Philistiens for to traiste / 11 sithen / with theym there / more *wanting* / 12 that / abaiste /— **347.** 1 His / hil / hide / 2 noo / set / 3 it / 4 Saraa passed / pryvely / 5 Philistiens / aspyde / 6 noo company / 7 busked / byde / 8 and *omitted* / nyght / lemman to / 9 Be theire counsell they wyst / 10 that / taken / 11 rasyd oute / ryst / 12 slayn /— **348.** 1 They wolle / fale / befall / 2 therfor their yates spar they / 3 set goode watch vpon the / 4 wepens that / wele / 5 They / noo siluer save / shall / 6 pride shal / 7 has perceyved / 8 they / deid demed and / 9 When / trewd noo / hard / 10 mydnyght / meved / 11 the yates / spard / 12 that made / be *omitted* / evyll greved.

He carried away the gates and the posts to Tabor.

349 þen wyst he well he was in wath;
to god he *pray*d w*ith* steuy*n* full styll
Att helpe hy*m* forto scape fro scath
sen all hys wele was in [his] wyll.
þor schewed he sone þat he was wrath:
both ȝattes *and* postrons he puld hy*m* tyll,
And on hys bake he bayre þem bath
to Tabor, þat was A heygh hyll.
Phylysteyns þ[at] hy*m* hatt*es*
þan fand a fowle affray
when þei saw þ*er* ȝattes
both brokyn and borne a way.

The Philistines were grieved at their failure, but Samson became ever more hostile towards them. He governed the Israelites after God's law.

350 ffull mekyll mone þei made þat morne, fol. 40 a
and carfull was þat cu*m*pany;
þat he ascaped þem toyȝt yt scorne,
for wo þei wyst wold fall þ*er*by.
wher he was sum dele frend be forne,
þen was he foo *and* full enmy;
wher he þem fand, none was for borne
þat in phylysteyns wold affy.
þem forto schame *and* schend
w*ith* hand hade [he] none aw,
And Ebrews he mayntend
and gouarnd in godd*es* law.

Samson was very fond of the women of the Philistines, and loved one of them, a light woman.

351 w*ith* wemen wold he wun *and* wend;
he ne royȝt whedd*er* yt ware well or wra*n*g.
All [y]f phylysteyns ware noyȝt his frend,
of þem þe fayrest wold he fang.
In secrett can a lady lend
þat lemans lyfe had leued full lang.
hys [hert all] hale [to] hare he mend;
full mekyll myrth was þem ama*n*g.
ffor scho wold hy*m* be gyle,
w*ith* fayre chere scho hy*m* fede.
Bot he wyst of no wyle
and was no thyng a drede.

S 349. 3 for *converted to* fro / 6 tyll *below the line* / 9 þem *changed into* þen /— **351.** 3 of.

L 349. 1 Then / wele / wooth / 2 steven / 3 To help / hym *omitted* / 4 sithen / his / his wyll / 5 There shewed / soone that / wroth / 6 yates / postes / pull / 7 And *omitted* / On his bak / bare theym both / 8 that / a high / 9 Philistiens that / hates / 10 then / 11 When that they / their yates / 12 broken / away / — **350.** 1 Full mych moon they / that morn / 2 carefull / that company / 3 That / escaped theym thoght / yt *omitted* / scorn / 4 woo they / therby / 5 Where / sumdele frende beforn / 6 then / 7 Where / theym / noon / forborn / 8 that / Philistiens / 9 Theym / shame / shend / 10 hade he noon / 11 mayntened / 12 gou*er*ned / godes / — **351.** 1 With wommen wold he wend / 2 and wonne he not roght whed*er* it wer wele / 3 And thogh Philistiens wer not frend / 4 theym the farest / 5 soreth couth / lende / 6 that / led / 7 His hert all hole to hire / mened / 8 mych / theym / 9 she / begyle / 10 fair / she / fed / 11 noo / 12 nothyng a dred.

She was called Delilah. The Philistines determined to use her for their own purpose, and made her entice Samson.

352 Scho was full fayre of hyd *and* hew,
bot of hyr luf scho was full lyȝt.
Of hyr *con*dicions noyȝt he knew;
Dalyda þat damsell heyȝt.
Phylysteyns was e*uer* vntrew.
when [þei] of Sa*m*pson saw þis syȝt,
ffull p*r*euely þei can p*er*sew
to marre his maystry yf þei myȝt.
þei wyst þat woman cowde
dyssauyue hy*m* by sum gyn.
þ*er*for þei melled *with* mouyth
to gayre þat bourd be gyne.

They promised her great riches, if she would find out from Samson wherein lay his great strength.

353 þei sayd þ*us*, »Dalida, doyȝt*ur* dere,
phylysteyns in þi fayth affy.
Sa*m*pson, þi felow *and* þi fere,
þ*ou* wott he is *our* werst enmy.
wold þ*ou* qwayntly of hy*m* enquere
wher in his wyghtnes most may ly
And warne vs, for we sall be nere.
grett wrschep may þ*ou* wyn þ*er*by.
So may þ*ou* stynt all stryue,
and gyftes we sall þe gyfe
To lede a ladys lyue,
os lang os þ*ou* may lyfe.»

She agreed to do this. She asked Samson but he doubted her and said

354 »Syrs», scho sayd,» I sall asay
and fa*n*d sum of his fors to fell.»
fol. 40 b Sone aft*ur* os he by hyr lay,
full grett myrth made scho þem a mell.
Scho sayd, »gud p*ar*amowre, I þe p*r*ay
A lytyll tale me forto tell,
Sen þ*ou* so mekyll of myghis may,
wher in þi strengh is dyȝt to dwell.
So may I fully fele
how þi luf to me lys.»
he dowted hyr sum dele
and answerd on þis wyse,

S 353. 6 -t- *of* wyghtnes *above the line* / — **354.** 2 *'quintus' in tower margin.*

L 352. 1 She / fair / hyde / 2 of *omitted* / hir lufe / scho *omitted* / lyght / 3 And of hir / noght / 4 Dalida that Damsell hyght / 5 Philistiens were / 6 they / this syght / 7 prively thei gun pursew / 8 mar / maistry if they myght / 9 They / that / couth / 10 dissave / with sum gin / 11 Therfor they / mouth / 12 make their bourde begyn /— **353.** 1 They / sayd *omitted* / thus / doghter / 2 Philistiens / thy faith gun affy / 3 thy fellay / thy / 4 thow wote / oure most enmy / 5 fol. 134. a. / ludicum *in upper margin* / Wold thou whantly / 6 where in / myght / 7 warn / shal / 8 grete worship / thou / therby / 9 thou / stryfe / 10 shal the gyf / 11 lyfe / 12 as / as thou / lyf /— **354.** 1 Sirys she / shal assay / 2 and laboure / force / 3 aftir as / lay hir by / 4 grete / she hym vntyll / 5 She said goode paramoure / the / 6 a lityll / tale *omitted* / 7 Sithyn thou / mych / myghtes / 8 wherin thy strenght / dight / 10 thy love / lyse / 11 He douted hir sumdele / 12 this.

that if he were bound hand and foot with ropes he would lose his strength. Delilah bound him and called in her countrymen, but Samson rose up, having felt nothing.

355 »yf I ware bown both hend *and* fette
with cord*es* þat wald ryȝt well last,
So myght ylk man to be [me] mette,
for þen ware all my power past.»
þat scho hy*m* lufed full well scho lett
tyll he on slepe was faln full fast.
Scho band hy*m* full herd, I yow hette,
and þen A grett cry vp scho cast,
ffor þei þat can aspy
suld wyn hym in þ*er* weld.
he stert vp stalworthyly;
of hyr fayre noyȝt he feled.

She asked him the same question again.

356 he wyst nothyng how scho had wrogh,
for he p*er*saued no p*er*ell ȝett.
And þat hyr warke was wast, hyr toyȝt;
þ*er*for scho frest a noþ*er* fytt.
Scho sayd, »s*er*, and þou luf me oght,
þou wold not se me soroand sytt
And namly for a thyng of noyȝt,
qwylke by þi word þat I wold wytt:
Wher in thy strengh is hyde.
I kepe noyȝt elles to craue.
Sythyn als þi self wold byde,
I wyll se yt to saue.»

She bound him with straps cut from a hide, but in vain; everything happened as before.

357 he sayd, »dame, who so wold me bynd
with twang*es* schorn owt of a hyde,
Both my hand*es* fast me be hynd,
þen hastely war past my pryd.»
when he on slepe ware wardly blynd,
to bynd hy*m* wold scho not abyd.
And for phylesteyns suld hy*m* fynd
or he was lawse, on lowd scho cryde.
he waked, os he noght wyst;
þe bandes in sonder brayde.
ffor scho hyr p*ur*pase myst,
scho was no thyng well payd.

L 355. 1 If ' were boune / hand / fete / 2 that wele wold last / 3 yche / me mete / 4 then war / powere / 5 That she / loved / wele she lete / 6 to/ fallen fast / 7 She / hard / you hete / 8 then a grete / she vp / 9 they that gun / there ly *above the line* / aspy *omitted* / 10 shuld / theire / 11 He stirt / full stallworthly / 12 hire faire noght / feld /— **356.** 1 He / noo thyng / she / wroght / 2 perceyved / yit / 3 that hir / waste hire thoght / 4 therfor she fraisted an othre fit / 5 She / ye lufed / 6 ye / not *omitted* / sorowand sit / 7 namely / noght / 8 which / your / that / wit / 9 Wherin / strenght / hyd / 10 not / crave / 11 Sithen as thy / wolle byd / 12 wolle / it / save / — **357.** 1 He sayde / 2 thwonges shorne oute / 3 fast *omitted* / behynd / 4 then / wer passed / pryde / 5 When / was inwardly / 6 she / abyde / 7 Philistiens shuld / 8 were lause / lovd she / 9 He / as / 10 the / soundre brayste / 11 ffor hir purpose she / 12 she / noo / wele payde.

Next time Delilah tempted Samson to divulge his secret by swooning, but failed once more.

358 Bot furth ȝett, for scho wold not fayle,
scho sayd, »sen I no ferther found,
yll may me lyke my long *trauele*
to be beswyked.» *with* þat scho swound.
he sayd, »who so wold take a nale
A[nd] fest yt fast in to the grownd,
fol. 41 a. yf enmys wold me þen asayle,
I suld haue no strengh in þat stownd.»
Scho broyȝt both nale *and* band
and fest yt when he sleped
And drof yt *with* hyr hand
down into þe erth full depe.

359 Scho wakyn hy*m* þen *with* a cry,
for his enmyse suld here in hast.
And when he start vp stallworthyly,
þen wyst scho þat hyr werke was wast.
ffull mekyll moyne scho made for þi
and sayd, »in bayle eu*er* I am brayst,
Sen I se grayth incheson why
þei lufe not me þat I luf mast.»
Scho sayd in yre *and* angere,
»sen I werke so in vayne,
I sall lufe þem no langer
þat lyst not luf a gayne.»

She made another attempt by weeping and wringing her hands, and this time she was successful.

360 Sone has scho chosyn an o*þer* chare:
scho weped *and* wrang both he[d] *and* hand.
I deme hyr a dewle os I dare;
scho mad hyr als scho myȝt not stand.
Now ned*es* Sa*m*pson forto be ware,
les he [be] wrethed *with* his awn wand.
Bot for he saw hyr sogaytes fare,
he wex a foyle, *and* þat he fand.
he sayd, »leman, be styll,
no lenger lyst me layn.
þou sall wytt all þi wyll;
I say þe in *cer*tayn,»

S 358. 4 sch *cancelled after* scho / - **359.** 4 wast *above the line.* — **360.** 2 hend.

L 358. 1 yit / she / faile / 2 she / sithen / ferthr*e* fynde / 3 Ill / like / travaile / 4 to have you all ways in my mynde / 5 He / naile / 6 and fest my here fast to / 7 If / wold then me assaile / 8 shuld have / strenght / that / 9 She broght / naile / 10 fest his here whilst he did slepe / 11 drove it / hir / 12 down *omitted* / the erthe /— **359.** 1 She wakened / þen *omitted* / 2 enmys shuld / haste / 3 stirt vp stalworthly / 4 then / she / þat *omitted* / hir*e* warke / waste / 5 mych moone she / forthy / 6 bale / am I braste / 7 Sithen / encheson / 8 the / that / lufe moste / 9 She said / angr*e* / 10 sithen / wirke / invayne / 11 shal / theym / langr*e* / 12 that list / lufe agayne /— **360.** 1 scho *omitted* / chosen / othr*e* / 2 she / bot hede and / 3 hir a deuyl as / dar / 4 she made hir as she myght noght / 5 to / war / 6 lest / be greved / 7 hir*e* in such wyse / 8 wax / that / 9 He / 10 noo / list / layne / 11 Thou / wyt / thy / 12 the for *cer*tayne.

He confessed to her that his strength lay in his hair.

361 »My myȝt is haly in my hare
so þat yf yt were cutt of clene,
þen suld I be of myȝt no mare
þen oþer men be fore hath bene.
Bot leman, loke þou layn þis lare;
tell yt neuer bot vs two betwene!»
»A luf,» scho sayd, »well leuer me ware
forto be kylled with cayres kene.
Derly I sall yt dyght
both [by] nyȝt *and* day
fforto maynten þi myȝt
in all þat euer I may.»

Delilah made him drunk with wine in order to betray him.

362 So sall sampson be putt to p[y]n,
þat maysteres mad full mony a myle.
A woman with hyr weked ingyne
has lorne þat led, alas þat whyle!
Of hyr falshed scho wold not f[y]n;
full freke scho was hym forto fyle.
Scho dyd hym drynke of dyuerse wyn
with grett gladnes hym to be gyle.
So yll wemen wyll glose
þem þat þei wold haue schent,
ffor men sall not suppose
in þem none yll entent.

Samson fell asleep, and Delilah cut off his hair.

363 hyre solace was to hys vn sele, fol. 41 b
be cawse scho kest hym to be tray.
when he of wyn was dronkyn wele,
þen was hys wytt all wast away.
he fell on slepe *and* myȝt not fele
what folke to hym wold do or say.
hys hare scho cutt of ylka dele,
wher in his strengh *and* lykyng lay.
þis was a de[l]full dede
of all þat euer was told,
ffor trest of mekyll mede
made hyr to be so bold.

S 362. 1 payn / 5 feyn.

L 361. 1 fol. 134. b. / Iudicum *in small letters at the top of the page* / myght / holy / here / 2 that / yf *omitted* / it / 3 Then shuld / myght noo more / 4 than othre / before have / 5 thou layne that I the lere / 6 it / twoo / 7 Ay lufe she sayde / well *omitted* / levere / were / 8 to / slayne / carees / 9 Derely / shal it / 10 by nyght / 11 mayntene thy myght / 12 that /— **362.** 1 Sampson / put / pyne / 2 that maistrees made / many / a *omitted* / 3 hire Wyked engyne / 4 that wyght allas the while / 5 hire falsed she / fyne / 6 bowne she / 7 She did / drynk / dyuers wyne / 8 grete / begyle / 9 evyll women wolle glosse / 10 theym that they / have shent / 11 shuld noght supposse / 12 theym noon evyll /— **363.** 1 Hire / his vnsele / 2 by cause she / betray / 3 When / he *omitted* / wyne had droken / 4 then / his wyt / waste a way / 5 He / myght / 6 doo / 7 His here she cut / ych a / 8 wherin / likyng / 9 This Was a dolefull / 10 that / tolde / 11 Bot trust / mych / 12 hire / bolde / *In the left margin*: Sampson Dalide concubine sue calliditate rasus capitis capillos et obcecatus tocius (*for* inocuus) iure fortudinis (*for* fortitudinis) sue privatus fuit.

364 when þis was done, scho mad a schowtt,
for enmys suld here, þat was hyd.
he wakynd *and* went *with* owtyn dowt
forto haue done, os he are dyde.
Bot fals phylysteyns flokked abowt;
to bynd hy*m* sore non thurt þem byd.
And sone both his eyn putt þei owt,
be cause no kyndnes suld be kyd.
To ga[ȝa] þei gart hy*m* [ga]
both blynd *and* bun in band*es*.
And þe dewle Dalyda
was made lady of land*es*.

She called in the Philistines, who put out his eyes and brought him down to Gaza. As a reward she received a great position.

365 he þat myȝt fell all folke be forn,
now is he fast *with* fetu*rs* fest.
Phylysteyns fast can hy*m* scorne,
for he had bene a greu*us* geyst.
At qwernes þei gart hy*m* grynd þ*er* corn,
and fylth oft in his face þei kest,
And grett byrdyns þat suld be borne
to gayr hy*m* beyre so toyȝt þ*em* best
þo fellows folke ware fayn
to se hy*m* fowle fare.
Ebrews ware put to payn;
his kynradyn had gre[t] kare.

Samson, with all his strength gone, had now to grind corn and carry heavy burdens; he was badly treated.

366 In byttu*r* bayle þ*us* can he byde,
ay bon to beyre what þei wold byde.
All way *with* hy*m* þei flott *and* chyde,
bot *in* þe meyn tyd þ*us* be tyde:
his hare was waxin sum dele syde,
wher in his strengh was holy hyd.
þ*er*for to venge hy*m* he aspyd
on ded*es* þat dalyda hy*m* dy[d].
Thrugh hi[r] gyltry was he
full yll turme*nt* *and* tened,
And venged wold he be,
yf he hy*m* self suld schend.

As Samson's hair grew, his strength returned; he sought an opportunity for revenge.

S 364. 2 hyd *above the line* / 6 byd *below the line* / 9 To ga all þei /— **365.** 11 putto /— **366.** 6 hyd *below the line* / 8 dyȝt / 9 his.

L 364. 1 When this / doon she made / shoute / 2 shuld here hire that were hid / 3 He Waked / Wened *with*outen doute / 4 for to / doone as / before did / 5 Philistiens / aboute / 6 noone neddes theym bid / 7 sone *omitted* / eghen sone put they oute / 8 because noo kenenes shuld he / 9 They made hym goo to Gaza / 10 boune / 11 the devyll Dalida / 12 lady made /— **365.** 1 He that myght / beforn / 2 festend / fetturs fast / 3 Philistiens / gun / 4 ben / grevous kest / 5 whernis made they / their corne / 6 they cast / 7 grete burdyns that shuld / 8 make / bere theym thoght it / 9 That felous / were fayne / 10 fouly / 11 were put to payne / 12 kyndred / grete care /— **366.** 1 bitter bale thus gun / 2 redy / bere / theym hym byd / 3 they flyte / 4 the mean tyme thus betyd / 5 His here / waxen sumdele / 6 wherin / all way hyd / 7 Therfor / Venge / aspyde / 8 dedys that Dalida / did / 9 Thurgh hire gylry / 10 evyll tourment/ tende / 11 Venged / 12 if / shuld shende.

Samson was driven like a beast to make sport at the feast, which the Philistines held every year in honour of their god Dagon.

367 ylke ȝere þei vsed to make a fest,
qwylk may not fayle, bot yf þei fon,
And sac*ra*fyce full mony a best
vnto þ*er* god þat heyȝt Dagon.
And now þei mad yt more honest,
for þei had maystry of sa*m*pson.
ydd*er* þei semled, most *and* lest,
and broyȝt hy*m* to be wonderd on.
As a best þat was blynd
he balturd furth þem by;
Both be fore *and* be hynd
þei bunsched hy*m* bytt*er*ly.

The feast was celebrated in a palace of great windows and wide spaces. The roof was supported by a pillar.

368 In a palays þei hath p*ur*vayd
þ*er* mangery w*i*th mekyll p*ri*de.
ffull ryally it was arayd
w*i*th wyndows *and* w*i*th wardes wyd.
Bot all on heyght þe halles was grayd
and selers be neth in to abyd,
And on a pyller war þei brayd
þat bare vp all on ylka syde.
Sa*m*pson be for had seen
þe p*ur*pase of þat place;
he toyȝt at turne to tene
þ*er* sang *and* þ*er* solace.

He asked a boy to lead him to the pillar, so that he might rest against it; but he pulled it down, and the company were killed.

369 he p*ra*yd a boy þat lufed hy*m* best
vnto þe pyler hy*m* forto lede
þat he þ*er* by his bake myȝt rest,
for of swylk helpe had he grett nede.
Dame dalyda on deese was drest
w*i*th mony a wyȝt *in* worthy wede.
The pyler gart he bow *and* brest
þat all þe halle in sonder ȝede.
yt bare down man *and* barne
and slew þem all at ons
Bot þe boy, þat he can warne
to wend owt of the wons.

S 367. 3 abest ' - **368.** 6 into / – **369.** 8 *and* þat.

L 367. 3 Yche *yere* they / feste / 2 which / faile / if they / 3 sacrifice / many / beste / 4 theire / that hight / 5 they made it / honeste / 6 they / maistry / Sampson / 7 Thedre the assembled moste / leste / 8 broght / Woundred / 9 beste that Was blynde / 10 balterd / theym / 11 before / behynde / 12 they bunched /— **368.** 1 a *omitted* / palace they haue / 2 to make their feste with mych pryde / 3 So it full roially was arrayd / 4 *the second* with *omitted* / wyde / 5 hight the / were grayde / 6 cellers beneth in to abyde / 7 piller were they mayde / 8 that / all vp / yche a / 9 fol. 135. a. / Iudicum *in upper margin* / before hade / 10 the purpose / that / 11 He thoght to / teen / 12 theire there sang / theire /— **369.** 1 He prayde / boye that / 2 the pil*er* / to / 3 That / therby / bak myght / 4 suche help / grete / 5 Dalida on the dese / 6 With / wight / 7 pilere made / bowe / 8 '*and*' *omitted* / that / the hall in sundre yede / 9 It bare downe / barn / 10 slogh all theym at oones / 11 the body that / gun warn 12 oute / woones.

370 Ten *milia* phylysteyns *and* mo
gart he be lorne in lytyll whyle,
All for he wold þat woman slo
þat *with* hyr gaud*es* can hy*m* be gyll.
Sa*m*pson hy*m* selfe was ded also;
he mogh not passe from þat p*er*ell.
So wakynd weyre *and* mekyll wo
all throw a wekyd woman wyle.
The Ebrews all *and* sum
gouernd [he] XX ȝere.
Thus end*es* Iudicu*m*,
bot more ȝett men may lere.

Ten thousand Philistines lost their lives through this wicked woman. Samson, who also perished, had ruled the Israelites for 20 years. Thus ends the Book of Judges.

Ruth.

371 God þat welde*s* both wyld *and* tame
in all *our* spekyng be *our* spede
fforto be gyn *with*owtyn blame
þis boke *and* make yt for *our* mede.
A woma*n*, þat heygh ruth be name,
now forto neuyn of yt is nede.
And this boke is named of the same,
þe boke of rewth so we yt rede.
Scho was playn pupplyst
of kynred fayr *and* gud.
Of hyr kynred com cryst
and of þe jewes gentyll blud.

God grant us good speed in beginning the Book of Ruth. It has to do with a woman, called Ruth, who was both fair and good. Of her family and of Jewish blood came Christ.

372 Aft*ur* sa*m*pson dede, þat was dughty,
of whom we told in tym be forn,
Of Ebrews reygned on Ely
þat mayntend þem both euy*n* *and* morn.
And in bedlem, a burgh þ*er* by,
on Emalec was bred *and* born.
he had a wyfe, heyȝt Neomy,
[and in þer tyme] fell defawt of corn.
Semly suns had þei two:
þe on was named chelon,
And þat oþ*er* of þoo,
he was named Maalon.

After the death of Samson Eli ruled over the Israelites. In Bethlehem dwelt Elimelech with his wife Naomi and his two sons, Chilion and Mahlon. In their time there was a famine in the land.

S 371. 9 p *cancelled before* pupplyst / – **372.** 10 chelyon *with* y *cancelled* 12 Thal *cancelled before* Maalon.

L 370. 1 thovsand Philistiens / moo / 2 made / litle / 3 that womma*n* sloo / 4 that / hire / gun / begyle / 5 deid alsoo / 6 myght noght / from *omitted* / that p*er*yle / 7 Soo waked werre / mych woo / 8 thurgh / wykked Wommans / 10 governed he twenty yere / 12 yit may men here / — **371.** Liber de Ruth *in big letters in right margin* / 1 GOd that / wylde / 2 oure / oure / Ca. i. *in right margin* / 3 ffor to begyn w*ith*outen / 4 this booke / it / oure / 5 that hight Ruth by / 6 nowe / speke of is it / 7 booke / 8 the booke / Ruth / it / 9 She / playne puplyste / 10 Kyndred grete and goode / 11 hire kyndred come criste / 12 the Jews / bloode / — **372.** 1 Aftire deide of Sampson that doughty / 2 whome / told of in tyme beforne / 3 Overe / reigned oon / 4 that mayntened theym / even / morne / 5 Bethleem / therby / 6 oon / borne / 7 He / hight / 8 and in theire tyme befell defaute / corne / 9 Semely sonnes hade they twoo / 10 the oon / Named Chelon / 11 that othir / thoo / 12 Named.

Elimelech with his family went to live in the land of Moab, where his sons married wives of that country.

373 hung*ur* was in þat reme so ryfe,
all Ebrews mad full yll chere.
Emalec toke chylde*r and* wyfe,
and went þe*r* way þei fawre in fere,
To paynyms land to lenght þe*r* lyfe,
wher corn enogh was *and* not dere.
And þor þei wund *with* owtyn stryfe
with moabyse more þen tene ȝere.
A wyfe þor wed chelon,
orafayn, a woman wyse.
Ruth mared *with* maalon,
a paynyn of grett price.

They married against their law, but it was God's will that Christ should come of both Jewish and Gentile blood.

374 Of Ebrews born both ware þe men,
of Iacob kynd *and* jews cald;
Phylysteyns ware þo fayre wemen,
and paynyns law holy þei held.
On þis wyse ware þei wede þen
agayns þe*r* law, bot so god wold,
ffor crist suld com, os clerke*s* ken,
of both þe braunches I are told.
Emalec *and* his suns
in þat land le[ft] þe*r* lyues,
And sythyn all same þor wonnes,
þe moþe*r and* two suns wyfe*s*.

Naomi longed for her own country and returned to Bethlehem, bringing with her Ruth, one of her daughters-in-law.

375 Bot þen þe moþe*r* Neomy
langed in to hyr land agayn:
hyr lyked not paynyms cu*m*pany,
for of hyre fare ware þei not fayn.
hyr suns wyfe*s* was full wylly
to wend *with* hyr, þis is ce*r*tayn.
Scho tuke ruth furth to be hyr by,
and in þat land scho leued orfayn.
Of on enogh hyr toyȝt
to led þe lande*s* throgh.
So ruth *with* hyr scho broyȝt
Euyn vnto bethlem burgh.

fol. 43 a

S 374. 10 led.

L 373. 1 Hunger / that Reaume / 2 made / evyll / 3 tooke childre / 4 their / thoo foure / 5 panyms / lengh theire / 6 where corne was enugh / 7 there they wonned / with outen / 8 then ten yere / 9 ther wedded Chelon / 10 Orfayne / womman / 11 was maried / Moalon / 12 paynym / grete pryse /— **374.** 1 borne / were tho / Jews / 3 Of the Philistiens were the faire women / 4 panyms / they hald / 5 this / were they weddyd then / 6 agayn theire / 7 shuld come as / 8 tho braunches as / ere / 9 sonnes / 10 that / left theire lyfes / 11 sithen / sam there / 12 the modre / twoo sonnes /— **375.** 1 then the modre / 2 langed to hire / agayne / 3 Hire liked noght / company / 4 hire / fare *omitted* / were they / fayne / 5 Hire sonnes / were / 6 wende / hire this was certayne / 7 She tooke Ruth forto bee hire / 8 And / that / she levyd orfayne / 9 oon enugh hire thoght / 10 lede tho / thrugh / 11 Ruth With hire she broght / 12 Euyn *omitted* / Bethleem

376 ydd*er* þei wan *with*owtyn stryfe.
hyr frend*es* be for full fayr scho fand,
And sone þei asked hyr resons ryfe
both of hyr suns *and* hir husband.
Scho told how þei had leued þ*er* lyf,
and how þei past *in* paynyms land,
And how ruth was hyr on sun wyfe
and wold werke euy*n* os þei ordand.
[She wold leve paynyms law
and lere *with* all hir mayne]
The god of jews to knaw.
þ*er*for þei ware of hyr fayn.

Naomi related to her friends at home her fortunes in Moab. They rejoiced to hear that Ruth would live according to the Jewish law.

377 Ruth was ryȝt fayr [of hew *and* hyd,]
and scho lyued lely os a iew.
To geydd*er* so furth can þei byde;
all folke hyr lufed fro þei hyr knew.
So yt be tyd in heruest tyde
when men suld schere þat þei ar sew,
Ruth sayd scho wold wend þ*er* be syd
and glene þem corn [as for hyr dew].
»Doyȝght*ur*,« sayd Neomy,
»go furth in my blessyng;
Thy dyn*er* dyȝt sall I
a gayns þi home co*m*yng.«

All the people loved Ruth. In the harvest-time she wished to help to glean ears of corn: so Naomi sent her to the fields.

378 So went scho furth on þe morne
to glene *and* byrdyns forto beyre.
A Boȝe, þat was in bethlem born,
A dughty man *in* ded*es* of were,
he geydderd his folke hy*m* be forne
into þe feld his corne to schere
And fand þis woman gedd*er*yng corn
in Doles wher scho myȝt do no dere.
he asked of þem ylkon
whethyn was þat woma*n* fayre.
The sayd, »þe wyf of maalon;
to Emalec next hayre.«

Now Boaz was a man of great wealth. When he came with all his people to gather in the harvest from the fields, he found Ruth there before him.

S 376. 11 The law of god /— **377.** 1 hyd *and* hew ' 8 for þei no*n* sew.
L 376. 1 Thedir they Wan withouten / 2 hire / before / full fayr·*omitted* / hire she / 3 they / hire Resons / 4 hire sonnes / hire / d j. *in right bottom corner* / 5 fol. 135. b. Ruth *in upper margin* / She / they / leved theire lyfe / 6 they had passed / panyms / 7 Ruth / hir sonne / 8 wirk even as they / 9—10 = *text above* / 11 Oure gode / Jews / 12 therfore the wer full fayne /— **377.** 1 right faire of hew and hyde / 2 all folke hire loved fro they hire knew / 3 To gedre both so gun they abyde / 4 and Ruth lyved lely as a Iew / 5 it betyd / hervest / 6 shuld shere that they ere / 7 she wend wold ther be syde / 8 and *omitted* / to glene theym corne as for hir dew / 9 Doghter / 10 goo / blissyng / 11 dight shal / 12 agaynes thy gayne comyng /— **378.** 1 she / furth sone on the / 2 birthyns home to bryng / 3 Oon Boȝ that in bethleem was borne / 4 a doughty / werre / 5 He gedird / beforne / 6 the felde / corn / shere / 7 this / gedirand corne / 8 a dale where / she *inserted above the line* / myght doo noo / 9 Ca. ii. *in left margin* / He / theym ychoon / 10 fro whethyn that woman was / fayre *omitted* / 11 They / the wyfe / 12 nex heire.

At the desire of Boaz, Ruth worked all day after his reapers, and in the evening brought back as much as she could carry.

379 »Scho soiourns in þis same Cety
with Neomy, þy Neuow grett.»
vnto þat semly þen sayd he,
»wend *with* my men to drynke *and* ette
And werke *with* þem in stede of me;
all sa[l] be þin þat þou may gette.»
Scho thanked hy*m* *with* wordes fre
þat [so] vowchsaue hyr to rehete.
All day *with* þem scho wroyȝt;
þat dede dyd hyr no dere,
ffor at euyn hom scho broyȝt
als mekyll os scho myȝt beyre.

She related her experience to Naomi, who then planned to arrange a marriage between Ruth and Boaz. She bade Ruth keep near to this man.

380 Scho told hyr dame how scho had done, fol. 43 b.
for þat scho lengyd so lang a stage,
And how boȝe bed hyr swylk a bone
and werke *and* take hyr werke to wage
þat Neomy toyȝt hyr allon
Amang þem forto make maryage.
Scho wyst of boȝe: wyf had he none,
and he was lord of hegh lynage.
Scho sayd, »my doyȝt*ur* dere,
vnto my tale take tent!
To morn loke þou be nere
ay in his awn p*re*sent.»

That night she was to lie with him in the same room, and to say that she was only seeking him. Ruth acted on this advice.

381 »And whe*n* þou hath bene all þe day
with hy*m* *and* his folke in fel[l]*es*,
wayt at euyn well, yf þou may
lige in þe loge þat he in dwell*es*;
And whe*n* þou seke*s*, yf he ogh say,
say þat þou seke*s* hy*m* *and* noyȝt elles
þe forto wys þe redy way
to sum maryag þat he of mellys.
loke þou be homly hyd
to mette *with* hym at morne.»
Euyn os scho demed, scho dyd.
Boȝe fand hyr hy*m* be forne.

S 379. 1 u *of* soiourns *above the line* / 6 sabbe / 8 hyr /— **380.** 3 swylka /— **381.** 2 feld*es*.

L 379. 1 She soiourns / this / Cite / 2 thy Nevew grete / 3 that semely then / 4 wende / ete / 5 wyrke / theym / 6 shal / thyne that thou / gete / / 7 She / 8 that so vovched save hire / 9 theym she wroght / 10 that / did hire noo / 11 evyn home she broght / 12 as mych as she myght bere /— **380.** 1 She / hire Dame / she hade doone / 2 for she lenged 3 Booȝ / hire suche / boone / 4 and *omitted* / to wyrk / hire warke / 5 Then Neomy thoght hire allone / 6 amang theym / mariage / 7 She / Booȝ wyfe had ben noon / 8 he *omitted* / lorde / high linage / 9 Ca. iii. *in left margin* / She / doghtre / 10 entent / 11 morne luke thou /— **381.** 1 thou has ben / the / 2 the felles / 3 Wate / evyn wele if thou / 4 lyk / the lugge that / 5 And whome thou / if / oght / 6 that thou / noght / 7 The / wysh the / 8 mariage that / melles / 9 Luke thou / homely hid / 10 with hym to mete / 11 Even as she demyd she did / 12 Booȝ / hire / beforne.

Boaz promised to marry her to a young man, her nearest kinsman, or to marry her himself.

382 when boȝe hyr herd, he hade pety
how scho hyre mane vnto hym ment.
he sayd, »here wuns in this Cety
a ȝong man with ryue elders rent.
hym sall I make to mary þe,
or elles þe same sall I assent;
þe herytage þen weld sall we.»
þus told he hyr all hys entent.
Scho was full fayn for þi,
and als sone as scho mogh,
Scho told to Neomy
on what wyse scho had wroyȝt.

Naomi rejoiced at this. Boaz asked the young man either to become the husband of Ruth, or to refuse the redemption of a parcel of land which had belonged to her kinsman.

383 þen Neomy was farly fayn:
on grownd was no thyng þat hyr greued.
ffor well scho wyst hyr selfe certayn
þat ruth full sone suld be releued.
Sone Boȝe gart summond ilke [cytɔseyn]
and sayd þem how þis mater meued.
And to þe ȝong man told he playn
how þat þe woman was myschewed,
And þat he suld assent
to be husband and hede,
Or els refuse þe rent
þat com of hyr kynred.

The young man replied that he loved another woman. Whereupon Boaz answered that he would marry Ruth and redeem her land as he had promised. To this the elders gave their assent.

384 þe ȝong man answerd curtasly
and sayd þus in þar aller syȝt,
»I luf an oþer to lyg me by;
hyr wyll I hold, os I haue heyȝt.»
þen answerd Boȝe, »ruth wed wyll I
and haue hir rent os [yt is ryȝt].»
To þis acordes this cumpany,
so wedded he þat worthy wyȝt.
The rent he con restore
vnto hym and hys wyfe.
Os elders dyd be fore,
he vsed yt in þer lyfe.

fol. 44 a

S 382. 2 vn *above the line* / 3 vn *cancelled before* wuns / 9 for *above* to dwell *cancelled* /— **383.** 5 certayn /— **384.** 6 I haue heyȝt.

L 382. 1 When Booȝ hire / pite / 2 she hire moon / 3 He / wonnes / Cite / 4 yong / ryue *omitted* / thyn eldirs / 5 Hym shal / the / 6 to the same shal / 7 The inheritaunch then / shal / 8 thus / hire / his / 9 She / fayne forthy / 10 as / she myght / 11 Sche / / 12 he had hir hyght /— **383.** 1 Then / farly *omitted* / full fayne / 2 ground / noo / that hire greved / 3 wele she / hire self certayne / 4 that Ruth / shuld / releved / 5 Ca. iiii. *in left margin* / Booȝ made somond all citeȝins / 6 theym / this / meved / 7 the yong / playne / 8 that the / mysheved / 9 And *omitted* / How that / shuld / 10 hire husband / hed / 11 elles / the / 12 that come / hire kyndred /— **384.** 1 fol. 136. a. / Ruth *in upper margin* / The yong / curtesly / 2 sayd *omitted* / thus / all theire syght / 3 lufe / othre / 4 hire wolle / hald as / have hyght / 5 Then / Booȝ hire / ruth *omitted* / woll / 6 have hire rent is it is ryght / 7 this accorded that company / 8 weded / that / wyght / 9 gun / 10 his / 11 As hire elders / dyd *omitted* / before / 12 he *omitted* / had vsed it / theire.

They were married and had a son, Obed. Of him came Jesse, who was the father of King David.

385 In the spowsall ware þei copyld clene;
os god wold, so was done *in* dede.
he was Ebrew *and* scho panym,
bot by goddes law þer lyfe þei lede.
A sone þei hade sone þem be twen,
qwylke obeth heyȝt who wyll take hed.
And of hym withowtyn wene
Iesse [was rutt. of hym], we rede,
how sythyn com Dauyd kyng,
þat was chefe Iuge of Iewys.
þus iesus crist wold spryng
of paynyms *and* Ebrews.

Thus Jesus Christ came from both Israelites and Gentiles, the only two peoples. Here ends the Book of Ruth.

386 And on what wyse he sprang *and* spred
mone aftur com *in* carpyng clene.
þen ware no ledes þat lyf led
bot only Ebrew *and* paynym.
The boke of Ruth þus haue we rede
of faders þat be fore haue bene.
In lytyll spech we haue yt sped,
þat mony mater may be mene.
And next now aftur þis
begyns þe boke of kynges.
he bryng vs to his blyse,
þat lord ys of all thynges.

Primus liber Regum.

God grant us grace of his goodness to begin the Book of Kings, which tells how prophets were inspired to give forth God's desires, and how kings gained glory in war.

387 God þat gouerans all thynges
and myȝt fully made more *and* lese,
In whom our helpe all holy hynges,
he graunt vs grace of his gudnese
fforto be gyne þe boke of kynges
and further yt furth *in* fayr processe,
Als holy chyrch heyre says *and* synges,
and as þe bybyll proves expresse
how prophet[es] fyrst be gane
goddes priuate furth to beyre,
how kynges wrschepe wane
be dyuerse dedes of were.

S 385. 7 was withowtyn / 8 Iesse of hym was rutt; rutt *p. ple. of ME.* * *rutte, NE. rut* (*OF. rutter*) *'to copulate'; here used in the unrecorded sense 'to beget'.*

L 385. 1 In sposayle were they coupled / 2 as / it doon / 3 He / she was paymem / 4 both by godes / their / the / 5 sonne they had / theym betwene / 6 which Obeth hight / wole / hede / 7 was *omitted* / withouten / 8 come Jesse the Jew as we rede / 9 How sithen come Dauid / 10 that / Iuws / 11 Thus Iehcus criste / 12 Paynyms /— **386.** 1 on *omitted* / 2 monne after come / sayng / 3 Then were noo / that lifes / 4 oonly / pathene / 5 booke / thus have / red / 6 that before have / 7 litle / have it / 8 tha many maters / bemene / 9 aftir this / 10 begynnes the booke / 11 He / blys / 12 that lorde is /— **387.** Regum primo *between the lines* / 1 that gouernes all good thinges / 2 myghtfully mad / les / 3 whome oure / holly hinges / 4 goodnes / 5 begyn the book / 6 *and* shew it furth to faire proces / 7 As / chirch / heyre *omitted* / 8 the bible vs / expres / 9 How prophetes first began / 10 godes banere / bere / 11 And how / worship wan / 12 dyuers.

388 Ther wuned A man *in* ramatha,
A gentyll Cety of þe Iury,
And his name was cald Elcana;
amang all oþ*er* most myȝty.
fol. 44 b he had two wyf*es*: on heyȝt Anna;
scho was barand of hyr body.
hys secund wyfe heyȝt fenenna,
bot scho had barns hyr husband by.
The costome þen was þore,
þat sythyn hath bene vn toyght:
No wem*en* wrschept wore
bot þoo þat furth frutt broyȝt.

A certain man, Elkanah, lived in Ramathaim. He had two wives, Hannah and Peninnah. The former was barren, but the latter bore her husband children and was therefore held in esteem.

389 helcana, þat was full wyse,
lufed Anna well, for scho was fayre.
Bot all way was scho lesse i*n* p*re*se,
by cawse scho broyȝt hy*m* furth no*n* ayre.
þei vsed þen ylke ȝere ons or twyse
vnto the te*m*pyll all folke to care
And þ*er* forto make sac*ra*fyce
to god, þat gouerans erth *and* ayre.
And fell þat helcana
w*ith* wyfe[s] *and* chyld[er] wentt
þar sac*ra*fyce to make
to god w*ith* gud ente*n*t.

As was the custom, Elkanah with his wives and children went up to the temple to sacrifice.

390 [þei] broyȝt w*ith* þem both bred *and* wyne,
aft*ur* þer folke war*e* fele or fone.
and þor þei sett þem down at dyne
wh*en* þei þ*er* sac*ra*fyce had done.
he p*ar*ted þen Anna to pyne,
for vnto hyr he gaf bot one,
And to fene*n*na fele *and* fyne,
for scho had chylde*r* *and* þat oþ*er* none.
wh*en* scho saw ffene*n*na
for hyre chylde*r* well fayre,
Scho weped *and* was full wo,
for scho no barns bare.

At the meal following the sacrifice, Hannah was provoked because she bore no children. She grieved bitterly.

S 390. 1 he.

L 388. 1 wonned a / Ramatha / 2 a / Cete of Iury / Ca. i. *in right margin* / 3 Name / called helchana / 3 othre / myghty / 4 He / twoo / oon hight / 6 she / baran / hire / 7 His / hight ffenenna / 8 she / childre hire / 9 custome then / there / 10 that sithen has ben on thoght / 11 Noo wommen worshipte were /12 tho that frute furth broght /— **389.** 1 Helchana that / wysse / 2 wele / she / fare / 3 allway / she les / pryce / 4 bycause she broght / noon heire / 5 5 They / then ych yere oons / 6 temple / 7 there to make their sacrifice / 8 that governs / are / 9 And *omitted* / It befell that helchana / 10 wyfes / childre went / 11 Theire sacrifice that day / 12 to make / goode /— **390.** 1 He broght / hym / 2 after his folke were many / foone / 3 And there they / theym / to dyne / 4 they theire sacrifice had doone / 5 He / then / 6 hire / gave / oone / 7 ffenenna many / 8 she / childre / that othre noone / 9 When she / 10 hire childre wele fare / 11 She / woo / 12 she noo barnes / d 2 (*very faint*) *in right-hand bottom corner.*

She went to the temple and prayed to have a son. Seeing her sad face, Eli the priest tried to comfort her. He thought her drunk, and told her to sleep.

391 Scho rose *and* went *with*owtyn rest
to þe te*m*pyll wher þe arke of god stud.
And þor scho fell i*n* pra*y*ers prest
and pra*y*d to god, þat gyf*es* all gud,
hys g*r*ace in hyre forto fest
and send a sun to mend hyr mode.
So carefull cowntena*n*ce furth scho cast
þat Ely wened scho had bene wode.
And vnto hyr sayd he,
»dame, þou takes no kepe
All [y]f þou dronkyn be.
greue not god, go slepe!«

She told her sorrow to Eli, who prayed to God for her. Elkanah with his family returned to Ramathaim.

392 »A m*er*cy, *ser*«, scho sayd, »do way,
my sorow sall þou vnd*er*stand.
To god is þat I cry *and* pra*y*
to haue a sun *with* my husband.
And s*er*t*es*, *ser*, yf I so may,
to god here sall [he] be se*r*uand.«
Whe*n* hely herd hyr so say,
he pra*y*d for hyr *with* hert *and* hand.
þen sone toke helcana
his chylde*r* *and* wyf*es* two
And we*n*t in to Ramatha,
þat town þat þei come fro.

Soon afterwards Hannah conceived and bore a son, Samuel. She rejoiced and presented him to God.

393 Sone aft*ur* þis so yt be fell:
Anna *con*saued, os god vowche sayue,
And bare A sun, hey3t samuell,
as scho full oft cane aft*ur* craue.
grett myrth was made þen þem amell
for *com*forth of þat lytyll knaue.
In þe te*m*pyll was he dy3t to dwell,
ose sone os he hy*m* self can saue.
hys moyde*r* made offerand
of hy*m*, os scho had hey3t,
fforto be godde*s* se*r*uand
dewly both day *and* ny3t.

S 391. 8 wode *below the line* / 11 All of /— **392.** 6 I.

L 391. 1 fol. 136. b. / She rosse / withouten / 1 the Temple where the ark / in stoode / 3 ther she / 4 that gyves / goode / 5 His / hire fully to / 6 sonn / amend hire / 7 contenaunce / she / 8 that / went she hade ben woode / 9 hire / 10 Dame thou / noo / 11 And if thou / 12 greve noght / goo /— **392.** 1 she / doo / 2 shal thou vndirstand / 3 that / 4 have / sonne / 5 certes / if / 6 shal he / 7 Ely / hire so gatys say / 8 hire / 9 Then / tuke Elchana / 10 childre / twoo / 11 went to / 12 the Cite that they / froo /— **393.** 1 after this / it befell / 2 conceyved as / vovchsave / 3 a sonne hight Samuel / 4 she / ofte gun after crave / 5 Grete / was there among theym / made *and* amell *wanting* / 6 that litle childe / 7 the Temple / dyght / 8 as sone as / selfe couth save / 9 Of hym was made / 10 as his modre had hyght / 11 godes / 12 duly / nyght.

394 In godd*es* se*r*uyce so con he lend,
a full fayre chyld of hyd *and* hew.
And by XII ȝere*s* was past tyll end,
he cowth enogh of nurt*ur* new:
[t]he gast of god in hy*m* dyscend,
wher by he cowth tell talys trew.
how thyng*es* suld both be gyn *and* end,
be pr*o*phecy full well he knew.
So aft*ur* ȝere*s* XII
Ely, þe pr*o*phett wyse,
held Samuel nex his self
in all sufferand se*r*uyce.

At the age of twelve, the Spirit of God descended on him, and he was able to prophecy. Then Eli kept Samuel near to himself.

395 Two suns w*ith* his wyfe had Ely,
for samyn wuned bot[h] scho *and* hee:
On fynyes, þat o þ*er* Ofny,
two semly chyld*er* forto se.
Bot both þei lyued in lechery
and dred not god in no degre.
þer fad*er* þem fau*er*d, *and* for þi
to fowll endyng þei fell all thre.
þe sac*ra*fyce þei stall
to fynd þ*er* barns brede;
þ*er*for þem self had bayle
and o þ*er* of þ*er* kynred.

Eli had two sons, Phinehas and Hophni. Both of them lived in lust and did not fear God, so that they had an evil end to their lives. They stole the food offered in sacrifice for their children.

396 ffor þi ys goyd e þei tent to skyll
þ*at* haluyd thyng has forto ȝeme,
B[e] þ*er* defawt þat no thyng spyll;
ne in beyryng be not to breme,
Ne take no thyng þem self vntyll
þat vnto godd*es* se*r*uyce suld seme;
And be eu*er* war*e* w*ith* werk*es* yll
for dow[t] of hy*m* þat all sall deme.
And chastys þ*er* chyld*er* well
all way wh*en* þei do o mysse
þat þei no fawtes fele,
as Ely feled for hys.

No one must lay hands on hallowed things. Every one should chastise their children.

S 394. 8 well *above the line* /— **396.** 1 hys / 3 Bot˙/ 4 beyryng *above a word of 6 letters cancelled.*

L 394. 1 godes se*r*uice / gun / 2 faire childe / hide / 3 be twelfe yeres war passed to / 4 couth enugh / nurturs / 5 The goste / descend / 6 wherby / covth / tales / 7 How / shuld / begyn / 8 by / wele / 9 Ca. ii. *in left margin* / aftir yeres twelve / 10 the pr*o*phet / 11 Held / next hym selve / 12 soue*r*an /— **395.** 1 Twoo sonnes / 2 wonned both she / he / 3 Oon ffynees and that othre / 4 twoo / childre / 5 both *omitted* / they lived / lichory / 6 noo / noo / 7 The fadir theym favored / forthy / 8 fowl / they / 9 The sacrifice they stale / 10 theire barnes bred / 11 Therfor theym befell grete bale / 12 othre / theire kyndred /— **396.** 1 Forthy it is goode forto skyll / 2 that halowd / yeme / 3 By theire defavte that noo / 4 beryng / noght / 5 noo / theym / 6 that / godes se*r*uice shuld / 7 And leve eu*er* werkes yll / 8 dovte / that / shal / 9 chastyse / th*er* *omitted* / childre wele / 10 all way *omitted* / they doo of mys / 11 That they noo defavtes fele / 12 on his.

One night the Lord called Samuel, who thought the voice was that of Eli and went to him. Eli bade him lay down again.

397 Now wyll we rede *and* reherse [ryȝt]
how god to Samuell can apeyre.
As he lay slepand on a nyȝt
in þe tempyll, hys mayst*er* nere,
he herd a voyce call hy*m* on heyȝt,
»Samuell, Samuell!» [sithes] s[er].
he rayse hy*m* vp *and* wentt full wygh
vnto his mayst*er* w*ith* myre chere
And sayd, »s*er*, wyll ȝe oght,
I com yow forto kepe;
ȝe cald me als me toyȝt.»
he sayd, »nay sun, go slepe!»

Samuel was called again and went once more to Eli, who told him to sleep and answer the next time, «Lord, here am I.«

398 he wentt *and* layd hy*m* down agayn,
and hastely on slepe he fell.
And sone he herd þe same steuy*n* [certayn]
cald on hy*m* *and* sayd, »samuell!»
he royse *and* wentt w*ith* pase full playn,
and to his mayst*ur* so can he tell.
þen Ely wyst *and* was full fayn
þat god apered þore þem a mell,
»go slepe my son so dere,
and yf on speke þe tyll,
Say þ*us*, 'lord, I am here;
tell me what is þi wyll'.»

God called him the third time and told him that Jacob's descendants should suffer shame, and that Eli would die a sudden death, because of his indulgence to his sons.

399 he sleped in his howse at hame,
and sone wh*en* he to bed was broyȝt,
A voyce come *and* cald hy*m* by name,
and [he] sayd, »lord, þi s*eruant* vn soyȝt
wyll werke þi wyll of wyld *and* tame.»
þen answerd god, as hy*m* gud toyȝt,
»All Jacob suns sall suffer schame
for wekyd ded*es* þat þei haue wroyȝt.
Ely þat þ*ou* wyt wunes
sall sone dye soda*n*ly,
ffor he suffers hys suns
vse theft *and* lechery.»

L 397. 1 wolle / reherce ryght / 2 Samuel gun apere / 3 Ca. iii. *in left margin* / nyght / 4 the temple his maist*er* / 5 He / an voice / hight / 6 Samuel Samuel sithes sere / 7 He rosse vp and went / wyght / 8 maist*er* / mery / 9 said / wolle ȝe / 10 come you / 11 Ye calld / as / thoght / 12 sayd my sonne goo /— **398.** 1 He went / 3 the / voice c*er*tayn / 4 call / say Samuell / 5 He rosse / went / passe / 6 '*and*' *omitted* / vnto his maist*er* / gun / 7 Then / 8 that / appered knew he well / 9 fol. 137. a. / Regum primo *in top margin* / Goo / sone / 10 if oon / to the / 11 thus lorde / 12 What is thy wyll tell me /— **399.** 1 He / hous / home / 2 broght / 3 voice / 4 '*and*' *omitted* / he said lorde thy s*er*vant here / 5 Wolle wyrk thy / 6 then / gud *omitted* / thoght / 7 sonnes shal suffre shame / 8 wikednes that they have wroght / 9 that thou with wonnes / 10 shal / 11 suffres his sonnes / 12 thefte / lichory.

When Eli heard of this from Samuel, he prayed that God should save his sons; but it was in vain. Nothing could be altered, for Samuel was to be a true prophet.

400 þus sayd god vnto samuel
of fell defawt*es* þat folke suld fele.
vnto his mayst*ur* con he tell
how god had demed ylka dele.
And whe*n* Ely had herd his spell,
þat god was greued þen wyst he wele,
And in pr*a*yers full fast he fell
to saue hys suns fro þe vnsele.
Bot no poyntt myȝt be feld
þat samuel sayd suld sew.
ffrom þen furth folke hy*m* held
for pr*o*phett, trest *and* trew.

The Philistines made war on the Israelites and threatened to subdue them. They burnt towns and destroyed corn and wine.

fol. 46 a 401 Sone aft*ur* fell þat phylysteyns
mad grett semblyng on ylka syde
Of pepyll þat were all paynyms,
for both þo names þei bare þat tyde.
On Jacob suns, þat heyght Ebrews,
come þei to were w*ith* mekyll pr*i*de
And says þei sall, what so yt meuys,
be bet or bun all þat wyll abyd.
Cetyes *and* towns þei breynt
oue*r* all in ebrews land.
Both cornys *and* wyns þei schent
and stroyd all þat suld stand.

The Israelites were defeated. 10,000 were killed or taken prisoners.

402 Sone Ebrews herd *and* saw þis syȝt
þat forto byde þei had no beld;
Trowgh owt þe*r* reme þei raysed ryȝt
all wyght men þat myȝt wepy*n*s weld.
Agayns phylysteyns for to fyȝt
þei sped þem fast w*ith* spere *and* scheld.
Bot smertly ware þei putt to flygh,
and fals phylysteyns had þe feld.
þat day was dede *and* takyn
ten thowssand, says þe boke.
So god had þem forsakyn,
for þei his law for soke.

S 400. 10 be *cancelled before* sew / — **402.** 3 t *of* owt *above the line.*

L 400. 1 Thus said / to Samuel / 2 defautes that / shuld / 3 maist*er* gun / 4 sayd eu*e*ry / 6 that / greved then / 7 in his prayers / 8 save his sonnes / that vncele / 9 noo poynt myght / 10 that Samuel sad shuld swe / 11 ffor thens / 12 as pr*o*phet trust / trwe /— **401.** 1 aft*er* befell that Philistiens / 2 made grete semble / ych a syde / Ca: iiii. *in right margin* / 3 ffor people that / all *omitted* / Paynyms / 4 thos names they / that / 5 sonnes that hight / 6 they / mych pryde / 7 they shal / so it meues / 8 bonn / that wolle abyde / 9 Cites / tovnnes the brent / Ebrews / 11 corne / vynes they shent / 12 distroyed / þat *omitted* / shuld /— **402.** 1 saw and hard this sight / 2 that / abyde they / noo belde / 3 Thrugh oute theire Reaume the rassed vpryght / 4 wyght *omitted* / that myght wepens welde / 5 Philistiens forto fyght / 6 they / theym / shelde / 7 smartly were they / flyght / 8 Philistiens / the felde / 9 That / wer deid / taken / 10 thovsand / the booke / iiii m*ĩ*lia *in right margin* / 11 theym forsaken / 12 they / forsooke.

The Hebrews again assembled and brought with them the ark. But more than 30,000 of them were slain, and the ark of God was taken.

403 The Ebrews toyȝt both scath *and* scorne
þat þei suld fro phylysteyns flee.
þei sembled folk fast on þe morne
and sayd þei suld þ*er* solace see.
The arke of god furth haue þei borne;
þ*er wit*h þei wene to wyne degre.
Bot for þei had þ*er* laws lorne,
god wold no werke ne w*it*h þem be.
Of Ebrews sone was slayne
moe þen thrytty thowssand;
þe Arke of god was tone
and led to hethyn land.

Hophni and Phinehas were killed. When their father heard of this, he fell backwards and broke his neck.

404 þus Ebrews þat was putt in p*re*se
war all vm cast w*it*h cares cold.
ffelesteyns þer can full fast encresse,
for þei had god*es* arke *in* wold.
Bot both Ofny *and* fynyes,
Ely suns þat I ayre of told,
þor leued þ*er* lyues w*it*h owtyn lesse.
and þer fad*er*, [f]or he was old,
wh*en* he herd tythyng*es* tell
þat his two suns was slayn,
Down fro his sege he fell
bakward *and* brast his brayn.

The Philistines set the ark by their god Dagon: but vengeance fell upon them, for Dagon was broken by a fall, and in the city where it was there arose a plague of great mice.

405 þus Ely *and* his suns was sloyn,
and Ebrews all was schent for syn.
þe arke of god from þem was gone
w*it*h fellows folk fylystyen.
þei sett yt be þ*er* god Dagon,
for þei to hy*m* wold wrschepe wyne.
Bot vengance sone on þem was tone: fol. 46 b
he fell *and* brake both bone *and* skyne.
And more harme sone at hand
fell ou*er* all þat Cetye:
grett myse groyved owt of sand,
an vgly syȝt to se.

S 404. 3 *The third* e *of* ffelesteyns *above the line.*

L 403. 1 thoght / skath / 2 þat *omitted* / thei shuld / Philistiens flə / 3 They / folk *omitted* / full fast / the / 4 they shuld theire / se / 5 ark / have they / 6 therwith they wened / wyn / 7 they / theire lawes forlorne / 8 not wyrk / theym / 9 were / 10 moo then thirty thovsand / 11 The Ark / taken /— **404.** 1 Thus / that were provde / 2 were / vmcast / 3 Philistiens comforth fast gun encrese / 4 they / ark in theire wold / 5 both *omitted* / ffynees / 6 sonnes that I ere / 7 There levyd theire lyfes withouten lese / 8 theire fadre that was old / 9 When / tithynges / 10 that / twoo sonnes were slayne / 12 hire brayne /— **405** 1 Thus / sonnes were slayn / 2 were shent / 3 The Ark / fro theym / goon / 4 felous folke Philistien / Ca. v. *in right margin* / 5 Thay set it by theire / 6 that vnto hym shuld worship wyn / 7 vengeaunce / hym / taken / 8 boone / skyn/ 10 fell on all that Cite / 11 Grete / groved oute / 12 sight.

406 þei ette þo folke, both flesch *and* blod;
þei had no fors þem to dyffend.
þer bowels royted wher þei stod;
þer was no medcyn þem to mend.
Mony thowssand for woo were wod.
this vengiance god apon þem send,
ffor þe arke of god, þat was so gud,
was haldyn þen in hethyn hend.
þei toke consell þat tyde
and send yt fro Assoton
To a cyte þer be syde,
þat named was askalon.

These mice ate men, while they made the secret parts of others to rot: many thousands became mad. Then the Philistines sent the ark from Ashdod to Ascalon.

407 Bot als sone ose þei toke entent
to mayntein yt þor þem amell,
All þe same harme sone had hent:
þei royted *and* ranked flesch *and* fell.
To V Cetys so was yt sent,
and in ylka place os yt can dwell,
Sone all the folke ware schamly schent,
so grett nowmer þat non myȝt tell.
þen þei toyȝt *and* sayd,
when þei sufferd so sore,
þat god was noyȝt well payd
his Arke was holdyn þore.

In Ascalon and five other cities, to which the ark was sent, the same things happened. The people thought that God was not pleased that the ark should be with them.

408 ffor yt gart all þat greuance groyue
of sorows þat ware to þem soyȝt.
And ȝett þei toyȝt þat poynt to proue
whedder yt was þerfor or noyȝt.
A sotell case þei can contoroue:
A ryall chare sone haue þei wroyȝt
And couerd yt clene[ly] aboue;
þe arke of god þore in þei broyȝt.
ffyfe myse þen gart þei make
and V rynges of gold fyne
ffor the fyfe Cytes sake,
wher folke ware putt to pyne.

To be certain of this, the Philistines put the ark on a royal cart with an offering of five mice and five golden rings.

S 407. 5 VII *instead of* V / 12 1 *cancelled before* Arke /— **408.** 4 ytwas.

L 406. 1 They ete the / flesh / bloode / 2 they / noo force theym / defend / 3 Their / roted where they stoode / 4 there / noo medicyn theym / D 3 *in right bottom corner* / 5 fol. 137 b. / Many thovsand / woode / 6 vengeaunce / on theym / 7 the Ark / that / goode / 8 holden there in haythens / 9 They / counsell that / 10 sent it / Aȝoton / 11 Cite ther by / 12 that Named / Askalon /— **407.** 1 And as / as they tuke / 2 mayntene it there it befell / 3 the / have they hent / 4 they roted / flesh / 5 fyve Cites / it / 6 ych / as it gun / 7 were shamely shent / 8 to grete Noumbre that noon myght / 9 Then they thoght / 10 they soffred that sore / 11 That / noght wele / 12 that his / halden thore /— **408.** 1 Ca. vi. *in left margin* / For it made / theire grevaunce grove / 2 that were / theym soght / yit they thoght that / prove / 4 whethre it were therfore / noght / 5 sutell / they gun controve / 6 a / have they wroght / 7 coverd it clenely above / 8 the ark / therin they broght / 9 ffyve / þen *omitted* / made they / 10 fyve / golde / 11 fyve Cites / 12 where / were put.

Two oxen were chosen to draw the cart into the fields. If the oxen brought the ark near to their country, they would consider that God was with them. Otherwise He would be their enemy.

409 Two oxin þat myȝt yt well weld
sone haue þei schosyn þat chare to draw
And led þem fere furth *in* to þe feld,
þe wyll of god for þei wold knaw.
þei lete þem be *with* owty*n* beld,
none forto lede þem, heygh ne law.
þei stode of ferrom *and* beheld,
and þus þen sayd þei in þ*er* saw,
»yf þe beste*s* bryng yt nere,
þen wyll god *with* vs lend;
And yf þe flytt yt ferre,
he ys not fully o*ur* frend.»

The oxen brought the ark to Beth-shemesh, and the inhabitants offered the cart and oxen as a burnt offering; but they kept the jewels of gold in memory of this miracle.

410 þoo oxin went *with* pace full playn fol. 47 a
And led þe arke to Ebrews land.
phylysteyns, for þei past fro payn,
was glad þat yt was ferre from hand.
Bot bethsamys was ferly fayn
whe*n* þei þe arke in þ*er* feld fand.
p*ro*cession went þei þore agayn
and gafe to yt full grett offerand:
The oxin *and* the chare þei bryntt
be fore þe tab*er*nakyll.
To þe jew[ell]s toke þei tent
in mynd of þis m*er*akyll.

For this boldness — only the Levites are allowed near the ark of God — 60,000 men of Beth-she-mesh were slain. The Levites put the ark in its right place.

411 þen wrschept yt was worthyly.
bot for þat þei vn worthy were,
Moyses ordand in all þe jewry
þat non suld negh godd*es* arke so nere
Bot only þe lynage of leuy,
p*ri*st*es* or dekyns knawn for clere;
Thies folke was not so, *and* for þi
þer boldnes sone þei boyȝt full dere:
vengi*an*ce com sone vnsoyght
apon sexty thowssand.
Sythyn leuy barn yt broyȝt
and sett yt where yt suld stand.

S 411. 2 so nere *cancelled after* were.

L 409. 1 Twoo kye that wele myght it / 2 have they chosen this / 3 theym far / in the feld / 4 the / they / 5 They lete theym goo withouten / 6 nown / led theym high / 7 The stoode / farom / 8 þus *omitted* / then they sayd / theire / 9 If the / it nerre / 10 then wolle / lende / 11 if they flyt it / 12 is noght full oure frende /— **410.** 1 The kye / pase / playne / 2 and / the ark / 3 Philistiens forthy passed / payne / 4 were / glad *omitted* / that it was fare fro / 5 Bethsamyȝ wer / fayne / 6 they the Ark / theire feldes / 7 Procession they went it agayne / 8 gav therto / grete / 9 kye / the *omitted* / chare they brent / 10 before theire Tabernacle / 11 the Jowells tuke they / 12 mynde / this myracle /— **411.** 1 Thei worshipte it as was worthy / 2 that they vnworthy / 3 þe *omitted* / iury / 4that noon shuld / godes ark / 5 oonly the linage / 6 prestes / Dekens known / 7 Thes paynyms were noght / forthy / 8 theire / they boght ful / 9 Vengeaunce come / vnsoght / 10 vpon / thovsand / 11 Sithen levy barnes / yt *omitted* / broght / 12 set it where it shuld.

412 Amynadab, a nobyll jew,
when þat he saw þies folke mysfayre,
he ordand offycers all new,
swylke os he wyst worthy ware,
Of þe most cunnand þat he knew;
and his awn sun Eleazare
ordand he byschop forto be trew
and tech þe folke for all swylke chare.
þen lyfed Ebrews at es
and forsoke synfull dede.
Ay whyls þei wold god plese,
of no thyng had þei nede.

Abinadad ordained new priests from among the wisest men. He made his son Eleazer the high-priest. Then the Israelites lived at ease and forsook evil ways.

413 Samuel was sufferan cald
and leyrer of þer laws full lang.
Two suns he had, wyght men *and* bold,
þat melled þem of þe law amang.
Bot þer Iugementes oft sythys þei sold
and turned þe ryȝt oft vnto þe wrang.
And þer fader, for he was old,
myȝt noyȝt þem mare of myse to gang.
ffor pure men held þei fode
and [f]old þem mony fold,
And rych men for þer gud
myȝt werke what euer þei wold.

Samuel ruled Israel all the days of his life. His two sons, as judges, acted wrongly: they perverted judgment and took bribes.

414 All gude men had full grett dedyne
þat ryȝt suld be so mysarayd.
And Comyn pepyll can þem pleyn
to Samuell, *and* þus þei sayd,
fol. 47 b »Syr, þe semys sone to passe hene,
for eld þi face is all afrayd.
To forther vs þou suld not feyne,
our gouernance of mysse is grayd.
þerfor, ser, of þis thyng
we pray þe euere ylkon:
Ordand ouer vs a kyng
to gyd vs when þou art gone.»

The people complained of this bad government to Samuel, and asked for a king.

S 412. 12 no *cancelled after* no /— **413.** 8 þ *cancelled before* mare / 10 sold /— **414.** 2 somysarayd / 5 liber *primus* Samuel *in top margin.*

L 412. 1 Ca. vii. *in left margin* / noble Jew / 2 that / the folke mysfare / 3 He / officers / 4 suche as / wytty / 5 the / connand that / 6 sone Eliazare / 7 Ordand / byshop to be / 8 the / fro / suche care / 9 Then lyved / ease / 10 forsuke / 11 whylst they Wold / god *omitted* / please / 12 noo / they / — **413.** 1 Ca. viii. *in left margin* / was for sofferan told / 2 ledere / theire laws / 3 Twoo sonnes / 4 that / theym / the / 5 theire jugementes ofte sithes they / 6 the right ofte / þe *omitted* / 7 theire fadre for he wold / 8 might noght theym mar / mis / 9 ffro povere / they foode / 10 fulyd theym many folde / 11 ryche / their goode / 12 myght wyrke / they wolde /— **414.** 1 fol. 138. a. / Regum primo *in top margin* / goode / grete dysdeyn / 2 that ryght shuld / 3 comon people gun theym / 4 Samuel / thus they / 5 Ser sone ye semes pas for hethyns / 6 elde thy / affrayd / 7 forthire / thou shuld / 8 oure gouernaunce omys / 9 Therfore S *r* / this / 10 the euerychoone / 11 Ordan / 12 gyde / thou / goone.

Samuel knew that this request displeased God.

415 »Eu*er* ylka nacion bot we
hath kynge*s* chosyn at þ*er* awn chose.
And, s*er*, þi suns, soth we see,
þei wyll not leue *our* laws to losse.
þ*er*for A kyng in þis cuntre
grawnt vs to haue w*ith* owtyn glose.»
he wyst full well god wold not be
plessed nor payd of þis purpasse,
ffor pr*o*phette*s*, pr*i*ste*s* *and* clerke*s*
gouernd all way be fore,
And god ordand þ*er* werke*s*.
for þi þus sayd he þore,

He reminded the people of all the good things God had given them, and said that they should not desire a king.

416 »Syrs, ȝe wott what god hath wroyȝt
for yow *and* all yo*ur* ofspryng:
yo*ur* elders owt of bondeyg he broyȝt
fro pharo, þat cursed kyng.
he send þem fode enogh of noyȝt
in wyldernes, þat was a wond*er* thyng.
And to yo*ur* selfe he sende*s* vnsoyȝt
to lyfe heyre at yo*ur* awn lykyng.
he sayues yow lyth *and* lym.
þ*er*for now forto haue
Oyder thyng þen hym,
I consell noyȝt ȝe craue.»

Samuel told them of the manner of kings.

417 »I sall yow say encheson why,
and ose I say, so fynd ȝe sall.
ȝe haue now non bot god all*migh*ty,
[that wele may govern both grete and small.
ffro a kyng have of you maistry,]
now are ȝe fre, þen ware ȝe thrale.
yo*ur* corne, yo*ur* catell, ox *and* kye
bus redy come vnto his call.
As hym thynke yt wyll seme,
so bus yow ryde *and* gang
And do os he wyll deme,
whed*er* yt be ryȝt or wrang.»

L 415. 1 Evere ych Nacion / 2 has kyngeȝ chosen / theire / 3 S*er* thy sonnes suth / se / 4 they wolle / lefe oure law to lose / 5 Therfore a / this / 6 graunte / have withouten / 7 He wist / wele / 8 pleassed ne / this purpose / 9 pr*o*phetes prestes / 10 gou*er*ned eu*er* afore / 11 theire / 12 forthy thus / thore /— **416.** 1 Sires ye wote / has wroght / 2 you / youre / 3 Youre / oute / bondage / broght / 4 Pharao that / 5 He sent theym foode enugh for noght / 6 wyldirnes was woundr*e* thyng / 7 youre self / vnsoght / 8 lyf here / youre awn likyng / 9 He saves you lith / 10 therfor / have / 11 An othr*e* kyng then / 12 counsell noght ye crave /— **417.** 1 shal yov / 2 as / ye shall / 3 Ye / noon now but / myghty / 4—5 = *text above* / 6 ar ye / then be ye thrall / 7 Youre / youre / or ky / 8 must / 9 thynk it wolle / 10 must ye / 11 doo as / wolle / 12 whethir it / ryght.

His words were in vain. The people insisted on having a king, and Samuel gave way. They were satisfied by his promise.

418 þus *pre*ched he þem by *pro*cesse playn
qwat care suld come *in* all swylke case.
Bot all his wordes was *in* vayn:
þei answerd spytfully in þat [sp]ace,
»*ser*, we wyll haue a kyng *cer*tayn,
as þe pepyll hath in o*þer* place,
To mayntein vs *with* myȝt *and* mayn
Agayns phylysteyns, [our] face.»
fol. 48 a he heyght þem forto haue
a kyng in tyme co*m*yng.
þei keped noyȝt els to craue;
þe[n] hom went old *and* ȝyng.

In Maspha, where Samuel dwelt, there lived a certain man, Kish, with his son Saul. One day Saul was sent to find some lost asses belonging to his father.

419 In masphat soyournd samuel
and mad gret mornyng for þ*er* mysse.
And in þat same Cyte can dwell
A nobyll man, was named Cys.
he had a sun, Saul to tell,
a cu*m*ly chyld to clype *and* kyse.
And in þat same tym so be fell
þat asses was *with* rachyd of hys.
he bad *with* word*es* meke
saul, his sun *cer*tayn,
wend furth his best*es* to seke
and bryng þem home agayn.

Saul and his servant were not successful in their search, and Saul suggested that they should return home.

420 Saul was both meke *and* myld
to fyll his fad*er* co*m*mawndme*n*t.
he toke *with* hy*m* an o*þer* chyld
for feleschepe, *and* furth þei went.
þei soyȝt be ways *and* wast*es* wyld
þe assys þat þei to seke ware sent.
þei fand none þat cowde be þ*er* byld
to tell in what land þei war*e* lent.
Saul Sayd, »we wyll gang
vnto my fad*er* agayn;
hy*m* thynke we dwell full lang,
and our gatt ys in vayne.»

S 418. 4 place / 9 Samuel, Saule *written in upper margin* / 12 þem /— **419.** 4 Anobyll / 5 Saule *with* e *cancelled* / 8 with rachayd.

L 418. 1 Thus / theym / playne / 2 what / shuld / such / 3 were / vaine / 4 they / spitusly / that space / 5 Ser / wolle a kyng have certayne / 6 as the people have / othre / 7 maynten / myght / mayne / 8 agayns philistiens oure foes / 9 He hight theym / have / 11 They / noght elles / crave / 12 þem *omitted* / bot home / olde / ying /— **419.** 1 Masphat soiorned Samuel / 2 made grete / theire mys / Ca. ix. *in right margin* / 3 that / Cite gun / 4 a noble / Cis / 5 He / sonne / 6 comly childe / halse and kys / 7 that / tyme / befell / 8 thas asses were with raked / his / 9 He / 10 Saul / sonne / 11 Wend / 12 theym / agayne /— **420.** 2 fullfill / fadre comaundment / 3 He / othre / 4 feliship / they / 5 They soght by / 6 the asses that they / were / 7 They / noon / þat *wanting* / couth / theire / 8 they were / 9 sayd let us gang / 10 fadre agayne / 11 Hym thynk / 12 oure gate is in vayne.

However, by the advice of the servant they first went to see Samuel.

421 hys *ser*uand sayd, »nay, *ser*, lett vs byde
sum bett*ur* bodword home to bryng.
Samuel wunes heyr be syde,
a wyse *pr*ophett þat wott all thyng.
he sall vs tell in full schort tyde
of *our* beste*s* sum trew tythyng.
Sen we haue wasted ways wyde,
our help now *in* his hand may hyng.»
Saul full sone assent;
þis way he wold not lett.
To þe Cyte þei wentt,
and samuel sone þei mett.

Saul asked for his help; and Samuel saw that the young man was both comely and strong. He thought that Saul had been sent from Heaven to be the king of the Israelites.

422 þei *pr*ayd hy*m* wysch þem, yf he myȝt,
to þ*er* assys þat went war*e* wrang.
he sayd, »suns, dwels w*ith* me all nyȝt;
þen sall ȝe wytt, or ȝe gang.»
he saw saul semly to syȝt
and of fayr stature to be strang,
And werned he was from heuy*n* on heyȝt
þat he suld be kyng Ebrews amang.
ffolke dyde *ser*uyce þat day,
full grett ose custom kend,
And to god can þei *pr*ay
sum gud kyng þem to send.

Samuel entertained Saul in his house and treated him as a king; at which all the people wondered.

423 And whe*n* þat wrschepe was all done
and tyme was for þe folke to twen,
The *pr*ophett at þe howre of noyne
toke þoo two chylde*r* to his yne,
And whede*r* folke ware felle or fone,
he dyde saule þe deyse be gyne
And made hy*m* to be *ser*ued sone,
als he ware co*m*yn of kynge*s* kyne.
Ebrews had all ferly
why þat þis werke was wroyȝt.
Samuel wold not say why;
he wyst þat þei wyst noyȝt.

fol. 48 b

L 421. 1 His *ser*uaunt / nay *omitted* / let / abyde / 2 bette*r* / bring / 3 wonnes here besyde / 4 *pr*ophet that wote / 5 He shal / vs *omitted* / shorte / 6 trewe tithing / 7 Sithen / have / 8 oure helpe / D 4 *in right bottom corner* / 9 fol. 138 b. / 10 this Way / Wold / let /11 the Cite they Went / 12 Samuel / they met /— **422.** 1 They / wysh theym if / myght / 2 theire asses that / were / 3 He said sonnes dwell / nyght / 4 then shal ye wit or eue*r* ye / 5 He / Sau lsemely / syght / 6 faire / 7 warned / fro hevyn / hight / 8 that / shuld / 9 did *ser*uice that / 10 grete as custome was kend / 11 gun they / 12 gode / theym / — **423.** 1 that worship / doone / 2 the / twyn / 3 *pr*ophet / the houre / noone / 4 tuke thes twoo childre / yn / 5 whethre / were many / foone / 6 did Saul the dese begyn / 7 *ser*ved soone / 8 as / were comen / kyngys kyn / 10 that this wark / wroght / 11 noght / 12 that they / noght.

On the following morning Samuel spoke to Saul alone.

424 þat he suld be kyng well he kend;
þerfor he rewled in swylke aray.
In his awn loge þat nyȝt þei lend,
and on þe morn when yt was day,
with þem he ordand hym to wende
and toke saul be syd þe way
And sayd, »þus god hath me send
all his entent to þe at say.
To I haue told my toyȝt,
byd þi felow furth goo,
ffor what god wyll [b]e wroyȝt
sall non wytt bot we two.»

His servant was sent away. Samuel then told Saul that he was to be king.

425 he dyde hys seruant hym withdraw,
and þen he sayd, »saul, take hede!
god hath so ordand þat þe aw
his folke in land to lere *and* lede.
And for þer kyng þei sall þe knaw
and sewt *and* seruyce to þe bede.
Ay whyls þou lufes god *and* his law,
he wyll be nere in all þi nede.
And yf þou wyll ga wrang
and werke agayns his wyll,
þi lordschep lastes not lang.
þerfor take tent þer tyll!»

Samuel anointed Saul king and gave him good counsel. He foretold that Saul would meet three young men, who would give him three loaves.

426 he toke oyle, os god had hym kend,
þat blessed was of god be fore,
And an oynt hym both hed *and* hend
and cald hym kyng *and* kyssed hym þore.
And sythyn to god he hym be kend
and told hym wher his assys wore
And þe ryȝt way how he suld wend,
and ȝett þat tym he told hym more.
»ffull semly chylder III,
sun», he sayd,» sall þou mette.
Thre loyuys sall þei gyf þe
with wordes wyse *and* swete»

S 424. 11 he.

L 424. 1 That / shuld / wele / 2 therfore he did in such Aray / 3 lugge that nyght they / 4 the / it / 5 With theym / wend / 6 tuke Saul beside the / 7 said sonne thus / has / 8 the to / 9 have / thoght / 10 thy fellay / 11 wolle have wroght / 12 shal noon wyt / twoo /— **425.** 1 He did his / 2 then / Saul / 3 God has / that ye / 5 theire / they shal you / 6 sute / seruice / the / 7 whilst thou / 8 wolle / thy / 9 thogh thou / wyll *omitted* / goo / 10 wyrke / 11 Thy lordeship / 12 therfore / thertyll /— **426.** 1 Ca. x. *in left margin* / He tuke / as / 2 that blyssed / before / 3 anoynted / 4 called / there / 5 sithen / bekend / 6 where is asses were / 7 the ryght / they shuld / 8 yit that tyme / 9 semely childre thre / 10 he sayd sonne shal thou mete / 11 loves they shal yeve the.

Saul would also prophesy in Gibeath. These were to be the signs whereby he was to know that God had chosen him king.

427 »And forthermer þen þe avyse:
in gabatha þor sall be seyne
*pro*phettes þat ar *pro*uyd i*n* *pri*ce
and cu*n*nand clerke*s* in clergy clene.
þou sall speke wi*th* þem *pro*fecye[s]
and tell what maters may be mene.
þei sall wounder on þe*r* wyse
and say þus, 'wher hath saul bene?'
Sun, yf þou se in ce*r*tayn
þis fulfyll in all thyng,
Trow þen wi*th* owtyn trayn
þat god wyll haue þe kyng.»

Samuel and Saul agreed to meet at Maspha. Saul went home and told his father what had happened, but did not mention the matter of the kingship.

428 »Grete well þi fade*r* as faythfull frend,
þi moyde*r* *and* o þe*r* mene ȝe mo.
And whe*n* þe terme is comyn to end,
þat we haue tane be twyx vs two,
To Masphat sall we same wend.»
so ylkon cayred wher þei come fro.
þe maters þat þe *pro*phet mened,
euyn in þe*r* fayre þei fand þem so.
Saul sone told full euy*n*
his fade*r* of all his fare,
Bot no thyng wold he neuyn
of kyndom forto declare.

Samuel called together the people at Maspha, where he had promised to give them a king. The tribe of Benjamin was chosen by lot.

429 when þe seson come þat þei had sett,
to masphat geydderd full gret wone.
þe*r* Samuel *and* saul mete
wi*th* myȝt[y] Ebrews mony one,
ffor in þat place he had þem hett
to haue a kyng whore þei had none.
And lotte*s* þei layd wi*th* outy*n* lett
of what kynred kyng suld be tone.
ffor so assent þei all,
and sone whe*n* þei be g[y]ne,
The lott con lyȝt *and* fall
on þe lyne of Beniamyn.

S 427. 8 saule *with* e *cancelled* / — **429.** 10 be gane.

L 427. 1 forthire more thou the / 2 Gabatha ther shal / sene / 3 *Pro*phetes that are *pre*ved / pryse / 5 Thou shall / theym *pro*phecise / 6 bemene / 7 They shall have *mer*vell on theire / 8 thus where has Saul / 9 Sonne if thou se certayne / 10 this fullfylled / 11 then withouten trayne / 12 that / wolle have the /— **428.** 1 wele thy fadre / fathfull frende / 2 thy modre / othre menye moo / 3 the / comen / ende / 4 that / have told betwyx / twoo / 5 shal we twoo wende / 6 ych oon went where they / froo / 7 The / that the / mende / 8 evyn / theire faire they fand it soo / 9 soone / evyn / 10 fadre / 11 nothyng / nevyn / 12 kyngdome to /— **429.** 1 When / þe *omitted* / season / that they / set / 2 Masphat gedred / grete woone / 3 There / Saul met / 4 myghty / many oon / 5 fol. 139. a. / Regum primo *in top margin* / that / theym het / 6 have / were they / noon 7 they / withouten let / 8 which kyndred / shuld be taken / 9 they / 10 soone / they begyn / 11 lote gun lyght / 12 the.

Lots were cast again, and Saul, the son of Kish, was chosen. The Israelites rejoiced, for he was a tall and strong man.

430 þen sone þei layd þ*er* lott*es* agayn
[to wit which man shuld amend their*e* mys,
And soone it light, is noght at layne,]
apon saul, þe sun of Cys.
þen samuel sayd, »s*er*s, c*er*tayn
be cowrse of kynd yo*ur* kyng he ys.»
þe Ebrews answerd *and* ware fayn.
kyng myȝt he be w*ith* mekyll blyse.
he was cu*m*ly to ken,
of breyd *and* heyghnes als,
A bowe all o*þer* men
both be þe hede *and* þe hals.

They raised him to a seat of dignity, knelt down, and called him king. Samuel advised them to love him well.

431 þei rayssed hym vp into a stall
on heyght þat all men myȝt hy*m* see.
þei kneled on knesse *and* kyng hy*m* cal[l],
as costom was in þat cuntre.
þe[n] Samuel sayd vnto þem all,
»s*er*s, all yo*ur* ȝernyng now haue ȝe.
what fayre to yow ferther fall.
sett no defawt to god ne me.
Sen ȝe haue god forsakyn
and his doyng ylka dele
And to a kyng yow takyn,
loke þat ȝe luf hy*m* wele.»

Then the people dispersed. The wise Israelites went with Saul, ready to fulfil his commands; some foolish men at first were displeased, but were drawn towards him by his good rule and in fear of revenge.

432 »And kepe þe lawes þat moyses kend,
leese þat ȝe ȝeld yo*ur* self to spyll.»
þen lyst þem þore no langer lend,
bot ylk man went at þ*er* awn wyll.
fol. 49 b wyse Ebrews w*ith* þ*er* kyng con wend
redy hys bedyng to fulfyll.
Sum o*þer* foyles can yt dyffend
and sayd þei assent not þ*er* tyll.
Bot sythyn whe*n* þei saw
his gudly gou*er*nan*ce*,
þen to hy*m* can þei draw
for dowt of aft*ur* chaunce.

S 431. 3 kyng hy*m* cald / 5 þem / – **432.** 2 spyll *above* pyn *cancelled.*

L 430. 1 Then soone they / theire lotes agayne / 2 [illegible] *text above* 4 opon Saul the sonne / Cis / 5 Then Samuel / s*er*is c*er*tayne / 6 by course / youre kyng is this / 7 The / were fayne / 8 myght / mych blis / 9 He / 10 brede / highnes also / 11 Above / other / 12 by the / the /— **431.** 1 They rased / vnto / 2 hight that / might / 3 They knelyd / knes / kyng hym did call / 4 custome / that / 5 Then / theym / 6 s*er*is / youre yernyng / have ye / 7 What fare / you ferthire / 8 put not defaute on god / 9 Sithen ye have / forsaken / 10 and my dooyng ych dele / 11 you taken / 12 lukes that ye lufe /— **432.** 1 the laws that Moyses / 2 les that ye spede / 3 Then lest theym there / leng*er* / 4 ych / theire / Ca. xi. *in right margin* / 5 Wyse / theire / gun / 6 his bidyng / 7 othre foels gun it defend / 8 they assentyd noght thertyll / 9 sithen / they / 10 goodely gou*er*naunce / 11 Then / gun they / 12 dovte / aft*er*.

Saul put his realm in order, always following the wisdom of Samuel. At this time Nahash, king of the Ammonites, was conquering the children of Israel wherever he found them.

433 Saul was ordand on þis wyse
kyng of þe Ebrews, all *and* sum.
he sett his reme in gud assyce
and wroyȝt by Samuel wysdum.
Sythyn Naas, kyng of amanys,
þ[a]t wund full ferre be ȝond þe flome,
Ordand hym redely forto ryse
with cuntreys þat to hym wold come.
Ebrews he con dystroy,
euer als he myȝt þem geyte,
And none myȝt to hym noye,
so was hys power grete.

He burnt their towns and cities, and destroyed their strongholds and their corn and wine. The people were given the choice by him of either losing their right eye, or suffering death. Many were killed, and many lost their sight.

434 he byrns þer towns *and* þer Cetyes
and stroys þer catell, corn *and* wyne.
þe febyll folke þat hym not flees
to fell [al]so he wyll not fyne.
All þat he sees sone sall chese
on of þo twa to take or tyne:
Auder the ryght Eye forto lese,
or suffer ded *with* dew[l]full pyne.
þus mekyll folke was slayn,
þat wold þem fend *with* fyȝt,
And mony was put to payn
thrugh losyng of þer syȝt.

Nahash passed on to Jabesh-Gilead and besieged it. To save the city the elders chose to yield themselves to Nahash.

435 So wendes he furth *and* neuer fynys,
bot euer his cumpany encresse
vnto he come to galadyns
in a cyte, þat heyt Iab[e]se.
þer settes he gyberokes *and* engyns;
of þat sawt he wyll not sese
Tyll all *with* in be put to pyns.
and at the last þer cheftans chese
At ȝeld þem to Naas,
þer Cyte so to [h]aue
And wel[d] all þat þor was,
þer lyfes alone to [s]aue.

S 434. 6 þor / 11 putto /— **435.** 2 encresses / 4 Jabas / 10 saue / 11 well / 12 haue.
L 433. 1 in this / 2 the / 3 He set / Reaume / goode asise / 4 wroght/ Samuels wysdom / 5 Sithen / Amonyse / 6 that wonned / far beyond the flume / 7 rudly / Ryse / 8 cuntres that wold to hym come / 9 gun distroye / 10 as / myght theym gete / 11 noon myght / to *omitted* / Noye / 12 his power was so grete /— **434.** 1 He brins theire townes / their Cites / 2 distroys theire catel corne / 3 The / that / fles / 4 fell theym he wolle not / 5 that he takes soone shal ches / 6 oon / the twoo / 7 Avthre / egh forto les / 8 suffre deid / dulefull / 9 Thus mych / slayne / 10 that / theym defend / fyght / 11 many were put to payne / 12 thurgh / theire syght /— **435.** 1 fynes / 2 company gun encrese / 3 Vnto / Galadynes / 4 In Cite that hight Jabes / 5 There / gyberakes / engines / 6 that assavt / wolle / cese / 7 Bot all within he sore pynes / 8 the cheftans did chese / 9 And yeld theym / 10 theire Cite so to save / 11 weld all that there / 12 theire / alloone / have.

When Nahash put before them the usual choice, they grieved and asked for seven days' respite.

436 when Naas herd þer resons ryfe,
he sayd þei suld chese on of two:
he þat wyll ȝeld hym sall haue lyfe,
bot hys ryȝt Eye sall he forgo;
»And all þo þat wyll stand with stryfe
we sall not sese, or we þem slo.»
þen weped sore both man *and* wyfe.
þei cowd not wele þe werse of [þ]o,
Bot of pece þei hym prayd
[t]o seuyn days ware past,
»ffor sertes, ser,» þei sayd,
»no langer may we last.»

King Nahash abode in that place and granted the truce. The people of Jabesh-Gilead sent messengers to Saul to ask for help.

fol. 50 a 437 [þe] kyng kest hym noyȝt to remoue
bot styll to abyd in þat [same] stede.
And *com*forth to þem non he knew
bot þe seuynt day to suffer dede.
þerfor þat tyme hee grawntt trew,
and þei sent furth full fast on hede
To saul þat was kyng [of] new
and told how þei ware wyll of rede.
»Our carfull end we kene
bot þou vs sone releue.
Sen we ar made þi men,
helpe to mend our myschefe!»

Saul promised to come to their rescue within three days.

438 when saul herd tell þis trayn,
amang his men he made grett mone
And sayd he wold dyffend þam fayn;
so sayd his ebrews ylk one.
he bad þe messyngers wend agayn
and hald þe trew þat þei had tone.
ffor socour sall þei haue certayn
or thre days next be comyn *and* gone.
þei wentt, as he þem bad,
full tyte vnto Iabes.
þen Gabonyse was glad
when þei happyn to haue pese.

S 436. 8 two / 10 so /— **437.** 7 o *cancelled before* new / 10 l *cancelled before* vs.

L 436. 1 When / theire Reson ryfe / 2 they shuld ches oon / twoo / 3 He that wolle yelde / shal have / 4 his right egh he shal forgoo / 5 they that wolle / 6 shal / cese / theym sloo / 7 Then / 8 they couth / chese the warst / thoo / 9 peace they / 10 vnto seven days were / 11 certes / they / 12 noo lenger /— **437.** 1 fol. 139. b. / The kyng cast / not / remeve / 2 abyde in that same / 3 theym noone / 4 the sevent / sofre / 5 Therfore that / he graunted trews / 6 they / 7 Saul that / of new / 8 they were wyl / 9 Oure carefull / ken / 10 thou / soone releve / 11 Sithen / are made thy / 12 amend oure myscheve /— **438.** 1 When Saul / tell of this trayne / 2 among / gret moone / 3 defend theym fayne / 4 euerychoone / 5 He / the messyngers wende agayne / 6 the trews that they / taken / 7 socoure shal they have certayne / 8 days / next *omitted* / becomen / goone / 9 They went as / theym / 10 ful tite / 11 Then / were / 12 they hoped / have pes.

By means of threats, Saul made three cities join forces with him.

439 The kyng saule in his mynd hath ment
how he myȝt semyll his pepyll sone.
Ane ox he dyd [br]yng in present
and bad he suld to ded be done.
þare of to thre Cetys he sent
and sayd, whedd*er* þei had fele or fone,
þar best*es* suld haue þe same jugment
bot yf þei hastyd w*ith*outyn hoyne
To wend w*ith* hym in ware
þ*er* enmys owt to dryfe.
All þat myȝt armys beyr
was bown to go be lyfe.

Saul numbered 600,000 men of Israel: the men of Judah could not be counted. Samuel urged them not to fear, for God would give them the victory.

440 The kyng gart nowmer þem *and* tell,
þem þat suld come i*n* com*pa*ny.
þei fand [of] folke of isr*ael*
sex C M men myȝty,
And of Juda als fell þ*er* fell,
þe nowmers ar not forto dyscrye.
vnto þem all sayd samuel,
»wend*es* furth, ȝe sall [haue] þe vyctory.
fforto dyffend yo*ur* ryȝt
þat enmys hath ou[t]rayd
God wyll enforc yo*ur* fyȝt.
þ*er*for be noyȝt afrayd!»

Saul with his army took the Philistines by surprise and utterly defeated them.

441 kyng saull w*ith* his host is wun
to jabes, wher þe phylysteyns dwell.
þe fellows folke sone hath he fone,
þat sorely soiornd in þ*er* sell.
In a mornyng be for þe sun
w*ith* all host [on] þem [he] fell
And bett þem doun os best*es* bun. fol. 50 b
þor was no more tale to tell.
Or þei myȝt wepyns weld
to were þ*em*self fro wo,
ware þei feld in þe feld
þat none myȝt flytt þer fro.

S 439. 2 sone *above the line* / 3 kyng /— **440.** 10 it *cancelled before* þat / ou*er*rayd / — **441.** 6 host þem forto fell.

L 439. 1 The *omitted* / Kyng Saul / has / 2 myght semble the people soone / 3 / 3 An / did bryng / 4 made he shuld / deid / doone / 5 Therof / sere Citees / 6 whethre they / many / foone / 7 Theire / shuld have the / Jugement / 8 if they were right sone boone / 9 wende / werre / 10 theire / oute / dryve / 11 that myght armes berre / 12 were boune / wende belyve /— **440.** 1 made noumbre / þem *omitted* / 2 tham that shuld / company / 3 They / of folke / Israell / 4 sex *with* iii *written above* / vnderyth thovsand / myghty / 5 as mony there / 6 the noumbres / to dyscry / 7 Vnto theym / Samuell / 8 ye shal have the victory / 9 defend youre ryght / 10 that Enmys has outrayd / 11 wolle enforce youre fyght / 12 therfor / not affrayd / — **441.** 1 Kyng Saul / oste / wonne / 2 Iabes where the Philistiens did dwell / 3 The felous folke soone has / fonne / 4 that surely soiorned / theire cell / 5 before the sonne / 6 all his force on theym he / 7 bet theym downe as / boune / 8 there / noon othre tales / 9 they myght wepens welde / 10 werre theym self / woo / 11 There they fell in the felde / 12 that noone myght flyt ther froo.

442 Naas, þat wold no rawnson take
b[ot] Eyne of all þat he myȝt hent,
now myȝt no man his sorow slake
tyll Eyne *and* eyrs *and* all ware schent.
þe Ebrews now may myrthys make,
þat late be for of mornyng ment,
And fals phylysteyns for þer sake
owt of þis werld with wo ar went.
kyng Saul slogh þat day
a hunderth with his handes,
And wan wrschepe for ay
to hym *and* all his landes.

Nahash, who at one time would accept no ransom, now lost his eyes and ears. The false Philistines were slain; Saul himself killed a hundred men and gained everlasting renown.

443 This was fyrst chaunce of cheualry
þat kyng saul fell *in* þis case.
grett boldnes hath his folke þerby
and grett ferdnes to all his face.
ffolke þat be fore was not frendly,
now ware þei fayn at fall to grace.
And he had myȝt þen *and* maystry
on all ebrews *in* ylka place.
þei gat, both grett *and* small,
þat myȝt full gretly gayn,
And home þei went with all;
þa[n] ware þe folke vn slayn.

Through this victory, Saul's reputation was confirmed and his sovereignity renewed.

444 þei thanked samuel of þis thyng,
for by his wytt þei wroyȝt allway.
And lowd þei kest vp a cryyng,
and to þe kyng þus can þei pray,
»yf any Ebrews, old or ȝyng,
þat ow to lyfe be moyses lay,
And wyll not knaw þe for þer kyng,»
þat þei be done to ded þis day,
All for þei suld be flayd
þat fyrst was turned hym fro.
Bot he answerd *and* sayd,
»god wold not we dyd so.»

The people gave thanks to Samuel for this thing. But they wished to put to death all who did not live according to the law of Moses, or recognise Saul as king. Saul would not agree to this.

S 442. 2 be /— **443.** 4 to *for* tok; *cf. 281.8* / 6 grace *above the line* / 9 gart / gra *cancelled before* gart / 10 al *above the line cancelled* / 12 þat /— **444.** 3 lowdþei.

L 442. 1 that / noo ravnson take / 2 bot eghen / that / myght / 3 Now myght noo / 4 to eghen / eres / was shent / 5 The / myrthes / 6 that befor / 7 Philistiens / theire / 8 oute / this warld / woo / 9 Kyng / that / 10 hunderyth / 11 Worship /— **443.** 1 first / chevalrie / 2 that / Saul wan in this / 3 Gret / has his folk therby / 4 grete / foes / 5 that before wer / 6 Now were they fayne to / 7 myght then / maistry / 8 ouer all Ebrews / ych a place / 9 They gate goode grete / 10 that myght / gretely gane / 11 they / 12 then wer the / full fane /— **444.** 1 They / Samuel / this / 2 wit they wroght / 3 lovde they cast / crying / thus to the kyng gun they say / 5 If / Ebrew olde / ying / 6 that owe / by Moyses law / 7 wolle noght knowe the / theire / 8 that they / doon / deth this / 9 fol. 140. a. / Regum primo *in top margin* / All was for they shuld / flayde / 10 that first were / froo / 11 sayde / 12 noght / did soo.

He told them to be merciful, even as God had been to them: so all the people praised him and became his followers.

445 »Sen god hath [ȝ]yfyn vs vyctory
and our enmys on kares cast,
he wyll þat [w]e for gyf gladly
all þo þat to vs haue trespast.
All þat wyll mekly aske mercy
sall haue our frendschep full *and* fast.»
The pepyll prayssed hym fast for þi
and sayd his lordschep lang suld last.
So was all folk his frend,
and none grochedhym agayn,
ffor hys wordes fayr *and* hend
all ware to his bod bayn.

Samuel exhorted the people to love their king; and they made him king for the third time. He now had lordship over all the tribes of Israel.

446 Samuel says, »sers, yow avyse fol. 51 a
qwat lordschepe god hath yow sent!
loues hym with all your sacrafyce
of all his grace with gud entent!»
So dyd þei ylkon on þer wyse,
and vnto Saul sone þei went
And raysed hym kyng. þen was yt thryse
with þe fyrst tyme þat he toke vntment.
So was he kyng hym selfe
lordschep to haue and hald
Ouer all þe kynredes twelue
þat Iacob suns was cald.

The people were known by different names: Hebrews after Abraham, Jews after Judah, and Canaanites after Canaan.

447 Now for þer names so oft tyms news,
to what entent now wyll I tell:
Of abraham ware þei cald Ebrews;
with forme faders so yt be fell.
And of Iuda þei ware cald jews
and with sum chylder of israel.
Of canan ware þei cald cananews.
so in sere cuntres os þei dwell,
Be sere names ware þei kend,
als clerkes well declare,
And god can with þem lend
ay whyls þei luf his lare.

S 445. 3 he / 6 d *of* frendschep *above the line* / 9 frendes / 12 h *cancelled before* to / bode *with* -e *cancelled* /— **446.** 2 lordschepe to god hath yow / 6 Saul *above* samuel *cancelled.*

L 445. 1 Syth / has yeven / victorye / 2 oure Enmys in cares / 3 He wolle that we forgyve gladlye / 4 tho that / has tryspast / 5 that wolle mekely / mercye / 6 shal have oure frendship ful / 7 The people praysed / fulfast forthy / 8 lordship long shuld / 9 folke / frende / 10 noone / agayne / 11 his / faire / hende / 12 were / bidyng bayne /—**446.** 1 seris you / 2 what lordship god has to you lent / 3 Loves / with youre sacrifice / 4 graces / goode / 5 did they ychoon / theire / 6 sith they / 7 rased / then / it thrise / 8 the first / that / tuke vnment / 10 lordship / have / 11 the / twelfe / 12 that / sonnes were /— **447.** 1 theire / tymes / 2 that intent / woll / 3 Abraham were they called / 4 forn fadres / it befell 5 they were called Jews / 6 childre / Israell / 7 Canaan they were called Cananews / 8 cuntres all they dwell / 9 Names were they / 10 as / can wele declare / 11 gun / theym / 12 whilst they kepe / lawe.

Samuel testified his integrity.

448 þen samuel sayd, »*sers*, I yow *pray*
þat ȝe wyll tell heyr to yo*ur* kyng
yf I dyd eue*r* by nyȝt or day
trespase to yow, old or ȝyng,
Or toke yo*ur* catell, corn or hay,
ox or asse or oþ*er* thyng.»
þei sayd, »*ser*, forsoth nay!
ȝe greued vs neue*r* in gouernyng.»
»þen haue ȝe now mystakyn
and se*r*ued to suffer pyne,
Sen ȝe hath both forsakyn
godd*es* gouernan*ce* *and* myne.»

The people prayed for a sign of God's grievance, and He sent the worst thunderstorm ever seen at that time of the year.

449 »And yf god wi*th* yow greued be,
for ȝe haue groched hy*m* a gayn,
p*ray* we hy*m*, both I *and* ȝe,
þat he send vs sum seyn *cer*tayn
Of his greuan*ce* i*n* þis degre.»
and soyn he sent a proyfe full playn:
Swylke wedd*er* þat wonder was to se
of thono*ur*, leuy*nyng*, hayle *and* rayne
And frost, full fell *and* kene,
þat be fore was full clere.
Swylke wedders was neue*r* seyne
in þat tyme of þe ȝere.

The people were satisfied at this and went to Samuel, who promised to pray for them, if they kept God's commandments and loved His law.

450 ffor þen þei had þ*er* har[vest] grayd
to geydd*er* home, both wyn *and* corne.
fol. 51 b þen wyst þei well god was not payd,
and þat þei had on myse þem born.
Vnto þe pr*o*phett fast þei p*ray*d,
»haue m*er*cy, els we be lorne.»
»I sall p*ray* for yow, *sers*», he sayd,
»bot haues mynd mydday *and* morn
what g*ra*ce god hath yow sent,
als all yo*ur* kynred*es* knaw.
kep*es* well his co*m*mawndm*en*t
and lelly luf*es* hys law.»

S 450. 1 hardnes / 8 both.

L 448. 1 Then Samuel / *seris* / yov / 2 that ye wolle / here / Ca. xii. *in right margin* / 3 If / did / nyght / 4 tryspas / yov avthre olde / ying / 5 tuke youre corne catell / 6 ass / othre / 7 They sayd mercy *ser certes* / 8 thou greved neuer vs / 9 Then have ye you mystaken / 10 seruyd / suffre / 11 Sith ye have forsaken / 12 both godes gouernaunce /— **449.** 1 if / yov greved / 2 ye have / agayne / 3 Pray / ye / 4 that / signe certayne / 5 grevaunce / this / 6 sone / prove / playne / 7 Such wedre that woundre / 8 levynnyng / 9 froste / 10 that before / 11 Suche wedres / sene / 12 that / the yere / — **450.** 1 For men that had theire hervest grayde / 2 gedre / wyne / 3 Then / they wele / payde / 4 that they / omys theym borne / 5 Vnto the prophet / they prayde / 6 have / lorde elles / forlorne / 7 shal / you *seris* / sayde / 8 bot haves in mynde mydday / morne / 9 What / has you / 10 as / youre kyndred did knawe / 11 Kepes wele / comaundment / 12 lelely / his lawe.

Samuel exhorted the people to act rightly, after which they returned home. King Saul had a son Jonathan.

451 »ffor what tyme ȝe breke his bedyng,
your blyse mun *with* bale be blend;
And bees curtase vnto *your* kyng
with all *your* myȝt his myrth to mend;
And honers [hym] ou*er* all erthly thyng,
and wend*es* ylk man wher [h]e wyll [wend].»
And þus þei pa*r*ted, old *and* ȝyng,
wher þei ware leuest forto lend.
kyng saul had a sun,
þat named was Ionata,
Qwylk aft*ur* furth was fun
[gentyll] *with* mony ma.

One day the king heard that the Philistines had entered the land of the Israelites. In Gilgal they destroyed everything they found.

452 In þis meyn tyme the kyng herd tȝll
of n[ew] [tythandes] þat was nere at hand:
Phylysteyns þat ware fers *and* fell
war enturd into Ebrews land.
In gabatha þore con þei dwell
and stroyd all þat þei be fore [þem] fand
And hasted to haue þem omell
all þat [to] armys war ordand.
And smithes smertly þei slogh
and of Iren ylk thyng,
Both fro wayn *and* ployȝt,
and gart yt to þem bryng.

They took away the weapons of the Israelites, many of whom were killed. Saul collected 3.000 men and Jonathan 1,000; they hurried to the help of their countrymen.

453 þe Ebrews þen yll angerd er:
a way was born þat þem suld beld.
þei had no wepyns þem *with* to were,
all myȝt þei [neuer] so well þem weld.
Phylysteyns myȝt þei do no dere,
all yf þei fele say in [þe] feld.
kyng saul wold fayn þem to fere;
he hastyd hy*m* fast *with* spere *and* scheld.
he toke thre thowsand men,
to hy*m* self [þa twa],
þat he cowd kenest kene,
and on [to] Ionata.

S 451. 5 all / 6 ȝe /— **452.** 2 noe /— **453.** 6 yf þei fele þei say / 10 þat wa.

L 451. 1 For / ye / byddyng / 2 youre blisses shal / 3 be curtas / youre / 4 myght / amend / 5 honoures hym / 6 ych / where he wolle wend / 7 thus they / olde / ying / 8 whethre theym wer levest / Ca. xiii. *in right margin* / 9 Kyng Saul / sonne / 10 that / Jonathas / Jonathas natus est (*in later hand*) *in right margin* / 11 Which afterward was fonne / 12 full gentyll and curtas /— **452.** 1 this mean / the *omitted* / 2 new tithandes that were nere / 3 Philistiens that were / 4 were entred into / 5 fol. 140. b. / Gabatha there gun they / 6 that before theym they / 7 have theym / 8 that to Armurs was / 9 And *omitted* / All smythes / they / 10 irin ych a / 11 wayne / plogh / 12 '*and*' omitted / they made their folke to theym it /— **453.** 1 The/ then evyl / were / 2 for away / borne that theym shuld belde / 3 They / noo / theym / 4 althogh they might neuer so wele theym welde / 5 Philistiens myght they doo noo / 6 allthogh they feld theym in the felde / 7 Kyng Saul hym ordand theym to fere / 8 sped / shelde / 9 He tuke / thovsand / 10 vnto him selfe in goode array / 11 Twoo thovsandes he betuke / 12 and oon to Jonatha.

454 And fast þei went furth on þ*er* way
w*ith* oþ*er* folke foloand in fere.
Sone w*hen* phylysteyns herd say
þat kyng saul suld com so nere,
þei gouernd þe[m] in grett aray
and sembled folke on syd*es* sere
fol. 52 a þat sexty thowsand sone had þei
of knyght*es* [kene] in armys clere
And thrytty thowsand [e]ls,
þat well myȝt wepyns beyre,
And mo þat no man tels
on futte full wyȝt in were.

When the Philistines heard of Saul's approach, they gathered together a great host: 60,000 knights, 30,000 men able to bear arms, and a multitude of people.

455 yt was full semly syȝt to see
of charyott*es and* of chyvalry.
had þei lufed god in gud degre,
þen ware yt daynty to dyscrye.
wh*en* kyng saul come in cuntre
in space, wher he myȝt þem aspy,
Dred sum dele in his hert had hee
be cawse of so grett cu*m*pany,
And for ded*es* þei had done
to dyu*er*se man *and* wyfe;
And his folke ware bot fone
w*ith* swylke a strengh forto stryfe.

The sight of that army was wonderful. Saul was somewhat afraid, for his men were few.

456 Bot his kenes full well he kyd
w*ith* all hys myȝt þem forto mar*e*.
And wh*en* his folke herd how þei dyd,
þen howped þei well forto haue ware.
Sum fled, *and* sum in hoyles þem hyd;
for ferd þ*en* wold þei found no far*e*.
þer ware bot few w*ith* hy*m* abyd
or þat wold negh þe pepyll nere.
wh*en* he saw þei ware gone,
h[is] teyne myȝt no man tell.
he wyst no bett*ur* wone
bot sent vnto Samuel.

Saul's men were terrified: some fled, and some hid in caves. In his distress Saul sent a message to Samuel.

S 454. 5 þei / 7 lib*er primus* Regum *in top margin* / 9 als /— **455.** 2 chyl *cancelled after second* of /— **456.** 4 ware *above the line* / 7 to abyd / 10 he.

L 454. 1 they / their*e* / 2 othr*e* / folke *omitted* / fovloand / 3 Philistiens / 4 that knew Saul shuld come / 5 They ordand theym in grete array / 6 sides / 7 That / thovsand / they / 8 knightes kene / armes / 9 thirty thovsand ellis / 10 that wele myght wepens bere / 11 And many moo that / tellis / 12 foote / wyght /— **455.** 1 It / full *omitted* / a semly sight / 2 chariots / of *omitted* / chivalry / 3 Had they / goode degree / 4 then wer it daynte / discry / 5 When / Saul / cuntree / 6 where / myght theym / 7 Drede in hert sumdele had he / 8 because / grete company / 9 And *omitted* / ffor / that they / doone / 11 were / foone / 12 suche / strenght to /— **456.** 1 wele / 2 his myght theym / mar / 3 folk / they did / 4 then hoped they wele to have the ware / 5 holles theym / 6 then / they goo / 7 They were / that with / abid / 8 that / the people nar / 9 When / saw that were goone 10 his tene myght noo / 11 He / noo bett*er* woone / 12 samuel.

He asked him to come to Gilgal. Samuel sent a message to tell him to wait for some time.

457 hys moyn be messege can he ma
þat he was ferd *and* faylyd myȝt,
how [he] *and* his sun Ionata
ware ordand *with* þer foys to fyȝt,
And how his folke ware fled hym fra
when þei of enmys had a syȝt;
And prayd hym come to gabatha,
for þore þei suld abyd hym ryȝt.
when samuel herd certayn
how stratly he was sted,
he send sone word agayn
and bad, »be noyȝt a dred!»

He promised to come within seven days. Saul prepared the animals which Samuel wished to have ready for sacrifice.

458 »ffor *with* in VII days aftur þis,
says hym self I sall be þore,
And tyll þat tyme, be gud a vyce,
þat [he] gett best[es] a bowt ay whore,
So þat we may make sacrafyce
vnto our god þo folke be fore.»
The kyng hath ordand [on] all wyse,
als he send word *and* sum dele more.
By cawse þe prophett dwellyd
ouer þe terme þat was sett,
The kyng more furth hym melled fol. 52 b
þen he suld do be dett.

But Saul grew weary of waiting for Samuel, and offered up the sacrifice himself. Samuel on his arrival was afraid of the vengeance consequent on this deed.

459 when þe tym come þat was ordand,
and no man come hys sytte to slake,
And hys men wold not *with* hym stand,
for wo vnwynly con þei wake,
foleherdenes he toke on hand
hym selfe þore sacrafyce to make.
Then þe prophett come *and* foyles fand;
he was full ferd for dred of wrake,
ffor he had messege sent
with wordes on þis wyse,
Or he com in present
to make [no] sacrafyce.

S 458. 10 '*sextus*' *in bottom margin.*

L 457. 1 His man this message bad he say / 2 that / faled myght / 3 How he / sonne Jonatha / 4 were / theire foes / fyght / 5 wer fled away / hym fra *omitted* / 6 they / syght / 7 he come / Gabatha / 8 there he shuld abyde theym ryght / 9 When / certayne / 10 straytly / 11 He sent soone worde agayne / 12 sayd / noght adred /— **458.** 1 For within aght dayes after this / 2 tell hym that I shal / there / 3 to that / by goode avyse / 4 that he ordand bestes abovte hym nere / 5 that / sacrifice / 6 oure / the / before / 7 did ordand on / 8 as / sent worde / sumdele / 9 Because the prophet dwelled / 10 the / that / set / 11 of moo thinges then hym melled / 12 than / shuld doo by det /— **459.** 1 When the tyme passed that / 2 noo / come his sorow / 3 his / 4 woo vnwysle gun he / 5 ffoyle hardynes / tuke / 6 thoos sacrifice forto / 7 þe *omitted* / 8 wroth for drede / 9 message / 10 this / 11 come / 12 noo Sacryfice.

460 þer[for] he sentt hym sone his wage
and sayd, »had þou not done þis dede,
þi suns suld haue born heritage;
now sall no frutt be of þi sede
By cawse þou hath done þis owtrage,
þat suld not passe bot be presthed.
God hath ordand a lytyll page
aftur þi days þis land to lede.»
þus told he his entent
to þe [kyng] and Ionata,
And wroth his way he went
[agayne to Ramatha.]

He foretold that Saul's descendants would not inherit his kingdom; God had chosen another youth. Then the prophet in his wrath returned to Ramath.

461 þen was þe kyng in mekyll dred,
for hertyng of helpe he ne has.
he toke apon hym hegh manhed,
and furth full playnly con he pase.
And thre C þen with hym ȝode
of thre thowsand þat with hym was.
þat was full lytyll folke to lede
to hym *and* hys sun Ionatas.
Ionatas persayued þat þei
myȝt not eschew þat chaunce
To wyn wrschepe a way
bot be goddes gouernance.

Saul and his son Jonathan numbered the people. Jonathan realised that only by a miracle could the Philistines be overcome.

462 The panyms was so grett plente;
on A hegh hyll loged þei lay.
To stroy þer strengh fast stud he
and mare þer myȝt [y]f he may.
he toke on of his awn meneȝe,
qwylke he treyst wold not hym betray,
And sayd, »felow, com furth with me!»
so preuely þei went þer way
þat none wyst bot þei two;
and euyn Abowt mydnyght
To þat hyll con þei go,
and þus þen sayd he ryȝt,

Jonathan with his servant planned to cross over at night to the Philistines, encamped on a high hill.

S 460. 2 *letter cancelled before 'and'* /— **462.** 4 of.

L 460. 1 fol. 141 a. / Regum primo *in top margin* / Therfore / sent / 2 thou / doon this / 3 Thy sonnes shuld have borne / 4 nowe shal noo sute / thy / 5 Because thou has doone this outrage / 6 that shuld / be doon / by presthede / 7 has / litle / 8 after thy / this / 9 Thus he told / 10 the kyng / Jonatha / 12 = *text above* / — **461.** 1 Then / the / mych drede / 2 for noon hertyng / he has / 3 He tuke vpon / high manhede / 4 gun / pas / 5 hunderyth then / yede / 6 thovsand that / 7 That / lityll / 8 his sonne Jonathas / 9 Jonathas perceyved that they / 10 myght noght / eschew *omitted* / that / 11 worship / 12 by godes gouernaunce /— **462.** 1 panyms wer / grete / 2 an high / luged they / 3 dystroye their strenght / studes / 4 and let their myght if that he may / Ca. xiiii. *in right margin* / 5 He tuke oon / menye / 6 which / wyst / 7 fellay come on with / 8 they / their / 9 That noone knew / they twoo / 10 even aboute / 11 that hill gun they goo / 12 thus then / ryght.

They agreed to have a certain signal for advance, and then crept along a very narrow path towards the camp.

463 »what I do loke þou do þe same,
and þis sall be our segne *cer*tayn:
yf any of þem neuyn me be name,
þen sall we haue *our pur*pase playn.
And yf [þei] boldly wyll vs blame
and none answer gyf vs agayn,
þen is gud þat we hast vs hame,
or els *our tra*ueyll *tur*nes in vayne.»
þor was no way to wend
bot a strayt sty of stone.
Clame*r*and on knese *and* hende
by þat gatt ar þei gone.

Jonathan and his servant, on advancing into the camp, were recognised and knew that they would have the upper hand. The Philistines were either killed or routed.

464 *with* mekyll [payn so] can þei pase
and come into þat euy*n* entre.
On of þem wyst well who yt wase,
and to his felow þ*us* sayd he,
»yonder ys comyn þe Iew Ionatas
with mony mo of his mene3e.»
þei loked on þem, þei cryd alas;
soyne ware þei feld þat my3t not flee.
þei ware kylled all vn cled;
none my3t helpe o þ*er* harmes.
Down fro þat hyll þei fled
and brake both leg*es and* armes.

When Saul saw the Philistines in flight, he assembled his terrified forces and eagerly pursued them.

465 kyng saul sadly spyrd *and* spyed
þ*er* cowntena*n*ce forto kene,
And whe[n] he herd how hegh þei cryed,
vnto þe hyll he hasted þen.
hys folke full fast to hy*m* rel[y]ed
þat be fore dared os dere in den,
So þat he had be vnd*er* tyde
mo þen ten thowsand feghyng men.
he saw phylysteyns fled
and full radly remowed,
his folke he fast arayd
and þen pres[t]ely p*er*sewed.

S 464. 1 so payn /— **465.** 5 releved / 12 presthely.

L 463. 1 What I doo doo thou the / 2 this shal / signe *cer*tayne / 3 If / theym neven / by / 4 then shal / have oure purpos playne / 5 if they wolle vs boldly / 6 noon vs answer agayne / 7 Then / goode that / haste / home / 8 elles oure travell / 9 There / noo / 10 way / stoone / 11 knees / hend / 12 that way / they goone /— **464.** 1 With mych paynes thus gun they pas / 2 in at the even / 3 Oon / theym weyst wele / it was / 4 fellay thus / 5 Yondre is comen the / Jonathas / 6 many moo / menye / 7 He luked / theym they cryed allas / 8 sone wer they felled that myght / fle / 9 They wer / vncled / 10 noon myght help othre / 11 Sone fro that hill they fled / 12 legges /— **465.** 1 Kyng Saul / 2 theire countenance ay to ken / 3 when / high they / 4 the hill / went then / 5 His folke to hym then fast hyed / 6 that before dayred as / 7 that / vndre / 8 moo than / thovsand fightyng / 9 He / Philistiens flayd / 10 rasydly remev / 11 His folk fast he arrayd / 12 '*and* þen' *omitted* / prestly theym to pursev.

466 ffayn wold he venge þe velany
þat þei had stroyd both wyn *and* whett.
on payn of cursyng dyde he crye
þat non þat day suld tent to mette,
And who so dyd, he sayd, suld dy,
and þer to swere he othes full grett,
So þat þei myȝt haue þe vyctory
or euyn, *and* þen suld all men ete.
Bot hys [sun] Ionatas
with his felow furth went;
he wyst not, þore he was,
of þe kynges commawndment.

Saul wished to take full vengeance, and ordered his men on penalty of death to eat no food until victorious. Jonathan was ignorant of this command.

467 Agayns his strake myȝt no man stand,
he feld phylysteyns, grett plente.
So be a forest syd he fand
hony camys in a holoo tree.
Sone hent he owt on *with* his hand,
to hold his hert þerof ete he.
he dyd not ose þe kyng commawnd,
so greued he god in þat degre.
By þe sune was went west,
þei had wun wrschepes grett.
fol. 53 b þen bad þe kyng þem rest
and boldly drynke *and* ete.

He killed many Philistines, and ate of a honeycomb, which he found near a wood. By sunset the Israelites had won and were allowed to eat and drink.

468 ffull sewrly þat nyȝt soiournd þei,
for of Enmys had þei no dred.
And on þe morn, when yt was day,
the kyng his folke wold ferther lede.
Vnto A prophett can he pray,
Achyas heyght he, os we rede,
þat he to god suld sumwhat say
and wytt yf þat þei suld well spede.
he prayd, os þe kyng hym bade,
and fraynd how þei suld fare,
Bot non answer he had.
þen was þe kyng in care.

On the following morning Saul asked the prophet Ahiah how he would fare, if he led his men on further. Ahiah prayed to God, but received no answer.

S 466. 1 f *cancelled after* þe / 11 þore *above* whore *cancelled* /— **467.** 4 comy *cancelled before* camys.

L 466. 1 Fayne / the felony / 2 that they / distroyd bot wyne / whete / 3 On payne / did / cry / 4 that noon that / shuld / mete / 5 did / shuld / 6 therto sware / full *omitted* / grete / 7 that they myght have / þe *omitted* / victory / 8 evyn / then shuld / 9 his sonne Jonathas / 10 fellay / 11 He / not *omitted* / ther as he / 12 the / comaundment / — **467.** 1 strooke myght noo / 2 felled Philistiens grete 3 by / side / 4 fair hony cams / holow tre / 5 oon oute / 6 hald / therof / 7 He did noght as the / commandment / 8 greved / that / 9 fol. 141. b. / Be the sonne / 10 they / wonne worships grete / 11 Then / the / theym / 12 meryly drink /— **468.** Full sure that nyght soiorned they / 2 enmys they had noo drede / 3 the / it / 4 farther / 5 Vnto a prophet gun / 6 Achias heght / as / 7 That / wold sum what / 8 wit if that they shuld wele / 9 He / as the / bad / 10 they shuld / 11 noon / 12 then / the.

Saul suspected that someone had broken the command, and when lots were cast, the lot fell on Jonathan, who was thus to lose his life, at which the people grieved.

469 þen trowd he sum had done trespase.
þerfor he fraynd his folke full fast,
And forto wytt how þat yt was,
lotes he cummand þem to cast.
Sone þe lott fell on Ionatas.
þen was þe kyng gretly a gast
And sayd, »my sun, forfeytt þou has;
þi lyf may now no langer last.»
þen all þo folke in fere,
when þei þe wordes herd,
Mornyd *and* made yll chere,
and Ionatas answerd.

Jonathan explained the circumstances and declared himself ready to die. The people said that this was not the will of God.

470 he sayd, »sers, ȝe sall vnderstand
I forfeyt noyȝt, þat is my treyst.
I herd not how þe kyng commawnd,
ne of his wyll no thyng I wyst.
An hony combe for soth I fand
and ete þerof to slake my threyst.
yf I þerfor be law of land
sall lose my lyf, do os yow lyst!»
þei sayd all schortly, »nay,
þat was neuer goddes wyll.
Or þou suld dy þis day,
fele folke suld fare full yll.»

The people pleaded for Jonathan with Saul, who then promised to save him.

471 vnto þer kyng all are þei gone
and sayd, »for þi sun we wyll vs mell,
Sen he hath sayued vs euer ylkon
fro þe phylysteyns fals *and* fell.
So sewr a souerand haue we none
sayue þi self, þe soth to tell.
þerfor we say, and he be slayn,
we wyll no lenger with þe dwell.»
þe kyng herd *and* toke hede
how hertly þei hym crayued.
ffor luf *and* als for dred
he sayd he suld be saued.

L 469. 1 Then troved sum had doon trispas / 2 therfore / ful / 3 wit / that it / 4 comaund theym forto / 5 the lote / Jonathas / 6 then / the / agast / 7 sonne forfet thou / 8 thy lyfe / lenger / 9 Then / tho / 10 they thes / 11 Morned / evyll / 12 Jonathas /— **470.** 1 He / seris ye shal vndirstand /2 forfet noght that / tryst / 3 hard / the / comand / 4 noo thing / 5 came / 6 therof / thryst / 7 If / therfor by / 8 shal / lyfe doo as you / 9 They said / shortly / 10 that / godes / 11 thou shuld die this / 12 many / fair / evyll / — **471.** 1 Unto the / ar they goone / 2 thy sonne / wolle / 3 Sith / has saved / euerychoone / 4 the Philistiens / 5 sure / souerayn have / noone / 6 to save thy life the soth we tell / 7 Therfore / slayne / 8 wolle noo / the / 9 The / tuke / 10 they / craved / 11 als *omitted* / drede / 12 shuld / saved.

472 þen ware þei glad, no wonder was;
full [mekyll] mon for hym was ment.
5655 fol. 54 a þei prayd þe prophet achias
þat he *and* þei be hold assent
Suld pray god forgyfe þat trespase,
and so he grawnted with gud entent.
þen þe kyng and Ionatas
5660 with mekyll gold a gayn ar wentt
vnto þer places playne,
wher þei be fore had bene.
Sexty thowsand ware slayn
of fals phylystyene.

The people rejoiced and asked Ahiah to pray to God for forgiveness. 60,000 of the false Philistines were slain.

5665 473 when þei had þus phylysteyns feld
and had ouer hand of all þer foys,
The kyng of Ebrews with hym held
of þe most hertyng þat he has.
þen was no man agayn [hym] mel[d]
5670 bo[t] playn pece in ylka place:
þei sett *and* sew and boyȝt *and* sold
and lyfed in lykyng full long space.
he lede þem be þer law
and gouernd þem be goddes bydyng.
5675 All Ebrews, als þei ow,
honerd hym as þer kyng.

After the defeat of the Philistines, the Israelites lived in peace for a long time. Saul ruled them according to God's will.

474 kyng saul had suns thre
all dedes to do at hys devyce.
Ionatas þe fyrst was he,
5680 þat in all place wan grett price;
þe secund, semly forto se,
heyȝt Jesus *and* the thryd melcheys.
All ware þei fayr of face full free
and þer warkes full wayre *and* wyse.
5685 And he had doyȝturs two,
at home wonnand with wyn.
The ryȝt names [was] of þoo
mycoll *and* merobyn.

Saul had three sons, Jonathan, Ishui, and Melchi-shua, and two daughters, Michal and Merab.

S 473. 5 no man agayn to mell / 12 a *cancelled before* hym /— **474.** 4 wang grett / p *cancelled before* grett / 12 was mycoll.

L 472. 1 Then were they / noo woundre / 2 for./ mych *above the line* / moon / 3 They / the / Achias / 4 that / they by avysment / 5 Shuld / to forgyve that trispas / 6 graunted / good / 7 Then the / Jonathas / 8 mych / agayn / went / 9 Vnto their palace / 10 where they before / 11 Sexte thovsand was slayne / 12 of the folke Philistiene /— **473.** 1 When they / thus Philistiens / 2 ouerhand / theire foes / 4 the most harde that / 5 There / nooman that agayns hym meld / 6 bot pleuery peace / euery / 7 They set / wroght and belde / 8 lyved / likyng / lang / 9 He led theym by their / 10 gouerned by goddes biddyng / 11 as theym aw / 12 honored / theire /— **474.** 1 Kyng Saul / sonnes / 2 doo / his advyse / 3 Jonathas the first / 4 that / wan grete pryse / 5 The / semely / 6 heght / third Melchyse / 7 were they faire / fre / 8 and in theire werkes full wyse / 9 doghters twoo / 10 which was full faire women / 11 The right Names was of thoo / 12 Merob and Mychol.

Samuel sent Saul to take vengeance on the Amalekites, who had laid wait for the Israelites on their journey from Egypt.

475 þus in delyce os he can dwell,
all folke attendand hym vntyll,
God sentt his prophett samuel
at warn hym forto werke his wyll.
On goddes behalf he con hym tell
how þat þer elders war angerd yll
with malachys, a folke full fell,
þat spetuusly þer sped con spyll.
when þei past fyrst þe flome,
þat folke, full of þe feynd,
letted þem forto come
be ways wher þei sull wende.

Samuel bade him utterly destroy the Amalekites and all their goods; he was forbidden to bring back any spoil.

476 þerfor he bad saul suld passe
and putt þo paynyms all to p[y]n,
wyfe *and* chyld, all þat þore was,
Cytes, castels, corn *and* wyn,
And leue on lyue nawder ox ne asse,
cow ne calf, schepe ne swyne.
»Tyll all be lorne þat lyf has,
for nokyns fayntnes loke þou fyne.
Take no parte of þer pelfe
to part þi pepyll o mang!
Ne sayue noyȝt to þi selfe;
wast all [els] dose þ[ou] wrang!«

Saul set out to fulfil these commandments.

477 kyng saule to his saws assent,
and þerto hertly hath he heyght
fforto fulfyll goddes commawndment
of malachys with all his myȝt.
hee sembled folke, *and* furth þei wentt
with sexty thowsand at a syȝt.
þei stroyd Cytes *and* burghys brentt;
phylysteyns fast þei feld with fyȝt.
ffro þei come in cuntree
þat malachys wund in,
þei feld both folke *and* fee
and wasted all þat wold bryn.

S 476. 2 payn / 8 s *of* fayntnes *above the line* / 9 liber *primus* Regum *in top margin* / 12 þat / þe /— **477.** 3 commawndmentes.

L 475. 1 þus *omitted* / In delice as / gun / 2 attendaunt / 3 Ca. xv. *in left margin* / God sent / prophet Samuel / 4 to / wyrk / 5 fol. 142. a. / Regum primo *in top margin* / be halfe / gun / 6 þat *omitted* / theire eldirs were / evyll / 7 Malachyse / folk / 8 that spitusly their spede gun / 9 When they / first the flume / 10 that / the fende / 11 Leted theym / 12 by / they shuld /— **476.** 1 Therfor / Saul shuld pas / 2 put tho / pyne / 3 Wyfe / childe that ther / 4 cites / corne / wyne / 5 leve / lyf navthre / as / 6 nor / shepe / 7 To / forlorne that lyfes has / 8 no maner wyse luke thou / 9 noo / theire / 10 thy people amang / 11 save noght / thy / 12 waste / elles doos thou /— **477.** 1 Kyng Saul / 2 therto / has / hyght / 3 fullfyll godes comaundment / 4 Malachyse / myght / 5 He / they went / 6 thovsand / syght / 7 They distroyd Cites / Burghes brent / 8 Philistiens / they fled / fyght / 9 they / cuntre / 10 where Malachyse wonned in / 11 They slogh / 12 that / brin.

Agag, the king of the Amalekites, prepared to meet his enemies.

478 Agag was kyng of malachys
and led þe lordschepe of þat land.
Soyne when he wyst on what kyn wyse
kyng saul styrd *with* strang hand,
hee redyd all his reme to ryse
þer enmys styfly to gayn stand.
Of knyghtes kene *and* princes of price
full fell phylysteyns furth he fand.
þer way þei wold not lett
bot putt þem furth in prese.
when þei *and* Ebrews mett,
þor was no poynt of pese.

The battle was a wonderful sight. It resulted in a defeat for the Philistines.

479 To se yt was a semly syȝt,
who so hegh stud *and* beheld,
Of penons *and* of baners bryȝt
with schaftes *and* mony a schynyng scheld.
kyng saul kyd þat he was wyȝt;
his Ebrews boldly can he beld.
phylysteyns so þe feld *with* fyȝt
þat sum for ferd forsoke þe feld.
Men myȝt see stedes stray
þat þore allon was leued,
And þer lordes how þei lay
in ways *with* owtyn heuyd.

After the battle the Israelites went forth to destroy everything in the land of their enemies.

480 phylysteyns myȝt no langer last;
all went to bale þat wold abyd.
with Ebrews ware þei all vm cast;
þe fand no socur in no syde.
when þei ware all *with* payns past
þat in þe feld was fun þat tyde,
Ebrews þen fowled furth full fast
to stroy *þer* landes, lang *and* wyde.
þei leued nothyng on lyfe
þat ne to ded war dyȝtt:
Bot[h] man, chyld *and* wyfe,
bestes *and* fowls of flyȝt.

S 478. 3 wyse *above* was *cancelled* /— **480.** 10 þat þei ne.

L 478. 1 Malachyse / 2 the lordship / that / 3 Sone / in / 4 Saul stired so / 5 He comaunded / Reaume / 6 theire / 7 gaynstand / knigthes / pryse / 8 many Philistiens has he ordand / 9 Theire / they / let / 10 put theym / pres / 11 When they / met / 12 ther / pes / — **479.** 1 it / semely sight / 2 on hight stoode / behelde / 3 barners bright / 4 shaftes / many / shynnand shelde / 5 Kyng Saul / that / wight / 6 gun / belde / 7 Philistiens / they / in fight / 8 that / forsuke the felde / 9 myght se / 10 that there alloone were levyd / 11 theire / they / 12 way withouten hevyd / — **480.** 1 Philistiens myght / lengar / 2 that / abyde / 3 With / wer they / vmcast / 4 they / noo socour on noo / 5 When they wer / paynes / 6 that / the / were fonne that / 7 then folowd / 8 theire / long / 9 They leved noo thing / 10 bot they to deid was dight / 11 Both / and childe / 12 fulles in flyght.

Because Saul became covetous, he forgot God's command. He spared Agag and bade the people bring animals for sacrifice. The people took as much as they could.

481 when þei had wasted on þis wyse
ryche *and* pure, both old *and* ȝyng,
Saul was sett on couetyce, fol. 55 a
and sone forgatt he godd*es* bedy*n*g.
ffor agag was a p*ri*nce of price;
he heyȝt hy*m* [help], þat hethyn kyng,
And fayrest best*es* for sac*ra*fyce
he bad men suld furth wi*th* [þem] bryng.
his folke saw he forfeytt
and lett so lyȝtly þ*er* by.
þei toke what þei myȝt gett
to beyre wi*th* þem boldly.

When Samuel saw king Agag and the spoils, he said that they would be dearly bought.

482 So went þei home *and* wold not dwell;
of þ*er* werky*n*g well þem toygt.
And sone þe p*ro*phett Samuel
come furth to wytt how þei had wroyȝt.
And when he herd þe best*es* bell
and saw kyng agag wi*th* þem broyȝt,
he made grett manace þem o mell
and sayd þat dede suld dere be boyȝt
ffor þei toke no reward
to werke agayns godd*es* wyll,
þat bad none suld be spayrd,
noþ*er* gud ne yll.

He reproached Saul for his sin against God, but Saul excused himself by saying that the spoil was for sacrifice. But Samuel replied that God would refuse an offering of ill-gotten gains.

483 ffull sore he syght for þ*er* sake
and sayd þ*us* to Saul, þe kyng,
»how durst þou werke þis werke for wrake:
oþ*er* man or best from theyn to bryng?«
he sayd, » s*er*, sac*ra*fyce to make
and gyfe þem vnto godd*es* louyng.«
þen samuel sayd, »god wyll not take
offerand of yll gottyn thyng,
bot þo þat lely lyf*es*
and kep*es* hys cu*m*mawndme*n*t,
what gyft so þei to hy*m* gyfe[s],
þ*er* to wyll he take tent.«

S 481. 8 hym / — **483.** 4 bryng *above the line.*

L 481. 1 When they / this / 2 rich / pover / olde / ying / 3 set / covatyse / 4 soone forgate / godes biddyng / 5 Agag / pryse / 6 hight / help that hathen / 7 fairest / sacrifice / 8 shuld / theym / 9 His / that he forfete / 10 set / lyght therby / 11 They / they myght gete / 12 ber / theym /— **482.** 1 they / 2 their wyrkyng ful wele they*m* thoght / 3 the p*ro*phet / 4 come forto wyt / they / wroght / 5 the / 6 the kyng Agag / theym broght / 7 He blamed theym with wordes fell / 8 that / shuld / boght / 9 they tuke noo rewarde / 10 wirk / godes / 11 That / noon shuld / sparde / 12 navthre goode / evyll /— **483.** 1 fol. 142. b. / Full / sighed / theire / 2 said thus / the / 3 How / thov wyrke this dede / 4 whyke man or beste for thens / 5 He / S*er* sacrifice / 6 gyve theym / godes lovyng / 7 Then Samuel said / wolle / 8 evyll getyn / 9 Bot tho that lele doos lyfe / 10 his comaundment / 11 What / they hym gyfe / 12 therto he wolle.

God was very wrath with Saul. His reign would not last, and others would wield his wealth.

484 »how suld he take offerand to gre?
all thyng hym self [sayd] suld be lorne.
Both man *and* best he bad suld be
fordown, wher þ[ou] þem fand be forne.
heyr is þe kyng of þat cuntre,
And best I here yow hath for borne.
I warne þe: god is wrath *with* þe,
for þou hath wayt hym *with* þis scorne.
Thy werke þ*us* wyll he ȝeld:
þi lordschep sall not last,
And oþ*er* þi welth sall weld
þat in fayth wyll be fast.»

When Saul heard Samuel tell these things, he knelt down and prayed for forgiveness. But Samuel gave no heed to him and departed to Ramah, followed by the king.

485 wh*en* kyng saul herd samuel
so spytfully speke in þat [sp]ace,
vnto his fette oft sythys he fell
and pr*a*yd of god to geyte hym *grace*
And to amend yt þem o mell,
Als he wold consell in þat case.
Bot for his wordes he wold not dwell;
he saw no plessance *in* þat place.
fol. 55 b Sone fro þat pepyll he past
ryȝt way to ramatha,
Bot þe kyng folowd fast;
in hert he was full wa.

Saul overtook him, seized his mantle, and rent it. Samuel said that as his mantle was rent, so should Saul's kingdom be rent from him, at which the king mourned and asked for mercy.

486 ffull [well] he wyst he suld be schentt;
þat made [hym] hertly forto hast.
The pr*o*phett by þe mantyll he hentt
so þat [yt] rayue *and* worthed to wast.
þen sayd þe pr*o*phett, »s*er*, take tent!
þis sall þou trow *and* trewly trayst:
Ryȝt os þou has þe mantyll rentt,
so sall þi reme fro þe be rast.»
þen had þe kyng grett care,
and oft he askyd m*er*cy.
»And þou þus fro me fare,
my folke wyll haue ferly»

S 484. 1 ue *cancelled after* gre / 4 þei /— **485.** 2 place.

L 484. 1 How shuld / 2 of the thing hym self sayd shuld / 3 beste / shuld / 4 fordoon where thou theym / beforne / 5 Here / the / that / 6 and bestes also thou has forborne / 7 warn the / wroth / the / 8 thou has shewd hym here a scorne / 9 wark thus wolle / yelde / 10 thy lordeship shal / 11 An othre thy Welth shal welde 12 that / faith wolle /— **485.** 1 When / Saul hard Samuel / 2 spitusly / that space / 3 Vnto / fete / sithes / 4 gete / 5 it at his counsell / 6 Als *omitted* / wold doo in that same case / 8 plesaunce / that / 9 that people / 10 right / Ramatha / 11 the / folowed / 12 with woofull hert that same way /— **486.** 1 Full wele / shuld / shent / 2 that / hym forto haste / 3 prophet / the / hent / 4 that he rofe it vnto waste / 5 Then sayd he Ser / 6 this shal thou / trwly taste / 7 Right as thou / this mantyll rent / 8 shal thy Reaume be fro the raste / 9 Then / the / grete / 10 asked / 11 thou thus / 12 wolle have.

Samuel then agreed to remain with Saul, which greatly pleased the king.

487 »And traw þat I haue done sum trayn
and with sum grett thyng greued þe.
and þ*er*for, gud s*er*, turn agayn
with glad sembland þat þei may see
And schew to me sum seyn c*er*tayn
of lastand luf *and* of lewte.»
he grawnted, *and* þen þe kyng was fayn
sen þat myȝt no bett*ur* be.
The p*r*ophett come *and* plessed
and alowd ylka dede.
þen þe kyng was well esed,
bot in hert had he drede.

Samuel killed Agag and afterwards went to Ramah. Saul with his followers went to Gilbeah.

488 when þei herd tell of þis tythyng,
þe pepyll was payd well enogh.
þe p*r*ophett bad þei suld furth bryng
Agag þat eu*er* on dregh hy*m* drogh.
whe*n* he was broyȝt at hys bydyng,
he sayd, »þ*o*u hath wroyȝt mekyll wogh.
þat sall þ*o*u fynd be for o*ur* kyng.»
þ*er* wi*th* his awn hende he hy*m* slogh.
þen ryȝt to ramatha
þe p*r*ophett wentt in hy.
þe kyng to galgala
went wi*th* his cu*m*pany.

Samuel mourned for Saul, especially because of their great friendship. He prayed to God for him, but in vain.

489 Samuel of soroyng myȝt not sesse,
for kyng saul so wrang had wentt,
By cause whe*n* god to kyng hy*m* chese
þen he anoynt hy*m* wi*th* an oyntme*n*t.
he p*r*ayd to god forto relesch
þat grett greua*n*ce wi*th* gud ente*n*t,
Bot he had answer to hald hy*m* pece;
all þat was sayd behoued be sentt.
þei ware fast frende*s* be fore
and of on consell kend;
his mornyng was the more
whe*n* he myȝt not amend.

L 487. 1 trow that / doon / trayne / 2 gret thing greved the / 3 And therfore goode / turne agayne / 4 semblaunt that they / se / 5 shew / signe c*er*tayne / 7 He graunted / then the / fayne / 8 sith that it might / bett*er* / 9 p*r*ophet / pleased / 10 alowed ych a / 11 Then was the kyng wele eased /— **488.** 1 When they / this tithing / 2 the people / wele enugh / 3 The p*r*ophet / they shuld / 4 that sorow had wroght / 5 When / Was broght / his byddyng / 6 thou has doone mych / 7 That shall thou / before oure / 8 there / handes / 9 Then right / Ramatha / 10 the p*r*ophet went / 11 The / Galgala 12 / yoode / company /— **489.** 1 sorowyng myght / cese / 2 Saul / went / 3 Because / 4 then / anoynted / wi*th* onyntment / 5 He / relese / 6 that grete grevaunce / goode / 7 answere / pese / 8 that / behoved / sent / 9 They were / before / 10 on *omitted* / counsell / 11 His / 12 myght noght.

fol. 56 a 490 god sayd he suld swylk lufyng lett,
for new gam vs bus be gyne.
»Take þou þi boyst *with* þe oyle benett
and wend to bedlem or þou blyne.
þore sall þou fynd, fayr on his flett,
A jew, jesse, of jacob kyn.
gayre hys suns be for þe sette,
for on of þem sall wrschep wyn.
Enoynt hy*m* to be kyng,
Saul stede to restore,
And haue þe same blessyng
þat saul had be fore.»

At that time God told Samuel to go to Bethlehem and meet with Jesse, a Jew, one of whose sons he was to anoint king in the place of Saul.

491 he wentt *and* wold no langer stand
or he þe wyll of god hath wroyȝt.
Jesse, þat gentyll jew, he fand
in bethlem Cyte sone vnsoyȝt.
ffyrst he made þem make offerand
and honer god, so hy*m* gud toyȝt.
Sythyn he told hy*m* new tythand
and bad hys suns suld furth be broyȝt.
Sex suns ware sett on raw
be lyue at his bedyng.
þen p*ra*yd he god to schaw
qwylke of þem suld be kyng.

Samuel went to Bethlehem and called Jesse and his six sons to a sacrifice. He prayed God to show him His choice.

492 All ware þei semly vnto syȝt;
full wyght men ware þe eldyst two.
he asked whedd*er* of þem suld be dyȝt.
god answerd *and* sayd, »non of þo.»
þen vnto jesse wentt he full ryȝt
and asked yf he had any mo.
»ȝa, *ser*, a ȝong, þat dauid heyght
is in the feld full fer*e* vs fro
Our catell forto geyte.»
þen Samuel *with* gud chere
Sayd, »*sertes*, I sall nott ete,
or þat hyrdman be here.»

God did not choose the two eldest, so Samuel asked Jesse if he had any more sons: he answered that one son, David, was out in the fields. The prophet asked to see him.

S 492. 7 y *cancelled before* ȝa / 8 yt is.

L 490. 1 Ca. xvi. *in left margin* / God said / shuld such / let / 2 for a new warke vs must begyn / 3 thou thy box / þe *omitted* / benet / 4 Bethleem / thou blyn / 5 There shal thou / faire / flet / 6 a Jewe Jesse / 7 Make his sonnes befor the beset 8 oon / they*m* shal worship / Anoynt hym *in right bottom corner* / 9 fol. 143. a. / Regum primo *in top margin* / Anoynt / 11 have the / blissyng / 12 that Saul / before /— **491.** 1 He went / noo leng*er* / 2 the / had wroght / 3 that / Jew / 4 Bethleem Cite soone vnsoght / 5 ffirst / theym / offrand / 6 hono*ur* / goode hym thoght / 7 Sith / tithand / 8 his sonnes shuld / broght / 9 sonnes were set / a raw / 10 belyve / byddyng / 11Then / shew / 12 which / theym shuld /— **492.** 1 were they semely / syght / 2 Wyght / wer the eldest twoo / 3 He /which / theym shuld / dyght / 4 noon / thoo / 5 Then / Jesse / went / he *omitted* / right / 6 if / moo / 7 Yea / yong that Dauid hight / 8 yt *omitted* / felde far Vs / 9 Oure shepe / kepe / 10 then / goode / 11 c*er*tes / shal not / 12 or the tyme that hirdman.

When David came, Samuel embraced him and told him his destiny. At the feast he gave David the place of honour.

493 Dauid sone was aftur sentt,
and fro he wyst, he wold not byde.
he saw þe prophett in present
and heylsyd hym hendly, noyȝt to hyde.
The prophett hym in armys hentt
and told hym all what suld be tyde.
vnto þer dyner þen þei wentt:
he sett þe chyld hym self be syde,
On þat oþer syde jesse
and sythyn his breyþer all,
ylkon in þer degree,
aftur þer eld suld fall.

Samuel anointed David.

494 hee honerd hym on deyse þat day.
his fader merueld what yt mentt.
Sythyn to a preuay place went þei,
and þore he told all his ententt.
»my sun,» he sayd, » I sall þe say,
fro god of heuyn þus am I sentt
To warn þe of his wyll all way,
grett lordschep sal be þe lentt.»
he wyst withowtyn fayle
god assent to þat same
And bad hym kepe consell
and a noynt hym be name.

The good Spirit left Saul and descended on David. An evil spirit of a cursed kind troubled Saul.

495 when he hym so anoynt hath
with holy oyle both hed *and* hende,
þe gud gast, þat in saul was,
in Dauid soyne con descende,
And into þat place soyne con passe
An euyll sprett of curssed kynd,
þat dyd saul oft say alas,
when hys blyse was with bale blend.
Oft sythys hys solace sessed
with syte *and* sorow sere,
And Dauid euer encressed
in wytt, als we sall here.

S 494. 3 aprcuay / 8 salbe /— **495.** 4 condescende / 6 A neuyll.

L 493. 1 after sent / 2 abyde / 3 Vnto he come to the prophetes present / 4 halsed / hendely is not to / 5 prophet / armes hent / 6 al that shuld betyde / 7 Vnto theire / then they went / 8 set the child / selve besyde / 9 that othre syde he set Jesse / 10 syth / brethre / 11 Ych oon / thair degre / 12 after theire elde shuld /— **494.** 1 He honored / dese that / 2 fadre merveled / it ment / 3 Syth vnto a place went they / 4 ther / entent / 5 My sonne take hede I shal the / 6 heven thus / sent / 7 warne the / 8 grete lordeship shal to the be lent / 9 He / withouten / 10 vnto that / 11 And *omitted* / He bad / counsayle / 12 anoynted / by /— **495.** 1 When / anoynted has / 2 hede / 3 The goode goste that / 4 Saul / sone it gun descend / 5 in to his / sone gun pas / 6 an evyl sprete and cursed kend / 7 That made Saul / allas / 8 his blys / bales / 9 sithes his / cessed / 10 site / 12 wit as / shal.

Samuel told David that as long as he kept God's commandments, he would prosper.

496 Samuel sayd, »sun, whyle þou is ȝyng,
lok þat þou gyfe þe to gud thewes,
ffor god hath sayd þou sall be kyng
and keper of all hys gud Ebrews.
And þerfor, sun, lufe lele lyfyng
and flee fro feleschep of schrews,
And honere god ouer all thyng,
þat swylke gud grace vnto þe schews.
ffor whyls þou lufes hys lare
and kepes hys cummawndment,
All whyle sall þou well fare
and neuer be schamed ne schent.»

Then they parted. David at that time learned to play on the harp.

497 when þis was sayd, þen samuel
wentt to lend wher hym leuyst wore.
And dauid styll at home con dwell
in feld with his fader store.
And in þat meyn tym he con hym mell
of m[ynstralc]y ay more *and* more
Tyll he cowd herpe, os we here tell,
als well as [euer] was kend before.
Now Dauid leue we here
with hys herpe *and* hys slyng
And tell how sorows sere
come to saul þe kyng.

The evil spirit troubled Saul greatly; his physicians said that music was the sole remedy.

498 The sprett, þat I of spake are,
þat loged was with hym to lende,
Assayd hym oft with sorows s[a]re
and wroyȝt hym wo when he lest wened.
he sentt for feysyke full wyd whare
and clerkes, þat in swylke craftes [was] kend.
Amang þem all þei cowd no mare,
bot mynstralsy, þei sayd, myȝt mend.
þe harpe when he myȝt here,
þe sprett þat was with in
fol. 57 a Suld haue no grett powere
to dere hym for þat dyne.

S 497. 6 maystry / 12 saule *with* e *cancelled* /— **498.** 3 sere / 5 wyld whare / 8 mend *above the line* / lett on go loke no langer abyd *cancelled after* mend (*see 499. 5*).

L 496. 1 said sonne whils thou art ying / 2 luke that thou gyve the / goode thews / 3 has said thou sal / 4 his goode / 5 And *omitted* / Therfor sonne / lely lifyng / 6 fle the feliship / Shrews / 7 honour / maner of thing / 8 that such goode / the Shews / 9 whilst thou / his law / 10 his comaundment / 11 Euermore thou shal wele faire / 12 shamed ne shent /— **497.** 1 When this / then Samuel / 2 went / where / levest were / 3 Dauid / gun dwel / 4 in the feldes / fadre / 5 in *omitted* / that mean tyme / gun / mel / 6 with mynstrelcy / 7 To / covth harp as / 8 as wele as euer any did be fore / 9 leve / 10 his herp / his / 12 Saul the /— **498.** 1 The wyked spirit that / spake of here / 2 which luged was *omitted* / lend / 3 Asayled / 4 wroght / woo / wend / El *and* el *in right bottom corner (very faint)* / 5 fol. 143. b. / He sent / Physeshans / wyde where / 6 that wyse was kend / 7 Among theym / they couth / more / 8 bot mynstrelcy it myght amend / 9 The harp / myght / 10 the spirit that / within / 11 gret / 12 that dyn.

Saul hearing that David was a good harp-player, sent for him.

499 Þen for þer tythyng in þat tyde
he bad men gang to gette þat glee.
And so sayd on, þat satt be syd,
»In bethlem, ser, wuns on jesse;
lett on go loke, no langer abyd,
for a ȝyng sun at home has hee,
þat herpes well, ys not at hyde,
and at your bydyng wyll he bee.»
Messyngers sone was sentt
to jesse for hys sun.
So ȝyng Dauid is went
with þe kyng in cowrt to wun.

Saul was always refreshed when David played to him. David therefore grew in great favour.

500 And soyne when saul saw þat chyld,
he made grett solace for hys sake,
By cawse he saw hym meke *and* myld
and mynstralcy þat he cowd make.
ffor when þe fend was woyd *and* wyld
and with sere turmentes wold hym take,
þen was þe harpe his boyt *and* byld,
and song myȝt sone his sorow slake.
þerfor was dauid dere
and in wrschep all way.
None was þe kyng so nere,
noþer by nyȝt ne day.

L 499. 1 Then / thes tithingys / this / 2 gete that gle / 3 And then said oon on that besyde / 4 Bethleem / wonnes oon Jesse / 5 Make oon go luke he noo lenger abyde / 6 yong sonne / he / 7 That harpes wele is / to / 8 byddyng wolle / be / 9 Mesyngers soon / sent / 10 Jesse / his sonne / 11 yong / 12 the / courte / wonne /— **500.** 1 soone / Saul / that childe / 2 grete / his / 3 Be cause / mylde / 4 mynstrelcy that / couth / 5 the feynd / woode / wylde / 6 tourmentes / 7 Then / the harp / bote / belde / 8 myght / sone *omitted* / sorows / 9 Therfore / Dauid / 10 worship / 11 Noone / the / 12 navthre / nyght.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Anglia, Zeitschrift für englische Philologie.

Barbour, J., The Bruce, Ed. W. W. Skeat. EETS 11, 21, 29, 55, 1870—1889.

Bartels, L., Die Zuverlässigkeit der Handschriften von Laȝamon's Brut, Halle 1913.

Barth, C., Der Wortschatz des Cursor Mundi. Diss. Königsberg 1903.

Baumann, I., Die Sprache der Urkunden aus Yorkshire im 15. Jahrhundert. Heidelberg 1902.

Behrens, L., Beiträge zur Geschichte der französischen Sprache in England, Heilbronn 1886.

Berger, J., La Bible français au moyen âge. Paris 1884.

Boerner, O., Die Sprache Robert Mannyng's of Brunne. Halle 1904.

Björkman, E., Scandinavian Loan-words in Middle English. Halle 1900 and 1902.

— » —, Zur dialektischen Provenienz der nordischen Lehnwörter im Englischen. (Språkvetenskapliga sällskapets i Uppsala förhandlingar). Uppsala 1898—1901.

Bonnard, J., Les Traductions de la Bible en vers français au moyen âge. Paris 1884.

Bosworth-Toller, Anglo-Saxon Dictionary. Oxford 1882 seq.

Brandl-Zippel, Mittelenglische Sprach- und Literaturproben. Berlin 1917.

Ten Brink, B., Chaucers Sprache und Verskunst. Leipzig 1920.

— » —, Die Geschichte der englischen Litteratur, I. Strassburg 1899.

Bülbring, K. D., Altenglisches Elementarbuch I. Lautlehre. Heidelberg 1902.

The Cambridge History of English Literature, Vol. I. Cambridge 1908.

The Chester Plays. EETSES. 62, 115.

Catholicon Anglicum. Ed. Herrtage. Ed. Herrtage. EETS. 75.

Clark Hall, J. R., A Concise Anglo-Saxon Dictionary. Cambridge 1916.

Cleasby-Vigfusson, An Icelandic-English Dictionary. Oxford 1874.

Comestor, P., Historia Scholastica. (Migne's Patrologiæ Cursus Completus, Tome CXCVIII).
Craigie, V. A., The Gospel of Nicodemus and the York Mystery Plays. (An English Miscellany presented to Dr. Furnivall.) Oxford 1901.
Cron, B., Zur Entwicklungsgeschichte der englischen Misterien Alten Testaments. Diss. Marburg 1913.
Cursor Mundi. Ed. R. Morris. EETS 57, 59, 62, 66, 68, 99, 101. 1874—93.
Dannenberg, B., Metrik und Sprache der mittelenglischen Romanze The Sege off Melayne. Diss. Göttingen 1890.
Davidson, C., Studies in the English Mystery Plays. Yale thesis 1892.
Eilers, F., Die Dehnung vor dehnenden Konsonantenverbindungen im Mittelenglischen. Halle 1907.
Ekwall, E., Hist. ne. Grammatik.
Englische Studien, Organ für englische Philologie.
A 14th cent. English Biblical Version. Ed. A. C. Paues. Cambridge 1902.
Eule und Nachtigall. Ed. Breier. Halle 1911.
» Ed. Gadow. Palæstra LXV. Berlin 1909.
Falk und Torp, Norwegisch-Dänisches Etymologisches Wörterbuch. Heidelberg 1910—1911.
Feist, S., Etymologisches Wörterbuch d. gotischen Sprache. Halle 1909.
Fick, A., Vergleichendes Wörterbuch d. idg. Sprachen. III. Göttingen 1909.
Fritzner, J., Ordbog over det gamle norske sprog. Kristiania 1886. seqq.
Fuhrmann, J., Die alliterierenden Sprachformeln in Morris' Early Englisch Alliterative Poems. Hamburg 1886.
Gayley, Plays of our Forefathers. London and New York 1909.
Genesis and Exodus. Ed. R. Morris. EETS. 7.
Gerken, H., Die Sprache des Bischofs Douglas von Dunkeld. 1898.
Godefroy, F., Dictionnaire de l'ancienne langue francaise. Paris, 1880—1892
Grundriss der germanischen Philologie. Ed. by H. Paul.
Grundriss der romanischen Philologie. Ed. by G. Gröber.
The Harrowing of Hell. Ed. Hulme. EETSES. 100.
Hellquist, E., Svensk Etymologisk Ordbok. Lund 1920. seq.
Herrigs Archiv für das Studium der neueren Sprachen und Literaturen.

Hirst, The Phonology of the London MS. of the Earliest Complete English Prose Psalter. Bonn 1917.

Holmquist, E., On the History of the English Present Inflections etc. Heidelberg 1922.

Horn, W., Historische neuenglische Grammatik. I. Strassburg 1908.

— » —, Beiträge zur Geschichte der englischen Gutturallaute. Berlin 1901.

Hörning, W., Die Schreibung der Handschrift E des Cursor Mundi. Diss. Berlin 1906.

Joerden, O., Das Verhältnis von Wort-, Satz- und Versakzent in Chaucers Canterbury Tales. Halle 1915.

Kamann, P., Über Quellen und Sprache der York Plays. Halle 1887.

Klotz, F., Das mittelenglische strophische Evangelium Nicodemi. Königsberg 1913.

Kluge, F., Deutsches Etymologisches Wörterbuch.

Luhmann, A., Die Überlieferung von Laȝamon's Brut. Halle 1906.

Luick, K., Historische Grammatik der englischen Sprache (= HGE). Leipzig 1914 seq.

— » —, Studien zur englischen Lautgeschichte. Wien und Leipzig 1903. (= Stud.)

— » —, Untersuchungen zur englischen Lautgeschichte. Strassburg 1896. (= Unters.)

Lyle, M. C., The Original Identity of the York and Townley Cycles. Minneapolis 1919.

Menger, L. E., The Anglo-Norman Dialect. New York 1904.

Laurence Minot's Poems. Ed. J. Hall. Oxford 1914.

Modern Philology.

Morsbach, L., Mittelenglische Grammatik. Halle 1896.

A New English Dictionary. Oxford 1888. seqq. (= NED.)

Die Nordenglische Legendensammlung in MS. Harl. 4196 und Cott. Tib. E. VII. Ed. C. Horstmann. Altengl. Legenden, Neue Folge. Heilbronn 1881.

The Northern Passion. Ed. Foster EETSES 147.

Ormulum. I—II. Ed. R. Holt, with glossary by R. M. White. Oxford 1878.

Nöjd, R., The Vocalism of Romanic Words in Chaucer. Uppsala 1919.

Palmgren, C., English Gradation-Nouns in their relation to strong verbs. Uppsala 1904.

The Proverbs of Alfred. Ed. Borgström. Lund 1908.
Promptorium Parvulorum. Ed. Mayhew. EETSES 102.
Richard Rolle, Pricke of Conscience. Ed. R. Morris. Phil. Soc. Berlin and London 1863.
Reitemeyer, L., Die Qualität der betonten, langen E-Vokale in den französischen Lehnwörtern des Mittelenglischen. Göttingen 1911.
Schipper, J., Englische Metrik, I. Bonn 1881.
— » —, J., History of English Versification. Oxford 1910.
The Sege off Melayne. Ed. Herrtage. EETSES 35.
Sievers, E., Angelsächsische Grammatik. Halle 1898.
Skeat, W., An Etymological Dictionary of the English Language. Oxford 1910.
Slättengren, E., Contributions to the Study of Aphæretic Words in English. Diss. 1912.
Strandberg, O., The Rime-Vowels of Cursor Mundi. Diss. Uppsala 1919.
Stratman-Bradley, A Middle English Dictionary. Oxford 1891.
Sweet, H. A History of English Sounds. 1888.
Thomas of Erceldoune. Ed. Brandl. Berlin 1880.
Sir Torrent of Portyngale. Ed. Adam. EETSES 51.
The Townley Playes. Ed. England and Pollard. EETSES. 71.
Ungemach, H., Die Quellen der fünf ersten Chester Plays. (Münchener Beiträge zur romanischen und englischen Philologie.) Erlangen und Leipzig 1890.
Vietor, W., A Shakespeare Phonology. Marburg and London 1906.
Wackerzapp, A., Geschichte der Ablaute der starken Zeitwörter innerhalb des Nordenglischen. Diss. Münster 1890.
Wells, J. E., A Manual of the Writings in Middle English 1050—1400. 1916.
Wild, F., Die sprachlichen Eigentümlichkeiten der wichtigeren Chaucer-Handschriften und die Sprache Chaucers. Wien und Leipzig 1915.
Wilda, O., Über die örtliche Verbreitung der 12-zeiligen Schweifreimstrophe in England. Breslau 1887.
Wright, J., The English Dialect Dictionary. Oxford 1896 seqq. (= EDD.)
— » — , The English Dialect Grammar. (= EDG.)
Wyld, H. C., A History of Modern Colloquial English. London 1920.

The Wycliffite Version of the Holy Bible. Ed. Forshall and Madden. Oxford 1850.

The York Plays. Ed. L. Toulmin Smith. Oxford 1885.

Yorkshire Writers. Ed. C. Horstmann. London 1896.

Zachrisson, R. E., The Pronunciation of English Vowels from 1400 to 1700. Göteborg 1913.

The abbreviations occurring in the present thesis are in common use and require no explanation.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

		Page
Introduction		I
Ch. I.	Description of the MSS.	II
Ch. II.	The Relation of the MSS.	X
Ch. III.	The Phonology of the Original	XXXV
A.	The Vocalism of the Rimes	XXXV
§ 1	ME. *a*	XXXV
§ 2	ME. *au* or *a* before nasals in Frnench loan-words	XXXVIII
§ 3	ME. *e*	XXXVIII
§ 4	ME. *i*	XLIII
§ 5	ME. *o*	XLVI
§ 6	ME. *u*	XLVI
§ 7	ME. *ā*	XLVII
§ 8	ME. *-ald*	LIV
§ 9	ME. *-and*	LV
§ 10	ME. *-ang*	LVII
§ 11	ME. *-aɪd*	LVIII
§ 12	ME. *ę̄*	LVIII
§ 13	ME. *-eld*	LXVI
§ 14	ME. *-end*	LXIX
§ 15	ME. *-erd*	LXXV
§ 16	ME. *ḗ*	LXXVI
§ 17	ME. *ī́*	LXXXII
§ 18	ME. *-ild*	LXXXVI
§ 19	ME. *-ind*	LXXXVII
§ 20	ME. *-ing*	LXXXVIII
§ 21	ME. *ǭ*	XC
§ 22	ME. *ǭ*	XCIII
§ 23	ME. *-old*	XCVIII
§ 24	ME. *-ord*	C
§ 25	ME. *-orn*	C
§ 26	ME. *ū́*	CII
§ 27	ME. *-und*	CIII
§ 28	ME. *-ung*	CIV
§ 29	ME. *-urd*	CIV
§ 30	ME. *ü*	CIV
§ 31	ME. *ai*	CIV
§ 32	ME. *au*	CVII

		Page
	§ 33 ME. *ęu*	CVIII
	§ 34 ME. *ęu*	CIX
	§ 35 ME. *oi, ui*	CX
	§ 36 ME. *ou*	CX
B.	Unstressed Vowels	CX
	§ 37 The Frequency of the Unstressed *e*	CXI
	§ 38 The Quality of the Unstressed *e*	CXX
C.	The Accent of the French Loan-words	CXX
	§ 39 Dissyllabic Words	CXXII
	§ 40 Trisyllabic Words	CXXIV
D.	The Consonants	CXXIV
	§ 41 Qualitative Changes	CXXVIII
	§ 42 Loss of Consonants	CXXVIII
	§ 43 Metathesis	CXXXII
Ch. IV.	Accidence	CXXXIII
	§ 1 Declensions of Nouns	CXXXIV
	§ 2 The Adjectives	CXXXVII
	§ 3 Numerals	CXXXIX
	§ 4 Pronouns	CXL
	§ 5 Verbs	CXLIII
Ch. V.	Dialect and Date of the Original	CLII
	§ 1 The Vocalism	CLII
	§ 2 The Consonatism	CLV
	§ 3 Accidence	CLVI
	§ 4 Vocabulary	CLVII
Ch. VI.	The Dialects of the MSS	CLX
Ch. VII.	Some Notes on the Metre	CLXXI
Ch. VIII.	Some Remarks on the Literary Relations	CLXXVII
Corrigenda et Addenda		CXCV
Text		1
Bibliography		171
Table of Contents		176

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

A Middle English metrical
paraphrase of the Old
Testament